# OPPO Smartphone ColorOS 5.2 User Guide

## Content

1. Welcome to ColorOS 5.2 ........ 6
2. Safety Information ........ 6
3. Get started ........ 9
    - 3.1. Quick look ........ 9
        - 3.1.1. ColorOS 5.2 Features ........ 9
        - 3.1.2. Sleep/Wake button ........ 14
        - 3.1.3. Menu, Home and Return buttons ........ 16
        - 3.1.4. Volume buttons ........ 19
        - 3.1.5. Micro-USB port ........ 21
        - 3.1.6. Headset jack ........ 21
        - 3.1.7. SIM and SD cards ........ 21
        - 3.1.8. Accessories came with OPPO phone ........ 23
        - 3.1.9. Charging the battery ........ 25
        - 3.1.10. Gesture & Motion ........ 25
        - 3.1.11. Key combinations ........ 29
        - 3.1.12. Status Icons ........ 31
    - 3.2. Configuration Settings ........ 33
        - 3.2.1. Fingerprint, Face and Passcode ........ 33
        - 3.2.4. Date and Time ........ 51
        - 3.2.5. Language and Region ........ 52
        - 3.2.6. Connect to the Internet ........ 54
4. What's new in ColorOS 5.2 ........ 54
    - 4.1. Smart Sidebar ........ 54
        - 4.2 Smart Scan ........ 59
        - 4.3 New features of Smart Assistant ........ 66
    - 4.4 Google Lens ........ 73
    - 4.6 ORoaming ........ 79
    - 4.7 Auto-sync photos on OPPO Cloud ........ 84
    - 4.8 New Features of video ........ 93
    - 4.9 Smart Driving ........ 96
    - 4.10 Game Space ........ 102
    - 4.11 Customizing timer for Clock app ........ 109
    - 4.12 Scanning names to save on Contacts ........ 113
    - 4.13 Save more battery with Smart Power Saver ........ 120
    - 4.14 Say hello to Talia, your TouchPal assistant ........ 125
5 Basics ........ 128
    - 5.1 Use apps ........ 128
    - 5.2 Share from apps ........ 131
    - 5.3 One-click cleanup ........ 132

5.4 Lock the running background apps ........................................133
5.5 View, zoom in and out ........................................134
5.6 Smart & Convenient Operation ........................................135
  5.6.1. Navigation Keys ........................................135
  5.6.2. Assistive Ball ........................................141
5.7. Change the screen orientation ........................................142
5.8. Split-screen ........................................144
5.9. Take and edit a screenshot ........................................147
5.10. Control Center, Notification, and Status Bar ........................................150
5.11. Search ........................................154
5.12. Test ........................................154
  5.12.1. Add or change keyboard languages ........................................154
  5.12.2. Type, edit, and delete text ........................................156
  5.12.3. Prediction ........................................159
  5.12.4. Voice typing ........................................161
  5.12.5. TouchPal for OPPO ........................................162
5.13. Sound, Vibration, and System Feedback ........................................164
5.14. Charge and monitor the battery ........................................166
5.15. Location Service ........................................168
5.16. Use the phone internationally ........................................170
5.17. Power Saver ........................................170
6. Personalize your OPPO phone ........................................176
6.1. ColorOS 5.2 device name ........................................176
6.2. Personalize the Home screen ........................................177
  6.2.1. Organize the Home screen ........................................177
  6.2.2. Home screen widgets & Transition Effects ........................................180
6.3. Change the wallpaper ........................................182
6.4. Lock screen magazine ........................................184
6.5 Adjust the screen brightness and color temperature ........................................186
6.6. Change auto-lock time ........................................187
6.7. Change the font size ........................................188
6.8. Keyboard and input method ........................................188
  6.8.2. Customize the look of the keyboard ........................................188
  6.8.3. Keyboard Layout ........................................189
  6.8.4. Trends ........................................192
  6.8.5. Keyboard general settings ........................................192
6.9. Set up Startup Manager ........................................194
6.10. Clone Apps ........................................195
6.11. Manage Default App ........................................196
6.12. Gesture & Motion ........................................196
6.13. Preset device on/off time or Automatic on/off ........................................200
6.14. App display in Full-screen ........................................201
7. Apps ........................................202
7.1. Phone ........................................202

7.1.1 Make and Answer Phone Calls ....202
7.1.2. Conference calls ....208
7.1.3. Block calls ....209
7.1.4. Emergency calls ....210
7.1.5. Carrier's Call Settings ....211
7.6. Message ....212
7.6.2. Send and receive messages ....212
7.6.3. Customize message settings ....215
7.7. Contacts ....217
7.7.2. Add a contact ....217
7.7.3. Edit and delete a contact ....224
7.7.4. Import and export contacts ....226
7.7.5. SIM contacts ....228
7.7.6. Manage contacts ....230
7.7.7. Back up your contacts ....232
7.7.8. VIP Contacts ....233
7.8. Phone Manager ....234
7.8.2. Scan and optimize the phone ....234
7.8.3. Clean Storage ....235
7.8.4. Privacy Permissions ....237
7.8.5. Virus Scan ....239
7.8.6. Payment protection ....240
7.8.7. Frequently Used Functions ....241
7.8.8. Common Problems Detection ....243
7.8.9. WeChat Cleaner ....245
7.8.10. Startup Manager ....247
7.9. Weather ....249
7.10. Camera ....251
7.10.2. Take photos ....251
7.10.3. Take a selfie ....256
7.10.4. Shoot video ....261
7.10.5. Camera settings ....263
7.11. Photos ....263
7.11.2. Photos overview ....263
7.11.3. Albums ....264
7.11.4. Stories / Memories ....268
7.11.5. People ....270
7.11.6. View and use photos and videos ....273
7.11.7. Edit photos and videos ....276
7.12. Music ....282
7.12.2. Music ....282
7.12.3. Change sort mode ....284
7.12.4. Scan local songs ....285
7.13. Videos ....287

7.14. Theme Store ....289
- 7.14.2. Online phone theme ....289
- 7.14.3. Online wallpaper ....289
- 7.14.4. Manage your downloads....290

7.15. Clock ....292
- 7.15.2. Set Alarm Clocks ....292
- 7.15.3. Add and view clocks for locations around the world ....294
- 7.15.4. Use the stopwatch....295
- 7.15.5. Set the timer ....295

7.16. Files ....301
- 7.16.2. Optimized File management ....301
- 7.16.3. Fast file browsing....303
- 7.16.4. View and manage files ....304
- 7.16.5. Clean Storage ....306
- 7.16.6. Remotely Manage Phone Files ....307
- 7.16.7. Private Safe....308

Start Using Private Safe. ....308

7.17. Calculator ....310

7.18. Sound Recording ....315
- 7.18.2. Recorder ....315
- 7.18.3. Manage recordings....316

7.19. Compass ....317

7.20. Chrome....319
- 7.20.2. Search the web....319
- 7.20.3. Browse the web....321
- 7.20.4. Quick accesses....324

8. Safety & Privacy....327

8.1. Device security ....327
- 8.1.1. Lock screen password ....327
- 8.1.2. Smart Lock....328
- 8.1.3. Payment protection....329
- 8.1.4. Set up a SIM card lock ....331
- 8.1.5. Virus Scan ....332
- 8.1.6. Pseudo Base Station Blocking....333
- 8.1.7. Protect Personal Information ....334

8.2. Device administration ....335
- 8.2.1. Allow and install apps from unknown sources....335
- 8.2.2. App permissions....337
- 8.2.3. Hide Home screen icon ....337
- 8.2.4. Kids Space....339
- 8.2.5. Block unwanted calls and messages ....340
- 8.2.6. Find my device....342

8.3. Privacy ....345
- 8.3.1. Location Service ....345

    - 8.3.2. Join User Experience Project ........................................ 347
    - 8.3.3. Privacy Protecting and Security Warning ........................................ 348
  - 8.4. Advanced ........................................ 349
    - 8.4.1. Screen pinning ........................................ 349
  - 8.5. App Lock ........................................ 350
- 9. Share Internet connection and files ........................................ 355
    - 9.1.1. Tether your phone's Internet connection ........................................ 355
  - 9.2. Share Files ........................................ 359
    - 9.2.1. Wireless file sharing ........................................ 359
    - 9.2.2. Wired file sharing ........................................ 363
    - 9.2.3. Share from apps ........................................ 365
- 10. Restart, update, back up, and restore ........................................ 365
  - 10.1. Restart the phone ........................................ 365
  - 10.2. Update ColorOS software ........................................ 366
  - 10.3. Back up and restore the phone ........................................ 368
    - 10.3.1. Back up your phone ........................................ 368
    - 10.3.2. Restore data on your phone ........................................ 370
    - 10.3.3. Reset the phone ........................................ 373
- 11. Barrier-free ........................................ 374
  - 11.1. TalkBack ........................................ 374
  - 11.2. Magnification Gestures ........................................ 376
  - 11.3. Press Power Button to End Call ........................................ 378
- 12. Safety, handling, and support ........................................ 378
  - 12.1. Health & Safety ........................................ 378
    - 12.1.1. Using Environment ........................................ 378
    - 12.1.2. Battery Safety ........................................ 379
    - 12.1.3. Charger Usage Notes ........................................ 380
  - 12.1.4. Traffic Safety ........................................ 381
  - 12.2. Maintenance and Repair ........................................ 382
  - 12.2.1. Phone Cases ........................................ 382
  - 12.2.2. Screen Protector ........................................ 382
  - 12.2.3. Maximize battery life and lifespan ........................................ 382
  - 12.2.4. Keep Clean ........................................ 383
  - 12.2.5. Keep dry and solve water damage ........................................ 384
  - 12.2.6. Use connectors, ports, and buttons. ........................................ 384
  - 12.2.7. Other information ........................................ 385
  - 12.3. FCC Compliance Statement ........................................ 386

# 1. Welcome to ColorOS 5.2

# 2. Safety Information

Read through the following information carefully. Failure to follow these safety precautions could result in danger or illegal activities.

**Safe Startup**

Do not switch on the device when phone use is prohibited or when it may cause interference or danger.

## Traffic Safety First

Traffic safety is always of first importance. Use of phones and headphones while driving a vehicle or riding a bicycle is not recommended and is illegal in some areas. Obey and follow all related local laws.

## Switching off Device at Gas Stations

Turn off your phone when in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere, such as gas stations or any other fueling area. Sparks in such areas could cause an explosion or fire, resulting in serious injury or even death.

## Switching off Device When On Board an Airplane

Wireless devices might be prohibited while in the air in some countries or regions. Obey all related local laws and turn off your phone or switch to airplane mode.

## Switching off Device near Medical Equipment

Hospitals or healthcare facilities might use radio-frequency-sensitive equipment. Obey the relevant rules and regulations.

## Switching off Device at Blasting Areas

To avoid interfering with blasting operations, turn off your phone when in a “blasting area” or in areas posted “Turn off two-way radio.” Obey all signs and instructions.

## Radiation

Nearly every electronic device gives off radiation. Mobile phone use does not increase the risk of getting brain cancer or other head tumors. Its effect in humans is negligible.

## Interference

Nearly every electronic device is susceptible to interference for external sources if inadequately shielded or designed. As a result, your phone may cause interference with other devices.

## Temperature

Operate your phone in a place where the temperature is always between 10℃ to 45℃. Using or storing your phone in a too hot or too cold environment might damage the battery, or even cause your phone to short-circuit or burn.

## Proper Usage

Use your phone appropriately. Do not touch the antenna area unnecessarily when the phone is turned on. Do not drop, disassemble, crush, bend, deform, puncture, incinerate, or insert foreign objects into your phone.

## Qualified Maintenance and Service

Never attempt to repair or modify the phone yourself. If your phone has any hardware or software failure, do not use it until you take it to an authorized service provider. Do not disassemble or root your phone yourself, otherwise the warranty service will be terminated immediately.

## Batteries, Chargers and other Accessories

Do not dismantle the built-in lithium-ion battery of your device. Use only the batteries, chargers and other accessories authorized by OPPO, for third-party accessories might cause damage or danger.

## Waterproofness

Your device is not waterproof. Do not use your device in rain, or other wet locations.

## Avoiding Hearing Damage

Permanent hearing loss may occur if the receiver, speakerphone, headphones, or earpieces are used at high volume. You can adapt over time to a higher volume of sound that may sound normal but can be damaging to your hearing. Set the volume to a safe level to protect your hearing.

## Avoiding Eyestrain

Your device’s screen color and brightness might have a different degree of stimulation to your eyesight. Long-term viewing of your phone in normal or darker environments will damage your eyesight. When watching video or reading text on your phone, avoid prolonged use, take breaks and turn on eye protection mode to prevent eyestrain.

#### Glass Parts

The outside cover of your phone's screen, front/rear camera and flash is made of glass. This glass could break if your phone is dropped on a hard surface or receives a substantial impact. Do not attempt to touch or clean the broken glass. Stop using your phone until the glass is replaced by an authorized service provider.

#### Connecting to Other Devices

Before connecting to other devices, carefully read the user manual for more detailed, accurate and safety instructions. Do not connect to incompatible products.

#### Being Aware of Laser Safety

If your phone supports laser focusing, carefully read the user manual before using it. Failure to follow instructions might lead to harmful radiation exposure. To prevent direct exposure to laser beam, do not attempt to open your phone's outer shell, or avoid keeping close contact with laser light.

# 3. Get started

## 3.1. Quick look

### 3.1.1. ColorOS 5.2 Features

ColorOS 5.2 aims your phone to be true to its name, a Smart one. New features are clever and convenient. In this quick pace life, we wanted your device to get ahead and do things for you so you can focus on other things while your phone will do the rest. Smart Sidebar has been added for smart multitasking. There's also Smart Scan that makes translation cool, fun, and easy. Smart Driving to make you focus on the road. Save more battery with Smart Power Saver and have Talia as a reliable assistant when you're typing message. With all these and more features, ColorOS 5.2 still tightens its take on security and privacy.

## Exciting user interface

The new ColorOS 5.2 makes use of the screen more. Quick functions just got more quicker. One touch on the side bar and you'll have shortcuts to your favorite apps and tools. One scan and you'll have translation and personal information that can directly be saved on your contacts. ColorOS 5.2 goes beyond convenience and efficiency. It is simply smart.

## Smart Sidebar

It's multitasking at its best, where you'll have quick access with your favorite apps and tools. This enables to switch between apps, transfer files, reply messages, or take screenshots when playing a game or watching a video.

## Smart snaps with Smart Scan

There are more things you can do with your camera apart from taking pictures and selfies. One snap and have languages translated in an instant. Scan business cards and have all information saved on your contacts.

## New clever features of Smart Assistant

Smart assistant maximizes the use of your camera. Just one snap and you'll get tons of information just by mere clicking the camera button. It's now a lot easier and smarter to Scan documents, Scan & translate images and texts, Scan namecard to be saved on your contacts, and translate photos to make travel and life more convenient.

## Google Lens

Google has just recently introduced Google Lens which will analyze what you see and will give you results in real time. It will tell you what the image is or give you links to understand it better.

## ORoaming

To stay connected with loved ones and to still check business and work from time to time, we need data. It is now a necessity and we know it and we would want to make things easier for you. ORoaming makes you purchase international data package without the need of buying a SIM card. It supports 62 countries/regions. Now you can truly enjoy your trip.

## Auto Sync Photos on OPPO Cloud

Save those precious pictures and selfies on OPPO Cloud automatically. No need to manually save it and no need to worry about it if something happens to your phone. OPPO Cloud got it covered.

## Be a master video editor

Impress your social media followers and friends with your videos. You can now add close-up and pulsation on the videos you have taken to make it more fun and artsy.

## Smart Driving

A small distraction when driving can cause accident. Even if we really don't want to answer a phone call or have glimpse about who messaged us or what the notification is for, but the urge to check it is so strong and our focus on the road is diverted. It has been said that checking the phone is one of the biggest reasons for senseless accidents on the road and we wanted to avoid that and save lives instead.

## Game Space

Game space will definitely make each gamer happy. Imagine putting all your favorite games in one place. This will make it a lot easier to find the game that you would want to play. They will be gathered in one application which serves as a hub so it wouldn't be scattered around your home screen. Now let's enter game space.

## Customizing the timer

You can now set a timer or countdown for activities that you usually do. You don't need to manually set it each time you'll do something. You can simply save it on the timer and click start when you are ready.

## Scanning names to save on Contacts

Save new contact information in a snap. You just need a name card or business card. Fast and convenient. No need of typing each information on your phone.

## Save more battery with Smart Power Saver

Optimize the power of your battery and manage those apps and settings that used up the most power. Know how to save more power so you can use it especially when it is most needed.

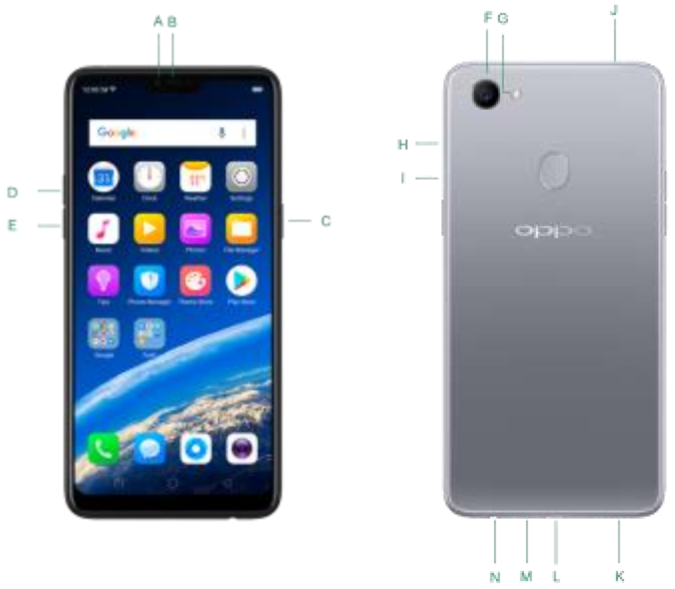
## Say hello to Talia, your new TouchPal assistant

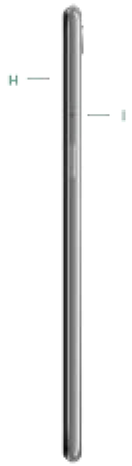
Optimize the power of your battery and manage those apps and settings that used up the most power. Know how to save more power so you can use it especially when it is most needed.

## ColorOS 5.2 is compatible with these devices

| Model |
|---|
| R17, R17 Pro, RX17 Pro, R17 Neo, AX5s / A5s , AX7, F7, A3s, Find X |

## Buttons and components


A
B
F
G
J
H
I
D
E
C
N
M
L
K



**Features**

| | |
|---|---|
| A. | Front camera |
| B. | Receiver |
| C. | Sleep/Wake button |
| D. | Volume up button |

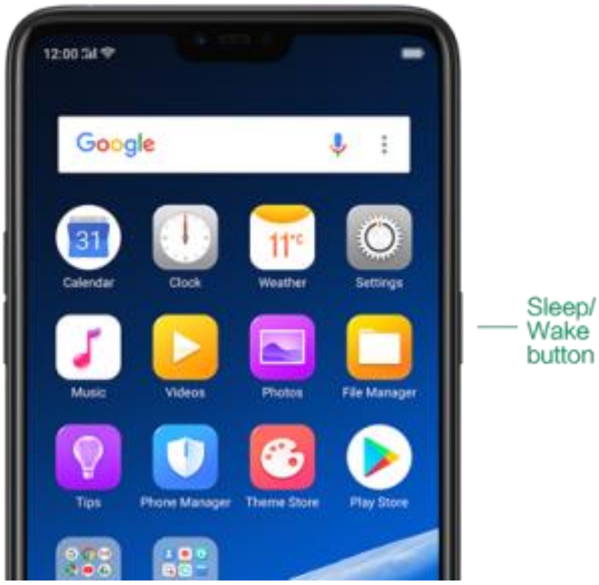
| | |
|---|---|
| E. | Volume down button |
| **F.** | Rear camera |
| G. | Flash |
| H. | SIM card tray |
| I. | SIM tray hole |
| J. | Noise cancelling microphone |
| K. | Speaker |
| L. | Micro-USB port |
| M. | Microphone |
| N. | Headset jack |

### Functions for buttons and combination keys

To learn more features, see Quick Look at OPPO phone.

## 3.1.2. Sleep/Wake button

The **Wake/Sleep** button on the right side of your phone has a number of different uses.


12:00
Google
Calendar
Clock
Weather
Settings
Music
Videos
Photos
File Manager
Tips
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Play Store
Sleep/
Wake
button

## When the phone is on

**Wake or lock the screen**: With the phone is powered on, press the **Wake/Sleep** button once and it will wake the phone up to the point that you can see the lock screen, like the clock and any notifications that are setup to display there. When the phone screen is awakened, pressing this button will blacken the screen and lock the phone.

**Take a screenshot**: Press and hold the **Sleep/Wake** and **Volume Down** buttons at the same time and your phone will take a picture of whatever is displayed on the screen. Click the screenshot, and then choose to a take a long screenshot, send, edit or delete the screenshot. If you save the screenshot, you can view it on Photos.

**End a call**: Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Accessibility]** and turn on **[Power Button Ends Call]**, then you can press the **Sleep/Wake** button to end phone calls.

**Turn off the phone**: Press and hold the **Sleep/Wake** button for a few seconds, whether the phone is on the lock screen or home screen, it will ask you to slide down to power off the device.

**Force restart the phone**: Press and hold the **Sleep/Wake** and **Volume Up** buttons for about 10 to 12 seconds until your device is turned on. View force restart your phone.

## When the phone is off

**Turn on the phone**: Press and hold the **Sleep/Wake** button for a few seconds until you see the OPPO logo.

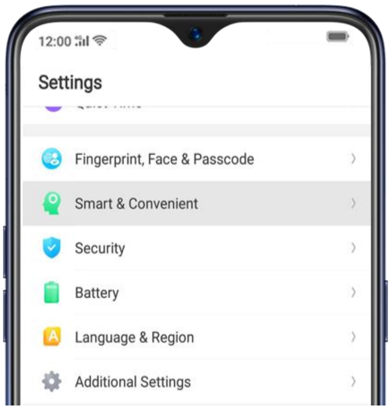
**Force Restart the phone**: Press and hold the **Sleep/Wake** and **Volume Up** buttons until your device is turned on. View force restart your phone.

**Enter Recovery Mode**: Press and hold the **Sleep/Wake** and **Volume Down** buttons at the same time to enter Recovery Mode.

### 3.1.3. Menu, Home and Return buttons

The traditional hardware buttons have been replaced with on-screen virtual navigation keys which also offers fast and fluid gestures to operate your phone. You can change the order of the virtual keys, and set them to appear only when needed to free space on the screen.

**Enable virtual navigation keys**. Virtual navigation keys are default on. If you want to enable them manually, go to **[Settings]** > **[Smart & Convenient]** > **[Navigation Keys]** and click Virtual Key Navigation.



12:00

Settings

Fingerprint, Face & Passcode

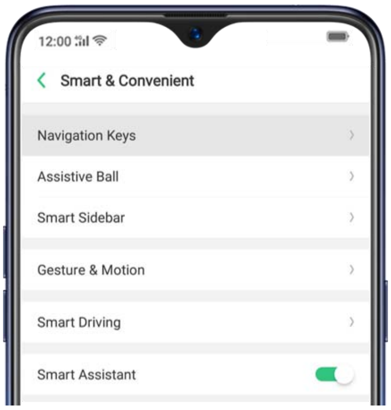
Smart & Convenient

Security

Battery

Language & Region

Additional Settings



12:00

Smart & Convenient

Navigation Keys

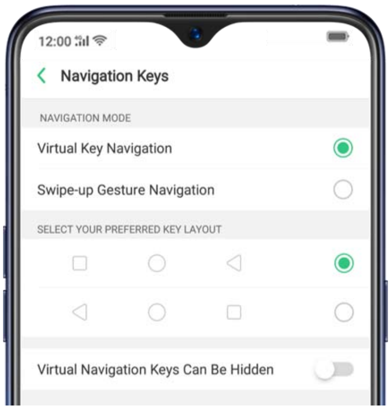
Assistive Ball

Smart Sidebar

Gesture & Motion

Smart Driving

Smart Assistant



12:00

Navigation Keys

NAVIGATION MODE

Virtual Key Navigation ●

Swipe-up Gesture Navigation ○

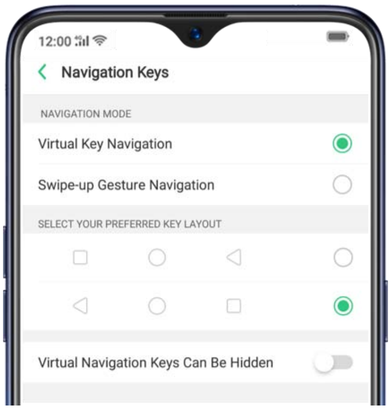
SELECT YOUR PREFERRED KEY LAYOUT

□ ○ ◁ ●

◁ ○ □ ○

Virtual Navigation Keys Can Be Hidden

**Change the order of virtual navigation keys**. The keys follow the typical order for OPPO: Menu, Home, and Return from left to right. If you are left-handed, you can change them to the return-home-recent order.



12:00

Navigation Keys

NAVIGATION MODE

Virtual Key Navigation ●

Swipe-up Gesture Navigation ○

SELECT YOUR PREFERRED KEY LAYOUT

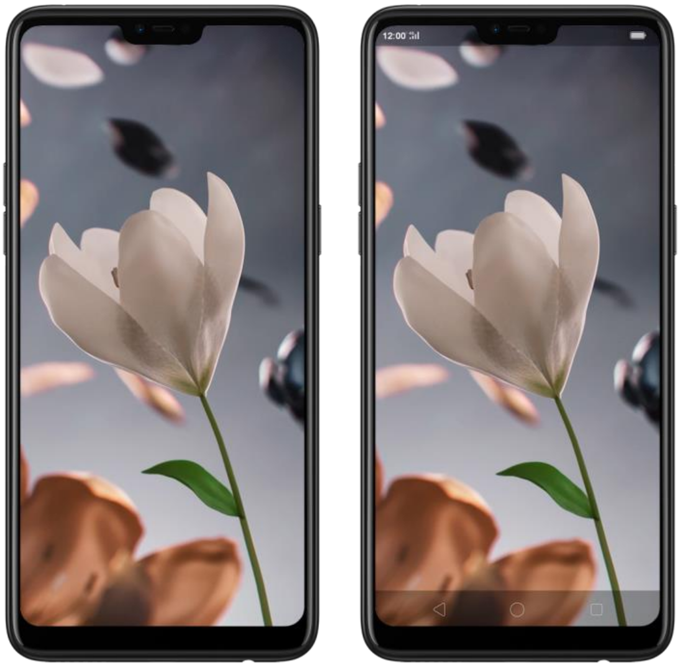
□ ○ ◁ ○

◁ ○ □ ●

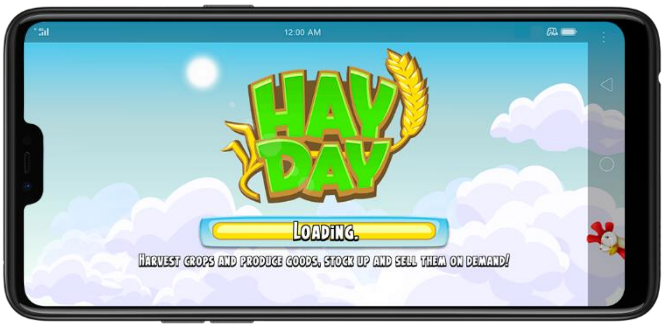
Virtual Navigation Keys Can Be Hidden

**Hide the virtual navigation keys**. When you launch a full-screen app, the keys will automatically hide, and can be brought back with a simple swipe:

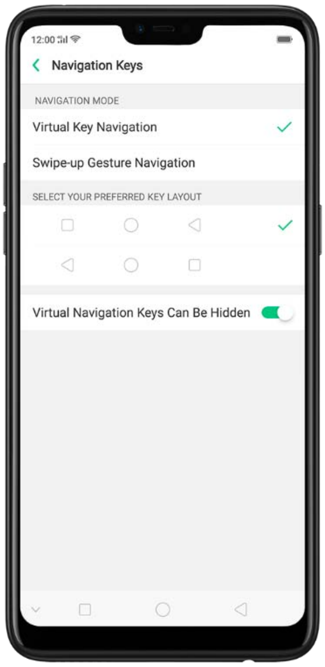
- When in portrait mode, swipe up from the bottom.
- When in landscape mode, swipe from the bottom to the left.



HAY DAY
LOADING.
HARVEST CROPS AND PRODUCE GOODS, STOCK UP AND SELL THEM ON DEMAND!


12:00 AM
HAY DAY
LOADING.
HARVEST CROPS AND PRODUCE GOODS, STOCK UP AND SELL THEM ON DEMAND!

**Manually hide the virtual navigation keys**. To set the keys to appear only when needed, go to **[Settings]** > **[Smart & Convenient]** > **[Navigation Keys]** and enable Virtual Navigation Keys Can Be Hidden. Then you can click ∨ on the left-lower corner of the screen to hide the keys, and swipe from the bottom to reveal them.


12:00

Navigation Keys

NAVIGATION MODE

Virtual Key Navigation ✓

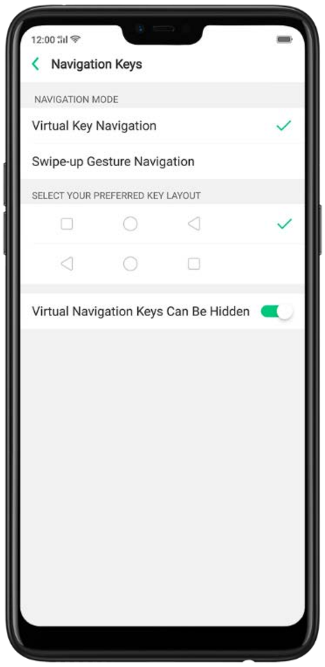
Swipe-up Gesture Navigation

SELECT YOUR PREFERRED KEY LAYOUT

□ ○ ◁ ✓

◁ ○ □

Virtual Navigation Keys Can Be Hidden ●


12:00

Navigation Keys

NAVIGATION MODE

Virtual Key Navigation ✓

Swipe-up Gesture Navigation

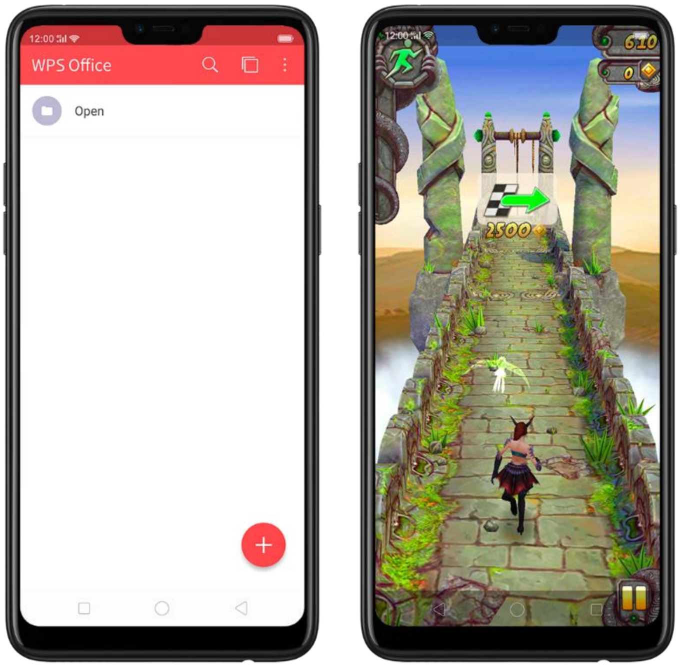
SELECT YOUR PREFERRED KEY LAYOUT

□ ○ ◁ ✓

◁ ○ □

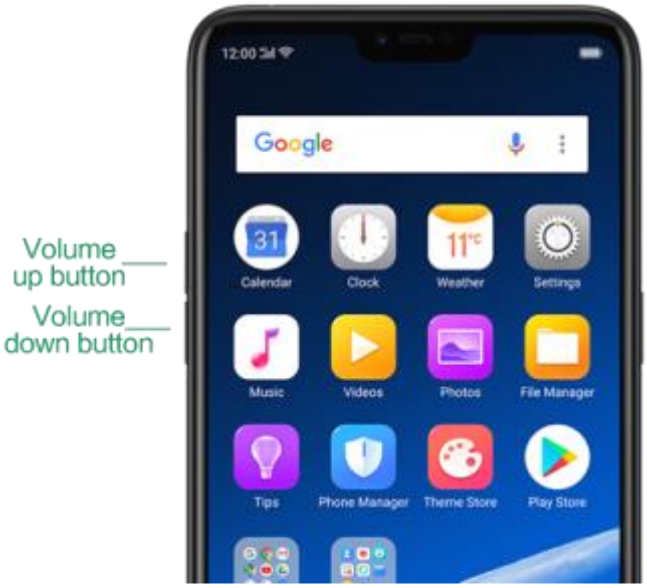
Virtual Navigation Keys Can Be Hidden ●

**Immersive navigation background**.The system set multiple colors for the navigation background to match the color scheme of the popular apps. The background color is default white, and it will become translucent or immersive when you open some of the third-party apps.



## 3.1.4. Volume buttons

Volume buttons give you easy access to adapt over time to a proper volume of sound. It refers not simply ringer or media, the phone also keeps track of the volume level separately in headphone, microphone, and speaker.


Volume up button
Volume down button
12:00
Google
31
Calendar
Clock
11°C
Weather
Settings
Music
Videos
Photos
File Manager
Tips
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Play Store

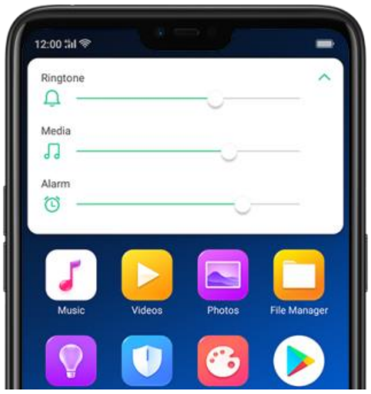
**Media volume**: When listening to music, videos and phone calls, use the buttons on the side of the phone to adjust the volume. For information about avoiding hearing loss, see Security Information.

**Ringer volume**: Use the Volume buttons to control the volume for the ringer and alerts. When you press and hold the **volume down** button, your phone will switch to silent mode.

**Alarm volume**: Use the Volume buttons to set the volume for alarm. The alarm still plays a sound when the phone is in silent mode.

**Call volume**: When making or receiving phone calls, use the volume buttons to adjust the volume of the call.

* You can also adjust the volume (except call volume) in **[Settings]** > **[Sound & Vibration]**.



**Controlling the camera**: Volume buttons can also be used to control your camera. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Camera]** > **[Volume Button]** and set up the volume buttons for Shutter or Zoom.

## 3.1.5. Micro-USB port

Micro-USB port is the connector on the bottom of your device where your battery charger connects. It also doubles as the data port, which lets you transfer data to and from a personal computer or other USB devices. Plug the cable in the port to charge or transfer data.

**Notice:**

1. Repeated connecting and disconnecting of your cable can cause the port to wear out, resulting in a poor connection to your cable.

2. Never force a connector into the port, for that might cause damage.

## 3.1.6. Headset jack

The headset jack is an audio socket that accepts a 3.5mm audio plug. Plug your headset in the jack to listen to music, videos and phone calls. Do not force a mismatched headset into the jack for that might cause damage.

## 3.1.7. SIM and SD cards

### SIM card

* Insert the SIM card before turning on your phone. If you hold a new SIM card, you might need to wait until it is activated by the carrier before you can use it.

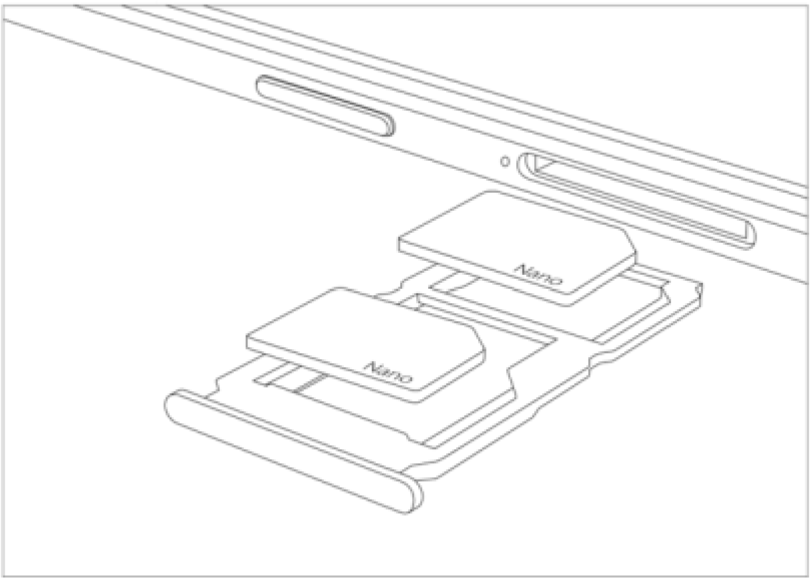
A SIM card is provided by your carrier and is used to activate your phone's mobile network. Because it has a small amount of memory, the SIM card not only enables communications between two persons but stores information such as phone numbers, security data and more. When using the mobile network, you need to pay charges. To avoid high charges, you can shop data plans with your carrier, or shop international data roaming plans when traveling abroad.

**Insert the SIM card**: Most OPPO Smartphones support Dual SIM. You can choose to insert one or two.

1. Insert the card needle into the hole outside the card tray to pop it open.

2. Pull out the card tray and place SIM card(s) on it.

3. Put the card tray back in as the same orientation that you removed it.



**Remove the SIM card**: Remove the card(s) in the same way that you insert it(them).

## SD card

The SD card is a way to store and transfer images, music, video, and other data. You can insert a SD card in your phone to expand phone’s memory.

SIM1, SIM2 and SD cards share the same card tray. Insert your SD card in the same way that you insert the SIM card(s).

### 3.1.8. Accessories came with OPPO phone

Along with the handset, the accessories came with are headset, USB Connecting cable, Power adapter, SIM card tool, and Phone case.

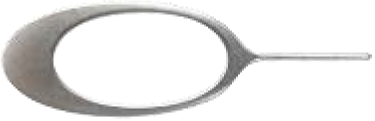
**Notice**： All photos shown are for illustration zpurpose ONLY. Actual products may vary due to product enhancement.

**Headset**: A standard headset with 3.5 mm headset plug. Use to listen to music, videos, and phone calls. Use the built-in microphone to talk. When playing the music or videos, click the button once to pause or play a song or video.

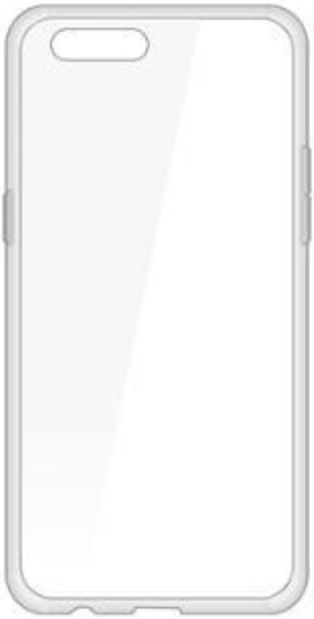
**USB Connecting cable**: Use the cable to connect your phone to the computer to charge and transfer files, or use it with the power adapter to charge.

**Power adapter**: Connect the power adapter to your phone using the included cable, then plug it into a standard power outlet to charge the phone.

**SIM card tool**: Use to pop out the SIM card tray.

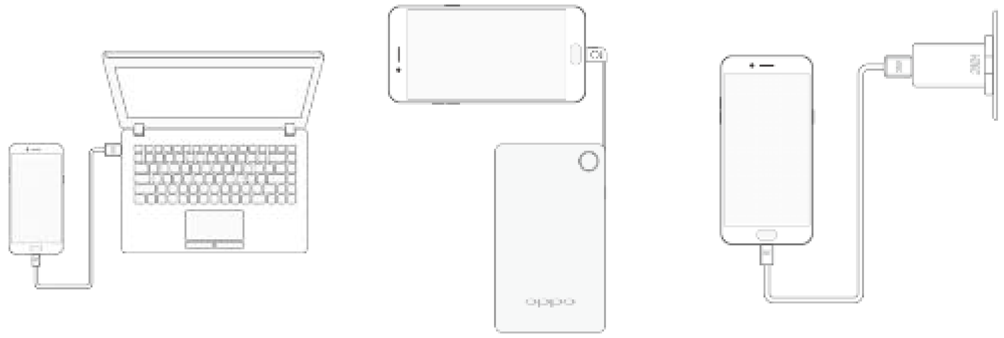


**Phone Case**: Use to protect against drops and shock damage on the corners and rear of your phone.



## 3.1.9. Charging the battery

### How to charge the battery:



**Notice**：All photos shown are for illustration purpose ONLY. Actual products may vary due to product enhancement.

**Charge with the jack**: Connect adapter to your phone using the USB cable, then plug it into a standard power outlet to charge the phone.

**Connect to a computer to charge**: Use the cable to connect your phone to the computer to charge. Your phone will charge slowly if you connect it to the computer.

**Charge with Power Bank**: Connect Power Bank to your phone, and your phone will be charged wherever you go. It is an absolute necessity if you are a frequent traveler.

### Charging Notice:

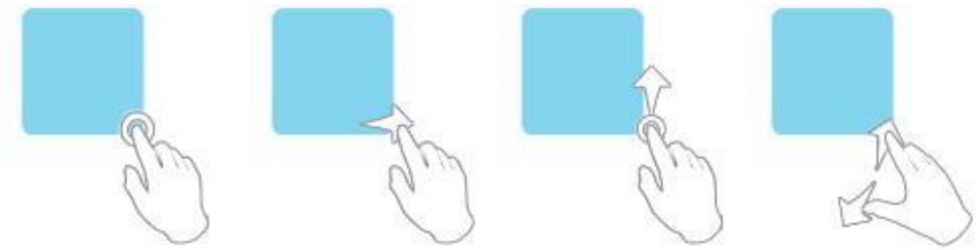
1. Charge the phone with the original charging accessories (including adapter, cable and power bank).

2. It is recommended to charge your phone in a place where the temperature is between 15° C to 40° C. Extreme ambient temperatures will affect flash charging system.

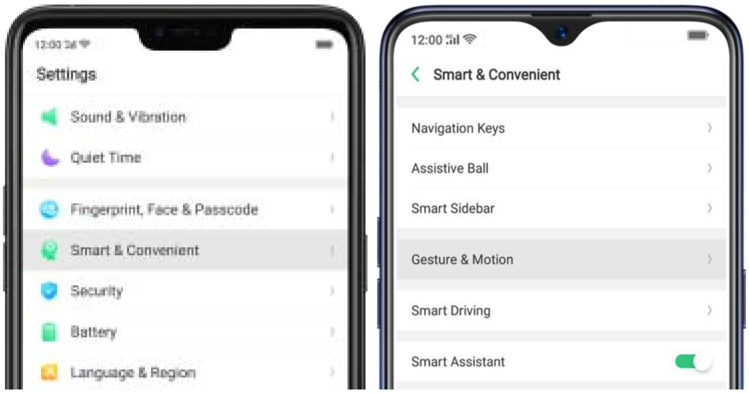
## 3.1.10.Gesture & Motion

### Gestures

OPPO smartphone is designed to understand gestures. You can use gestures such as tap, swipe, drag and spread to operate your phone.



To set up complex gestures for specific functions, go to **[Settings]** > **[Smart & Convenient]** > **[Gesture & Motion]**.


12:00
Settings
Sound & Vibration
Quiet Time
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
Smart & Convenient
Security
Battery
Language & Region
12:00
Smart & Convenient
Navigation Keys
Assistive Ball
Smart Sidebar
Gesture & Motion
Smart Driving
Smart Assistant

## Screen-off Gestures

To set up screen-off gestures, you need to turn it on first.

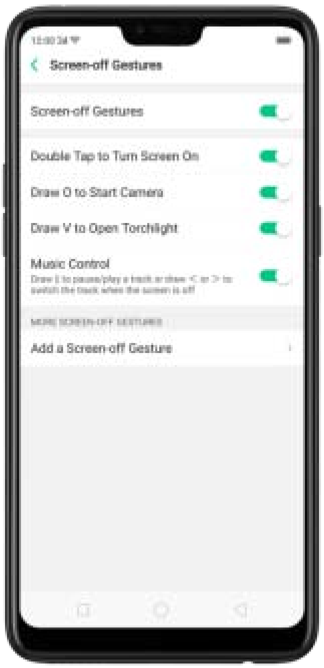
**Double tap to turn screen on**: Turn it on to wake up your locked screen with a double-click on the screen.

**Draw O to start camera**: When turn it on, you can draw O on the locked screen to open Camera app.

**Draw V to open torchlight**: When turn it on, you can draw V on the locked screen to open the torchlight.

**Music control**: When turn it on, you can draw || to pause/play a track, or draw < or > to switch the track when the screen is off.

**Add more screen-off gestures**: OPPO smartphone of ColorOS 5.0 gives you 7 options, which are **Draw ^, Slide up, Slide down, Slide left, Slide right, Draw M and Draw W**. Choose one to unlock the phone, call someone or start an app.


Screen-off Gestures

Screen-off Gestures: On

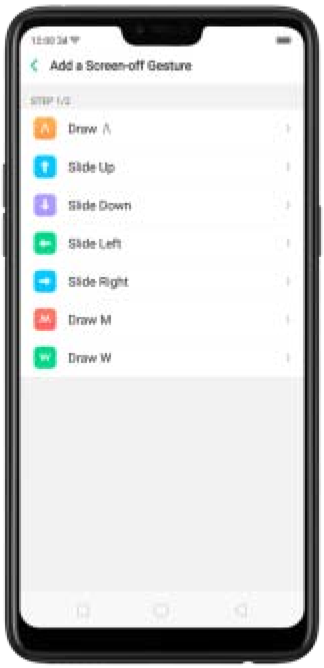
Double Tap to Turn Screen On: On

Draw O to Start Camera: On

Draw V to Open Torchlight: On

Music Control: On

MORE SCREEN-OFF GESTURES
Add a Screen-off Gesture


Add a Screen-off Gesture
STEP 1/2
Draw ^
Slide Up
Slide Down
Slide Left
Slide Right
Draw M
Draw W

## 3-Finger Gesture

**Take a screenshot**. Swipe down the screen with three fingers.

**Use Split-screen**. Under the interface of an app, swipe ups the screen with three fingers to enter split-screen mode.

Google
Calendar
Clock
Weather
Settings
Music
Videos
Photos
File Manager
Tips
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Play Store
Google
Tools

# Motion

The motion-sensing technology is used in OPPO smartphone. Use it to let your phone response to motion.

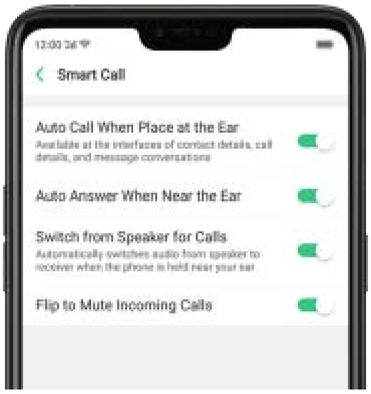
## Smart call

**Auto call when place at the ear**: Before you can use auto call, you need to set the default SIM card for calling. Go to a contact detail, call detail, message conversation or info interface, put the phone near your ear and your phone will automatically call that specific person.

**Auto answer when near the ear**: This function lets your phone to answer any incoming calls automatically when putting the phone near your ear.

**Switch from speaker for calls**: Use it to automatically switch from speaker to receiver when you put the phone near your ear during phone calls.

**Flip to mute incoming calls**: Use it to silence the ringer by turning the phone over on a table or other flat surfaces.



Smart Call

Auto Call When Place at the Ear
Available at the interfaces of contact details, call details, and message conversations

Auto Answer When Near the Ear

Switch from Speaker for Calls
Automatically switches audio from speaker to receiver when the phone is held near your ear

Flip to Mute Incoming Calls

### Mistouch Prevention Mode

Turn it on to prevent incorrect operations if the lock screen is covered.

### Take selfies

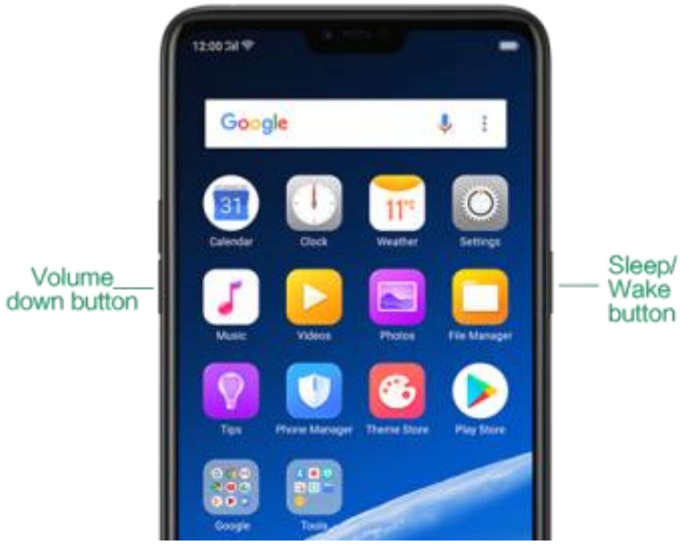
Open Camera app and switch to the front camera. Click > Gesture on the top of the screen. Pose the same hand gesture towards the camera, once the camera captures that, it will take a photo automatically after two seconds. You can change your pose and expression within this two seconds.

## 3.1.11.Key combinations

Generally, you can use two buttons of your phone to generate a specific result. The common key combinations include:

### When phone is on

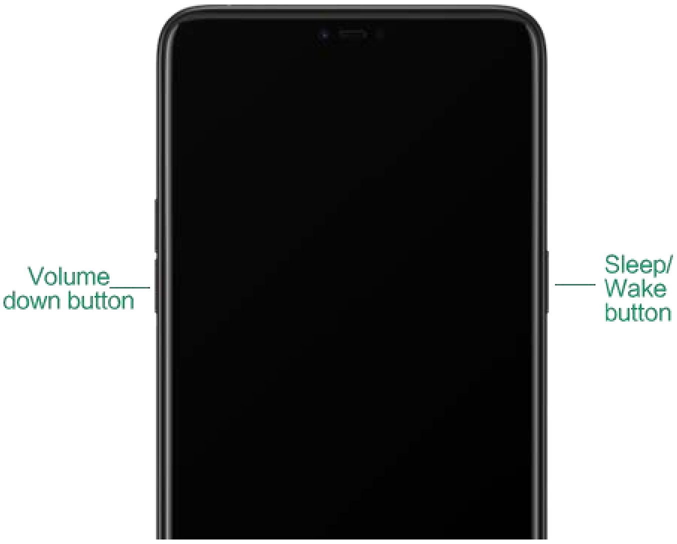
**Press and hold the Power and Volume Down buttons**: Your phone will take a screenshot for the current page. To take a long screenshot, click the screenshot, then click Longshot.


Volume down button
Sleep/ Wake button
Google
Calendar
Clock
Weather
Settings
Music
Videos
Photos
File Manager
Tips
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Play Store
Google
Tools

**Press and hold the Power and Volume Up buttons**: If the phone isn't responding, press and hold the button combination for at least eight seconds to force restart your phone.

## When phone is off

**Press and hold the Power and Volume Down buttons**: Phone will enter Recovery Mode, which does help to update the system, wipe data, check disk and more.



**Press and hold the Power and Volume Up buttons**: Phone will be force restarted. Press and hold the two buttons until your phone is turned on.

### 3.1.12.Status Icons

The icons in the status bar at the top of the screen give information about your OPPO smartphone:

| **Status icon** | | **What it means** |
|---|---|---|
| 📶 | **Mobile network signal** | Shows whether you’re in range of operator’s network and can make and receive calls. The more bars, the stronger the signal. |
| ✈ | **Airplane Mode** | Shows that airplane mode is on. Phone’s wireless communication abilities are disabled. |
| 4G /<br>4G+ | **LTE/ LTE – A** | 4G network is available, including LTE and LTE-A. Your phone can connect to the Internet over that network. |
| 3G/H+ | **UMTS/WCDMA** | 3G UMTS network is available. Your phone can connect to the Internet over that network. |

|  |  |  |
|---|---|---|
| E | **EDGE /GSM** | EDGE (GSM) network is available. Your phone can connect to the Internet over that network. |
| 📶 | **Wi-Fi** | Shows that your phone is connected to a Wi-Fi network. The more bars, the stronger the signal. See Connect to Wi-Fi. |
| ☎ | **Call Forwarding** | Call forwarding is turned on. |
| VPN | **VPN** | You're connected to a network using VPN. |
| ☾ | **Quiet Time** | Quiet Time is turned on. |
| 🔒 | **Portrait orientation lock** | Phone screen is locked in portrait orientation. |
| ⏰ | **Alarm** | An alarm is set up on your phone. |
| ᛒ | **Bluetooth** | Bluetooth is on, or your phone is connected to a Bluetooth device. |
| ᛒ⇅ | **Bluetooth** | Bluetooth Tethering is on. |
| 🔕 | **Silent** | Silent Mode is on. |
| 📳 | **Vibrate when silent** | Phone vibrates when Silent mode is on. |
| HD | **HD Voice** | Your phone is on a voice call over VoLTE. |
|  | **Wireless Display** | Wireless projector is connected. |
| 📍 | **Location Service** | Location Service is on. |
| ⊘ | **No service** | Your phone has no signal. |
| 🔋 | **Power Saving** | Power Saving Mode is on. |
| LOGG -ING | **LOGG-ING** | Get a log for testing |

|  |  |  |
|---|---|---|
| 🗨 | **Message** | **Message notification** |
| VoLTE | **Voice over LTE** | Your operator's VoLTE service is available. HD Voice works to make your calls. |
| 🎮 | **Game acceleration** | Optimize the game display configuration to fully utilize hardware resource |
| 📶 | **International Roaming** | Your phone is using International Data Roaming. |
| 🚸 | **Kids space** | Addiction prevention |
| ¥ | **Payment protection** | Payment environment detection |

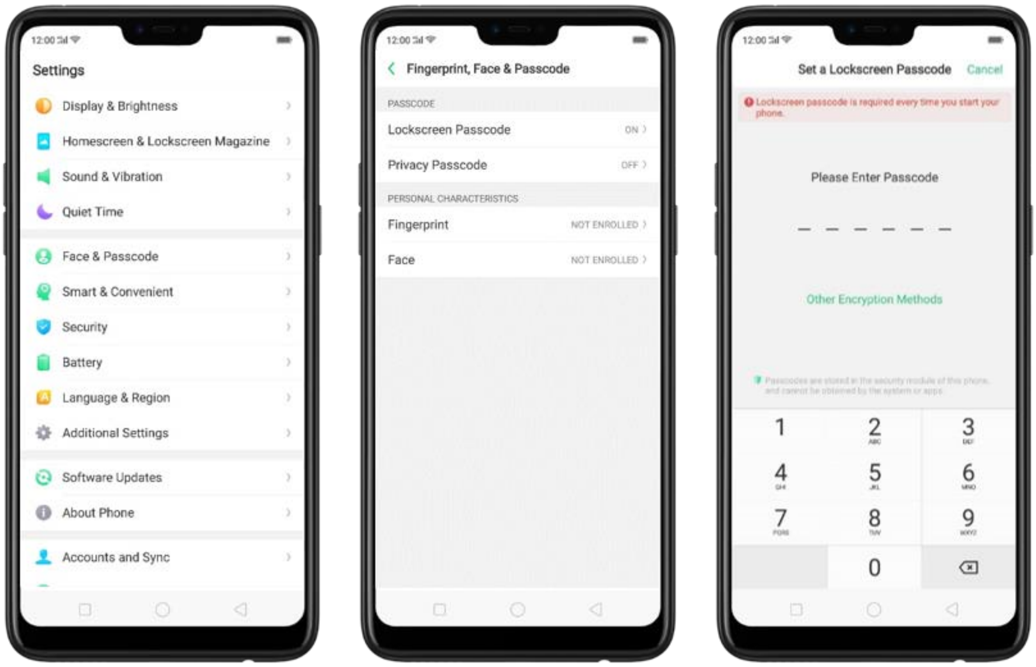
# 3.2. Configuration Settings

## 3.2.1. Fingerprint, Face and Passcode

Setting a lockscreen passcode, privacy passcode, and face ID on your device are security measures that all users should take. Follow these steps to set a passcode that will be needed to unlock your phone and access the information stored on it.

**Use a Lockscreen passcode on your OPPO phone**

**Set the Lockscreen Passcode**
1. Go to **[Settings]** > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**], enter [**Lockscreen Passcode**], click [**Turn on Passcode**].
2. You'll be prompted to enter a 6-digit numeric code. If you want to use other passcode types, Click**Other Encryption Methods.**

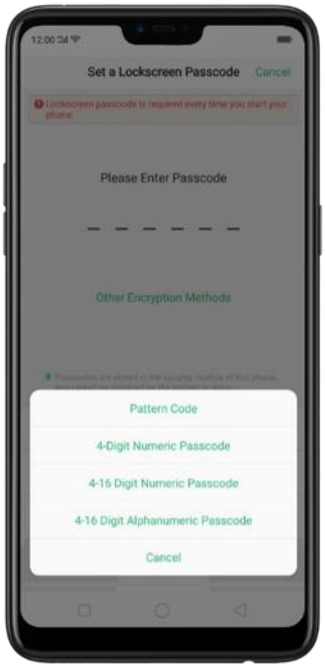

12:00
Settings
Display & Brightness
Homescreen & Lockscreen Magazine
Sound & Vibration
Quiet Time
Face & Passcode
Smart & Convenient
Security
Battery
Language & Region
Additional Settings
Software Updates
About Phone
Accounts and Sync
12:00
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
PASSCODE
Lockscreen Passcode ON
Privacy Passcode OFF
PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS
Fingerprint NOT ENROLLED
Face NOT ENROLLED
12:00
Set a Lockscreen Passcode
Cancel
Please Enter Passcode
Other Encryption Methods
1
2 ABC
3 DEF
4 GHI
5 JKL
6 MNO
7 PQRS
8 TUV
9 WXYZ
0

Lockscreen passcode is required every time you start your phone.

Passcodes are stored in the security module of this phone, and cannot be obtained by the system or apps.

3. Choose from four types of passcodes:

- **Pattern Code**: Allows you to draw a pattern with at least four dots connected.
- **4-Digit Numeric Passcode:** Allows you to set a numbers-only passcode that contains four characters.
- **4-16 Digit Numeric Passcode:** Allows you to set a numbers-only passcode that contains four to sixteen characters.
- **4-16 Digit Alphanumeric Passcode:** Allows you to set a passcode that contains four to sixteen numbers and/or letters as your preference.


12:00
Set a Lockscreen Passcode
Cancel
Please Enter Passcode
Other Encryption Methods
Pattern Code
4-Digit Numeric Passcode
4-16 Digit Numeric Passcode
4-16 Digit Alphanumeric Passcode
Cancel

Lockscreen passcode is required every time you start your phone.

4. Draw your pattern or enter your passcode.

5. Re-draw or re-enter your pattern or passcode to confirm it and activate it.

## Change the passcode

1. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Face & Passcode]**, click [**Modify Passcode**].

**2.** Draw or enter your current pattern or passcode.
Draw or enter your new pattern or passcode. If you want to use other passcode types, click **Other Encryption Methods.** at the bottom of the screen.
Re-draw or re-enter your pattern or passcode to confirm it and activate it.

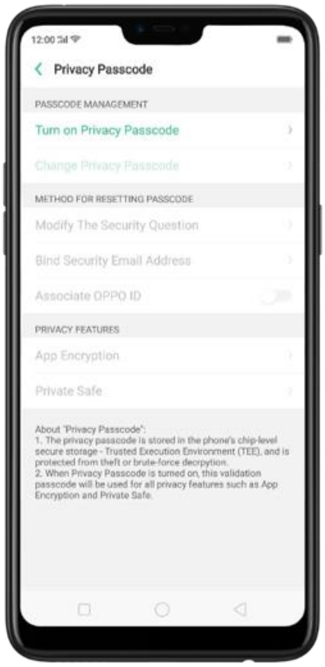
## Turn off the passcode

1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Face & Passcode**], click [**Turn off Passcode**].
2. Draw or enter your current pattern or passcode to confirm.
View more details in **Set and use a passcode with your OPPO smartphone.**

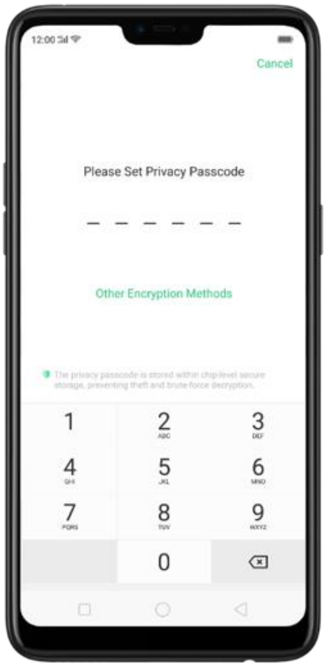
## Privacy Passcode

When this is turned on, the validation will be used for all privacy features such as App Encryption and Private Safe.

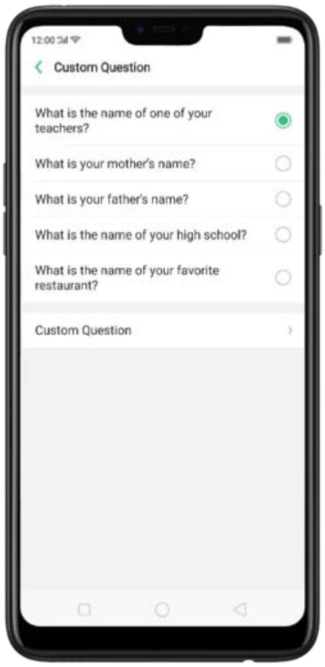
**1. Manage Privacy Passcode:** Go to **[Settings**] > **[Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**] > [**Privacy Passcode**] create an encryption code, then set or customize a security question, then click **Done**.
**Note**: The security question can be used to reset the passcode.


12:00
Privacy Passcode
PASSCODE MANAGEMENT
Turn on Privacy Passcode
Change Privacy Passcode
METHOD FOR RESETTING PASSCODE
Modify The Security Question
Bind Security Email Address
Associate OPPO ID
PRIVACY FEATURES
App Encryption
Private Safe

About "Privacy Passcode":
1. The privacy passcode is stored in the phone's chip-level secure storage - Trusted Execution Environment (TEE), and is protected from theft or brute-force decryption.
2. When Privacy Passcode is turned on, this validation passcode will be used for all privacy features such as App Encryption and Private Safe.


12:00
Cancel
Please Set Privacy Passcode
Other Encryption Methods
1
2 ABC
3 DEF
4 GHI
5 JKL
6 MNO
7 PQRS
8 TUV
9 WXYZ
0

The privacy passcode is stored within chip-level secure storage, preventing theft and brute-force decryption.


12:00
Custom Question

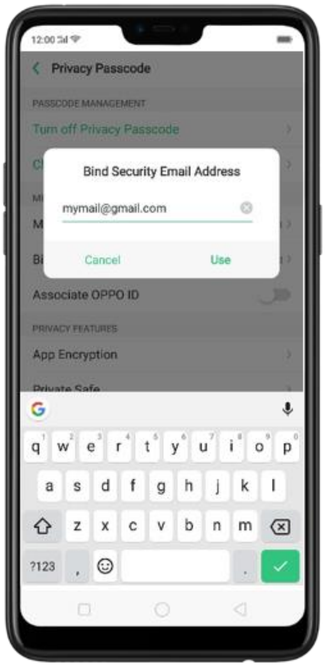
What is the name of one of your teachers? ●
What is your mother's name? ○
What is your father's name? ○
What is the name of your high school? ○
What is the name of your favorite restaurant? ○
Custom Question

**2. Change or turn off privacy passcodes:** Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**] > [**Privacy Passcode**] enter the encryption code then click [**Turn off Privacy Passcode**] or [**Change Privacy Passcode**].

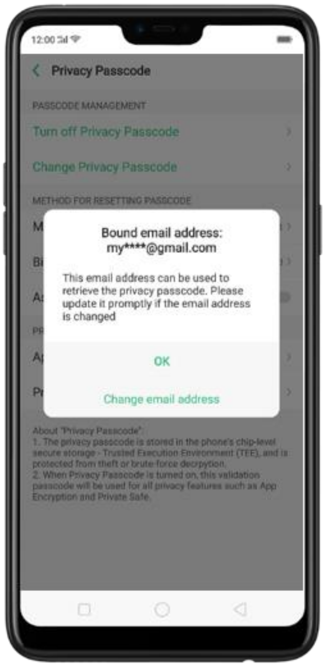
**3. Modify the security questions:** Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**] > [**Privacy Passcode**] enter the encryption code click [**Modify the Security Questions**] enter the encryption code again then set or customize a new security question, click **Done**.

**4. Bind security email address: The email used will be able to retrieve the privacy passcode:** Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**] > [**Privacy Passcode**] enter the encryption code click [**Bind Security Email Address**] enter the encryption code again then enter email address, click **Use**.

**5. Update bind security email address:** Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**] enter the encryption code click [**Bind Security Email Address**] click **Change Email Address** then enter the encryption code again, enter the new email address, click **Use**.



12:00
Privacy Passcode
PASSCODE MANAGEMENT
Turn off Privacy Passcode
Bind Security Email Address
mymail@gmail.com
Cancel
Use
Associate OPPO ID
PRIVACY FEATURES
App Encryption
Private Safe



12:00
Privacy Passcode
PASSCODE MANAGEMENT
Turn off Privacy Passcode
Change Privacy Passcode
METHOD FOR RESETTING PASSCODE
OK
Change email address

Bound email address:
my****@gmail.com

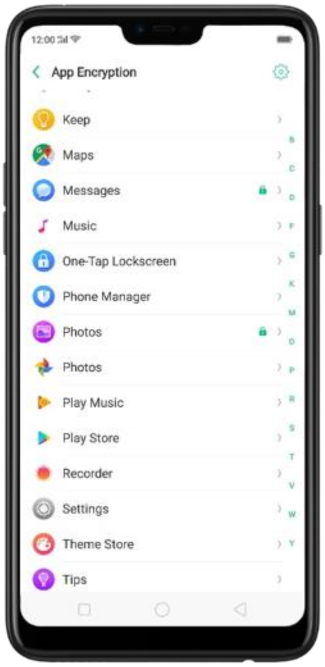
This email address can be used to retrieve the privacy passcode. Please update it promptly if the email address is changed

About "Privacy Passcode":
1. The privacy passcode is stored in the phone's chip-level secure storage - Trusted Execution Environment (TEE), and is protected from theft or brute-force decrpytion.
2. When Privacy Passcode is turned on, this validation passcode will be used for all privacy features such as App Encryption and Private Safe.

## Associate OPPO ID

1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**] > [**Privacy Passcode**] enter the encryption code toggle [Associate OPPO ID] Register or Sign in with your OPPO ID credentials.

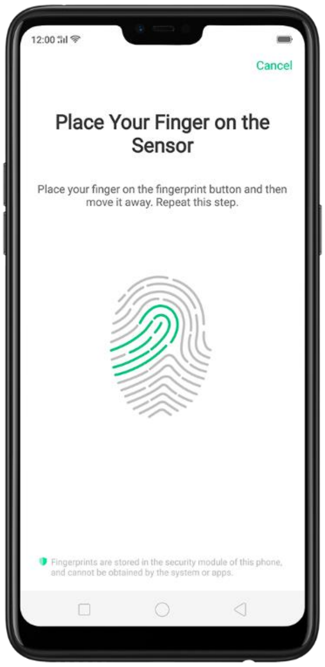
2. App Encryption: Go to [Settings] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode** > [**Privacy Passcode**] enter the encryption code click [App Encryption] select the apps to be encrypted then press **Enable Encryption**. Once it is encrypted, you will see a padlock symbol on the app that has been encrypted. Also, see App Lock.


12:00
App Encryption
Keep
Maps
Messages
Music
One-Tap Lockscreen
Phone Manager
Photos
Photos
Play Music
Play Store
Recorder
Settings
Theme Store
Tips

**Note:** You have to enter an encrypted passcode and a security question before you can use the other functions on Privacy Passcode.

**Use a fingerprint on your OPPO phone**
Before you can add a fingerprint, you need to create a passcode for your OPPO phone. You can use fingerprints for:

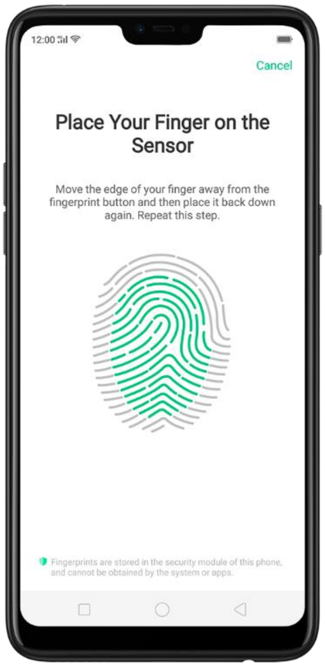
**Unlocking the phone from the lock screen.**
1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**], click [**Add a Fingerprint**].
2. Follow the on-screen instructions, placing your finger gently on the Home button until your fingerprint is recorded.



Place Your Finger on the Sensor

Place your finger on the fingerprint button and then move it away. Repeat this step.

Fingerprints are stored in the security module of this phone, and cannot be obtained by the system or apps.



Place Your Finger on the Sensor

Move the edge of your finger away from the fingerprint button and then place it back down again. Repeat this step.

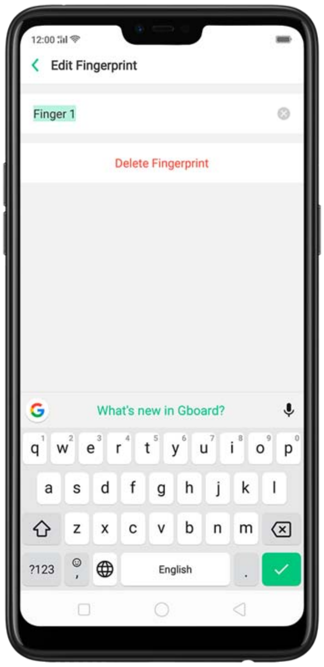
Fingerprints are stored in the security module of this phone, and cannot be obtained by the system or apps.

Repeat step 1 and 2 for as many fingers as you like.

Delete or Rename a fingerprint

1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**], click the fingerprint you've added.

2, Enter a name for your fingerprint or click [**Delete Fingerprint**].


12:00
Edit Fingerprint
Delete Fingerprint
What's new in Gboard?
English
?123

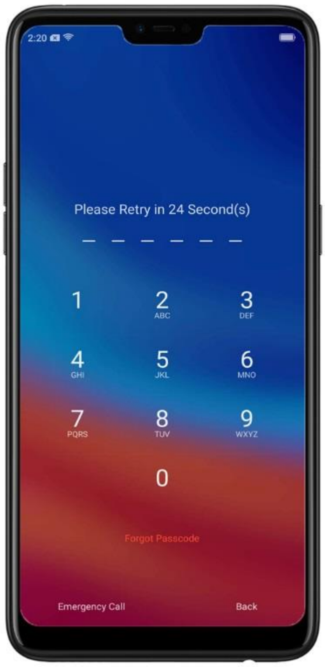
Finger 1

## Reset Passcode methods

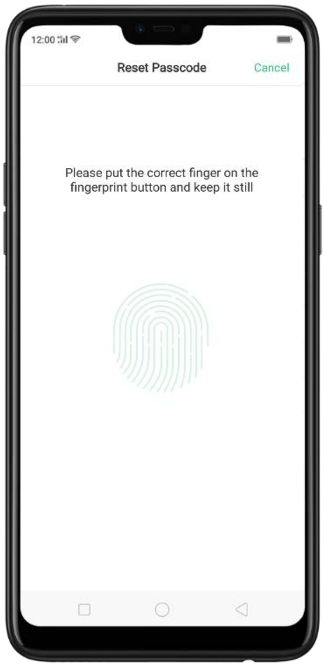
### Use fingerprint to reset passcode

Before you can use the reset feature, you must add at least one fingerprint to your phone and enabled Fingerprint Unlock.

1. Just click on Forgot Passcode at anytime, and put the correct finger on the fingerprint button.


2:20
1
2 ABC
3 DEF
4 GHI
5 JKL
6 MNO
7 PQRS
8 TUV
9 WXYZ
0
Forgot Passcode
Emergency Call
Back

Please Retry in 24 Second(s)

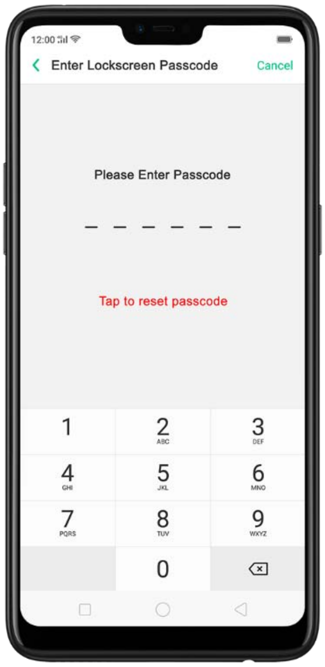

12:00
Reset Passcode
Cancel

Please put the correct finger on the fingerprint button and keep it still

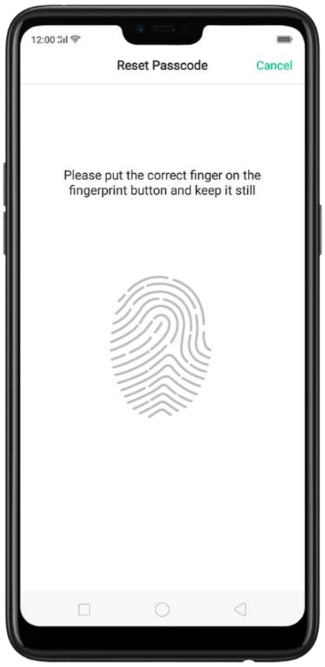
## Reset passcode with fingerprint when the phone is unlocked.

When your phone is unlocked, you can change the lock screen password directly from the Settings page.

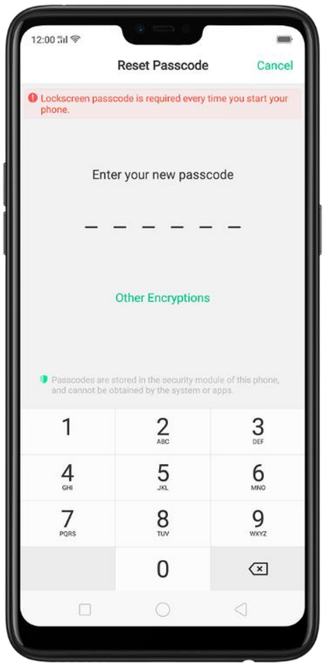
1. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Fingerprint, Face & Passcode]**, enter the wrong password five times, then your phone will temporarily restrict you from entering the passcode again and ask you to wait 30 seconds.
2. When the waiting period is up, click **Tap to reset passcode**.


12:00
Enter Lockscreen Passcode
Cancel
Please Enter Passcode
Tap to reset passcode
1
2 ABC
3 DEF
4 GHI
5 JKL
6 MNO
7 PQRS
8 TUV
9 WXYZ
0

1. Place your finger on the fingerprint sensor, then enter your new passcode and confirm it.


12:00
Reset Passcode
Cancel

Please put the correct finger on the fingerprint button and keep it still


12:00
Reset Passcode
Cancel

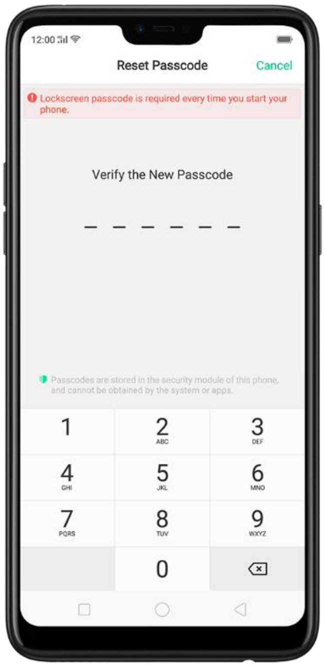
Lockscreen passcode is required every time you start your phone.

Enter your new passcode

Other Encryptions

Passcodes are stored in the security module of this phone, and cannot be obtained by the system or apps.

1
2 ABC
3 DEF
4 GHI
5 JKL
6 MNO
7 PQRS
8 TUV
9 WXYZ
0


12:00
Reset Passcode
Cancel

Lockscreen passcode is required every time you start your phone.

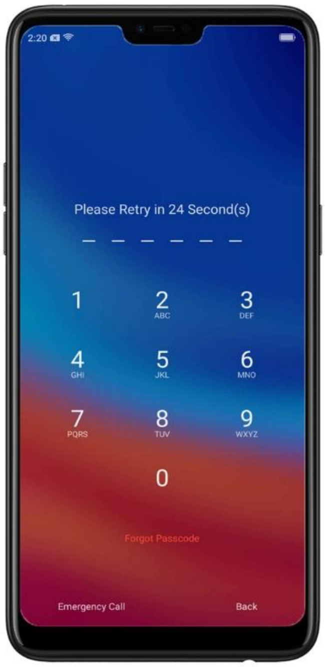
Verify the New Passcode

Passcodes are stored in the security module of this phone, and cannot be obtained by the system or apps.

1
2 ABC
3 DEF
4 GHI
5 JKL
6 MNO
7 PQRS
8 TUV
9 WXYZ
0

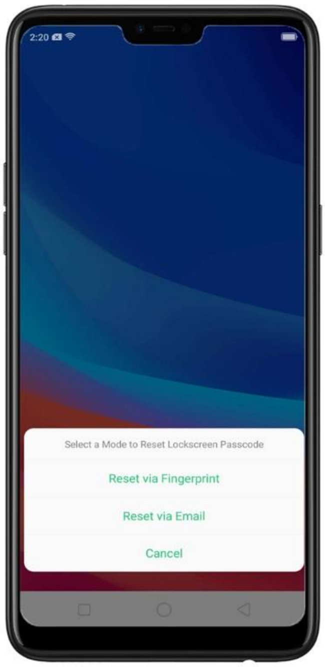
## Reset password via Fingerprint or via Email

1. Enter the wrong password five times, then your phone will temporarily restrict you from entering the passcode again and ask you to wait 30 seconds then click **Forgot Password**. You will given options to either reset using fingerprint or thru the email that you have bounded on the phone.


2:20

Please Retry in 24 Second(s)

1
2 ABC
3 DEF
4 GHI
5 JKL
6 MNO
7 PQRS
8 TUV
9 WXYZ
0
Forgot Passcode
Emergency Call
Back

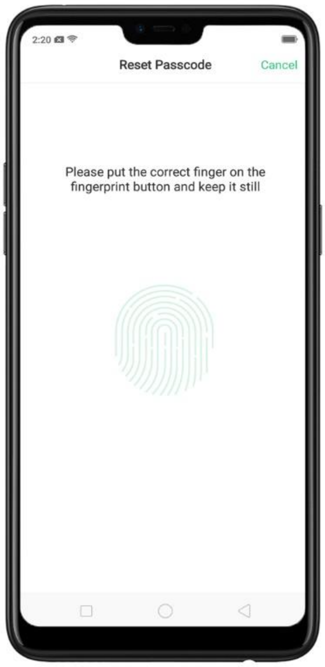

2:20

Select a Mode to Reset Lockscreen Passcode

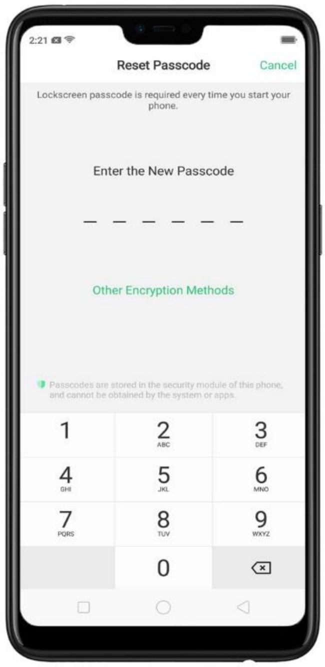
Reset via Fingerprint
Reset via Email
Cancel

## Reset password via fingerprint

Place your finger on the fingerprint sensor, then enter your new passcode and confirm it.


2:20
Reset Passcode
Cancel

Please put the correct finger on the fingerprint button and keep it still


2:21
Reset Passcode
Cancel

Lockscreen passcode is required every time you start your phone.

Enter the New Passcode

Other Encryption Methods

Passcodes are stored in the security module of this phone, and cannot be obtained by the system or apps.

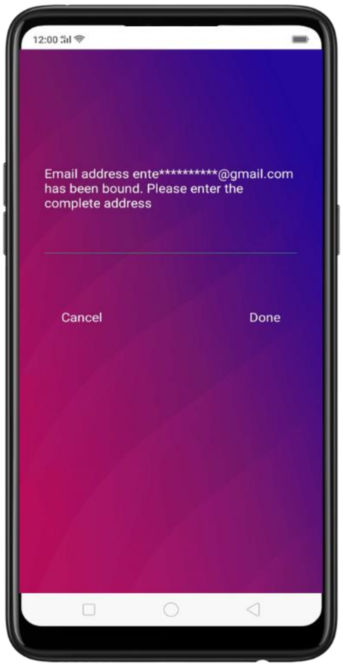
1
2 ABC
3 DEF
4 GHI
5 JKL
6 MNO
7 PQRS
8 TUV
9 WXYZ
0

## Reset password with bind security email address

When you have forgotten your lockscreen passcode and you also haven't enrolled face recognition or for some reason ,it did not work, you can still reset the password as long as you have bounded your security email address at the initial phase of password creation. See bind security email address.

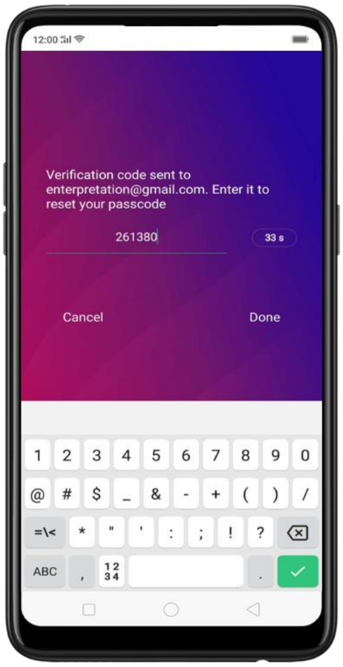
How to reset password using bind email:

1.Enter the email address that you have bounded on the phone, then enter the verification code that was sent thru your email, click **Done**. Now you can set a new lockscreen passcode for your phone.



Email address ente**********@gmail.com has been bound. Please enter the complete address

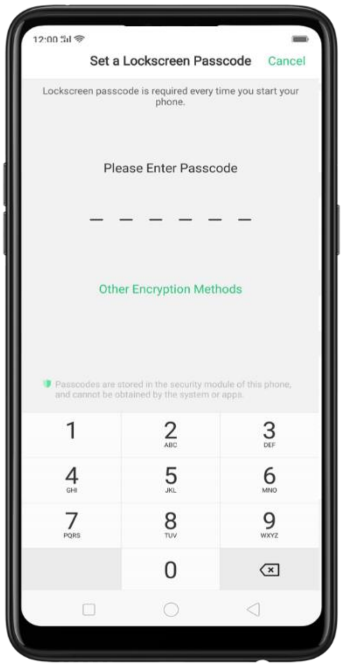
12:00
Cancel
Done



Verification code sent to enterpretation@gmail.com. Enter it to reset your passcode

261380

12:00
33 s
Cancel
Done
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0
@ # $ _ & - + ( ) /
=\< * " ' : ; ! ?
ABC , 12 34 .



Set a Lockscreen Passcode

Lockscreen passcode is required every time you start your phone.

Please Enter Passcode

Passcodes are stored in the security module of this phone, and cannot be obtained by the system or apps.

12:00
Cancel
Other Encryption Methods
1
2 ABC
3 DEF
4 GHI
5 JKL
6 MNO
7 PQRS
8 TUV
9 WXYZ
0

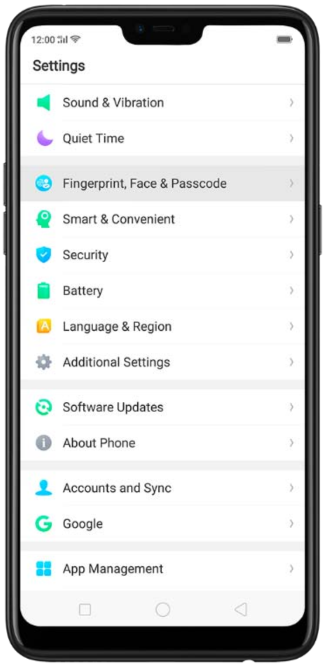
## Enroll a Face on your OPPO phone

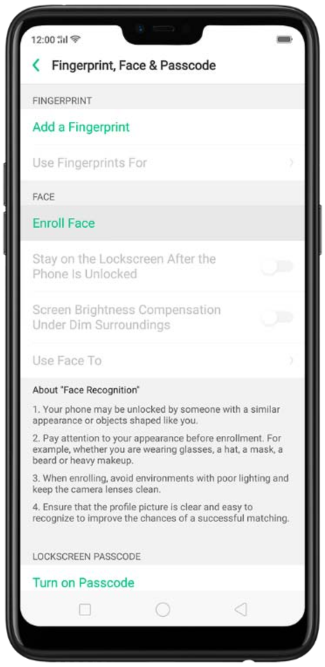
Before you can add a face you need to create a passcode for your OPPO phone. You can use face for:

- Unlocking the phone from the lock screen.
- Encrypting apps
- Protecting files

## Enroll a face

1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**], click [**Enroll Face**].

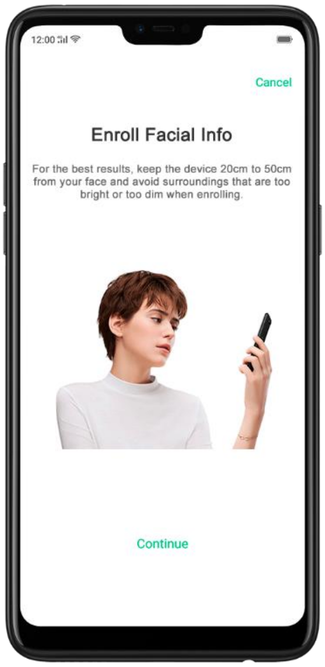

12:00
Settings
Sound & Vibration
Quiet Time
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
Smart & Convenient
Security
Battery
Language & Region
Additional Settings
Software Updates
About Phone
Accounts and Sync
Google
App Management


12:00
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
FINGERPRINT
Add a Fingerprint
Use Fingerprints For
FACE
Enroll Face
Stay on the Lockscreen After the Phone Is Unlocked
Screen Brightness Compensation Under Dim Surroundings
Use Face To

About "Face Recognition"

1. Your phone may be unlocked by someone with a similar appearance or objects shaped like you.
2. Pay attention to your appearance before enrollment. For example, whether you are wearing glasses, a hat, a mask, a beard or heavy makeup.
3. When enrolling, avoid environments with poor lighting and keep the camera lenses clean.
4. Ensure that the profile picture is clear and easy to recognize to improve the chances of a successful matching.

LOCKSCREEN PASSCODE
Turn on Passcode

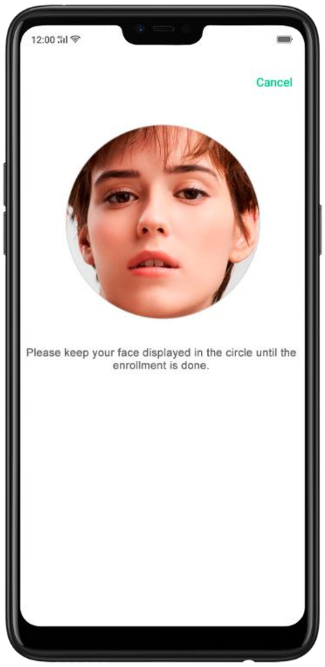

12:00
Cancel

Enroll Facial Info

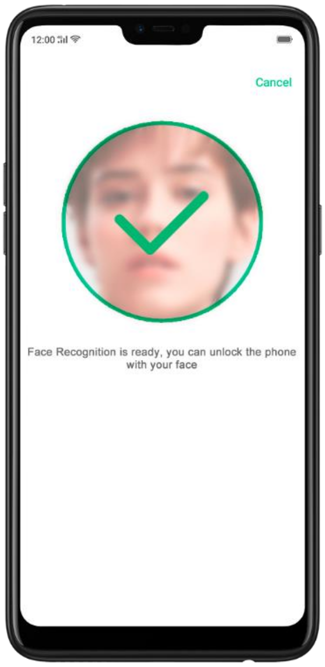
For the best results, keep the device 20cm to 50cm from your face and avoid surroundings that are too bright or too dim when enrolling.

Continue

2. Follow the on-screen instructions. To get the ideal effect, keep the phone 20-50cm away from your face and position your whole face in the circle until the enrollment is done. Avoid very bright or dim environment when enrolling your face.


12:00
Cancel

Please keep your face displayed in the circle until the enrollment is done.


12:00
Cancel

Face Recognition is ready, you can unlock the phone with your face

### Delete Enrolled Faces

Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**], click [**Delete Enrolled Face**s]. Use Face for screen unlocking, App Lock and File Safe. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face & Passcode**] > [**Use Face to**], then turn on the features you want to use.

View more details in Add and use a fingerprint on your OPPO Smartphone.

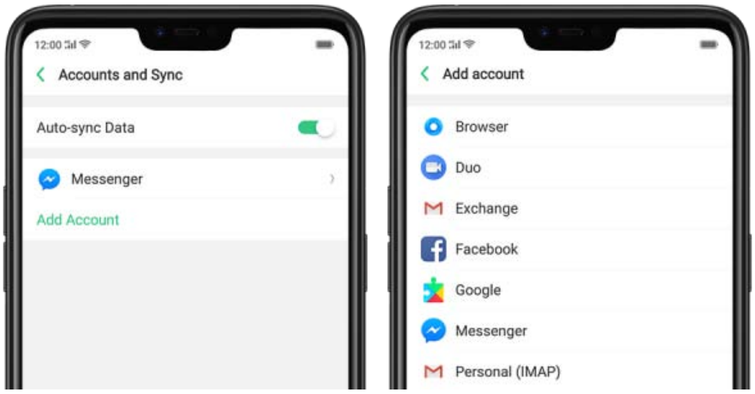
**Note:** Not all phone's running on ColorOS 5.1 supports fingerprint. It still depends on the design of the phone.

## 3.2.2. Set up other mail and calendar accounts

In addition to the apps that come with your phone, if you want to use other mail and calendar apps, add the accounts to your phone to let the apps associated with those accounts sync with your phone.

**Set up an account.** Go to **[Settings]** > **[Accounts and Sync]**, then click **[Add Account]**.

Repeat the steps for as many accounts as you like.

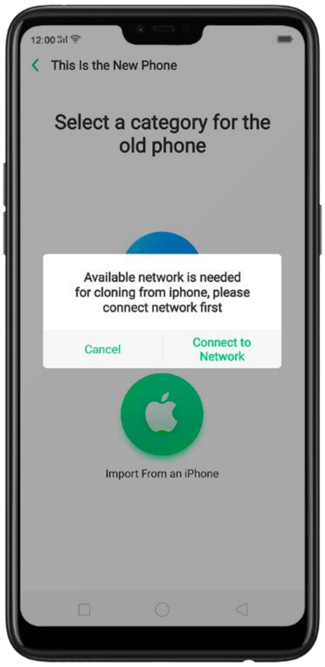

12:00
Accounts and Sync
Auto-sync Data
Messenger
Add Account
12:00
Add account
Browser
Duo
Exchange
Facebook
Google
Messenger
Personal (IMAP)

## 3.2.3. Transfer data from the old phone to OPPO smartphone

You can transfer over all of your data - with no risk or loss of quality, using **Clone Phone**. With **Clone Phone**, you don't need to leave any of your data behind with your previous device. Take it all with you in three easy steps:

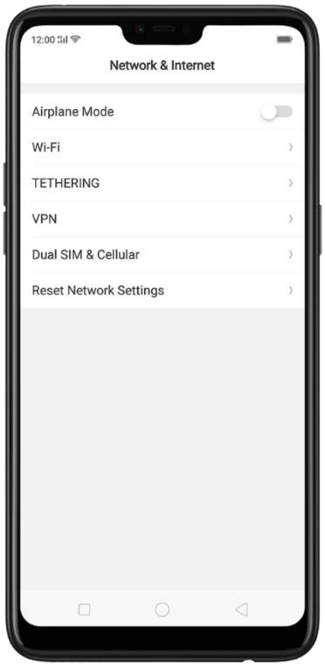
## From an iPhone to an OPPO Phone

1. On your OPPO Phone, go to **[Tools]** > **[Clone Phone]**, then select "This is the new phone" and "Import From an iPhone". Connect your phone to the Internet when promoted.

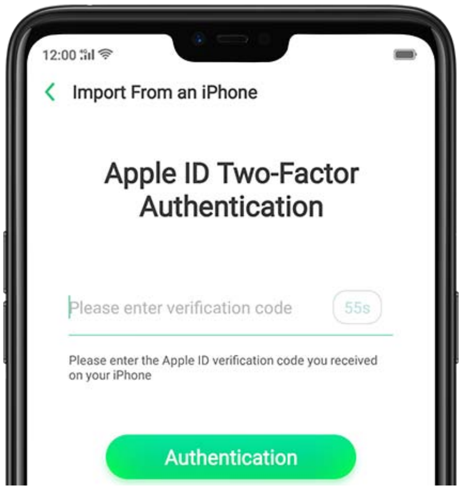

12:00
This Is the New Phone
Cancel
Connect to Network
Import From an iPhone

Select a category for the old phone

Available network is needed for cloning from iphone, please connect network first


12:00
Network & Internet
Airplane Mode
Wi-Fi
TETHERING
VPN
Dual SIM & Cellular
Reset Network Settings

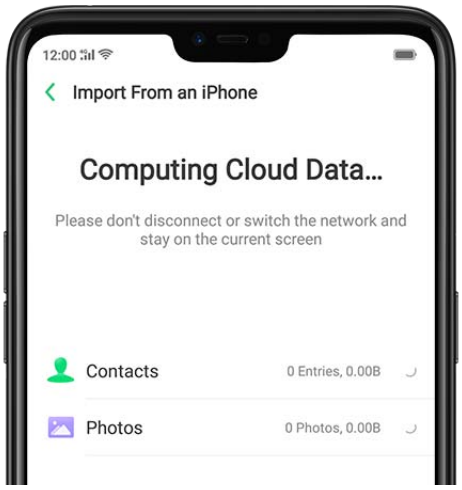
2. Sign in the iCloud account of your old iPhone. Enter the Apple ID verification code you received on your iPhone or in the SMS and start computing cloud data.


12:00
Import From an iPhone
55s
Authentication

Apple ID Two-Factor Authentication

Please enter verification code

Please enter the Apple ID verification code you received on your iPhone


12:00
Import From an iPhone

Computing Cloud Data...

Please don't disconnect or switch the network and stay on the current screen

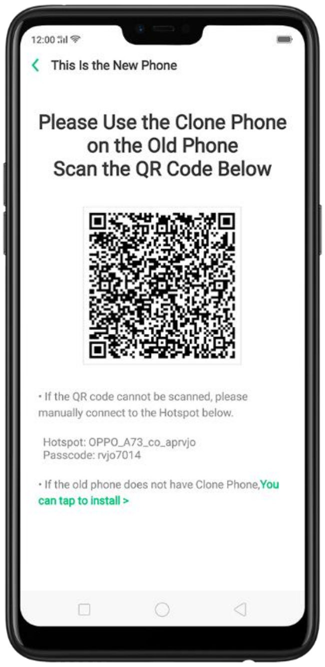
Contacts 0 Entries, 0.00B

Photos 0 Photos, 0.00B

## From an Android Phone to an OPPO Phone

1. On your OPPO phone, go to **[Tools]** > **[Clone Phone],** then select "This is the new phone" and "Import from an Android Phone".

2. On your old phone, click **[Clone Phone] from the Home screen,** select "This is the old phone" and scan the QR Code generated by the new phone to start cloning.

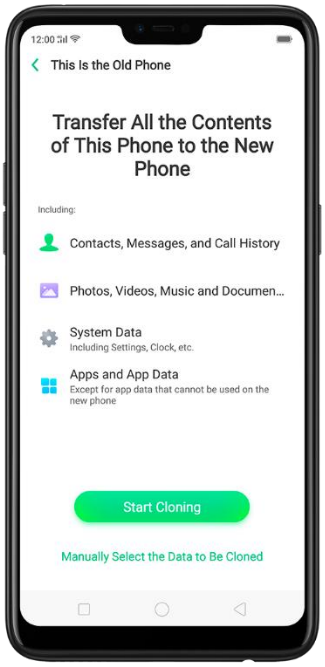


Please Use the Clone Phone on the Old Phone
Scan the QR Code Below

• If the QR code cannot be scanned, please manually connect to the Hotspot below.

Hotspot: OPPO_A73_co_aprvjo
Passcode: rvjo7014

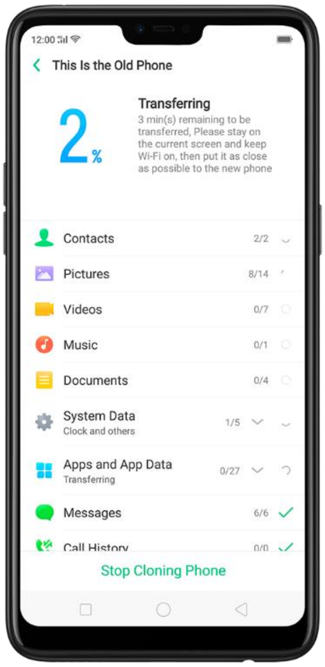
• If the old phone does not have Clone Phone,You can tap to install >



Transfer All the Contents of This Phone to the New Phone

Including:

- Contacts, Messages, and Call History
- Photos, Videos, Music and Documen...
- System Data
  Including Settings, Clock, etc.
- Apps and App Data
  Except for app data that cannot be used on the new phone



Transferring
3 min(s) remaining to be transferred, Please stay on the current screen and keep Wi-Fi on, then put it as close as possible to the new phone

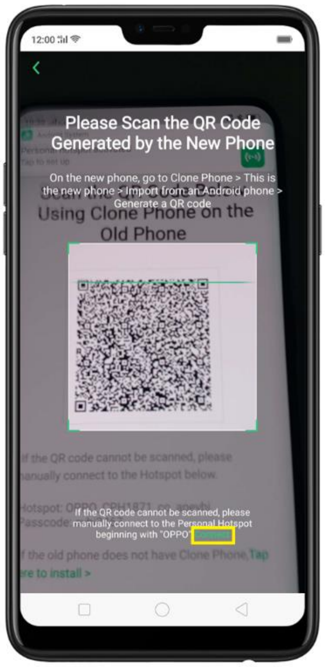
| | |
|---|---|
| Contacts | 2/2 |
| Pictures | 8/14 |
| Videos | 0/7 |
| Music | 0/1 |
| Documents | 0/4 |
| System Data<br>Clock and others | 1/5 |
| Apps and App Data<br>Transferring | 0/27 |
| Messages | 6/6 ✓ |
| Call History | 0/0 ✓ |

You can also select the data (Personal Data, System Data, Applications, Storage Data) to be cloned by clicking **"Manually Select the Data to be Cloned**."

3. Enter the lock screen password to continue.

## If the QR code cannot be scanned

If scanning QR won't work, you may manually connect to a hotspot and transfer data still. To do this, open Clone Phone app on both phones then click "**Connect**", you'll notice that a pop-up will SAY "Personal Hotspot Activated", click on it and find the Hotspot name on the Wi-Fi setting and enter the password then you can start transferring files.

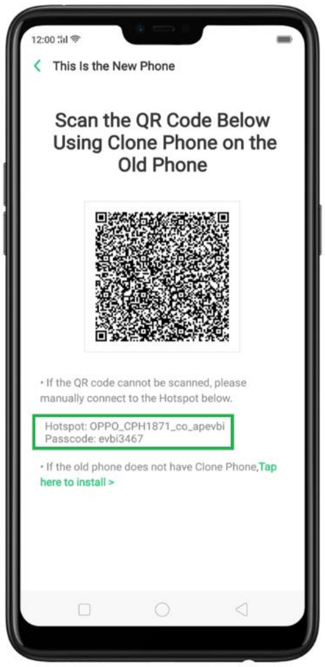


12:00

Please Scan the QR Code Generated by the New Phone

On the new phone, go to Clone Phone > This is the new phone > Import from an Android phone > Generate a QR code

If the QR code cannot be scanned, please manually connect to the Personal Hotspot beginning with "OPPO"



12:00

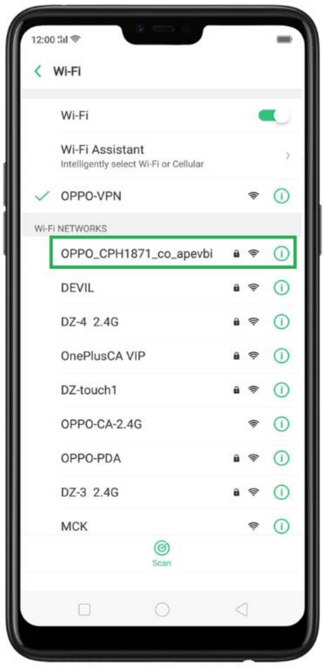
This Is the New Phone

Scan the QR Code Below Using Clone Phone on the Old Phone

- If the QR code cannot be scanned, please manually connect to the Hotspot below.

Hotspot: OPPO_CPH1871_co_apevbi
Passcode: evbi3467

- If the old phone does not have Clone Phone,Tap here to install >

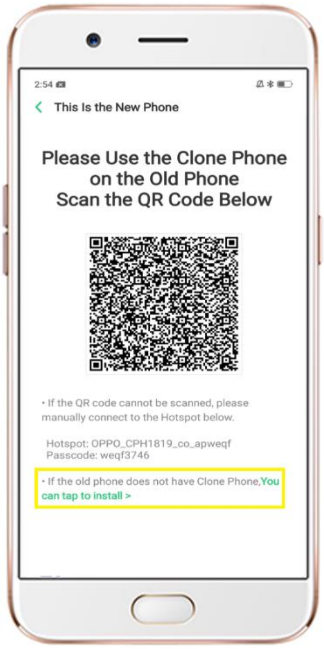


12:00

Wi-Fi
Wi-Fi
Wi-Fi Assistant
Intelligently select Wi-Fi or Cellular
OPPO-VPN
Wi-Fi NETWORKS
OPPO_CPH1871_co_apevbi
DEVIL
DZ-4 2.4G
OnePlusCA VIP
DZ-touch1
OPPO-CA-2.4G
OPPO-PDA
DZ-3 2.4G
MCK
Scan

## If old phone doesn't have a Clone phone

1. Click **You can tap to install>** and it will direct you to a web browser or open a browser from your phone and go to the website: **i.clonephone.coloros.com/download**. (**Note:** this only works when you open it using your mobile phone. This will not open on your computer).



2:54

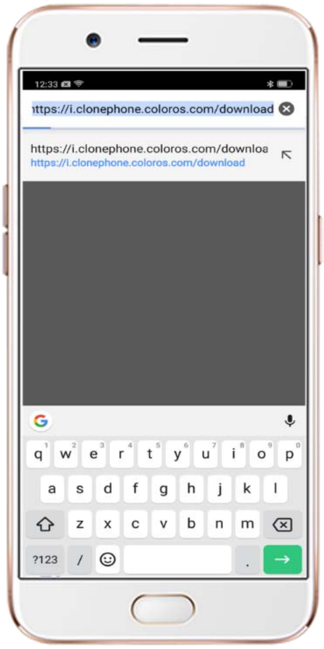
This Is the New Phone

Please Use the Clone Phone on the Old Phone Scan the QR Code Below

- If the QR code cannot be scanned, please manually connect to the Hotspot below.

Hotspot: OPPO_CPH1819_co_apweqf
Passcode: weqf3746

- If the old phone does not have Clone Phone,You can tap to install >



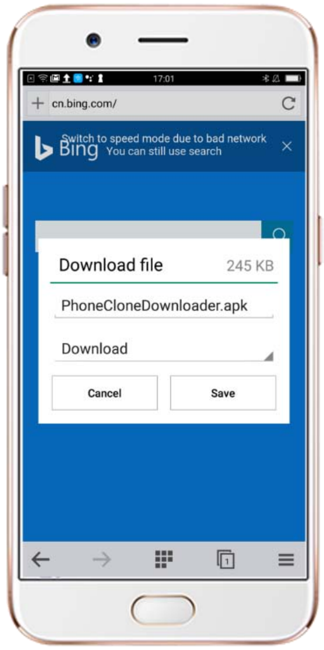
12:33

https://i.clonephone.coloros.com/download

https://i.clonephone.coloros.com/downloa
https://i.clonephone.coloros.com/download

q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
?123

2. Once you have entered the link above, it will prompt you to download the Clone Phone downloader APK file under the Download folder. You may change the folder path if you wish just click "**Change the directory**"   then Click "Save".



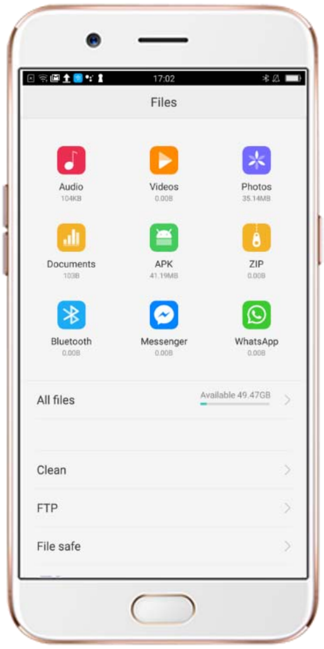
Download file 245 KB

PhoneCloneDownloader.apk

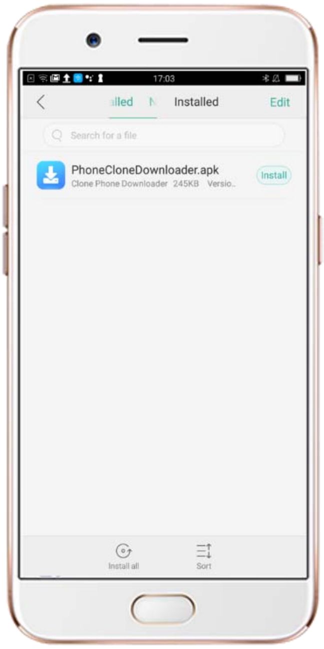
Download

17:01
cn.bing.com/
Bing
Switch to speed mode due to bad network
You can still use search
Cancel
Save

3. Once download is done. On your home screen, go to the notification panel for the downloaded file or go to Files/File Manager and click “APK” folder or whichever folder you chose to save the file.  Tap on “PhoneCloneDownloaded.apk” file then click on “**Install**”.



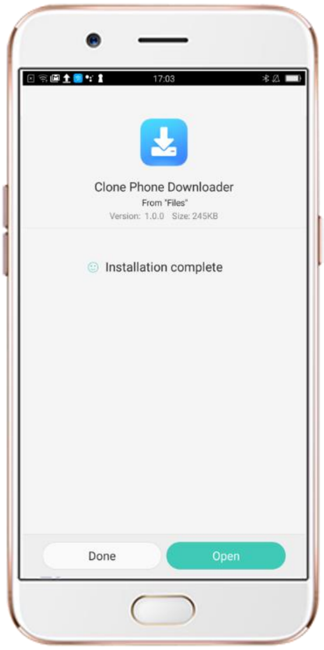
17:02
Files
Audio
104KB
Videos
0.00B
Photos
35.14MB
Documents
103B
APK
41.19MB
ZIP
0.00B
Bluetooth
0.00B
Messenger
0.00B
WhatsApp
0.00B
All files
Available 49.47GB
Clean
FTP
File safe



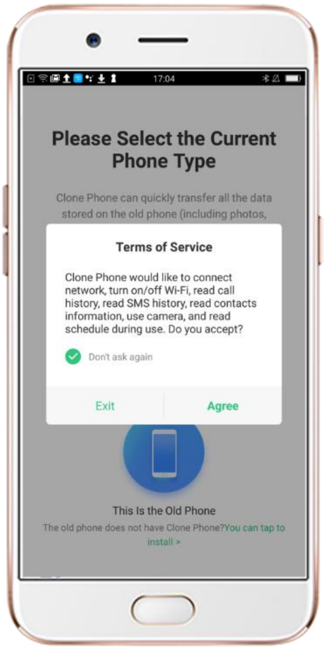
PhoneCloneDownloader.apk
Clone Phone Downloader 245KB Versio...

17:03
Installed
Edit
Search for a file
Install
Install all
Sort

4. After installation has been completed, click “**Done**” and you can now start to transfer files.


17:03
Clone Phone Downloader
From "Files"
Version: 1.0.0 Size: 245KB
Done
Open

Installation complete


17:04
Exit
Agree
This Is the Old Phone

Please Select the Current Phone Type

Clone Phone can quickly transfer all the data stored on the old phone (including photos,

Terms of Service

Clone Phone would like to connect network, turn on/off Wi-Fi, read call history, read SMS history, read contacts information, use camera, and read schedule during use. Do you accept?

✓ Don't ask again

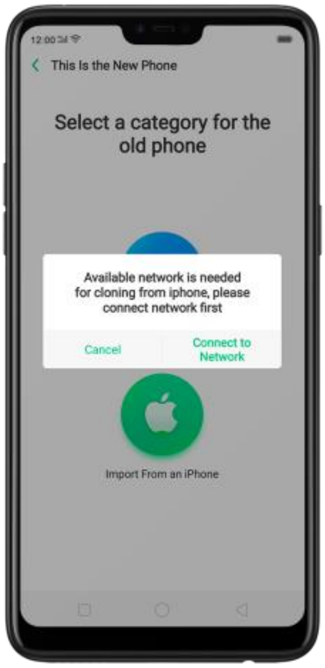
The old phone does not have Clone Phone?You can tap to install >

**Note:** The duration of the Clone Phone process depends on how big the data you are going to transfer. Please patiently wait before it is completely transferred.

## 3.2.4. Date and Time

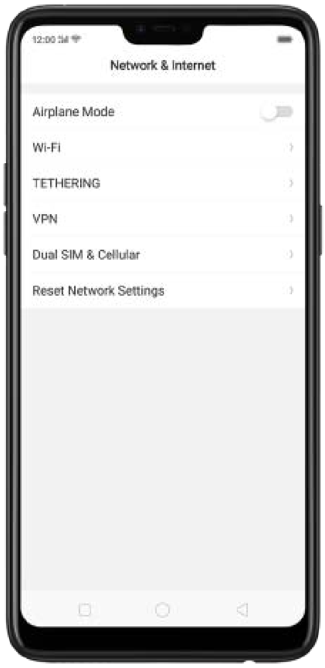
Knowing the time and date is crucial to keeping on schedule. If you want to set the date and time display on your OPPO phone, or if you're out of synch or need a time update, just start with step 1 as below.

1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Additional Settings**] > [**Date & Time**], click it.


12:00
This Is the New Phone
Cancel
Connect to Network
Import From an iPhone

Select a category for the old phone

Available network is needed for cloning from iphone, please connect network first


12:00
Network & Internet
Airplane Mode
Wi-Fi
TETHERING
VPN
Dual SIM & Cellular
Reset Network Settings

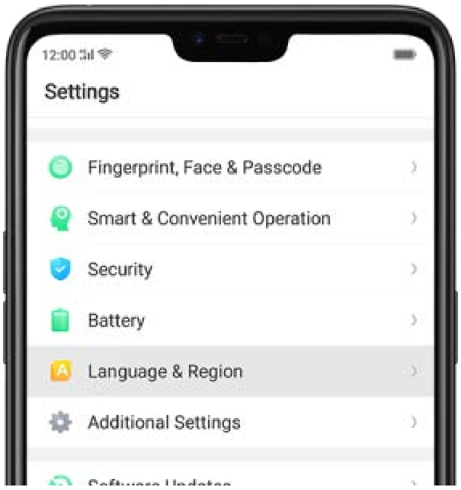
2. **24- Hour Format.** Switch from 12-hour or a 24-hour format optionally.
3. **Automatically Set Date and Time.** Enable [**Automatically Set Date and Time**] if you want to use the data given by your network provider or your GPS, or you can set the time yourself if you prefer. See step 4.
4. **Set Manually.** You can manually set the time and date. To do so, disable [**Automatically Set Date and Time**], and then:
   - Select your time zone. Click [**Time Zone**] and select the location you would like to adjust your time to.
   - Change the date and time. You will see the date and time appear under the current time zone. Drag your finger across each column to change the date and time. Scroll wheels will appear to allow you to change the date and time simultaneously.

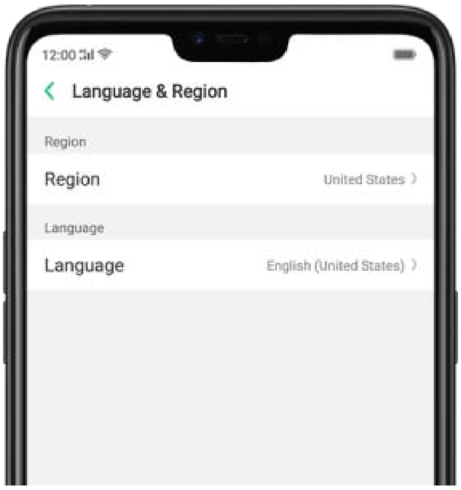
View more details in Set up date and time on your OPPO smartphone.

### 3.2.5. Language and Region

OPPO smartphone offers you an easy access to configure it to display information in another language. If you want to change its language to yours, or if you've relocated to a new country, you can change language and region by following a few easy steps.

1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Language & Region**], click it.


12:00
Settings
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
Smart & Convenient Operation
Security
Battery
Language & Region
Additional Settings
Software Updates


12:00
Language & Region

Region

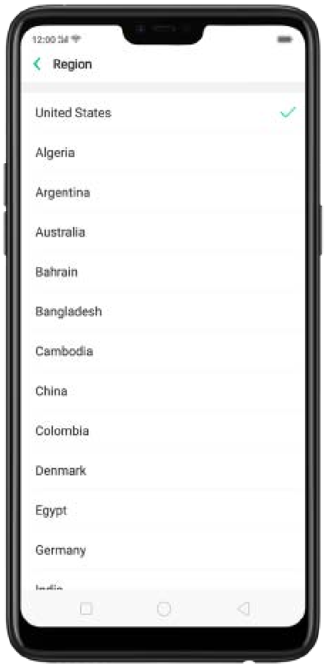
Region United States

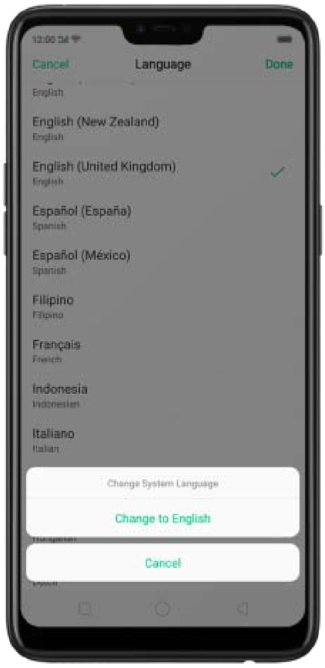
Language

Language English (United States)

2. Find your desired region. Click Region and change the region you want to use.
3. Find your desired language.

- Click [**Language**], you will see a list of languages. Scroll down to find the language you wish to use.
- Select your desired language and click "Done." A confirmation message will appear at the bottom of your screen. Confirm the change by clicking "Change to _____." Then your OPPO phone will be in the new desired language.


12:00
Region
United States ✓
Algeria
Argentina
Australia
Bahrain
Bangladesh
Cambodia
China
Colombia
Denmark
Egypt
Germany
India


12:00
Cancel
Language
Done
English
English (New Zealand)
English
English (United Kingdom) ✓
English
Español (España)
Spanish
Español (México)
Spanish
Filipino
Filipino
Français
French
Indonesia
Indonesian
Italiano
Italian
Change System Language
Change to English
Cancel

### 3.2.6. Connect to the Internet

OPPO smartphone connects to the Internet whenever necessary, using a Wi-Fi connection or mobile network.

**Wi-Fi connection**

1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Wi-Fi**], or swipe down from the top of your screen to open Control Center, then tap 🛜. The detected Wi-Fi networks will be displayed.

2. Tap the Wi-Fi network you want to connect to.

3. Fill in the password if required.

**Mobile data connection**

Go to [**Settings**] > [**Dual SIM & Cellular**] and enable [**Mobile Data**], or swipe down from the top of your screen to open Control Center, then tap 🌐.

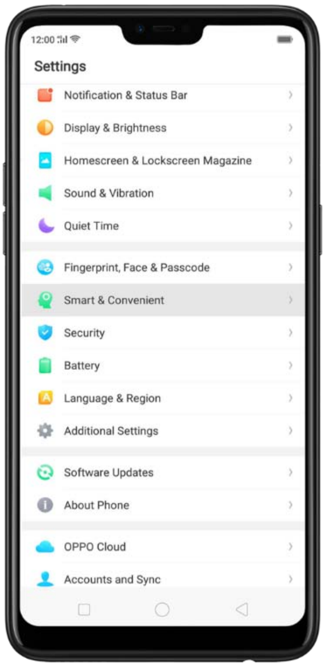
Notice: Enabling the mobile networks connection may result in extra cost. Check with your mobile network service carrier.

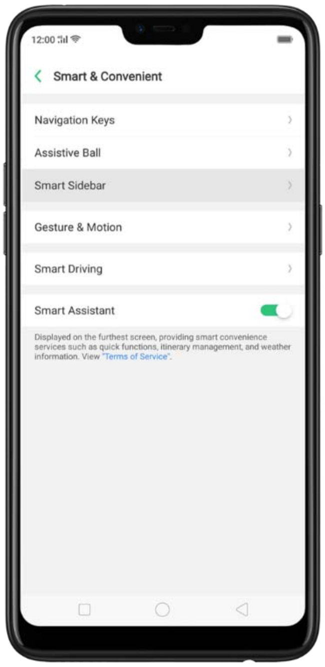
# 4. What's new in ColorOS 5.2

## 4.1. Smart Sidebar

The new It's multitasking at its best, where you'll have quick access with your favorite apps and tools. This enables to switch between apps, transfer files, reply messages, or take screenshots when playing a game or watching a video.

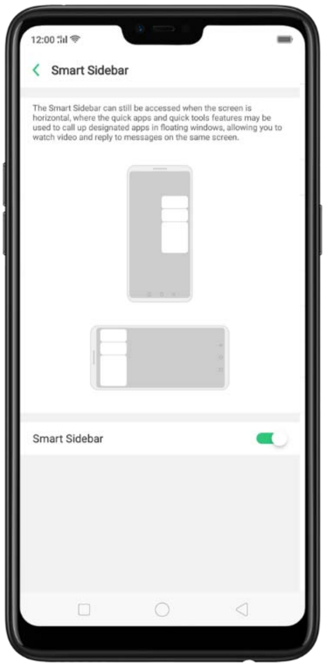
To enable Smart Sidebar, go to [**Settings**] > [**Smart & Convenient**] > [**Smart Sidebar**] > toggle [**Smart Sidebar**] to green to enable.


12:00
Settings
Notification & Status Bar
Display & Brightness
Homescreen & Lockscreen Magazine
Sound & Vibration
Quiet Time
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
Smart & Convenient
Security
Battery
Language & Region
Additional Settings
Software Updates
About Phone
OPPO Cloud
Accounts and Sync


12:00
Smart & Convenient
Navigation Keys
Assistive Ball
Smart Sidebar
Gesture & Motion
Smart Driving

Smart Assistant ●

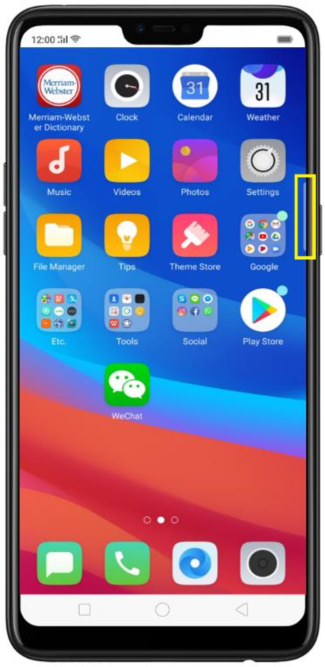
Displayed on the furthest screen, providing smart convenience services such as quick functions, itinerary management, and weather information. View "Terms of Service".

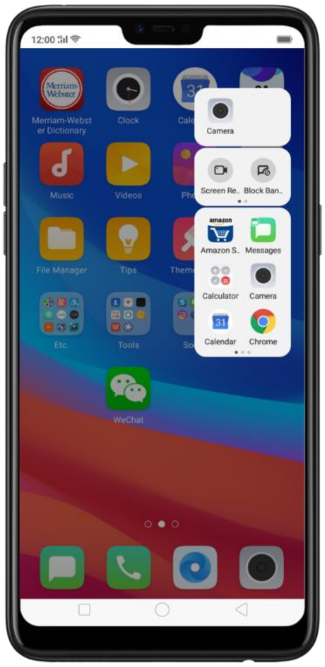

12:00
Smart Sidebar

The Smart Sidebar can still be accessed when the screen is horizontal, where the quick apps and quick tools features may be used to call up designated apps in floating windows, allowing you to watch video and reply to messages on the same screen.

Smart Sidebar ●

Once enabled, you'll be able to see a white vertical line on the side right side of your phone. Slightly swipe it to the left and the Smart Sidebar will show.

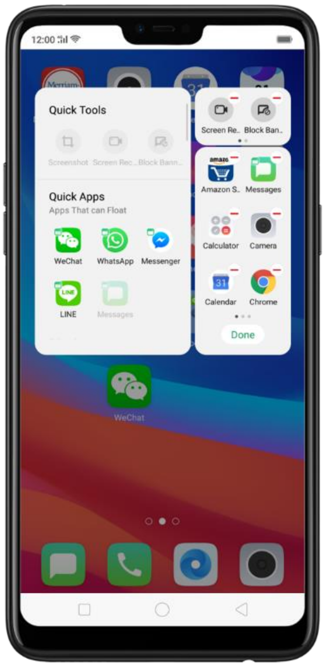

12:00
Merriam-Webster Dictionary
Clock
Calendar
Weather
Music
Videos
Photos
Settings
File Manager
Tips
Theme Store
Google
Etc.
Tools
Social
Play Store
WeChat


12:00
Merriam-Webster Dictionary
Clock
Videos
File Manager
Tips
Etc
Tools
WeChat
Camera
Screen Re..
Block Ban..
Amazon S..
Messages
Calculator
Camera
Calendar
Chrome

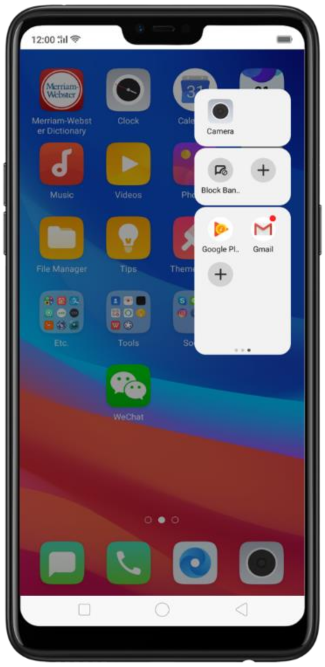
Once enabled, you'll be able to see a white vertical line on the side right side of your phone. Slightly swipe it to the left and the Smart Sidebar will show.

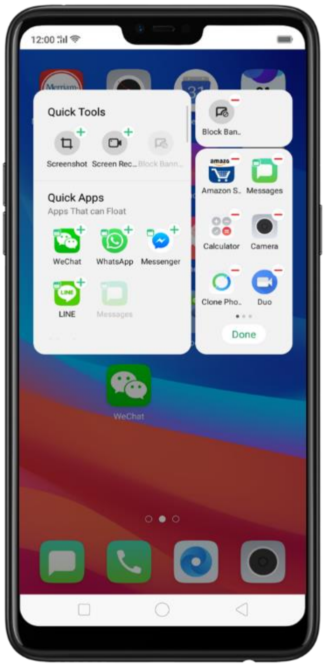
## Managing Smart Sidebar

1. If the Smart Sidebar is full, long press the Quick tools or the Quick Apps area for you to be able to manage or edit what will show on your Smart Sidebar. (**Note**: Long pressing the camera area will not work since you can't add anything here)


12:00
Quick Tools
Screenshot
Screen Rec..
Block Bann..
Quick Apps
Apps That can Float
WeChat
WhatsApp
Messenger
LINE
Messages
Screen Re..
Block Ban..
Amazon S..
Messages
Calculator
Camera
Calendar
Chrome
Done
WeChat

2. If the Smart Sidebar is not full, click on + to add tools or apps then click each one of them. You can click **Done** or just click anywhere on the home screen for changes to be made.

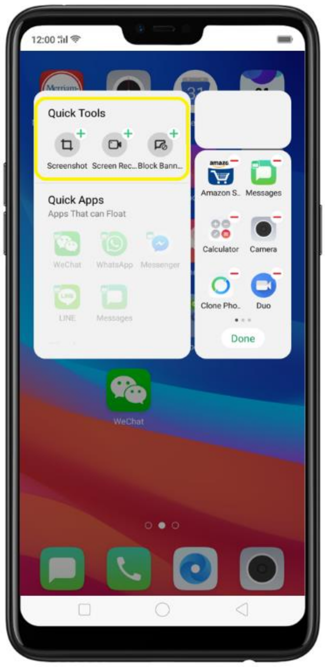

12:00
Merriam-Webster Dictionary
Clock
Music
Videos
File Manager
Tips
Etc
Tools
Camera
Block Ban..
+
Google Pl..
Gmail
+
WeChat


12:00
Quick Tools
Screenshot
Screen Rec..
Block Bann..
Quick Apps
Apps That can Float
WeChat
WhatsApp
Messenger
LINE
Messages
Block Ban..
Amazon S..
Messages
Calculator
Camera
Clone Pho..
Duo
Done
WeChat

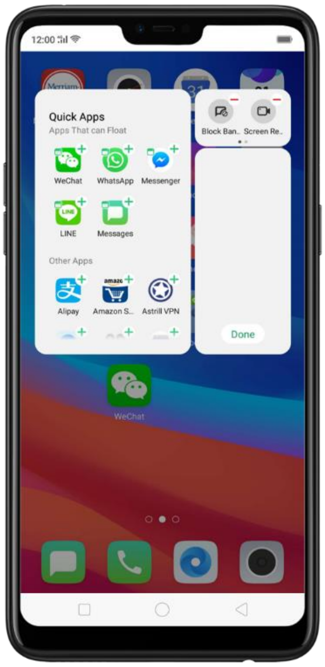
The tools and apps available for Smart Sidebar

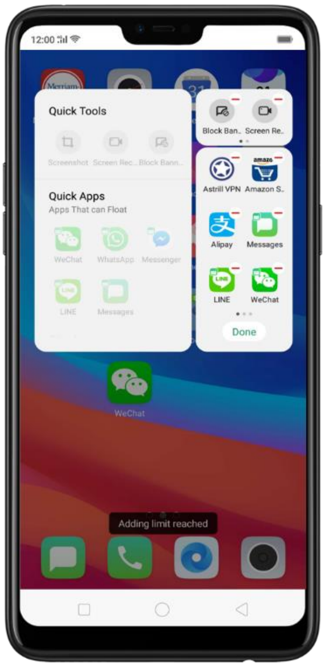
1. **Quick tools.** There are 3 available slots and tools to choose from. You can add them all or just choose the one you like to show.

- Screenshot
- Screen Recording
- Block Banners

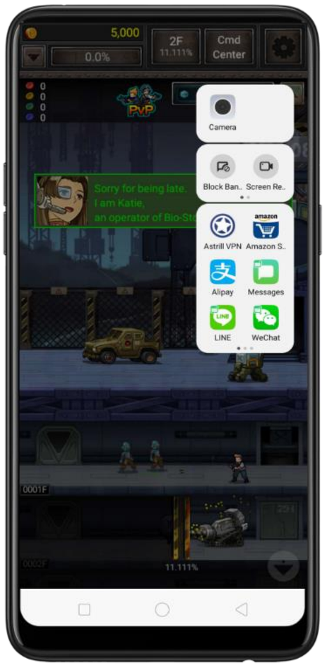

12:00
Quick Tools
Screenshot
Screen Rec...
Block Bann...
Quick Apps
Apps That can Float
WeChat
WhatsApp
Messenger
LINE
Messages
Amazon S..
Messages
Calculator
Camera
Clone Pho..
Duo
Done
WeChat

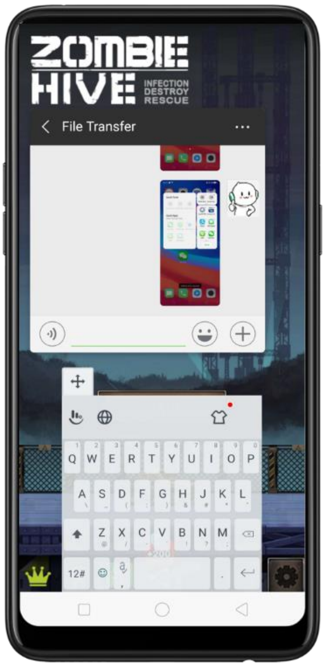
2. **Quick Apps.** Quick apps has been divided into two: Apps that can float and other apps. As long as the app supports the floating feature then it will show on the floating apps. Other apps will show all apps that are on your phone. However, you can only add 18 apps on the Smart Sidebar. You will be notified “Adding limit reached” if Quick Apps slot is full. Choose the one that you frequently use.

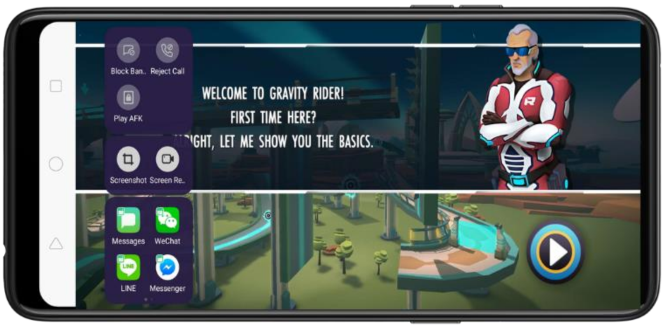

12:00
Quick Apps
Apps That can Float
WeChat
WhatsApp
Messenger
LINE
Messages
Other Apps
Alipay
Amazon S..
Astrill VPN
Block Ban..
Screen Re..
Done
WeChat

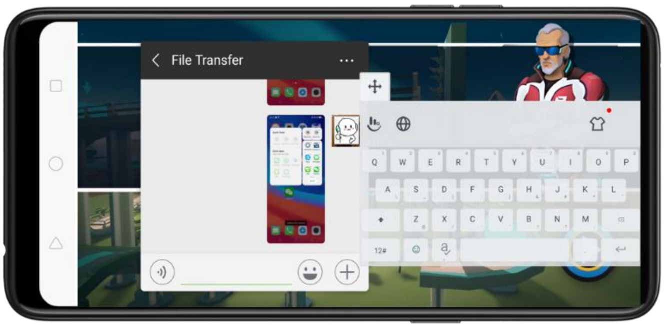

12:00
Quick Tools
Screenshot
Screen Rec..
Block Bann..
Quick Apps
Apps That can Float
WeChat
WhatsApp
Messenger
LINE
Messages
Block Ban..
Screen Re..
Astrill VPN
Amazon S..
Alipay
Messages
LINE
WeChat
Done
WeChat
Adding limit reached

**Smart game sidebar.** Enjoy your games and at the same time check and reply messages or posts on your social media. Never be left behind even when enjoying your games.


5,000
0.0%
2F
11.111%
Cmd
Center
PvP
Sorry for being late.
I am Katie,
an operator of Bio-St
Camera
Block Ban..
Screen Re..
Astrill VPN
Amazon S..
Alipay
Messages
LINE
WeChat
11.111%


ZOMBIE
HIVE
INFECTION
DESTROY
RESCUE
File Transfer

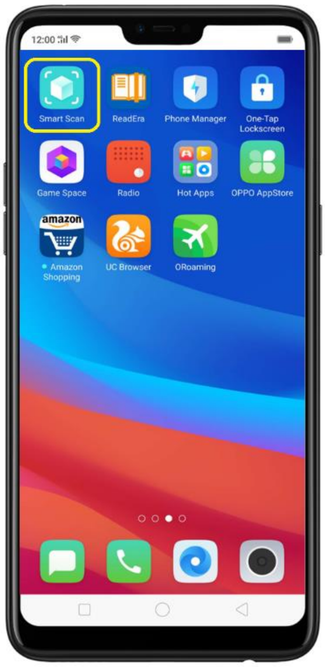

Block Ban..
Reject Call
Play AFK
Screenshot
Screen Re..
Messages
WeChat
LINE
Messenger
WELCOME TO GRAVITY RIDER!
FIRST TIME HERE?
IGHT, LET ME SHOW YOU THE BASICS.

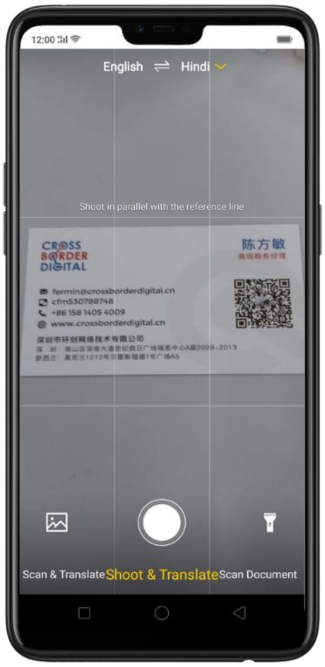

File Transfer
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M
12#

## 4.2 Smart Scan

There are more things you can do with your camera apart from taking pictures and selfies. One snap and have languages translated in an instant. Scan business cards and have all information saved on your contacts**.**

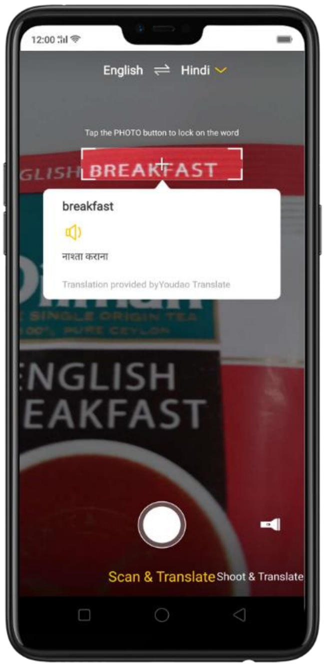
You can quickly use the Smart Scan by going to the [**home screen**] and click on [**Smart Scan**] to launch the app.

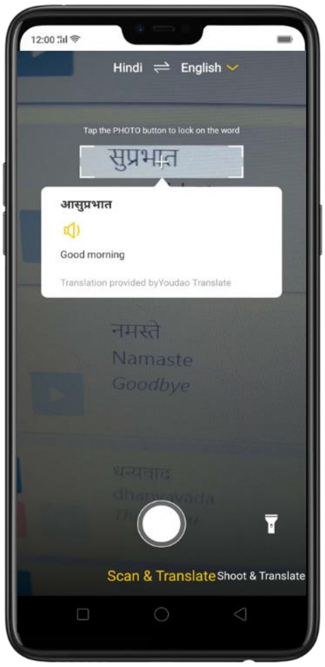

12:00
Smart Scan
ReadEra
Phone Manager
One-Tap Lockscreen
Game Space
Radio
Hot Apps
OPPO AppStore
Amazon Shopping
UC Browser
ORoaming


12:00
English ⇌ Hindi
Shoot in parallel with the reference line
Scan & Translate
Shoot & Translate
Scan Document

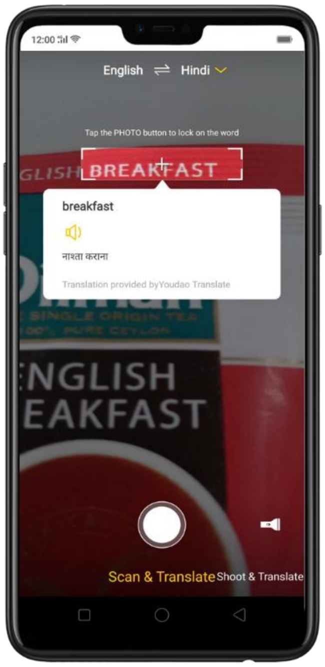
## Main features of Smart Scan

- **Scan & Translate** – This only available for English to Hindi and vice versa. Pan your finger at the bottom and choose "**Scan & Translate**". You can translate each word or phrases as long as it will fit on the frame that's provided. You can listen to the pronunciation by clicking 🔈.


12:00
English ⇌ Hindi
Tap the PHOTO button to lock on the word
BREAKFAST
breakfast
नाश्ता कराना
Translation provided by Youdao Translate
Scan & Translate
Shoot & Translate


12:00
Hindi ⇌ English
Tap the PHOTO button to lock on the word
सुप्रभात
आसुप्रभात
Good morning
Translation provided by Youdao Translate
नमस्ते
Namaste
Goodbye
धन्यवाद
Scan & Translate
Shoot & Translate

You can also lock the word so it won’t read other words/phrases. Click ○ and you will be able to lock and unlock word or phrases. You will see a padlock in the center of the frame once a word is locked.

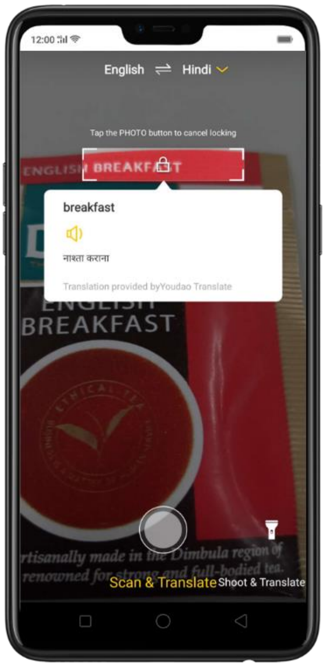

12:00
English ⇄ Hindi
BREAKFAST
Scan & Translate
Shoot & Translate

Tap the PHOTO button to lock on the word

breakfast

नाश्ता कराना

Translation provided byYoudao Translate


12:00
English ⇄ Hindi
BREAKFAST
Scan & Translate
Shoot & Translate

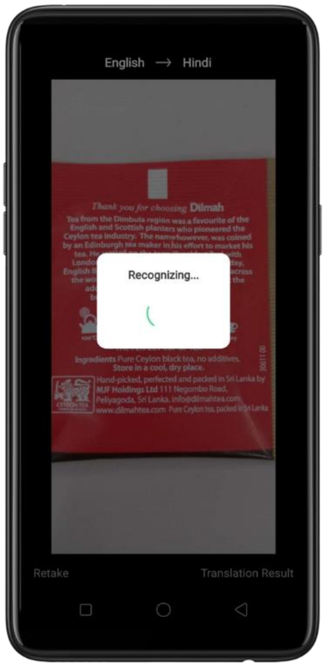
Tap the PHOTO button to cancel locking

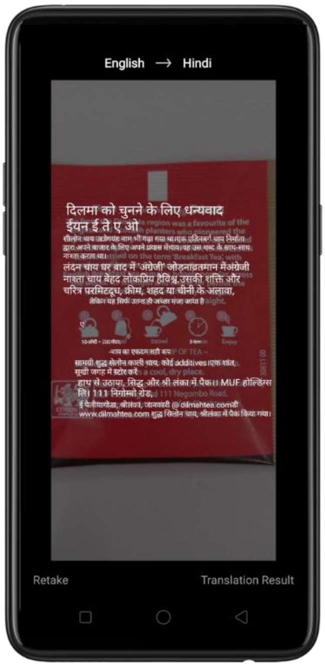
breakfast

नाश्ता कराना

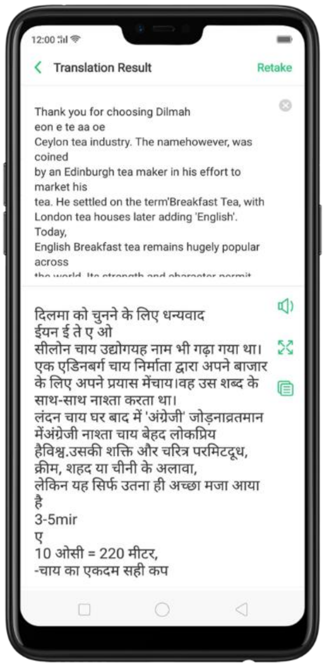
Translation provided byYoudao Translate

- **Shoot & Translate** – This only available for English to Hindi and vice versa. Pan your finger at the bottom and choose “**Shoot & Translate**”. Aim at anything that you would like to translate then click ○ and Smart Scan will start to recognize the texts. You can either **Retake** or see the **Translation Results**.


English → Hindi
Recognizing...
Retake
Translation Result


English → Hindi
Retake
Translation Result

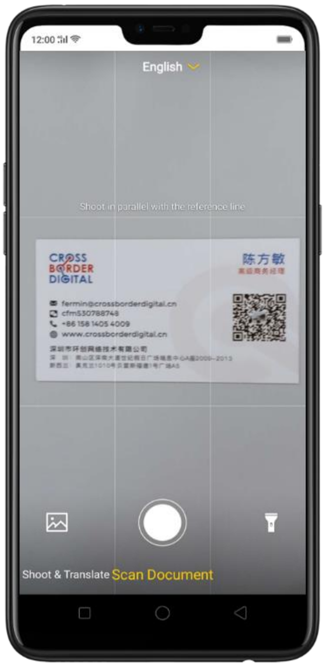
Once translation has been made, you can **Retake**, Listen (🔈), maximize the page (⛶), or copy the text (▤) if you want to.


12:00
Translation Result
Retake

Thank you for choosing Dilmah
eon e te aa oe
Ceylon tea industry. The namehowever, was coined
by an Edinburgh tea maker in his effort to market his
tea. He settled on the term'Breakfast Tea, with
London tea houses later adding 'English'.
Today,
English Breakfast tea remains hugely popular across

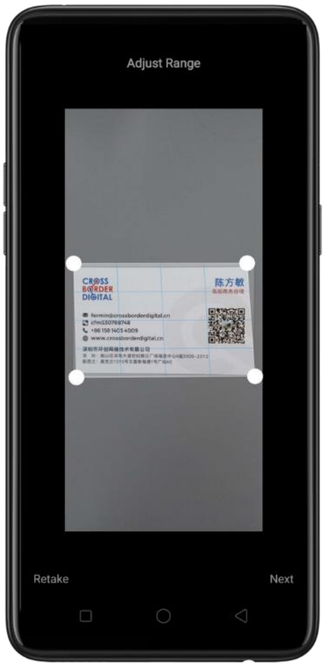
दिलमा को चुनने के लिए धन्यवाद
ईयन ई ते ए ओ
सीलोन चाय उद्योगयह नाम भी गढ़ा गया था।
एक एडिनबर्ग चाय निर्माता द्वारा अपने बाजार के लिए अपने प्रयास मेंचाय।वह उस शब्द के साथ-साथ नाश्ता करता था।
लंदन चाय घर बाद में 'अंग्रेजी' जोड़नाव्रतमान मेंअंग्रेजी नाश्ता चाय बेहद लोकप्रिय
हैविश्व.उसकी शक्ति और चरित्र परमिटदूध,
क्रीम, शहद या चीनी के अलावा,
लेकिन यह सिर्फ उतना ही अच्छा मजा आया है
3-5mir
ए
10 ओसी = 220 मीटर,
-चाय का एकदम सही कप

- **Scan document**. This can translate English, Japanese, Korean, French, Spanish, Italian, German, Hindi, and Chinese languages. Pan your finger at the bottom and choose "**Scan Document**". Choose the Language you want. Aim at anything that you would like to scan then click ○ to start the process.


12:00
English
Shoot in parallel with the reference line
Shoot & Translate
Scan Document

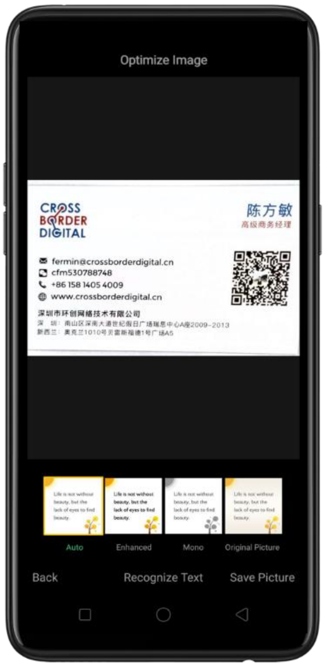
Once scanning is done you can do the following to the image:

**Adjust the range**. Using your finger/s, move the four circles on the side of the image.

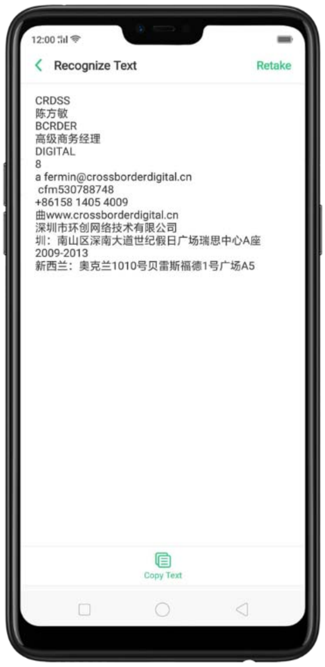

Adjust Range
Retake
Next

**Optimized Image**. You can choose from Auto, Enhanced, Mono, or the Original

Picture you've taken. Once done, click **Save Picture.**


Optimize Image
Auto
Enhanced
Mono
Original Picture
Back
Recognize Text
Save Picture

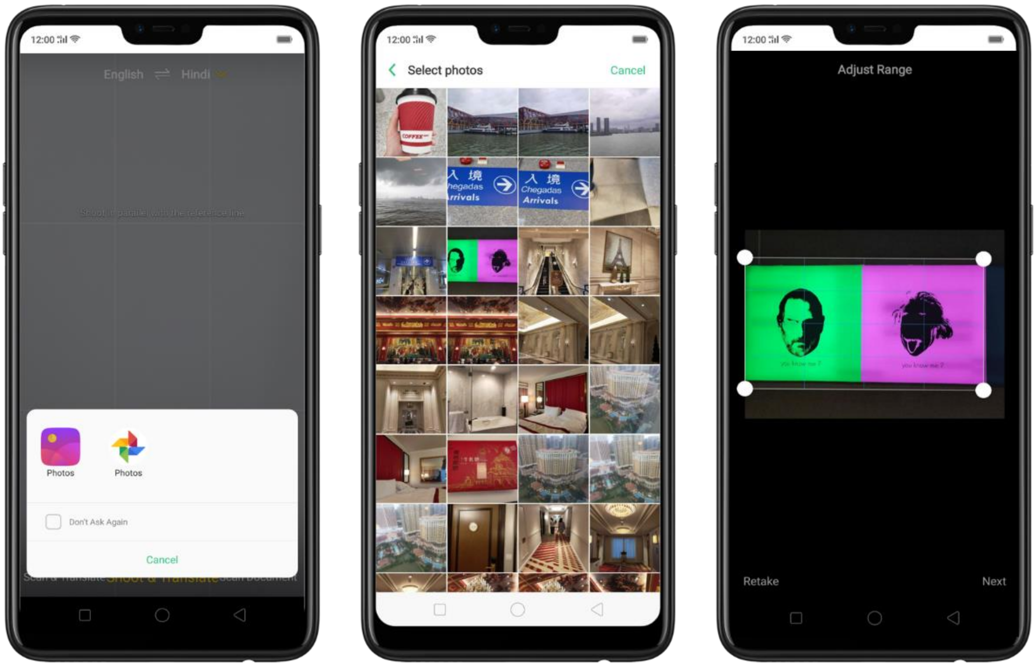
You may also Click **Recognize Text** if you want it translated. Click **Retake** if you want to scan again and click **Copy Text** if you want to paste the text someplace else.


12:00
Recognize Text
Retake
Copy Text

CRDSS
陈方敏
BCRDER
高级商务经理
DIGITAL
8
a fermin@crossborderdigital.cn
cfm530788748
+86158 1405 4009
曲www.crossborderdigital.cn
深圳市环创网络技术有限公司
圳：南山区深南大道世纪假日广场瑞思中心A座
2009-2013
新西兰：奥克兰1010号贝雷斯福德1号广场A5

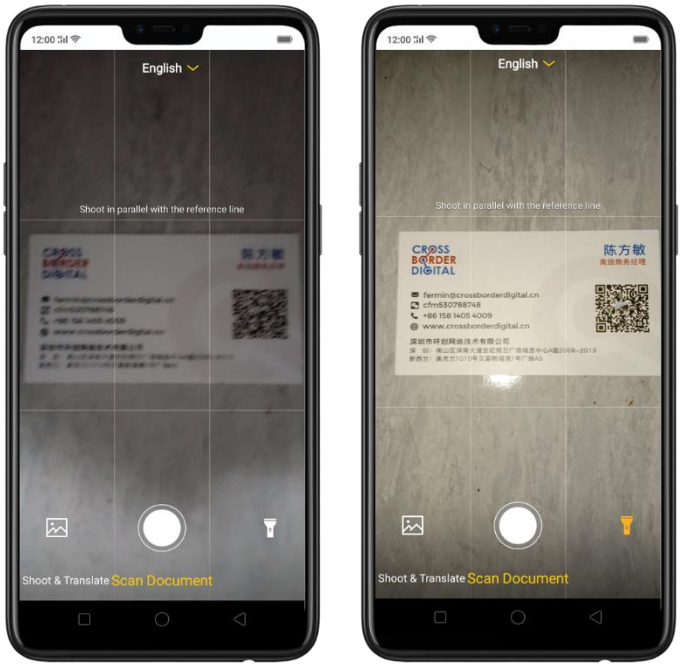
## Other features of Smart Scan

- **Smart scanning pictures on your phone.** You can do all the main features of Smart Scan on the photos that are already saved on your phone. Here's what you can do:
    1. Pan your finger at the bottom and choose if you want to **Shoot & Translate** or **Scan Document**. (Note: This feature is unavailable for **Scan & Translate**).
    2. Choose the language prior to opening the Photo apps.
    3. Click 🖼 and choose the Photo app you want to use.
    4. Choose an image you want to **Shoot & Translate** or **Scan Document**.


12:00
English ⇌ Hindi
Photos
Photos
Don't Ask Again
Cancel
Shoot & Translate
12:00
Select photos
Cancel
12:00
Adjust Range
Retake
Next

- **Flashlight.** When the area you are taking a picture or scanning a document is too dark, or dimly lit or you just want a clearer view of the image.

Click 🔦 to open flashlight and enjoy a better shot of the image or document you want to scan. Once flashlight is on, flashlight icon will turn into this 🔦.

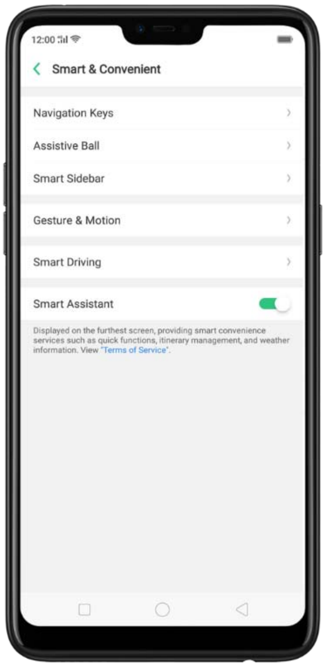

English
Shoot in parallel with the reference line
Shoot & Translate
Scan Document
English
Shoot in parallel with the reference line
Shoot & Translate
Scan Document

.

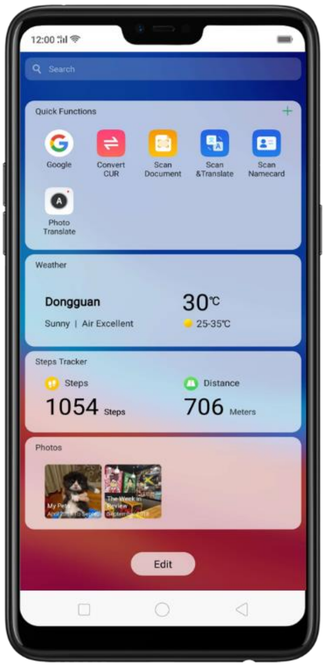
## 4.3 New features of Smart Assistant

Smart assistant maximizes the use of your camera. Just one snap and you'll get tons of information just by mere clicking the camera button or the Optical character recognition (OCR). It's now a lot easier and smarter to Scan documents, Scan & translate images and texts, Scan namecard to be saved on your contacts, and translate photos to make travel and life more convenient.

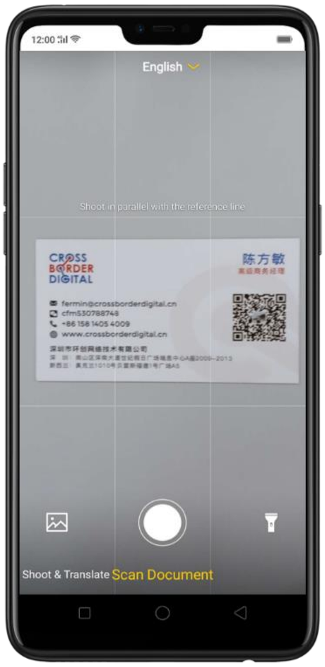
**Open Smart Assistant.** Go to **[Settings]** > **[Smart & Convenient**] and turn on **[Smart Assistant].** Or swipe right from the left edge of the home screen, then click **Turn on Smart Assistant**.


12:00
Smart & Convenient
Navigation Keys
Assistive Ball
Smart Sidebar
Gesture & Motion
Smart Driving
Smart Assistant

Displayed on the furthest screen, providing smart convenience services such as quick functions, itinerary management, and weather information. View "Terms of Service".

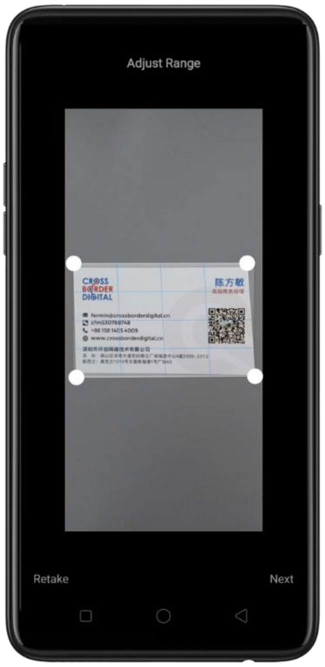

12:00
Search
Quick Functions
Google
Convert CUR
Scan Document
Scan &Translate
Scan Namecard
Photo Translate
Weather
Dongguan
30℃
Sunny | Air Excellent
25-35℃
Steps Tracker
Steps
Distance
1054 Steps
706 Meters
Photos
Edit

- **Scan Document.** Click Scan Document to launch Smart Scan app and open this feature directly. This can translate English, Japanese, Korean, French, Spanish, Italian, German, Hindi, and Chinese languages. Choose the Language you want. Aim at the document that you would like to scan then click ○ to start the process.

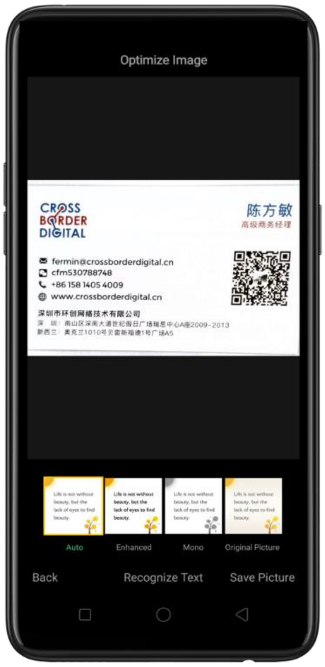

12:00
English
Shoot in parallel with the reference line
Shoot & Translate
Scan Document

Once scanning is done you can do the following to the image:

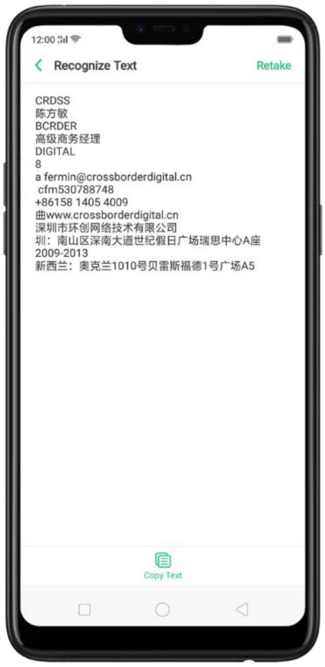
**Adjust the range**. Using your finger/s, move the four circles on the side of the image.


Adjust Range
Retake
Next

**Optimized Image**. You can choose from Auto, Enhanced, Mono, or the Original Picture you've taken. Once done, click **Save Picture.**


Optimize Image
CROSS
BORDER
DIGITAL
陈方敏
高级商务经理
fermin@crossborderdigital.cn
cfm530788748
+86 158 1405 4009
www.crossborderdigital.cn
深圳市环创网络技术有限公司
深 圳： 南山区深南大道世纪假日广场瑞思中心A座2009-2013
新西兰： 奥克兰1010号贝雷斯福德1号广场A5
Auto
Enhanced
Mono
Original Picture
Back
Recognize Text
Save Picture

You may also Click **Recognize Text** if you want it translated. Click **Retake** if you want to scan again and click **Copy Text** if you want to paste the text someplace else.

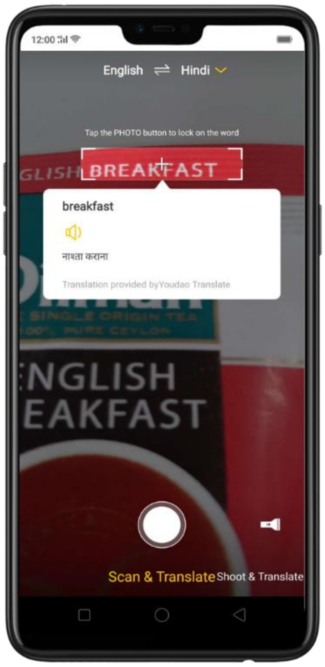

12:00
Recognize Text
Retake

CRDSS
陈方敏
BCRDER
高级商务经理
DIGITAL
8
a fermin@crossborderdigital.cn
cfm530788748
+86158 1405 4009
曲www.crossborderdigital.cn
深圳市环创网络技术有限公司
圳：南山区深南大道世纪假日广场瑞思中心A座
2009-2013
新西兰：奥克兰1010号贝雷斯福德1号广场A5

Copy Text

See: Smart Scan

- **Scan & Translate.** Click Scan &Translate to launch Smart Scan app and open this feature directly. This only available for English to Hindi and vice versa. You can translate each word or phrases as long as it will fit on the frame that's provided. You can listen to the pronunciation by clicking 🔊.

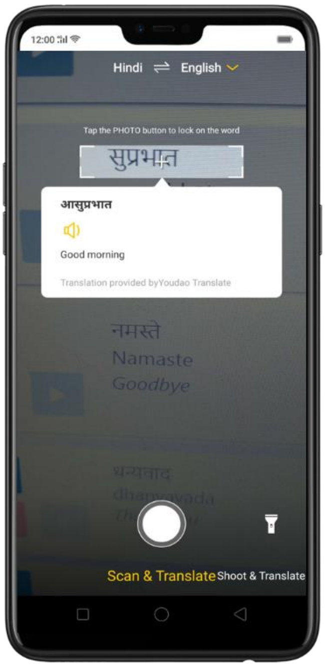

12:00
English ⇄ Hindi
BREAKFAST
Scan & Translate
Shoot & Translate

Tap the PHOTO button to lock on the word

breakfast

नाश्ता कराना

Translation provided byYoudao Translate


12:00
Hindi ⇄ English
सुप्रभात
नमस्ते
Namaste
Goodbye
Scan & Translate
Shoot & Translate

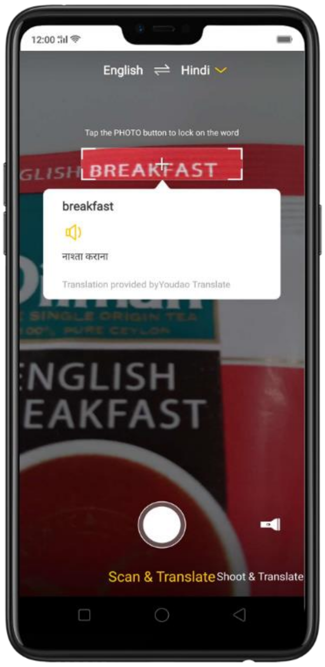
Tap the PHOTO button to lock on the word

आसुप्रभात

Good morning

Translation provided byYoudao Translate

You can also lock the word so it won't read other words/phrases. Click ○ and you will be able to lock and unlock word or phrases. You will see a padlock in the center of the frame once a word is locked.



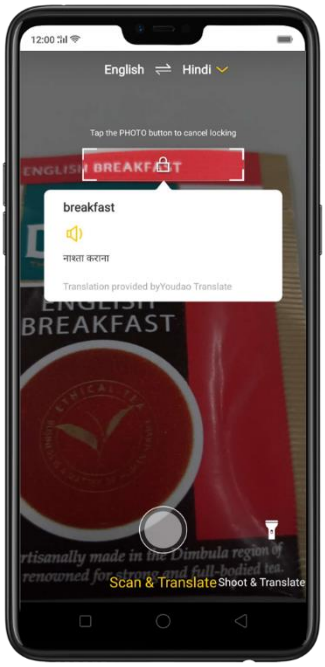
Tap the PHOTO button to lock on the word

breakfast

नाश्ता कराना

Translation provided byYoudao Translate

12:00
English ⇄ Hindi
BREAKFAST
ENGLISH
BREAKFAST
Scan & Translate
Shoot & Translate



Tap the PHOTO button to cancel locking

breakfast

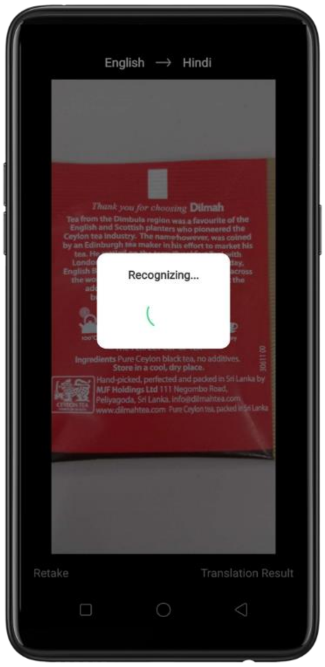
नाश्ता कराना

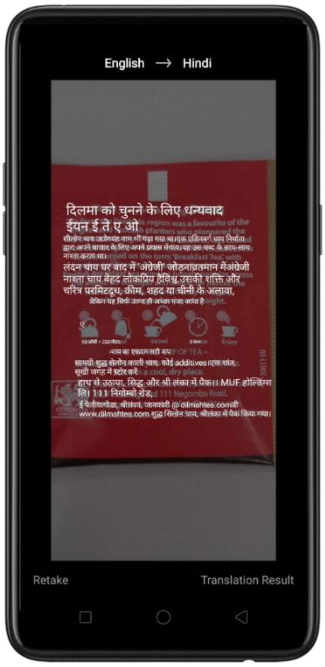
Translation provided byYoudao Translate

12:00
English ⇄ Hindi
BREAKFAST
BREAKFAST
Scan & Translate
Shoot & Translate

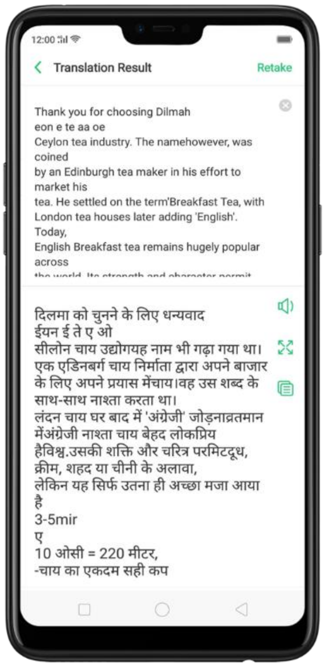
See: *Smart Scan*

- **Photo Translate.** This is also called Shoot & Translate. Click Photo Translate to launch Smart Scan app and open this feature directly. This only available for English to Hindi and vice versa. Aim at anything that you would like to translate then click ○ and Smart Scan will start to recognize the texts. You can either **Retake** or see the **Translation Results**.


English → Hindi
Recognizing...
Retake
Translation Result


English → Hindi
Retake
Translation Result

Once translation has been made, you can **Retake**, Listen (🔊), maximize the page (⛶), or copy the text (📋) if you want to.

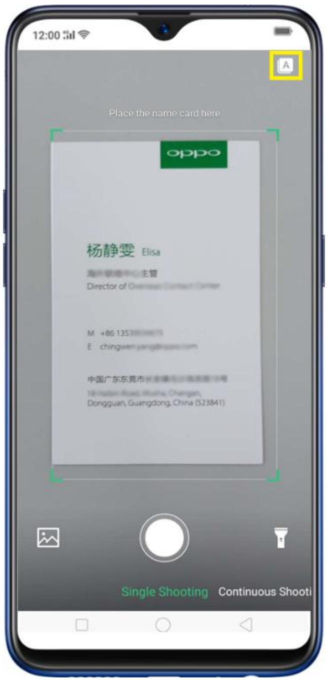

12:00
Translation Result
Retake

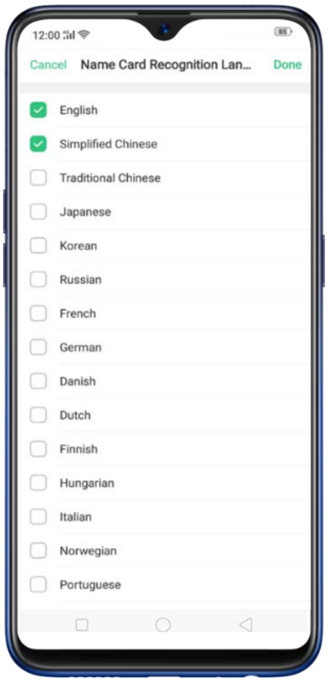
Thank you for choosing Dilmah
eon e te aa oe
Ceylon tea industry. The namehowever, was coined
by an Edinburgh tea maker in his effort to market his
tea. He settled on the term'Breakfast Tea, with London tea houses later adding 'English'. Today,
English Breakfast tea remains hugely popular across

दिलमा को चुनने के लिए धन्यवाद
ईयन ई ते ए ओ
सीलोन चाय उद्योगयह नाम भी गढ़ा गया था।
एक एडिनबर्ग चाय निर्माता द्वारा अपने बाजार के लिए अपने प्रयास मेंचाय।वह उस शब्द के साथ-साथ नाश्ता करता था।
लंदन चाय घर बाद में 'अंग्रेजी' जोड़नाव्रतमान मेंअंग्रेजी नाश्ता चाय बेहद लोकप्रिय हैविश्व.उसकी शक्ति और चरित्र परमिटदूध,
क्रीम, शहद या चीनी के अलावा,
लेकिन यह सिर्फ उतना ही अच्छा मजा आया है
3-5mir
ए
10 ओसी = 220 मीटर,
-चाय का एकदम सही कप

See: [*Smart Scan*]

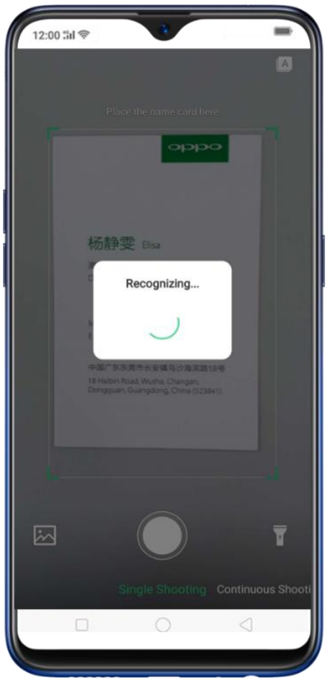
- **Scan namecard.** Click Scan Namecard to launch Contacts app and open this feature directly. Before scanning the business card or namecard, click A for the namecard recognition language. Make sure to fit the namecard or business card on the frame.


12:00
A
Place the name card here
oppo
杨静雯 Elisa
Director of
Dongguan, Guangdong, China (523841)
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooti

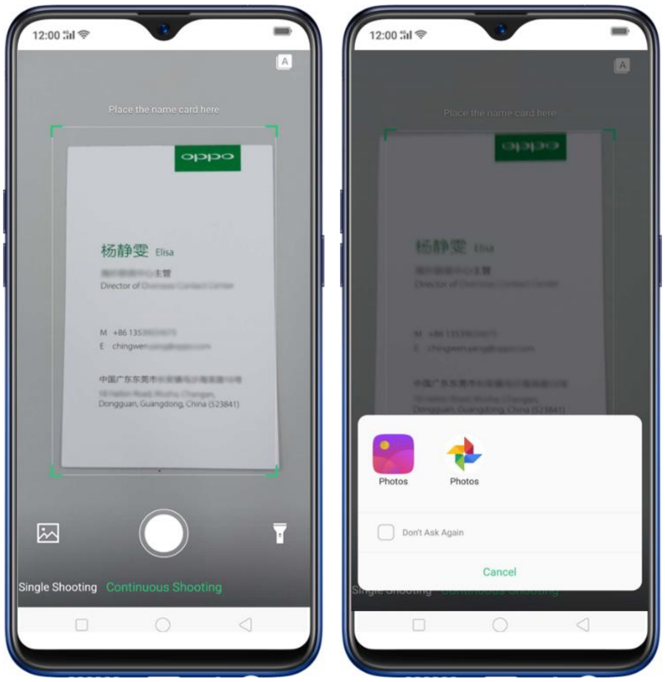

12:00
Cancel
Name Card Recognition Lan...
Done

☑ English
☑ Simplified Chinese
☐ Traditional Chinese
☐ Japanese
☐ Korean
☐ Russian
☐ French
☐ German
☐ Danish
☐ Dutch
☐ Finnish
☐ Hungarian
☐ Italian
☐ Norwegian
☐ Portuguese

Click ○ to start recognizing the namecard or business card and all information will directly be stored on your Contacts app then click **Save.**


12:00
Place the name card here
oppo
杨静雯 Elisa
Recognizing...
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooti

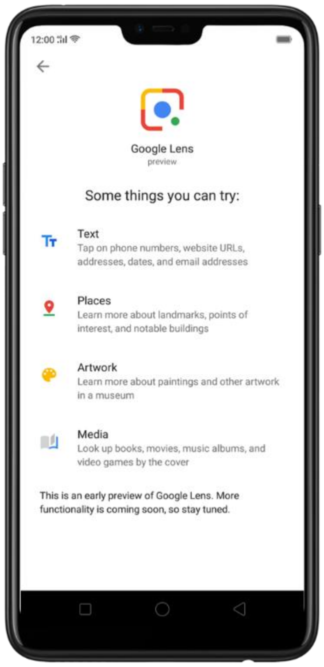
You also have an option to do **Continuous Shooting**, open Photos app if a namecard or business card is saved there, or use the flashlight if area to scan is dimly lit.


12:00
Place the name card here
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooting
Photos
Photos
Don't Ask Again
Cancel

See: *Contacts*

## 4.4 Google Lens

Google has just recently introduced Google Lens which will analyze what you see and will give you results in real time. It will tell you what the image is or give you links to understand it better.



Google Lens
preview

Some things you can try:

**Text**
Tap on phone numbers, website URLs, addresses, dates, and email addresses

**Places**
Learn more about landmarks, points of interest, and notable buildings

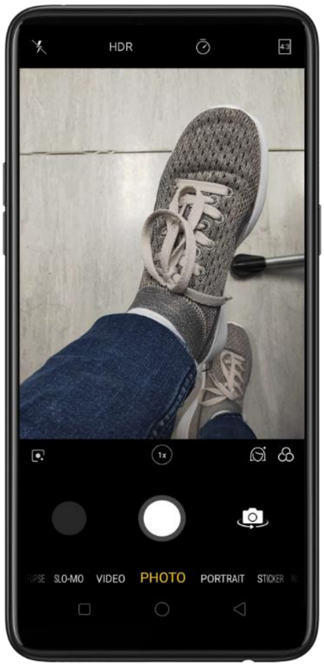
**Artwork**
Learn more about paintings and other artwork in a museum

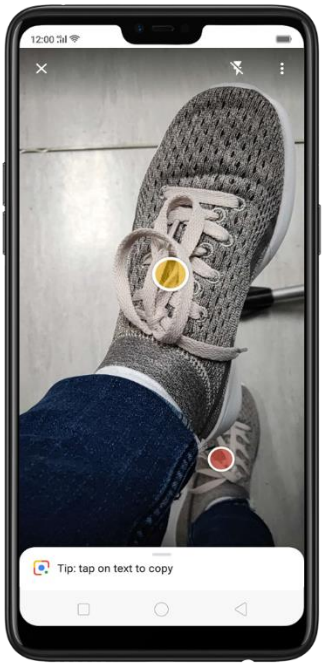
**Media**
Look up books, movies, music albums, and video games by the cover

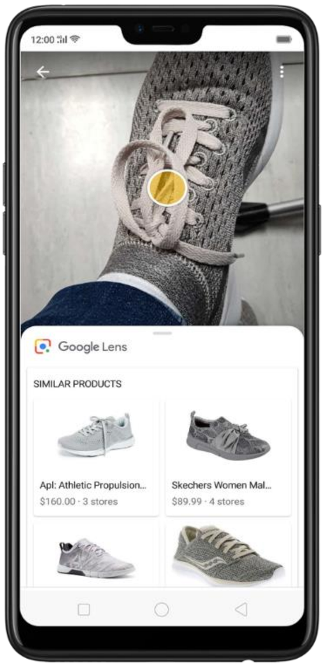
This is an early preview of Google Lens. More functionality is coming soon, so stay tuned.

**There are two ways you can enjoy Google Lens.**

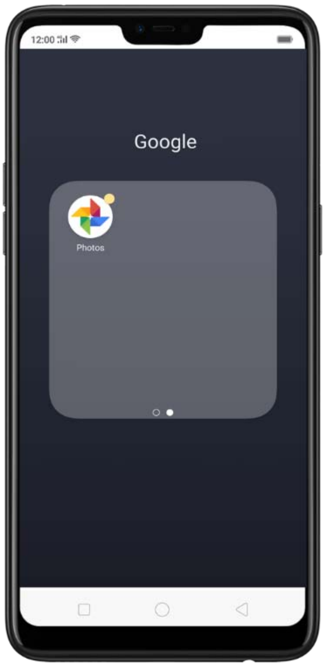
1. **Through the camera app.** Open the camera app, then click on the **Google Lens Icon** , focus on the image that you like and let Google Lens analyze the photo for a few seconds, then it will give you results. Your image can be anything as long as Google Lens can analyze it then it will give you results. **Note:** This only works on Photo mode.

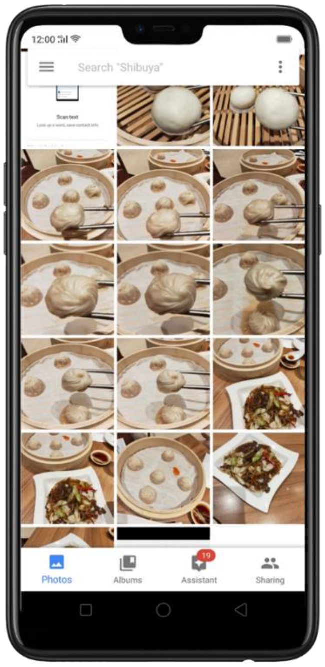

HDR
1x
SLO-MO
VIDEO
PHOTO
PORTRAIT
STICKER

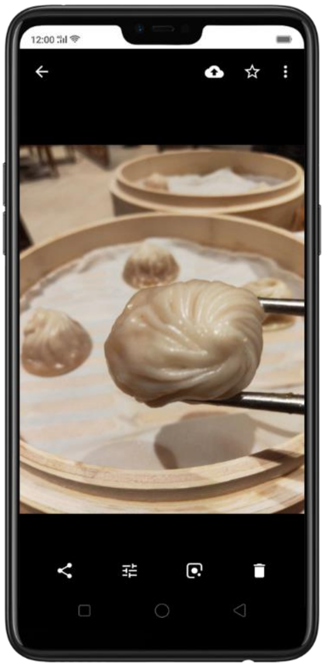

12:00
Tip: tap on text to copy


12:00
Google Lens
SIMILAR PRODUCTS
Apl: Athletic Propulsion...
$160.00 · 3 stores
Skechers Women Mal...
$89.99 · 4 stores

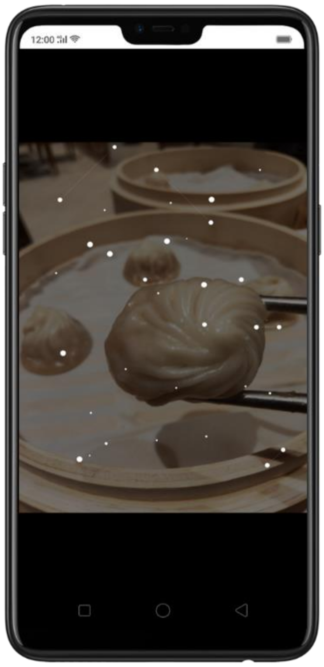
**2. Through Google Photos app**. On the home screen, click Google Photos, select any photo on the Gallery then click the Google Lens icon and let Google Lens analyze the photo for a few seconds, then it will give you results. Your image can be anything as long as Google Lens is enable to analyze it then it will give you results.


12:00
Google
Photos


12:00
Search "Shibuya"
Scan text
19
Photos
Albums
Assistant
Sharing



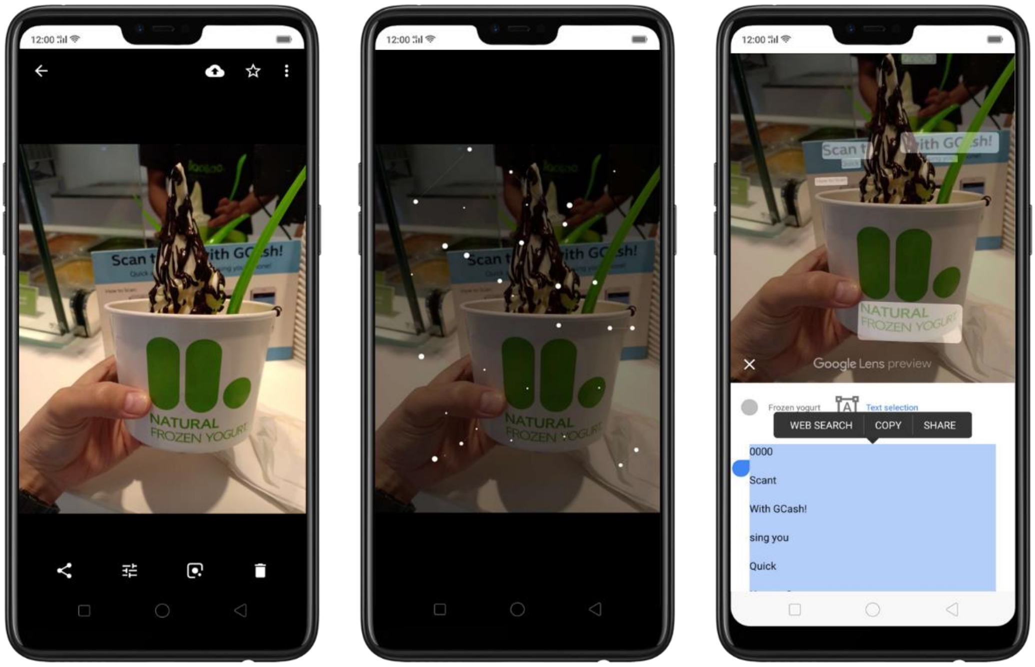
3



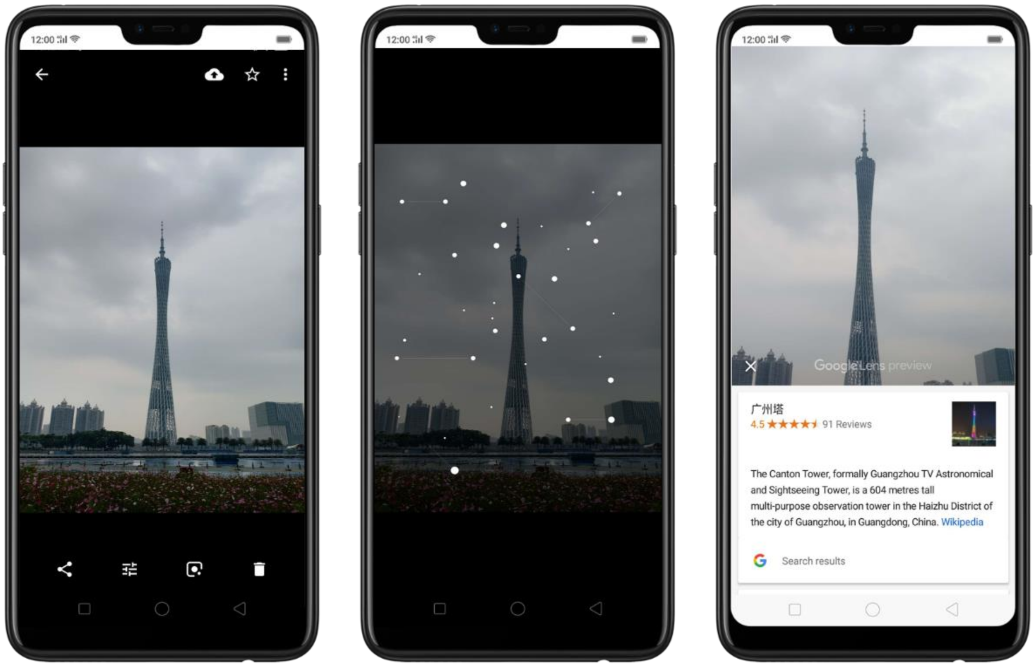
**This technology will allow you to do the following (as stated on Google**

**PlayStore page and works for images on your Google Photos):**

- **Take action on text**. Google Lens will intelligent check the texts available on the image. It will look up a dish right from the menu, add events to your calendar, get directions, call a number, translate words, search the web, and more. Or just copy and paste to save some time. Click to start analyzing the image.

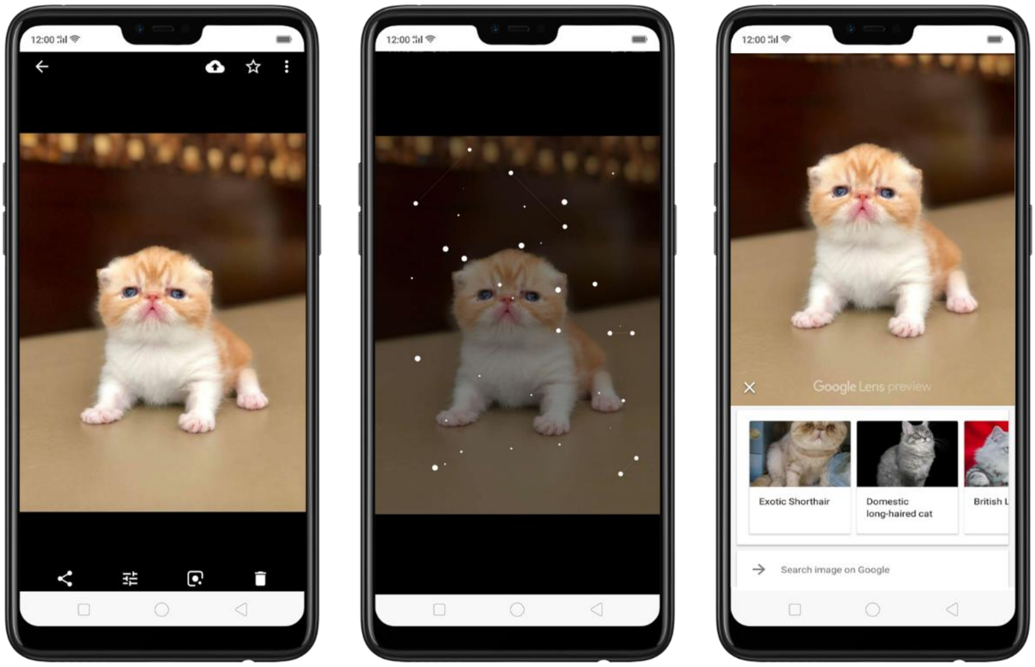

12:00
Scan t
ith GCash!
NATURAL
FROZEN YOGURT
Google Lens preview
Frozen yogurt
Text selection
WEB SEARCH
COPY
SHARE
0000
Scant
With GCash!
sing you
Quick

- **Learn more about the world**. Explore popular landmarks. See ratings, hours of operation, historical facts and more. Click to start analyzing the image.

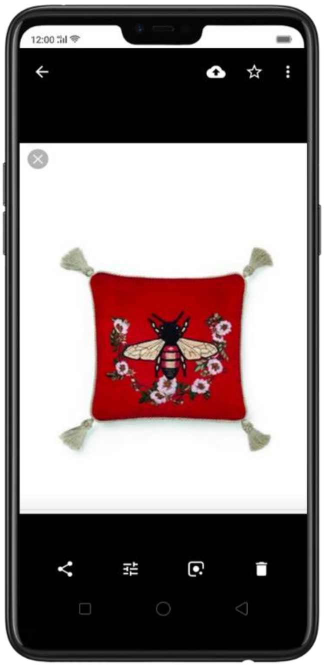

12:00
12:00
12:00
Google Lens preview
广州塔
4.5 ★★★★★ 91 Reviews
Search results

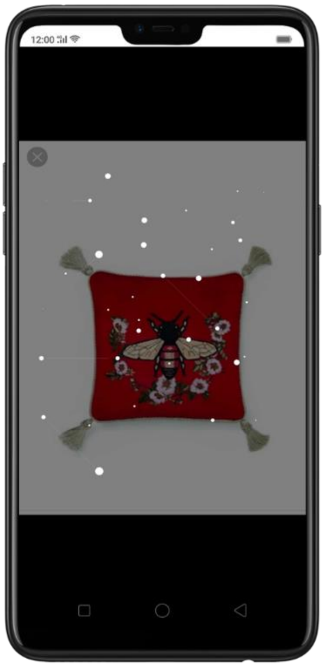
The Canton Tower, formally Guangzhou TV Astronomical and Sightseeing Tower, is a 604 metres tall multi-purpose observation tower in the Haizhu District of the city of Guangzhou, in Guangdong, China. Wikipedia

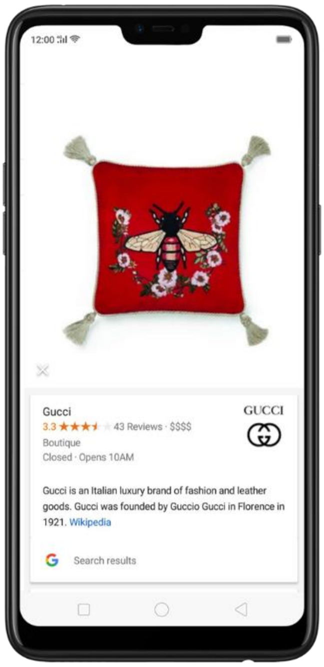
- **Identify plants and animals**. Find out what that plant is in your friend's apartment, or what kind of dog you saw in the park. Click to start analyzing the image.


12:00
12:00
12:00
Google Lens preview
Exotic Shorthair
Domestic long-haired cat
British L
Search image on Google

- **Find a look you like**. See an outfit that catches your eye? Or a chair that's perfect for your living room? Find similar clothes, furniture, and home decor—without having to describe what you're looking for in a search box. Click to start analyzing the image.





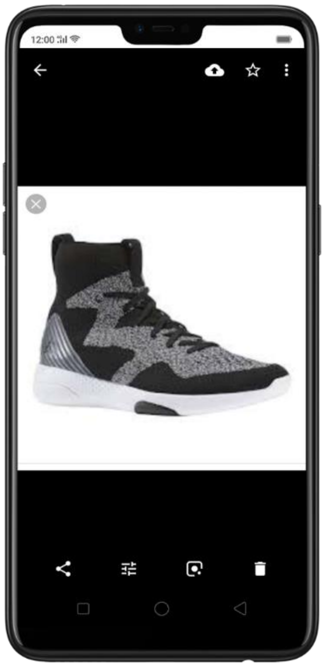


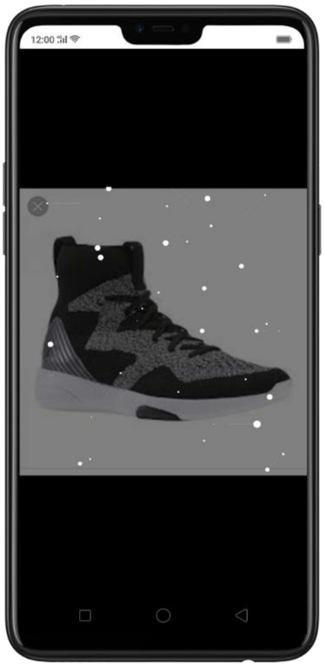
Gucci
3.3 ★★★★ 43 Reviews · $$$$
Boutique
Closed · Opens 10AM

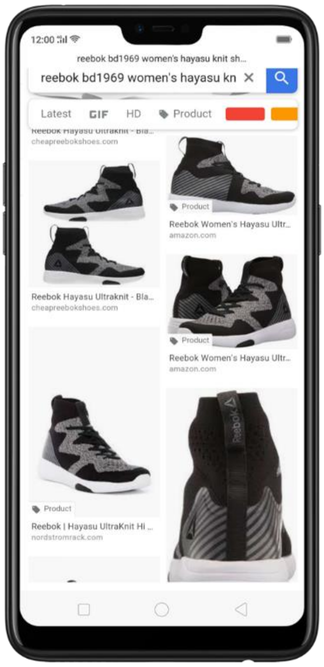
Gucci is an Italian luxury brand of fashion and leather goods. Gucci was founded by Guccio Gucci in Florence in 1921. Wikipedia

Search results

- **Shop Smarter.** Apart from identifying the image, the tool will also direct you to links where you can buy the things that you want. Click ⊡ to start analyzing the image.





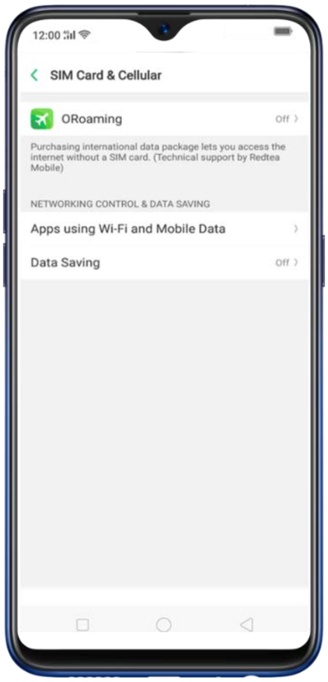

12:00
reebok bd1969 women's hayasu knit sh...
reebok bd1969 women's hayasu kn
Latest
GIF
HD
Product
Product
Reebok Women's Hayasu Ultr...
amazon.com
Reebok Hayasu Ultraknit - Bla...
cheapreebokshoes.com
Product
Reebok Women's Hayasu Ultr...
amazon.com
Product
Reebok | Hayasu UltraKnit Hi ...
nordstromrack.com

**Note:** This will need network connection to work.

## 4.6 ORoaming

To stay connected with loved ones and to still check business and work from time to time, we need data. It is now a necessity and we know it and we would want to make things easier for you. ORoaming makes you purchase international data package without the need of buying a SIM card. It supports 60+ countries/regions. Now you can truly enjoy your trip.

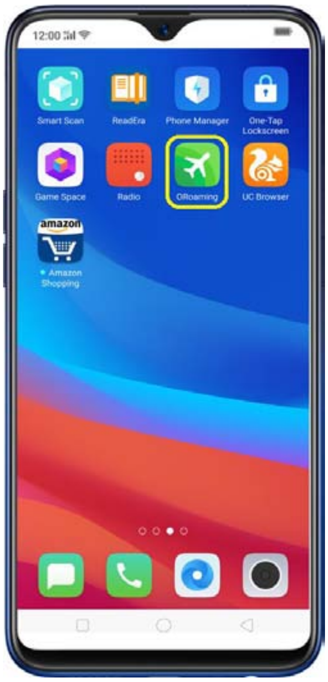
1. To purchase ORoaming, go to **[Settings]** > **[SIM Card & Cellular]** > **[ORoaming]**. You can also open the ORoaming app on your home screen.

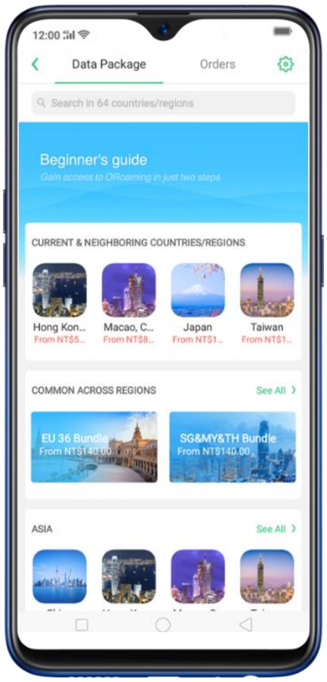

12:00
SIM Card & Cellular
ORoaming
NETWORKING CONTROL & DATA SAVING
Apps using Wi-Fi and Mobile Data
Data Saving

ORoaming Off

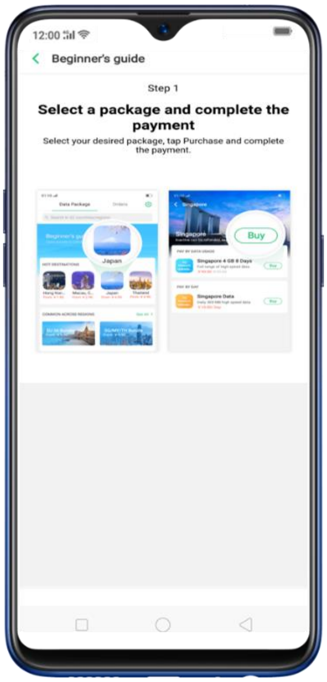
Purchasing international data package lets you access the internet without a SIM card. (Technical support by Redtea Mobile)

Data Saving Off


12:00
Smart Scan
ReadEra
Phone Manager
One-Tap Lockscreen
Game Space
Radio
ORoaming
UC Browser
amazon
Amazon Shopping


12:00
Data Package
Orders
Search in 64 countries/regions
Beginner's guide
Gain access to ORoaming in just two steps
CURRENT & NEIGHBORING COUNTRIES/REGIONS
Hong Kon...
From NT$5...
Macao, C...
From NT$8...
Japan
From NT$1...
Taiwan
From NT$1...
COMMON ACROSS REGIONS
See All
EU 36 Bundle
From NT$140.00
SG&MY&TH Bundle
From NT$140.00
ASIA
See All

2. Click on **Beginner’s guide** for steps needed and common FAQs before using this feature.

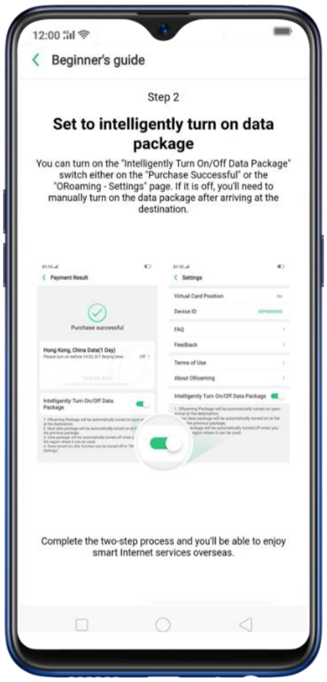

Beginner's guide

Step 1

**Select a package and complete the payment**

Select your desired package, tap Purchase and complete the payment.

12:00
Japan
Buy


Beginner's guide

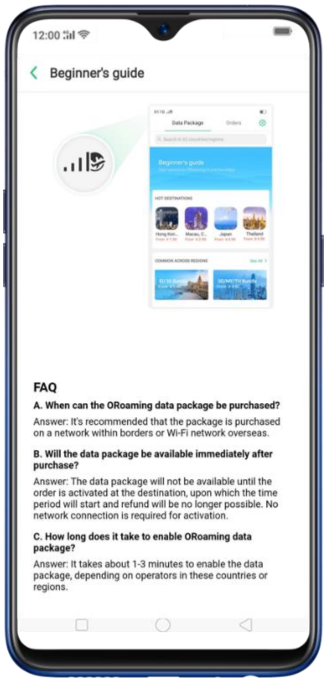
Step 2

**Set to intelligently turn on data package**

You can turn on the "Intelligently Turn On/Off Data Package" switch either on the "Purchase Successful" or the "ORoaming - Settings" page. If it is off, you'll need to manually turn on the data package after arriving at the destination.

Complete the two-step process and you'll be able to enjoy smart Internet services overseas.

12:00
Payment Result
Purchase successful
Hong Kong, China Data(1 Day)
Intelligently Turn On/Off Data Package
Settings
Virtual Card Position
Device ID
FAQ
Feedback
Terms of Use
About ORoaming
Intelligently Turn On/Off Data Package


Beginner's guide

**FAQ**

**A. When can the ORoaming data package be purchased?**

Answer: It's recommended that the package is purchased on a network within borders or Wi-Fi network overseas.

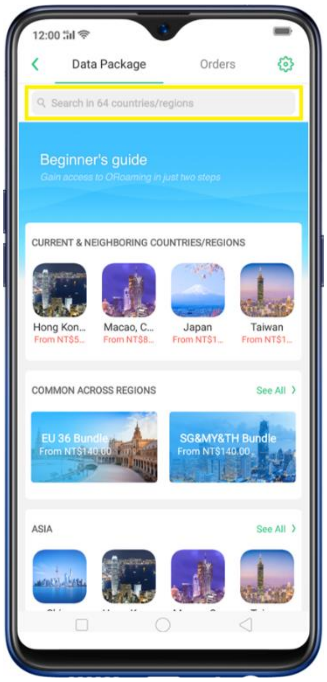
**B. Will the data package be available immediately after purchase?**

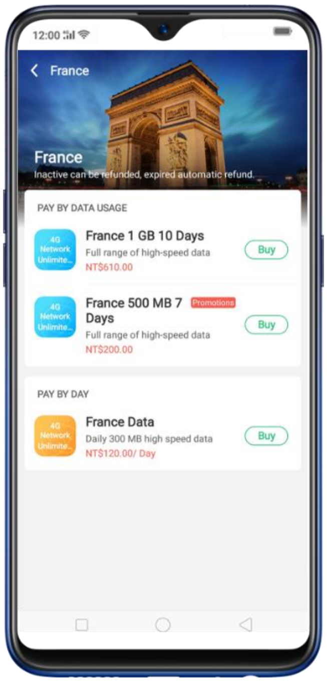
Answer: The data package will not be available until the order is activated at the destination, upon which the time period will start and refund will be no longer possible. No network connection is required for activation.

**C. How long does it take to enable ORoaming data package?**

Answer: It takes about 1-3 minutes to enable the data package, depending on operators in these countries or regions.

3. Click **Data Package** or use the search field for the country that you plan to visit. You will be given options to choose from, click **Buy**, then choose your mode of payment, click **Pay Now and the Amount**. (Note: Only supports MasterCard and Visa credit cards).


12:00
Data Package
Orders
Search in 64 countries/regions
Beginner's guide
Gain access to ORoaming in just two steps
CURRENT & NEIGHBORING COUNTRIES/REGIONS
Hong Kon...
From NT$5...
Macao, C...
From NT$8...
Japan
From NT$1...
Taiwan
From NT$1...
COMMON ACROSS REGIONS
See All
EU 36 Bundle
From NT$140.00
SG&MY&TH Bundle
From NT$140.00
ASIA
See All


France

Inactive can be refunded, expired automatic refund.

PAY BY DATA USAGE

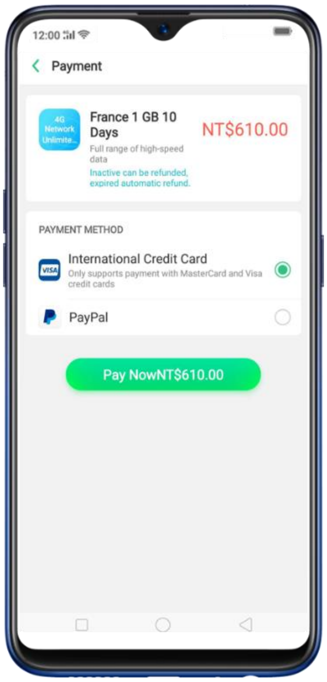
France 1 GB 10 Days
Full range of high-speed data
NT$610.00

France 500 MB 7 Days
Full range of high-speed data
NT$200.00

PAY BY DAY

France Data
Daily 300 MB high speed data
NT$120.00/ Day

12:00
France
4G Network Unlimite...
Buy
Promotions
4G Network Unlimite...
Buy
4G Network Unlimite...
Buy


Payment

France 1 GB 10 Days
Full range of high-speed data
Inactive can be refunded, expired automatic refund.
NT$610.00

PAYMENT METHOD

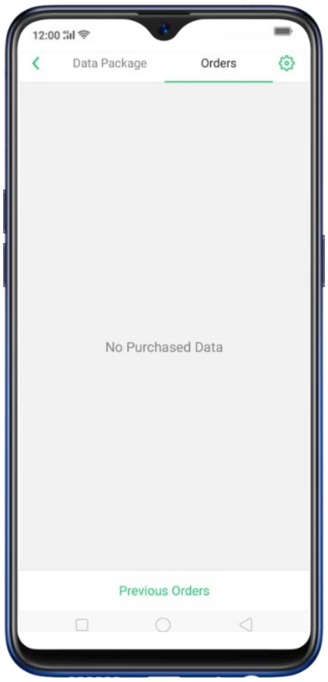
International Credit Card ●
Only supports payment with MasterCard and Visa credit cards

PayPal ○

Pay NowNT$610.00

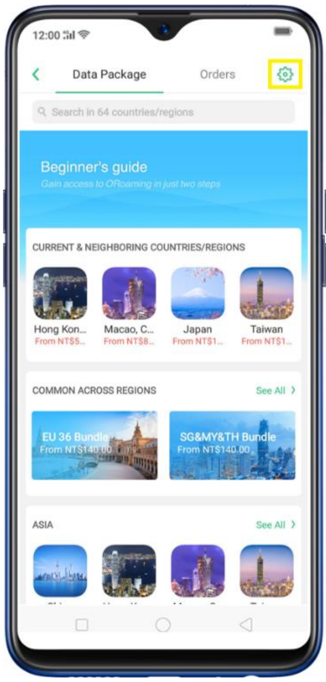
12:00
4G Network Unlimite...
VISA

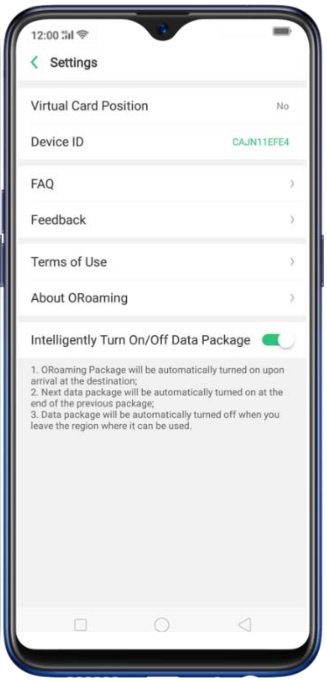
4. **Orders** will show what you have just purchased, click **Previous Order** to show those you've previously ordered.


12:00
Data Package
Orders
No Purchased Data
Previous Orders

## Settings of ORoaming

Click ⚙ on the top-right corner of the phone to manage the settings of ORoaming and to read more FAQs about the app.


12:00
Data Package
Orders
Search in 64 countries/regions
Beginner's guide
Gain access to ORoaming in just two steps
CURRENT & NEIGHBORING COUNTRIES/REGIONS
Hong Kon...
From NT$5...
Macao, C...
From NT$8...
Japan
From NT$1...
Taiwan
From NT$1...
COMMON ACROSS REGIONS
See All
EU 36 Bundle
From NT$140.00
SG&MY&TH Bundle
From NT$140.00
ASIA
See All


12:00
Settings
FAQ
Feedback
Terms of Use
About ORoaming

Virtual Card Position: No

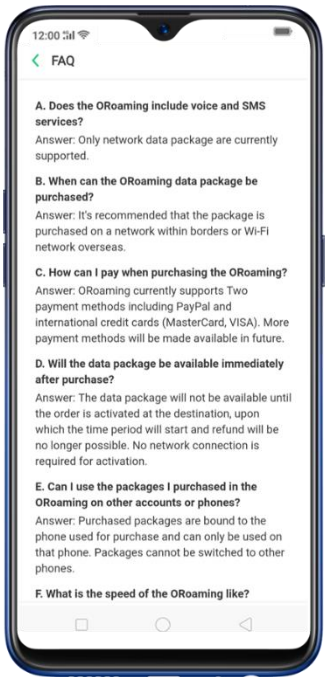
Device ID: CAJN11EFE4

Intelligently Turn On/Off Data Package: On

1. ORoaming Package will be automatically turned on upon arrival at the destination;
2. Next data package will be automatically turned on at the end of the previous package;
3. Data package will be automatically turned off when you leave the region where it can be used.

ORoaming settings contain:

- **Virtual Card Position** – This serves as your virtual SIM card since you won't be needing one when using ORoaming feature.
- **Device ID** – the special identification that is connected to the device that you are using.
- **FAQ** – if you have more questions about ORoaming.



**A. Does the ORoaming include voice and SMS services?**
Answer: Only network data package are currently supported.

**B. When can the ORoaming data package be purchased?**
Answer: It's recommended that the package is purchased on a network within borders or Wi-Fi network overseas.

**C. How can I pay when purchasing the ORoaming?**
Answer: ORoaming currently supports Two payment methods including PayPal and international credit cards (MasterCard, VISA). More payment methods will be made available in future.

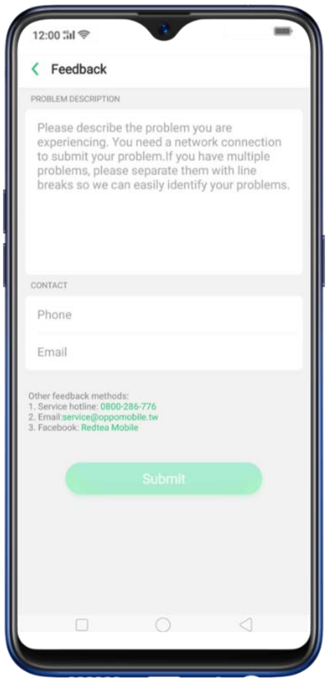
**D. Will the data package be available immediately after purchase?**
Answer: The data package will not be available until the order is activated at the destination, upon which the time period will start and refund will be no longer possible. No network connection is required for activation.

**E. Can I use the packages I purchased in the ORoaming on other accounts or phones?**
Answer: Purchased packages are bound to the phone used for purchase and can only be used on that phone. Packages cannot be switched to other phones.

**F. What is the speed of the ORoaming like?**

- **Feedback –** if you have some issues and concern and would want to let them know. Just give the **Problem Description** and input either your phone or QQ username and click **Submit**.

The Service hotline and Customer service for WeChat is also available if you are more comfortable communicating with them in these methods.



PROBLEM DESCRIPTION

Please describe the problem you are experiencing. You need a network connection to submit your problem.If you have multiple problems, please separate them with line breaks so we can easily identify your problems.

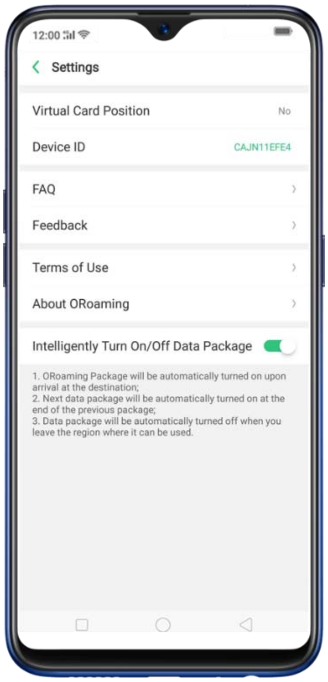
CONTACT

Phone

Email

Other feedback methods:
1. Service hotline: 0800-286-776
2. Email:service@oppomobile.tw
3. Facebook: Redtea Mobile

- **Terms of Use–** You may read and browse through the Terms of Use before purchasing anything on ORoaming.
- **About ORoaming** – to learn more about the application.
- **Intelligently Turn On/Off Data Package** – Toggle to green to enable. Once enabled: Will automatically turn on upon arrival at the destination, next data package will automatically turn on at the end of the previous one, and data package will automatically turn off when you will leave the place where the data roaming can only be used.



Virtual Card Position No

Device ID CAJN11EFE4

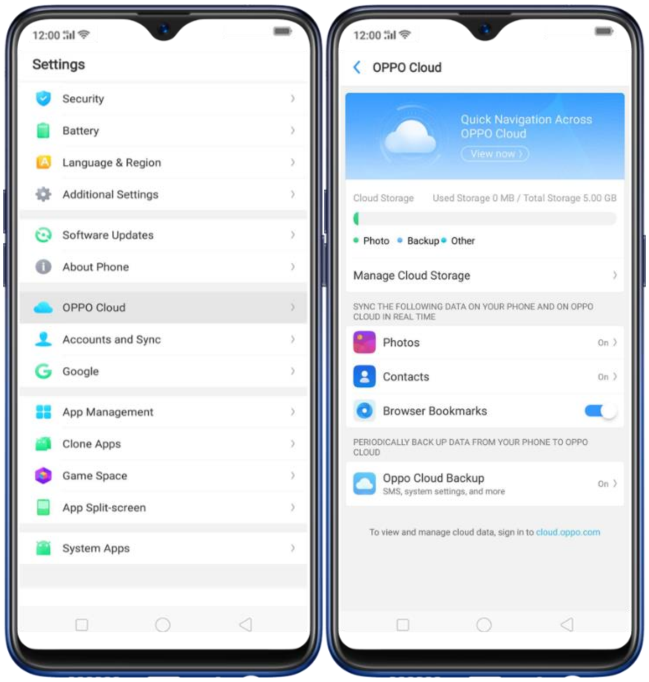
Intelligently Turn On/Off Data Package ●

1. ORoaming Package will be automatically turned on upon arrival at the destination;
2. Next data package will be automatically turned on at the end of the previous package;
3. Data package will be automatically turned off when you leave the region where it can be used.

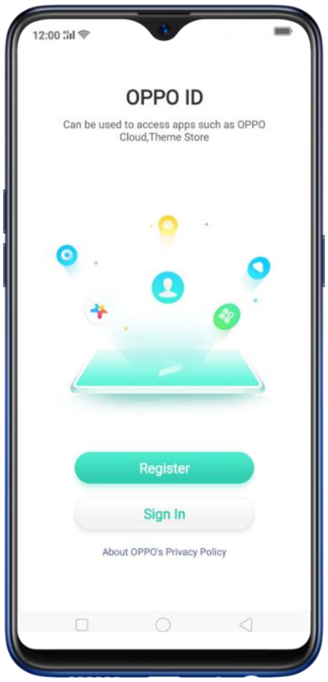
# 4.7 Auto-sync photos on OPPO Cloud

Save those precious pictures and selfies on OPPO Cloud automatically. No need to manually save it and no need to worry about it if something happens to your phone. OPPO Cloud got it covered. One thing is for sure, even when you lose your device your photos and contacts will always be available.

To check OPPO Cloud, go to [**Settings**] > [**OPPO Cloud**] and you'll be given 5GB of free storage which can be change with OPPO Cloud's Purchase Plan.

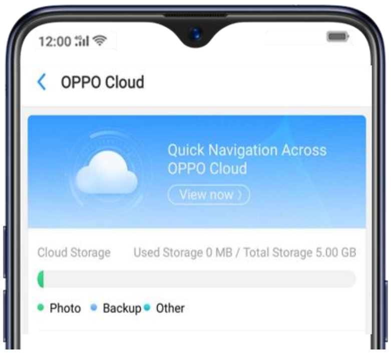

12:00
Settings
Security
Battery
Language & Region
Additional Settings
Software Updates
About Phone
OPPO Cloud
Accounts and Sync
Google
App Management
Clone Apps
Game Space
App Split-screen
System Apps
12:00
OPPO Cloud
Quick Navigation Across OPPO Cloud
View now
Cloud Storage
Used Storage 0 MB / Total Storage 5.00 GB
Photo
Backup
Other
Manage Cloud Storage
SYNC THE FOLLOWING DATA ON YOUR PHONE AND ON OPPO CLOUD IN REAL TIME
Photos
On
Contacts
On
Browser Bookmarks
PERIODICALLY BACK UP DATA FROM YOUR PHONE TO OPPO CLOUD
Oppo Cloud Backup
SMS, system settings, and more
On
To view and manage cloud data, sign in to cloud.oppo.com

**Note:** Before you can fully enjoy the benefits of OPPO Cloud, you must first have an OPPO ID. It's so easy to register if you still don't have one. See OPPO ID


12:00
OPPO ID
Register
Sign In
About OPPO's Privacy Policy

Can be used to access apps such as OPPO Cloud,Theme Store

**Quick navigation across OPPO Cloud.** If you want to have a quick overview of OPPO Cloud and to get some tips on how to use it, click on **View now**.


12:00
OPPO Cloud
Quick Navigation Across OPPO Cloud
View now ›
Cloud Storage
Photo
Backup
Other

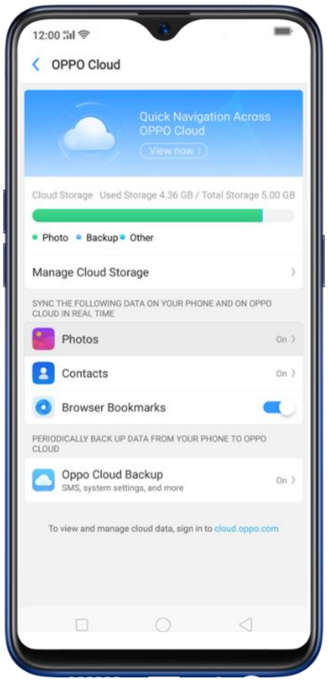
Used Storage 0 MB / Total Storage 5.00 GB

- Data protection everywhere and easy data transfer.
- Data security and privacy protection
- Cloud Sync of Photos
- Optimize phone storage
- Cloud back-up of phone
- OPPO Cloud storage
- Easy management of your cloud data anytime, anywhere by visiting cloud.oppo.com
- 3 easy steps to activate OPPO Cloud

**Manage Cloud storage.** This will show your Cloud Storage plan and details of the storage usage. This is also where you can purchase Cloud storage plan to increase storage capacity.

Purchase Cloud storage plan.

1. On the OPPO Cloud setting and click **Manage Cloud Storage.** In a quick glance, you will know which files are getting more of the space. Photo is **green**, Backup is **blue**, and Other is **sky blue**.


12:00
OPPO Cloud
Quick Navigation Across OPPO Cloud
View now
● Photo ● Backup ● Other
Manage Cloud Storage

Cloud Storage Used Storage 4.36 GB / Total Storage 5.00 GB

SYNC THE FOLLOWING DATA ON YOUR PHONE AND ON OPPO CLOUD IN REAL TIME

Photos On

Contacts On

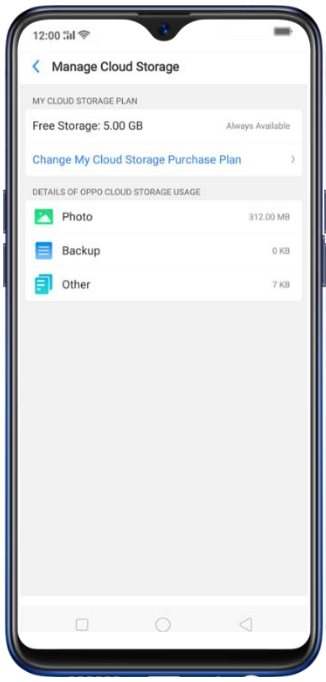
Browser Bookmarks

PERIODICALLY BACK UP DATA FROM YOUR PHONE TO OPPO CLOUD

Oppo Cloud Backup On
SMS, system settings, and more

To view and manage cloud data, sign in to cloud.oppo.com

2. Click **Change my Cloud Storage Purchase Plan** then choose the Plan you would want. It is available in 25GB, 100GB, and 1TB with its corresponding price and payment currency options.



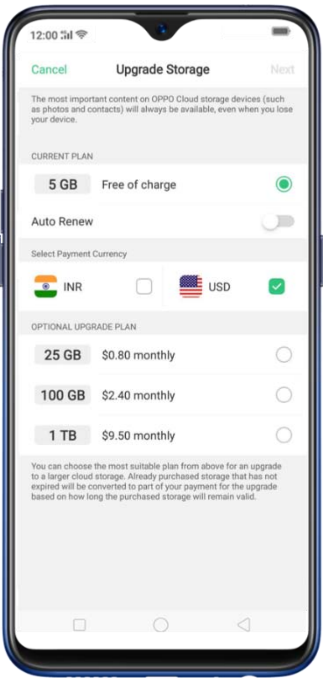
MY CLOUD STORAGE PLAN

Free Storage: 5.00 GB Always Available

Change My Cloud Storage Purchase Plan

DETAILS OF OPPO CLOUD STORAGE USAGE

| | |
|---|---|
| Photo | 312.00 MB |
| Backup | 0 KB |
| Other | 7 KB |



The most important content on OPPO Cloud storage devices (such as photos and contacts) will always be available, even when you lose your device.

CURRENT PLAN

5 GB Free of charge ●

Auto Renew

Select Payment Currency

INR ☐ USD ☑

OPTIONAL UPGRADE PLAN

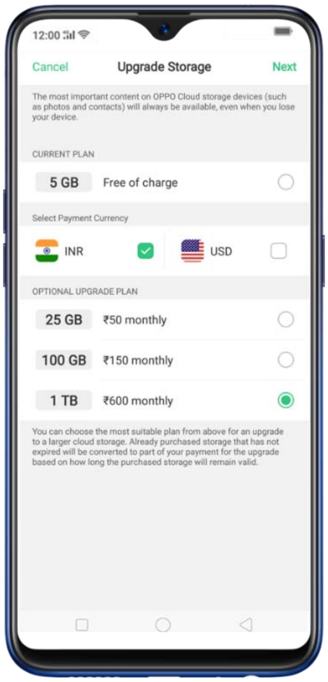
25 GB $0.80 monthly ○

100 GB $2.40 monthly ○

1 TB $9.50 monthly ○

You can choose the most suitable plan from above for an upgrade to a larger cloud storage. Already purchased storage that has not expired will be converted to part of your payment for the upgrade based on how long the purchased storage will remain valid.

3. Click the plan that you have chosen, the payment currency you want to use, and toggle to green Auto renew if you want it then click **Next**. (Note if you choose Indian Rupee as a payment currency, Auto Renew is not available).



The most important content on OPPO Cloud storage devices (such as photos and contacts) will always be available, even when you lose your device.

CURRENT PLAN

5 GB Free of charge ○

Select Payment Currency

INR ☑ USD ☐

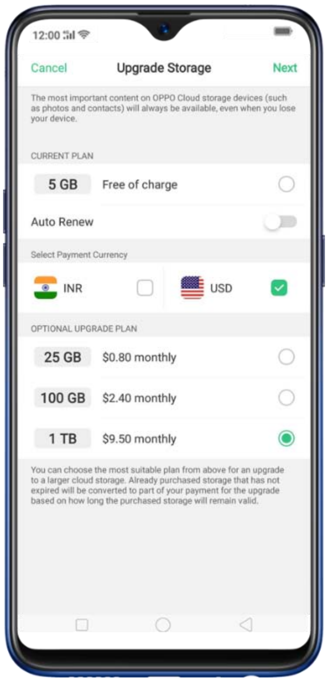
OPTIONAL UPGRADE PLAN

25 GB ₹50 monthly ○

100 GB ₹150 monthly ○

1 TB ₹600 monthly ●

You can choose the most suitable plan from above for an upgrade to a larger cloud storage. Already purchased storage that has not expired will be converted to part of your payment for the upgrade based on how long the purchased storage will remain valid.



The most important content on OPPO Cloud storage devices (such as photos and contacts) will always be available, even when you lose your device.

CURRENT PLAN

5 GB Free of charge ○

Auto Renew

Select Payment Currency

INR ☐ USD ☑

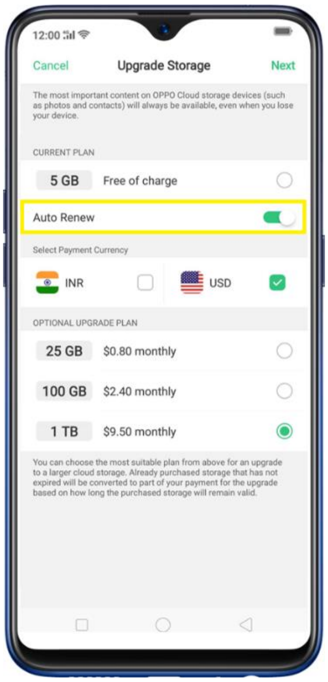
OPTIONAL UPGRADE PLAN

25 GB $0.80 monthly ○

100 GB $2.40 monthly ○

1 TB $9.50 monthly ●

You can choose the most suitable plan from above for an upgrade to a larger cloud storage. Already purchased storage that has not expired will be converted to part of your payment for the upgrade based on how long the purchased storage will remain valid.



The most important content on OPPO Cloud storage devices (such as photos and contacts) will always be available, even when you lose your device.

CURRENT PLAN

5 GB Free of charge ○

Auto Renew

Select Payment Currency

INR ☐ USD ☑

OPTIONAL UPGRADE PLAN

25 GB $0.80 monthly ○

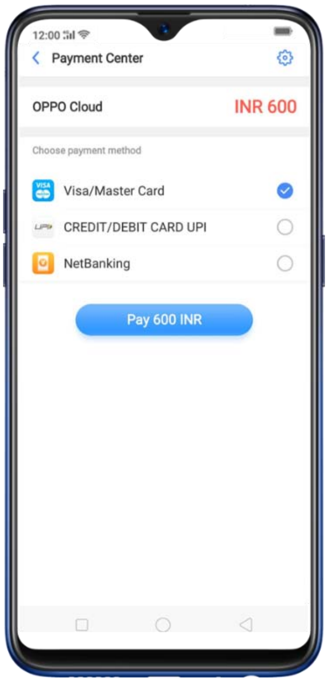
100 GB $2.40 monthly ○

1 TB $9.50 monthly ●

You can choose the most suitable plan from above for an upgrade to a larger cloud storage. Already purchased storage that has not expired will be converted to part of your payment for the upgrade based on how long the purchased storage will remain valid.

4. Payment methods vary depending on the payment currency you have

chosen. For Indian Rupee, there are various methods you can use while US only uses PayPal method, then click **Pay**.

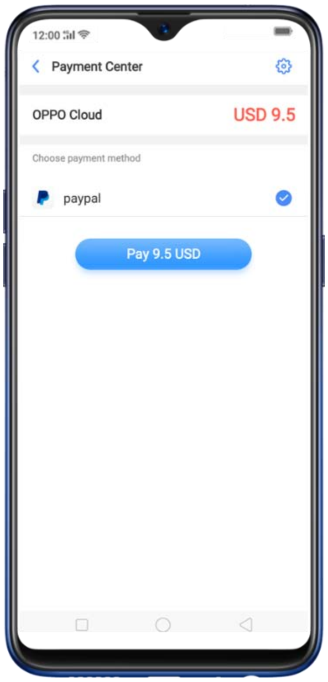

12:00
Payment Center

OPPO Cloud INR 600

Choose payment method

- Visa/Master Card ●
- CREDIT/DEBIT CARD UPI ○
- NetBanking ○

Pay 600 INR


12:00
Payment Center

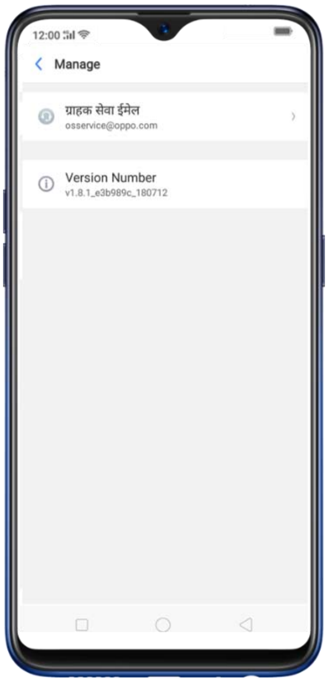
OPPO Cloud USD 9.5

Choose payment method

- paypal ●

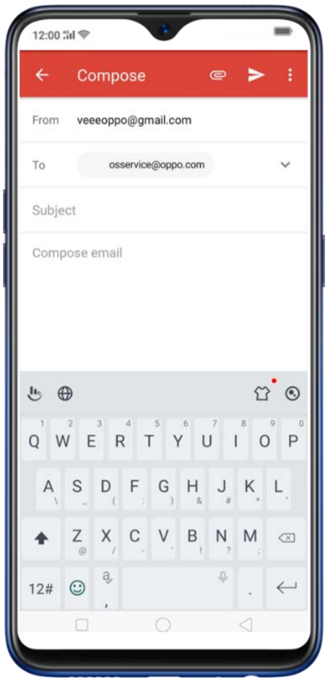
Pay 9.5 USD

5. Click ⚙ at the top right corner of the payment center page to contact customer service if you have some inquiries or feedback. This will also show you the version number of OPPO Cloud.


12:00
Manage

ग्राहक सेवा ईमेल
osservice@oppo.com

Version Number
v1.8.1_e3b989c_180712


12:00
Compose

From veeeoppo@gmail.com

To osservice@oppo.com

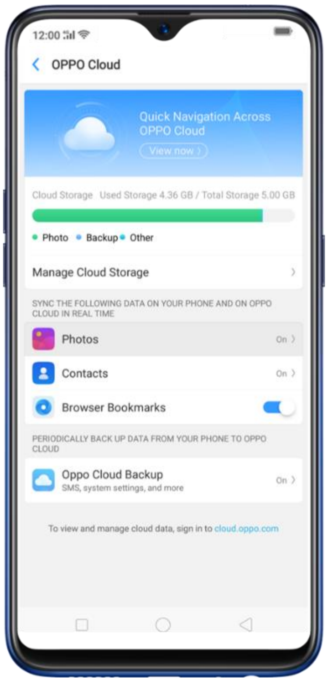
Subject

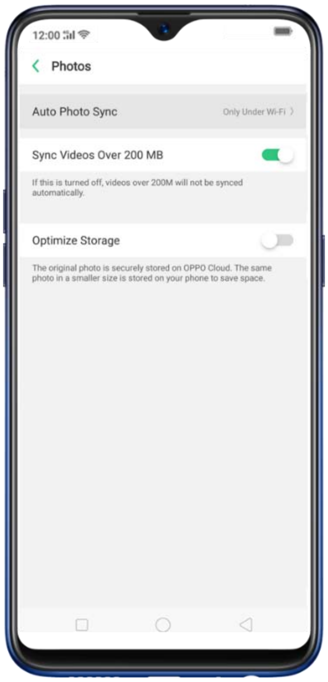
Compose email

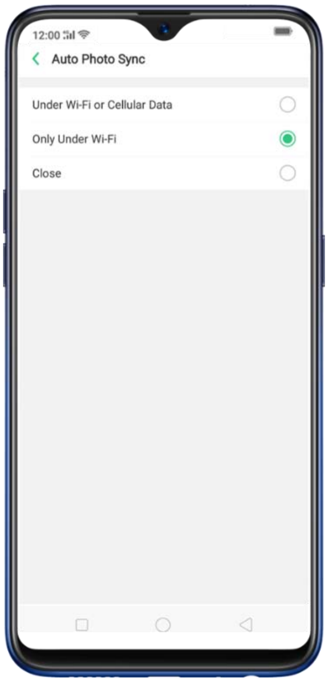
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M
12#

## Files you can sync on OPPO Cloud

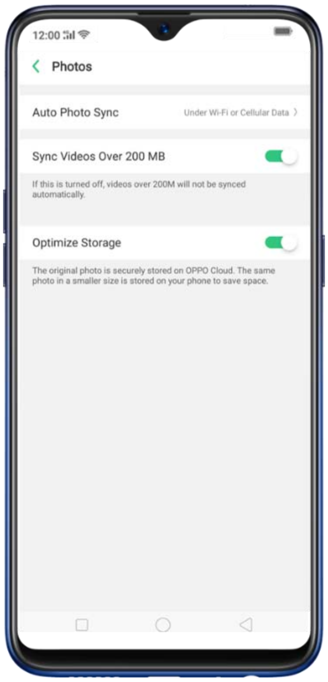
1. **Photos.** To auto Sync Photos, click **Photos**, then click **Auto Photo Sync**. You can choose to auto sync photos using **Under Wi-Fi or Cellular Data**, **Only Under Wi-Fi,** or to Close. (**Note: Photos will only be synced on OPPO Cloud which means if you delete photos from your phone, the photos that has been synced to OPPO Cloud will also be deleted**).


OPPO Cloud
Quick Navigation Across OPPO Cloud
View now
Cloud Storage Used Storage 4.36 GB / Total Storage 5.00 GB
● Photo ● Backup ● Other
Manage Cloud Storage
SYNC THE FOLLOWING DATA ON YOUR PHONE AND ON OPPO CLOUD IN REAL TIME
Photos On
Contacts On
Browser Bookmarks
PERIODICALLY BACK UP DATA FROM YOUR PHONE TO OPPO CLOUD
Oppo Cloud Backup On
SMS, system settings, and more
To view and manage cloud data, sign in to cloud.oppo.com


Photos
Auto Photo Sync Only Under Wi-Fi
Sync Videos Over 200 MB
If this is turned off, videos over 200M will not be synced automatically.
Optimize Storage
The original photo is securely stored on OPPO Cloud. The same photo in a smaller size is stored on your phone to save space.


Auto Photo Sync
Under Wi-Fi or Cellular Data ○
Only Under Wi-Fi ●
Close ○

You can also choose if you want to Sync videos over 200MB or optimize storage, just toggle to green to enable.



Auto Photo Sync: Under Wi-Fi or Cellular Data

Sync Videos Over 200 MB

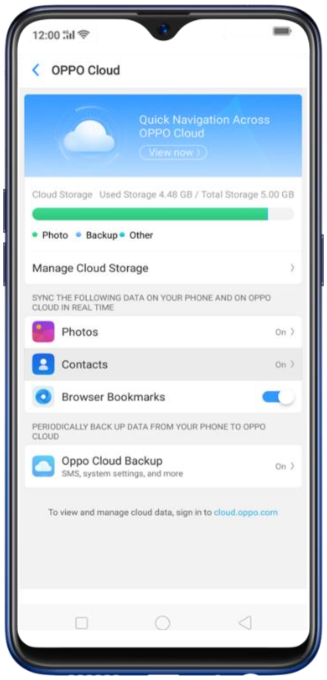
If this is turned off, videos over 200M will not be synced automatically.

Optimize Storage

The original photo is securely stored on OPPO Cloud. The same photo in a smaller size is stored on your phone to save space.

(**Note**: Optimizing storage will make the photos saved on your phone have a smaller size to save space. The one saved on the OPPO Cloud will have the original size).

2. **Contacts.** To auto Sync contacts, click **Contacts**, then toggle **Auto-sync Contacts** to blue. Once enabled, any changes will be synced to OPPO Cloud in real time. You may also click **Restore Contacts** which will generate a history of contacts on the same day.



Cloud Storage Used Storage 4.48 GB / Total Storage 5.00 GB

SYNC THE FOLLOWING DATA ON YOUR PHONE AND ON OPPO CLOUD IN REAL TIME

Photos: On

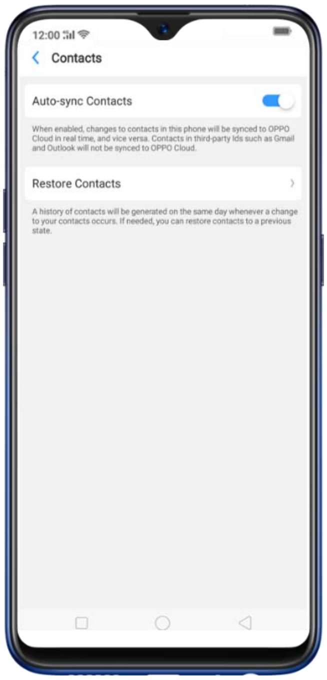
Contacts: On

Browser Bookmarks

PERIODICALLY BACK UP DATA FROM YOUR PHONE TO OPPO CLOUD

Oppo Cloud Backup: On
SMS, system settings, and more

To view and manage cloud data, sign in to cloud.oppo.com

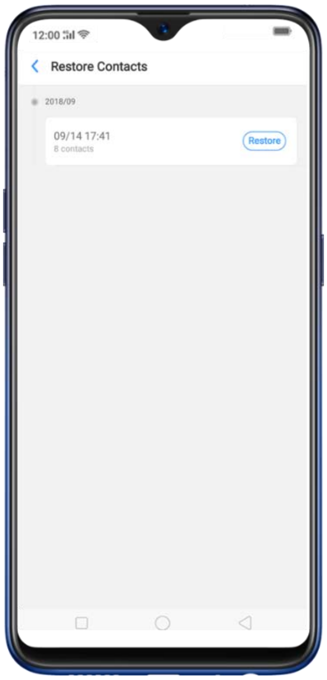


Auto-sync Contacts

When enabled, changes to contacts in this phone will be synced to OPPO Cloud in real time, and vice versa. Contacts in third-party Ids such as Gmail and Outlook will not be synced to OPPO Cloud.

Restore Contacts

A history of contacts will be generated on the same day whenever a change to your contacts occurs. If needed, you can restore contacts to a previous state.



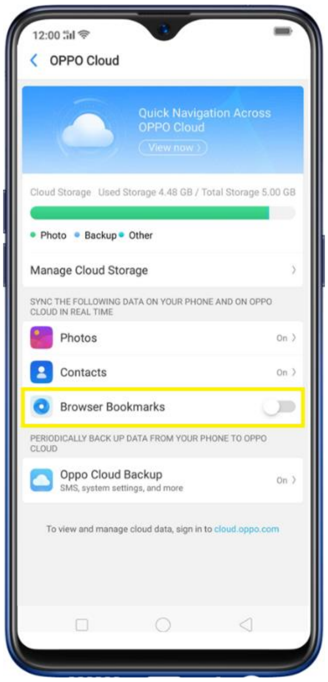
2018/09

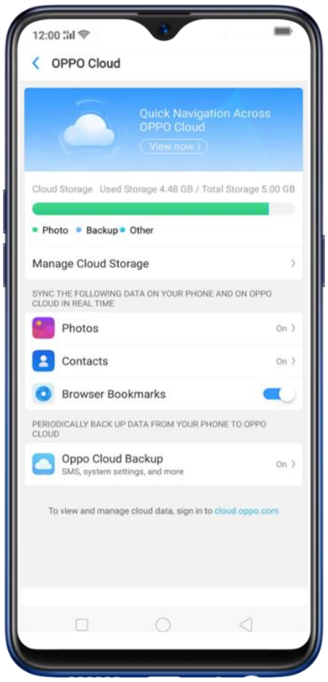
09/14 17:41
8 contacts

**Note**: Contacts from 3rd party such Gmail and Outlook will not be synced to OPPO

Cloud.

3. **Browser Bookmarks.** To auto save browser bookmarks toggle **Browser Bookmarks** to blue.

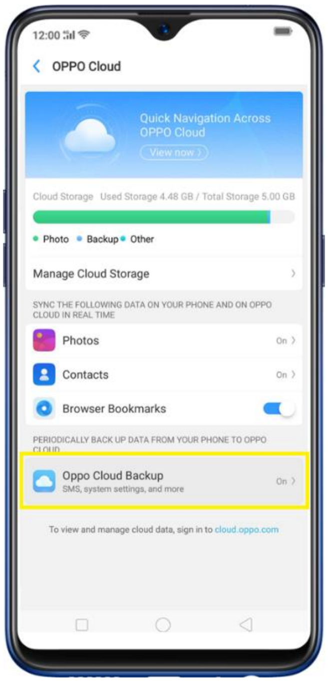

12:00
OPPO Cloud
Quick Navigation Across OPPO Cloud
View now
Cloud Storage Used Storage 4.48 GB / Total Storage 5.00 GB
Photo
Backup
Other
Manage Cloud Storage
SYNC THE FOLLOWING DATA ON YOUR PHONE AND ON OPPO CLOUD IN REAL TIME
Photos On
Contacts On
Browser Bookmarks
PERIODICALLY BACK UP DATA FROM YOUR PHONE TO OPPO CLOUD
Oppo Cloud Backup
SMS, system settings, and more
On
To view and manage cloud data, sign in to cloud.oppo.com


12:00
OPPO Cloud
Quick Navigation Across OPPO Cloud
View now
Cloud Storage Used Storage 4.48 GB / Total Storage 5.00 GB
Photo
Backup
Other
Manage Cloud Storage
SYNC THE FOLLOWING DATA ON YOUR PHONE AND ON OPPO CLOUD IN REAL TIME
Photos On
Contacts On
Browser Bookmarks
PERIODICALLY BACK UP DATA FROM YOUR PHONE TO OPPO CLOUD
Oppo Cloud Backup
SMS, system settings, and more
On
To view and manage cloud data, sign in to cloud.oppo.com

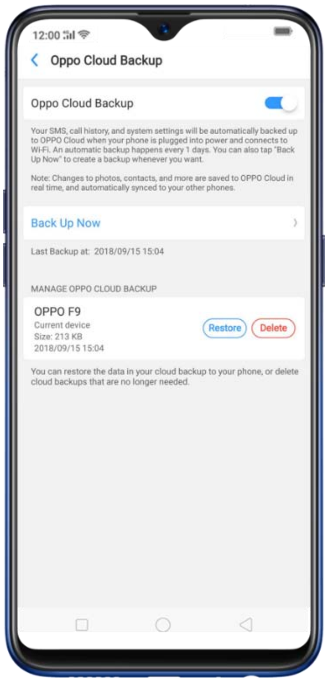
## Back up data from your phone to OPPO Cloud.

OPPO Cloud Backup. You can periodically back up data such SMS, system settings, and more to OPPO Cloud. (**Note:** Photos can only be synced real time but OPPO Cloud backup is unable).

To enable OPPO Cloud Backup, toggle **OPPO Cloud Backup** to blue. Your data will automatically back up to OPPO Cloud when plugged into power and is connected to Wi-Fi. (Note: Automatic backup happens once daily).


12:00
OPPO Cloud
Quick Navigation Across OPPO Cloud
View now
Cloud Storage
Used Storage 4.48 GB / Total Storage 5.00 GB
Photo
Backup
Other
Manage Cloud Storage
SYNC THE FOLLOWING DATA ON YOUR PHONE AND ON OPPO CLOUD IN REAL TIME
Photos
On
Contacts
On
Browser Bookmarks
PERIODICALLY BACK UP DATA FROM YOUR PHONE TO OPPO CLOUD
Oppo Cloud Backup
SMS, system settings, and more
On

To view and manage cloud data, sign in to cloud.oppo.com


12:00
Oppo Cloud Backup
Oppo Cloud Backup

Your SMS, call history, and system settings will be automatically backed up to OPPO Cloud when your phone is plugged into power and connects to Wi-Fi. An automatic backup happens every 1 days. You can also tap "Back Up Now" to create a backup whenever you want.

Note: Changes to photos, contacts, and more are saved to OPPO Cloud in real time, and automatically synced to your other phones.

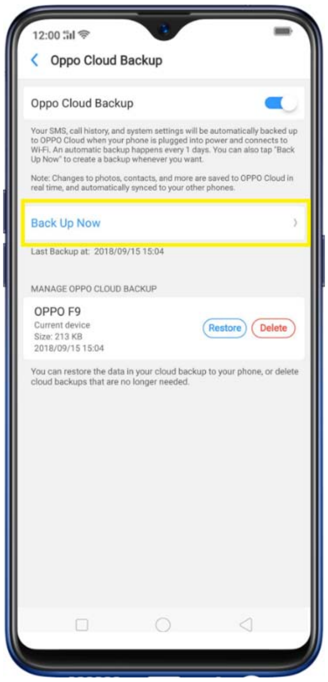
Back Up Now
MANAGE OPPO CLOUD BACKUP
Restore
Delete

Last Backup at: 2018/09/15 15:04

OPPO F9
Current device
Size: 213 KB
2018/09/15 15:04

You can restore the data in your cloud backup to your phone, or delete cloud backups that are no longer needed.

You can also tap **Back Up Now** to create a backup whenever you want. You may also **Restore** data on your Cloud backup or **Delete** if no longer needed.


12:00
Oppo Cloud Backup
Oppo Cloud Backup

Your SMS, call history, and system settings will be automatically backed up to OPPO Cloud when your phone is plugged into power and connects to Wi-Fi. An automatic backup happens every 1 days. You can also tap "Back Up Now" to create a backup whenever you want.

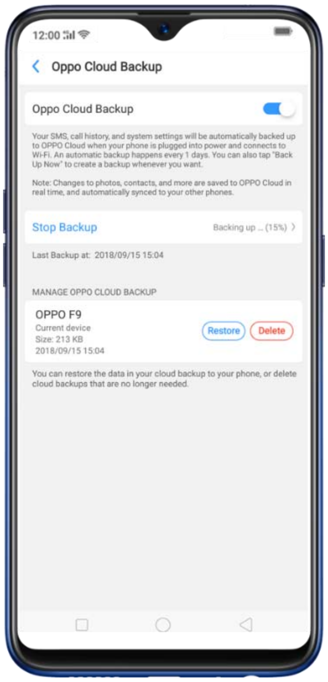
Note: Changes to photos, contacts, and more are saved to OPPO Cloud in real time, and automatically synced to your other phones.

Back Up Now
MANAGE OPPO CLOUD BACKUP
Restore
Delete

Last Backup at: 2018/09/15 15:04

OPPO F9
Current device
Size: 213 KB
2018/09/15 15:04

You can restore the data in your cloud backup to your phone, or delete cloud backups that are no longer needed.


12:00
Oppo Cloud Backup
Oppo Cloud Backup

Your SMS, call history, and system settings will be automatically backed up to OPPO Cloud when your phone is plugged into power and connects to Wi-Fi. An automatic backup happens every 1 days. You can also tap "Back Up Now" to create a backup whenever you want.

Note: Changes to photos, contacts, and more are saved to OPPO Cloud in real time, and automatically synced to your other phones.

Stop Backup
MANAGE OPPO CLOUD BACKUP
Restore
Delete

Backing up ... (15%)

Last Backup at: 2018/09/15 15:04

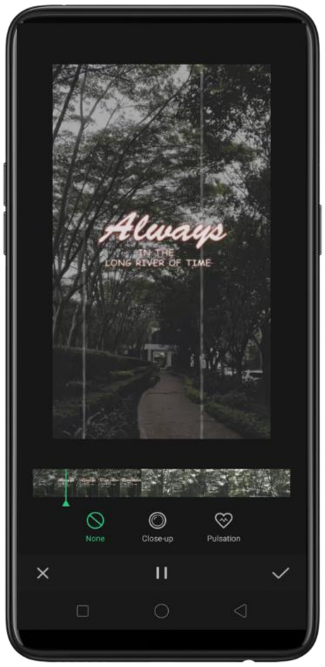
OPPO F9
Current device
Size: 213 KB
2018/09/15 15:04

You can restore the data in your cloud backup to your phone, or delete cloud backups that are no longer needed.

To view and manage cloud data, sign in to *cloud.oppo.com.*

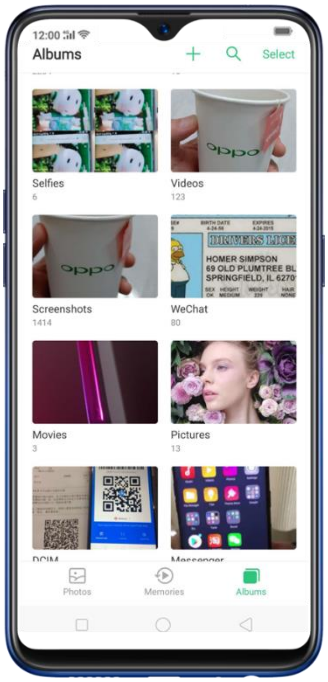
## 4.8 New Features of video

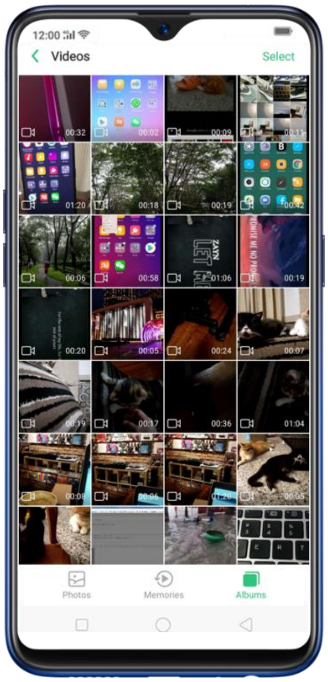
Impress your social media followers and friends with your videos. You can now add close-up and pulsation on the videos you have taken to make it more fun and artsy.

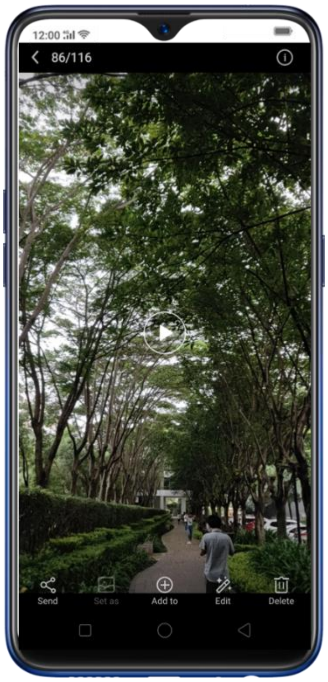

Always
IN THE
LONG RIVER OF TIME
None
Close-up
Pulsation

### Speed of the video

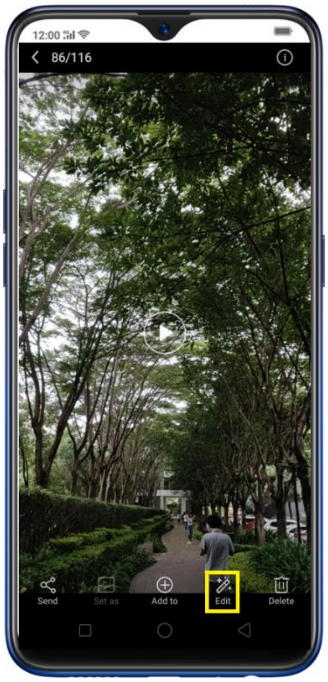
1. **Record a video first**. Open your camera app, choose Video then click the Record button, or press either volume button, to start and stop recording. You can choose between 720p and 1080p.
2. Once you are done with the recording, go to [**Photos app**] > [**Albums**] > [**Video Folder**] then choose the video that you want to edit.

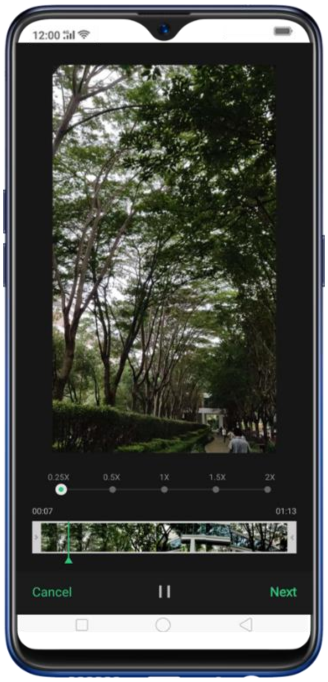

12:00
Albums
Select
Selfies
6
Videos
123
Screenshots
1414
WeChat
80
Movies
3
Pictures
13
DCIM
Messenger
Photos
Memories
Albums


12:00
Videos
Select
Photos
Memories
Albums


12:00
86/116
Send
Set as
Add to
Edit
Delete

3. Click **Edit** and you will be asked what speed you would like the video to play. The slowest is 0.25X and fastest is at 2X. The normal one is 1X. Once done choosing the speed, click **Next**.

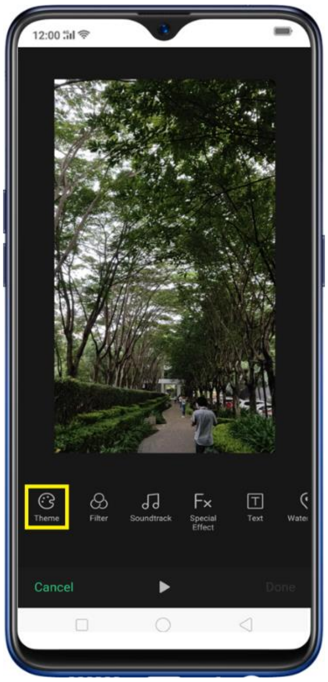

12:00
86/116
Send
Set as
Add to
Edit
Delete

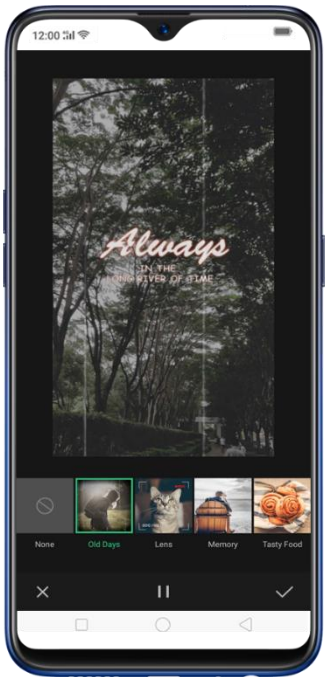

12:00
0.25X
0.5X
1X
1.5X
2X
00:07
01:13
Cancel
Next

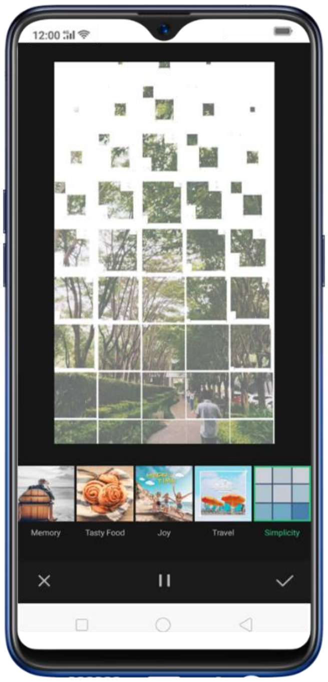
## Theme of the video

1. To choose a theme for your video, click **[Edit] > [Choose the Speed]** > [**Next**] >

[**Themes**]. You can choose from None, Old Days, Lens, Memory, Tasty Food/Delicacy, Joy, Travel, and Simplicity.


12:00
Theme
Filter
Soundtrack
Special Effect
Text
Wate
Cancel
Done

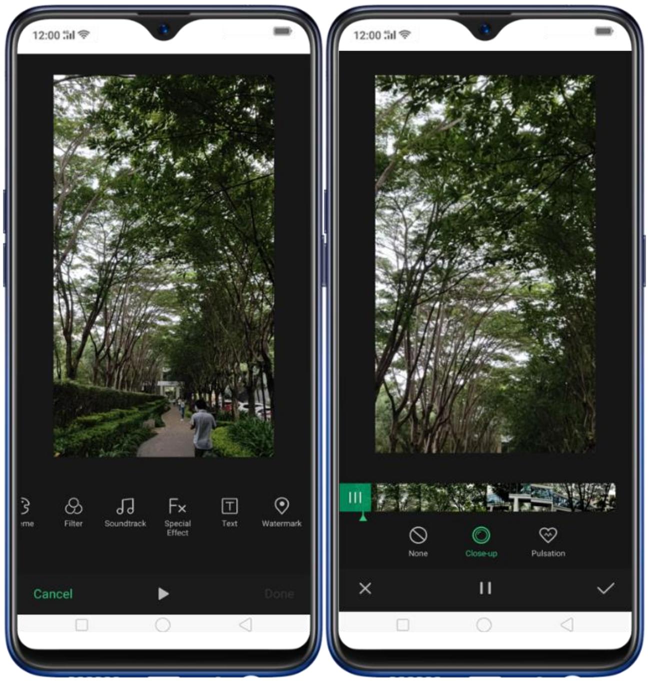

12:00
Always
IN THE
RIVER OF TIME
None
Old Days
Lens
Memory
Tasty Food


12:00
Memory
Tasty Food
Joy
Travel
Simplicity

2. Click ▶ / ☒ to play and pause the preview and click ✓ when you have chosen a theme, then click **Done**. Click ☒ to exit Theme and click **Cancel** if you don't want to add a theme to your video.

Add Special Effect to the Video

1. To choose a special effect for your video, click [**Edit**] > [**Choose the Speed**] > [**Next**] > [**Fx Special Effect**]. You can choose from None, Close-up, and Pulsation.



2. Click ▶ / ☒ to play and pause the preview and click ✓ when you have chosen a special effect, then click **Done**. Click ☒ to exit Fx Special Effect and click **Cancel** if you don't want to add any special effect to your video.

## 4.9 Smart Driving

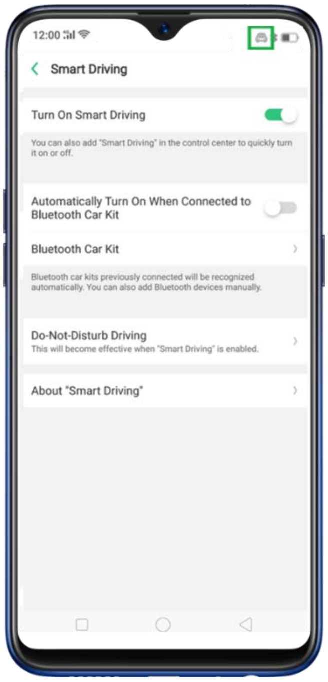
A small distraction when driving can cause accident. Even if we really don't want to answer a phone call or have glimpse about who messaged us or what the notification is for, but the urge to check it is so strong and our focus on the road is diverted. It has been said that checking the phone is one of the biggest reasons for senseless accidents on the road and we wanted to avoid that and save lives instead.

The features of Smart Driving:

- Blocks notifications and reminders to reduce disturbance.
- Announce incoming calls and messages.
- Answer or end calls via voice control.

1. To enable Smart Driving, go to [**Settings**] > [**Smart & Convenient**] > [**Smart Driving**] toggle [**Turn On Smart Driving**] to green to enable. Once enabled you will

see 🚗 on the top-right corner of your phone and also you will receive a notification that smart driving is on.



Smart Driving

Turn On Smart Driving ●

You can also add "Smart Driving" in the control center to quickly turn it on or off.

Automatically Turn On When Connected to Bluetooth Car Kit ○

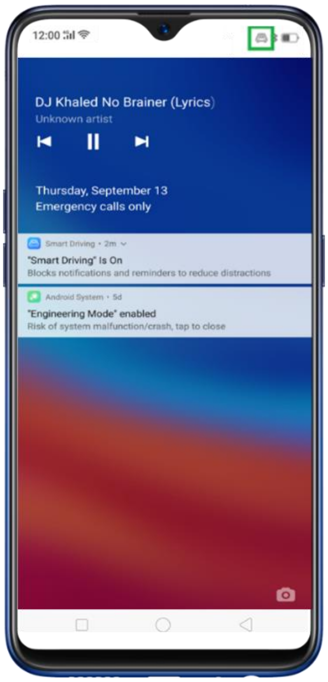
Bluetooth Car Kit

Bluetooth car kits previously connected will be recognized automatically. You can also add Bluetooth devices manually.

Do-Not-Disturb Driving

This will become effective when "Smart Driving" is enabled.

About "Smart Driving"



DJ Khaled No Brainer (Lyrics)

Unknown artist

Thursday, September 13

Emergency calls only

Smart Driving • 2m

"Smart Driving" Is On

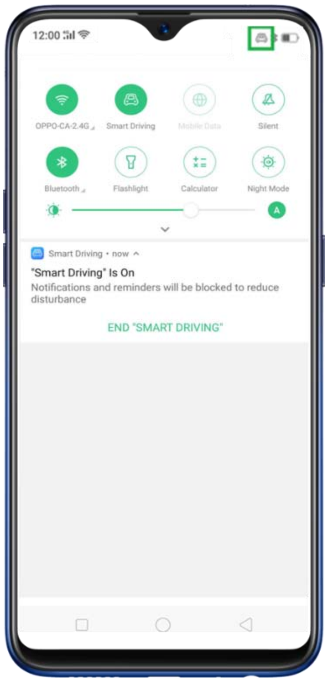
Blocks notifications and reminders to reduce distractions

Android System • 5d

"Engineering Mode" enabled

Risk of system malfunction/crash, tap to close

You can also quickly launch Smart Driving on the Control Center, just swipe down from the very top of any screen then click 🚗 to enable it.



Smart Driving • now

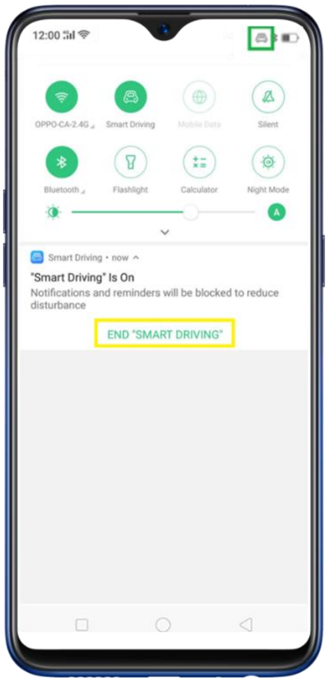
"Smart Driving" Is On

Notifications and reminders will be blocked to reduce disturbance

END "SMART DRIVING"

To turn off/end Smart Driving:

- From the Control Center, just swipe down from the very top of any screen then click 🚗 to end it.
- From the settings, go to [Settings] > [Smart & Convenient] > [Smart Driving] > [Turn On Smart Driving] toggle to end Smart Driving.
- From the notification that you received, just click **END "SMART DRIVING"**



Smart Driving • now

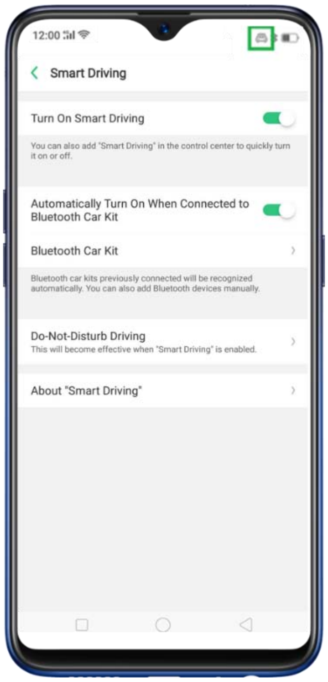
"Smart Driving" Is On

Notifications and reminders will be blocked to reduce disturbance

12:00
OPPO-CA-2.4G
Smart Driving
Mobile Data
Silent
Bluetooth
Flashlight
Calculator
Night Mode
A
END "SMART DRIVING"

2. You can automatically connect to a Bluetooth car kit and those that have been previously paired. To enable this, go to **[Settings] > [Smart & Convenient] > [Smart Driving]** > then toggle **[Automatically Turn On When Connected to Bluetooth Car Kit]** to green to enable.

To add a Bluetooth Car Kit, just click [Bluetooth Car Kit] > [Add Bluetooth Devices Manually] > Scan for Devices then Pair.



Smart Driving

Turn On Smart Driving

You can also add "Smart Driving" in the control center to quickly turn it on or off.

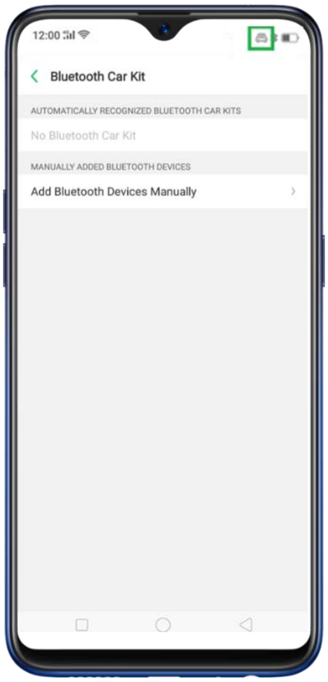
Automatically Turn On When Connected to Bluetooth Car Kit

Bluetooth Car Kit

Bluetooth car kits previously connected will be recognized automatically. You can also add Bluetooth devices manually.

Do-Not-Disturb Driving
This will become effective when "Smart Driving" is enabled.

About "Smart Driving"



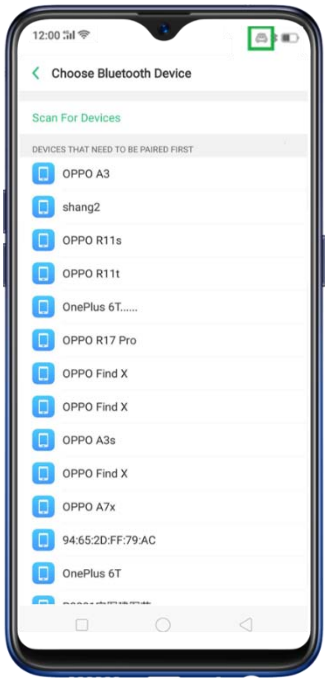
Bluetooth Car Kit

AUTOMATICALLY RECOGNIZED BLUETOOTH CAR KITS

No Bluetooth Car Kit

MANUALLY ADDED BLUETOOTH DEVICES

Add Bluetooth Devices Manually



Choose Bluetooth Device

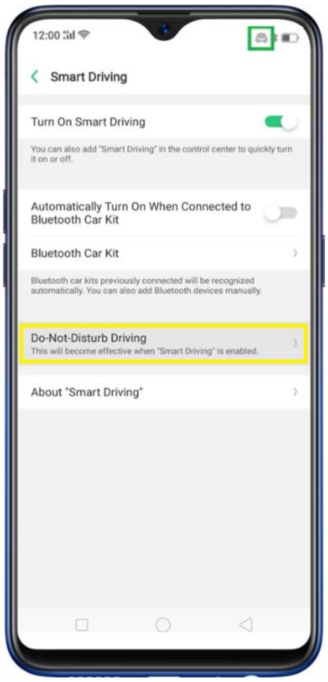
Scan For Devices

DEVICES THAT NEED TO BE PAIRED FIRST

- OPPO A3
- shang2
- OPPO R11s
- OPPO R11t
- OnePlus 6T......
- OPPO R17 Pro
- OPPO Find X
- OPPO Find X
- OPPO A3s
- OPPO Find X
- OPPO A7x
- 94:65:2D:FF:79:AC
- OnePlus 6T

3. You can manage the calls and messages so you won't be disturbed while you are driving. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Smart & Convenient**] > [**Smart Driving**] > [**Do-Not-Disturb Driving**] and manage the following features:

- **Allow the Following Incoming Calls** – you can either decline all or allow calls from anyone. You can allow certain calls and your favorite contacts as well. Click **[Allow the following Incoming Calls]** then manage the calls.



Smart Driving

Turn On Smart Driving

You can also add "Smart Driving" in the control center to quickly turn it on or off.

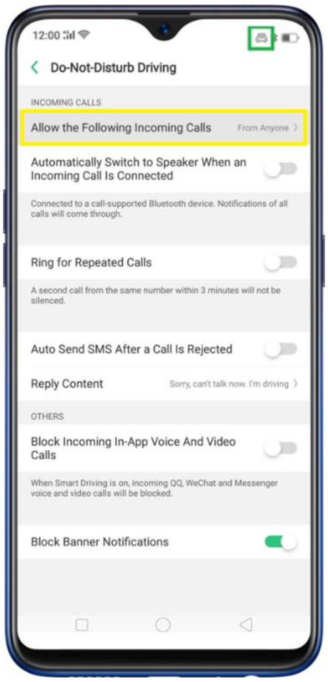
Automatically Turn On When Connected to Bluetooth Car Kit

Bluetooth Car Kit

Bluetooth car kits previously connected will be recognized automatically. You can also add Bluetooth devices manually.

Do-Not-Disturb Driving
This will become effective when "Smart Driving" is enabled.

About "Smart Driving"



Do-Not-Disturb Driving

INCOMING CALLS

Allow the Following Incoming Calls — From Anyone

Automatically Switch to Speaker When an Incoming Call Is Connected

Connected to a call-supported Bluetooth device. Notifications of all calls will come through.

Ring for Repeated Calls

A second call from the same number within 3 minutes will not be silenced.

Auto Send SMS After a Call Is Rejected

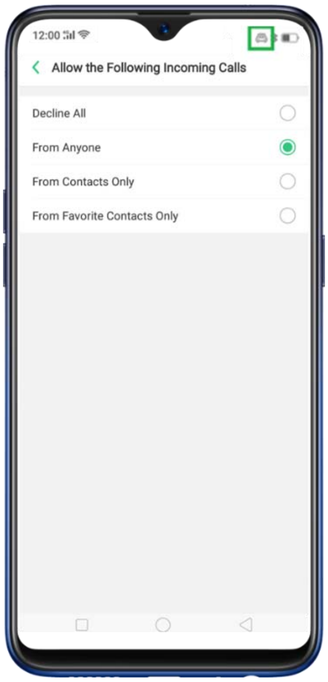
Reply Content — Sorry, can't talk now. I'm driving

OTHERS

Block Incoming In-App Voice And Video Calls

When Smart Driving is on, incoming QQ, WeChat and Messenger voice and video calls will be blocked.

Block Banner Notifications

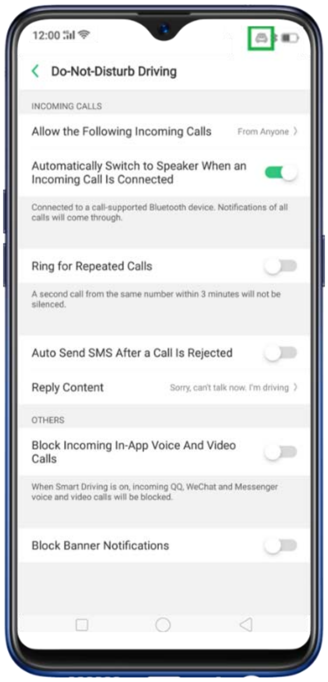


Allow the Following Incoming Calls

Decline All ○
From Anyone ●
From Contacts Only ○
From Favorite Contacts Only ○

- **Automatically Switch To Speaker When an Incoming Call Is Connected-**

so you can keep your hands on the wheel and eyes on the road. Toggle to green to enable.



12:00

Do-Not-Disturb Driving

INCOMING CALLS

Allow the Following Incoming Calls — From Anyone

Automatically Switch to Speaker When an Incoming Call Is Connected

Connected to a call-supported Bluetooth device. Notifications of all calls will come through.

Ring for Repeated Calls

A second call from the same number within 3 minutes will not be silenced.

Auto Send SMS After a Call Is Rejected

Reply Content — Sorry, can't talk now. I'm driving

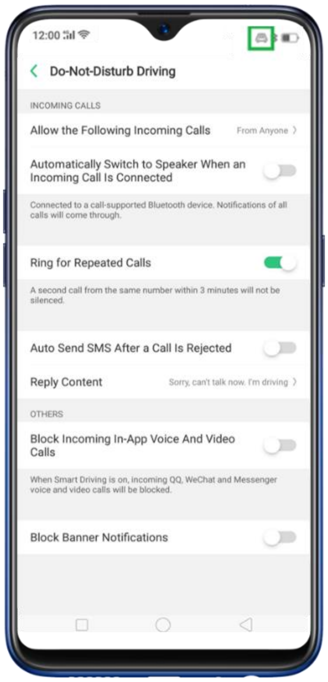
OTHERS

Block Incoming In-App Voice And Video Calls

When Smart Driving is on, incoming QQ, WeChat and Messenger voice and video calls will be blocked.

Block Banner Notifications

- **Ring for Repeated Calls –** A second call from the same number within 3 minutes will keep ringing. Toggle to green to enable.



12:00

Do-Not-Disturb Driving

INCOMING CALLS

Allow the Following Incoming Calls — From Anyone

Automatically Switch to Speaker When an Incoming Call Is Connected

Connected to a call-supported Bluetooth device. Notifications of all calls will come through.

Ring for Repeated Calls

A second call from the same number within 3 minutes will not be silenced.

Auto Send SMS After a Call Is Rejected

Reply Content — Sorry, can't talk now. I'm driving

OTHERS

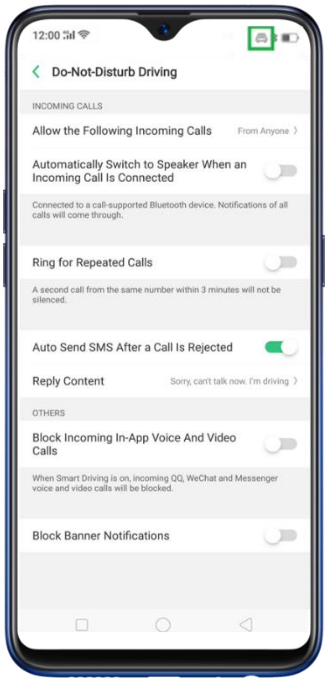
Block Incoming In-App Voice And Video Calls

When Smart Driving is on, incoming QQ, WeChat and Messenger voice and video calls will be blocked.

Block Banner Notifications

- **Auto Send SMS After a Call is Rejected –** For courtesy and for the other person on the line would know why the call got rejected. Toggle to green to enable.

You can even customize the SMS that will be sent. Just click **[Reply Content]** and you can personalized that SMS that will be sent after a call has been rejected.



12:00

Do-Not-Disturb Driving

INCOMING CALLS

Allow the Following Incoming Calls — From Anyone

Automatically Switch to Speaker When an Incoming Call Is Connected

Connected to a call-supported Bluetooth device. Notifications of all calls will come through.

Ring for Repeated Calls

A second call from the same number within 3 minutes will not be silenced.

Auto Send SMS After a Call Is Rejected

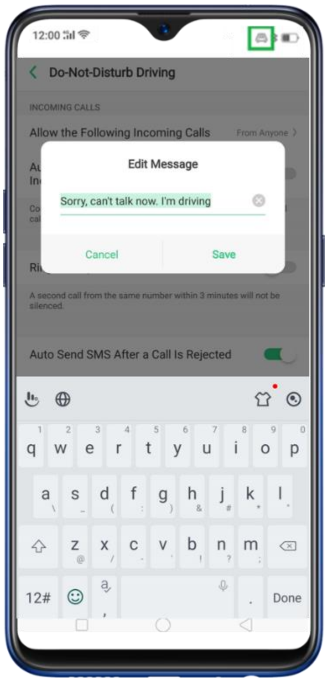
Reply Content — Sorry, can't talk now. I'm driving

OTHERS

Block Incoming In-App Voice And Video Calls

When Smart Driving is on, incoming QQ, WeChat and Messenger voice and video calls will be blocked.

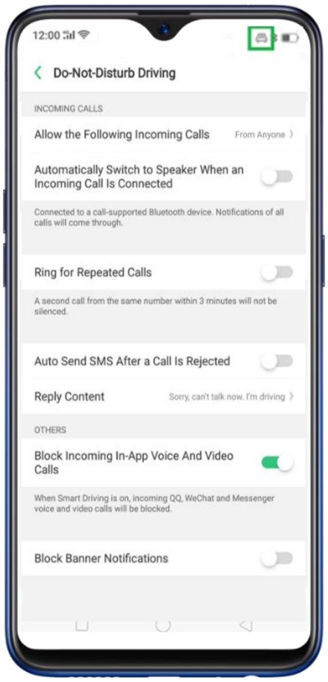
Block Banner Notifications



Edit Message

Sorry, can't talk now. I'm driving

- **Block Incoming In-App Voice And Video Calls** – when this is enabled video calls from QQ and WeChat will be blocked. Toggle to green to enable.



12:00

Do-Not-Disturb Driving

INCOMING CALLS

Allow the Following Incoming Calls — From Anyone

Automatically Switch to Speaker When an Incoming Call Is Connected

Connected to a call-supported Bluetooth device. Notifications of all calls will come through.

Ring for Repeated Calls

A second call from the same number within 3 minutes will not be silenced.

Auto Send SMS After a Call Is Rejected

Reply Content — Sorry, can't talk now. I'm driving

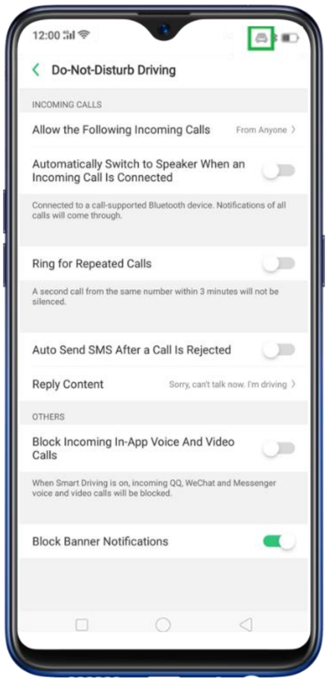
OTHERS

Block Incoming In-App Voice And Video Calls

When Smart Driving is on, incoming QQ, WeChat and Messenger voice and video calls will be blocked.

Block Banner Notifications

- **Block Banner Notifications –**So you won't be distracted by the sound of the notifications while driving. Toggle to green to enable.



12:00

Do-Not-Disturb Driving

INCOMING CALLS

Allow the Following Incoming Calls — From Anyone

Automatically Switch to Speaker When an Incoming Call Is Connected ○

Connected to a call-supported Bluetooth device. Notifications of all calls will come through.

Ring for Repeated Calls ○

A second call from the same number within 3 minutes will not be silenced.

Auto Send SMS After a Call Is Rejected ○

Reply Content — Sorry, can't talk now. I'm driving

OTHERS

Block Incoming In-App Voice And Video Calls ○

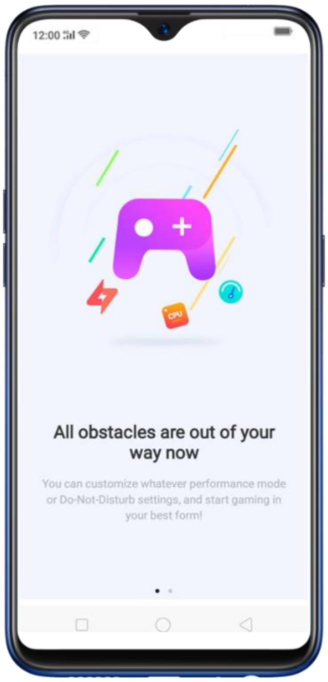
When Smart Driving is on, incoming QQ, WeChat and Messenger voice and video calls will be blocked.

Block Banner Notifications ●

**Note:** You need a network connection for this to work.

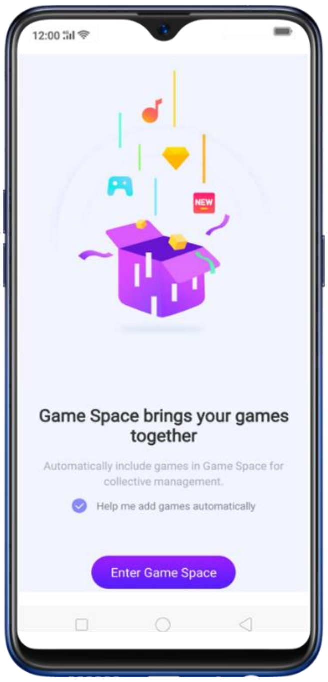
## 4.10 Game Space

Game space will definitely make each gamer happy. Imagine putting all your favorite games in one place. Making it easy to find game that you would want to play. They will be gathered in one application which serves as a hub so it wouldn't be scattered around your home screen. Now let's enter game space.



All obstacles are out of your way now

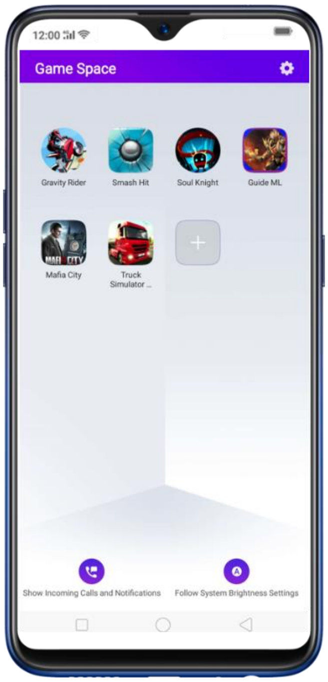
You can customize whatever performance mode or Do-Not-Disturb settings, and start gaming in your best form!


12:00
NEW
Enter Game Space

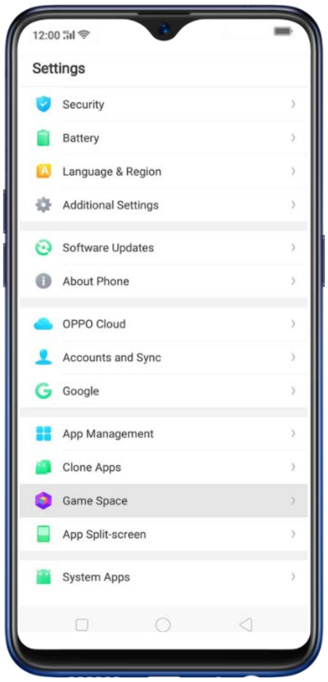
Game Space brings your games together

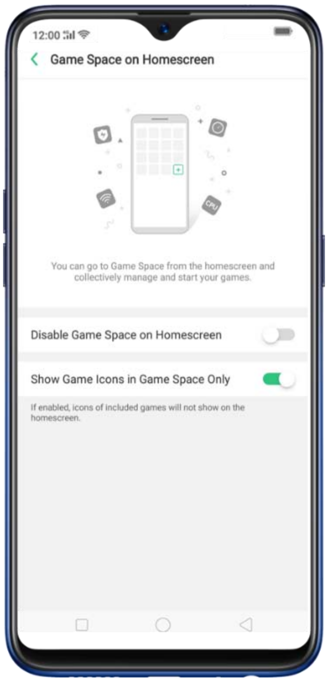
Automatically include games in Game Space for collective management.

☑ Help me add games automatically


12:00
Game Space
Gravity Rider
Smash Hit
Soul Knight
Guide ML
Mafia City
Truck Simulator ...
+
Show Incoming Calls and Notifications
Follow System Brightness Settings

To enjoy Game Space, Go to [**Settings**] > [**Game Space**] > [**Game Space on Homescreen**] and switch [**Show Game Icons in Game Space only**] to green to show on the home screen. (**Note**: Disabling Game space on the home screen means Game Space app will not show any more on the home screen).


12:00
Settings
Security
Battery
Language & Region
Additional Settings
Software Updates
About Phone
OPPO Cloud
Accounts and Sync
Google
App Management
Clone Apps
Game Space
App Split-screen
System Apps

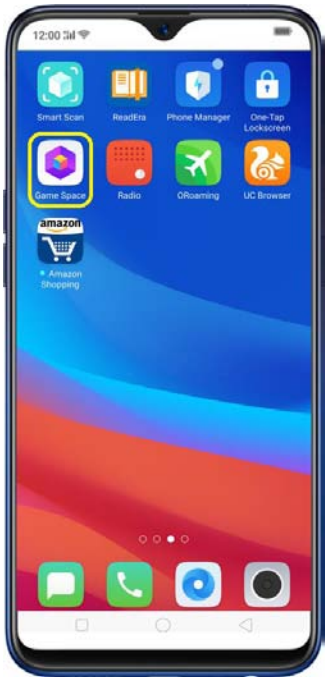

12:00
Game Space on Homescreen
CPU

You can go to Game Space from the homescreen and collectively manage and start your games.

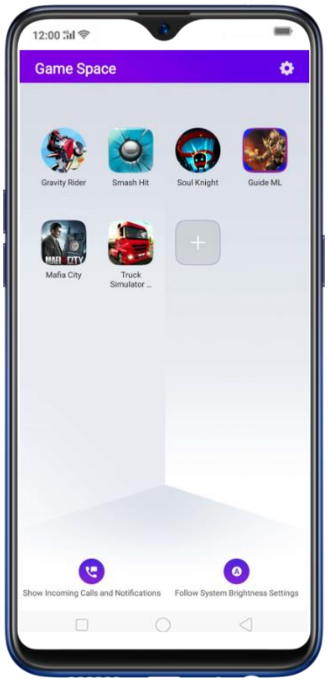
Disable Game Space on Homescreen ○

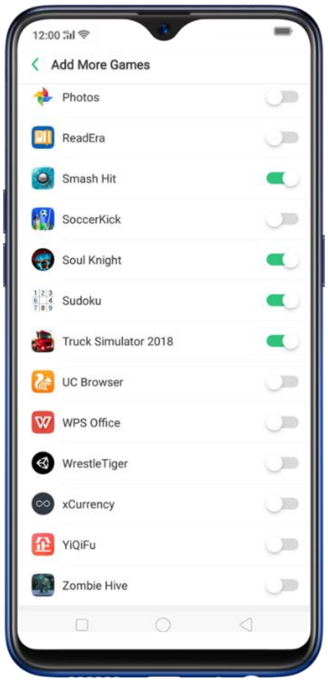
Show Game Icons in Game Space Only ●

If enabled, icons of included games will not show on the homescreen.

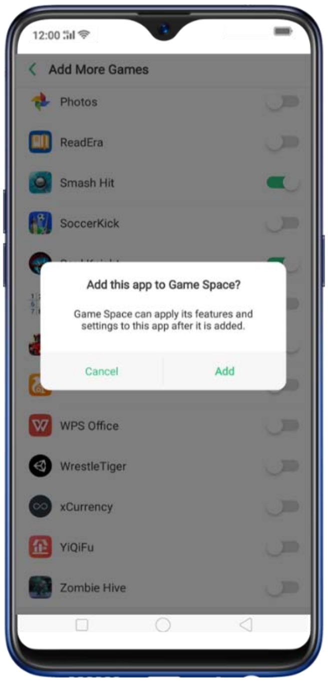

12:00
Smart Scan
ReadEra
Phone Manager
One-Tap Lockscreen
Game Space
Radio
ORoaming
UC Browser
amazon
Amazon Shopping

When you want to quickly add games that you have already downloaded but scattered around your home screen, go to the **Game Space App** on the home screen, click + to add games that you've downloaded then toggle to green the game that you want to transfer to Game Space.


12:00
Game Space
Gravity Rider
Smash Hit
Soul Knight
Guide ML
Mafia City
Truck Simulator ...
+
Show Incoming Calls and Notifications
Follow System Brightness Settings


12:00
Add More Games

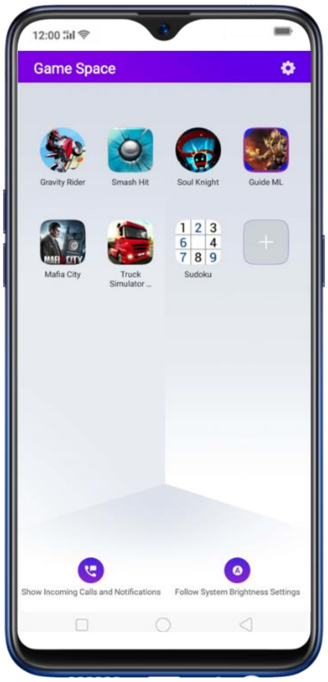
Photos ○
ReadEra ○
Smash Hit ●
SoccerKick ○
Soul Knight ●
Sudoku ●
Truck Simulator 2018 ●
UC Browser ○
WPS Office ○
WrestleTiger ○
xCurrency ○
YiQiFu ○
Zombie Hive ○


12:00
Add More Games
Photos
ReadEra
Smash Hit
SoccerKick
WPS Office
WrestleTiger
xCurrency
YiQiFu
Zombie Hive

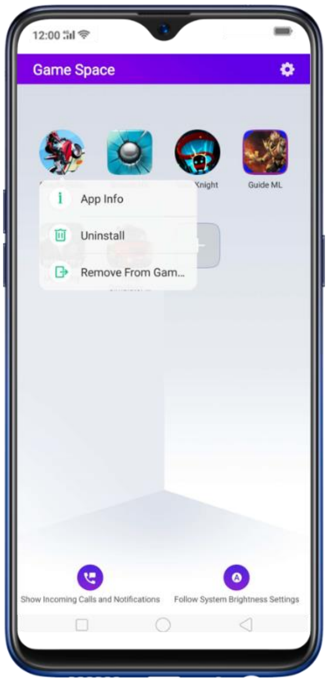
Add this app to Game Space?

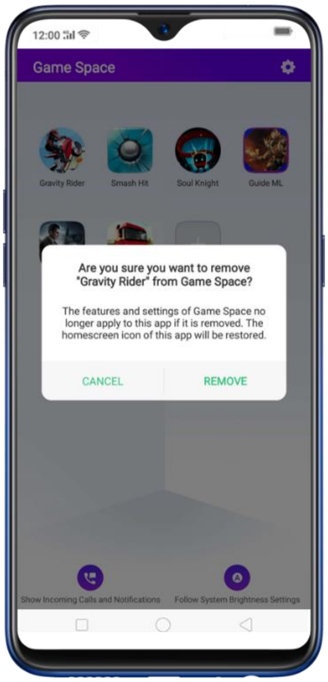
Game Space can apply its features and settings to this app after it is added.

Cancel Add


12:00
Game Space
Gravity Rider
Smash Hit
Soul Knight
Guide ML
Mafia City
Truck Simulator ...
Sudoku
+
Show Incoming Calls and Notifications
Follow System Brightness Settings

To remove Games, press and hold the game that you want to be deleted and choose **Remove From Games** if you are sure to delete it, click **REMOVE**. You can only remove games one at a time when doing on the Game Space app.

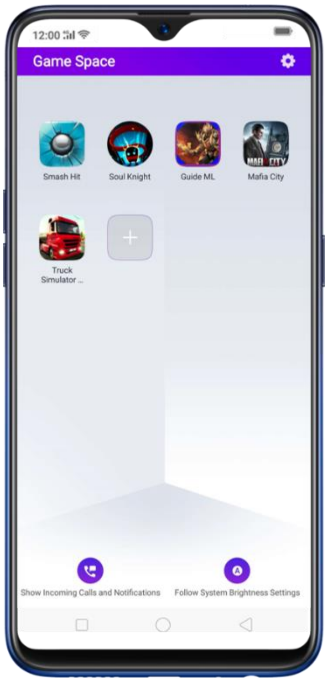

12:00
Game Space
Knight
Guide ML
App Info
Uninstall
Remove From Gam...
Show Incoming Calls and Notifications
Follow System Brightness Settings


12:00
Game Space
Gravity Rider
Smash Hit
Soul Knight
Guide ML
Show Incoming Calls and Notifications
Follow System Brightness Settings

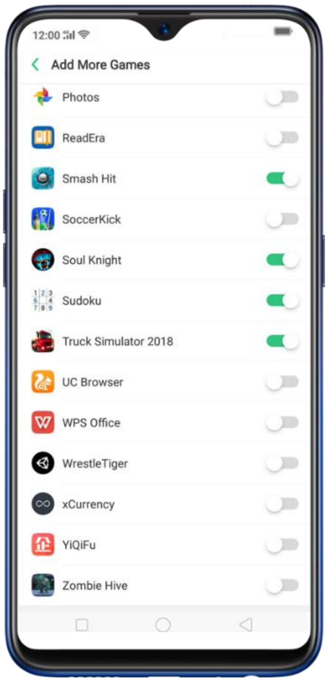
Are you sure you want to remove "Gravity Rider" from Game Space?

The features and settings of Game Space no longer apply to this app if it is removed. The homescreen icon of this app will be restored.

CANCEL REMOVE

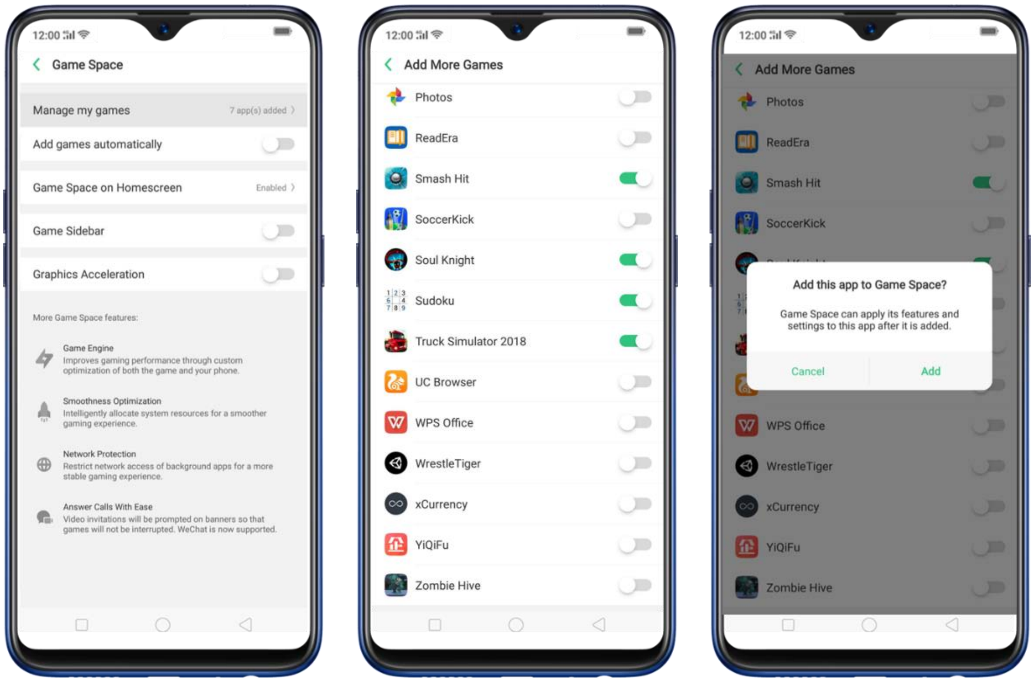

12:00
Game Space
Smash Hit
Soul Knight
Guide ML
Mafia City
Truck Simulator ...
Show Incoming Calls and Notifications
Follow System Brightness Settings

You can also go to [**Settings**] > [**Game Space**] > [**Manage my game**] > [**Add More Games**] then toggle the game that you want to be removed on Game Space. You can remove as many games as you want when doing it on the settings.


12:00
Add More Games

- Photos ○
- ReadEra ○
- Smash Hit ●
- SoccerKick ○
- Soul Knight ●
- Sudoku ●
- Truck Simulator 2018 ●
- UC Browser ○
- WPS Office ○
- WrestleTiger ○
- xCurrency ○
- YiQiFu ○
- Zombie Hive ○

You can also go to [**Settings**] > [**Game Space**] > [**Manage my games**] > [**Add More Games**] then toggle to green the game that you want to transfer to Game Space.



Game Space

Manage my games — 7 app(s) added

Add games automatically ○

Game Space on Homescreen — Enabled

Game Sidebar ○

Graphics Acceleration ○

More Game Space features:

Game Engine — Improves gaming performance through custom optimization of both the game and your phone.

Smoothness Optimization — Intelligently allocate system resources for a smoother gaming experience.

Network Protection — Restrict network access of background apps for a more stable gaming experience.

Answer Calls With Ease — Video invitations will be prompted on banners so that games will not be interrupted. WeChat is now supported.

Add More Games

Photos ○

ReadEra ○

Smash Hit ●

SoccerKick ○

Soul Knight ●

Sudoku ●

Truck Simulator 2018 ●

UC Browser ○

WPS Office ○

WrestleTiger ○

xCurrency ○

YiQiFu ○

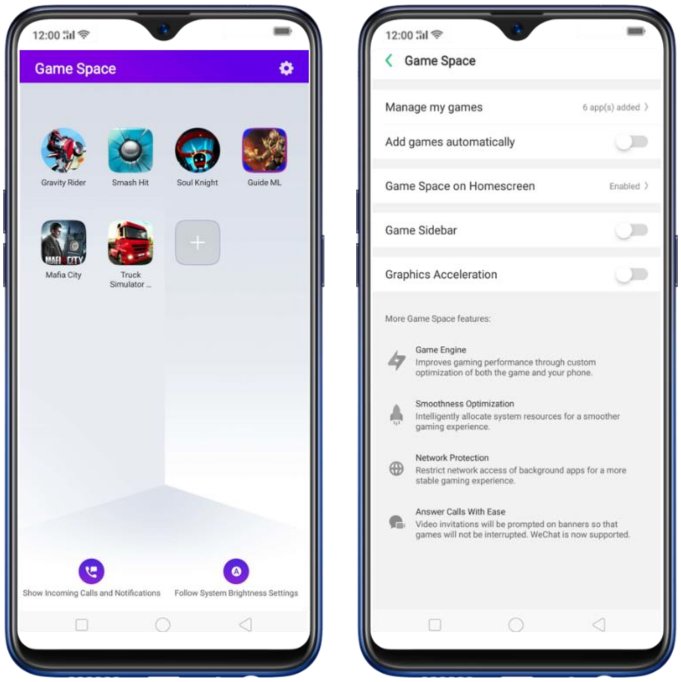
Zombie Hive ○

Add this app to Game Space?

Game Space can apply its features and settings to this app after it is added.

Cancel | Add

For quick shortcut to Game Space settings, click ⚙ on the top-right corner of the Game Space app.



Game Space

Manage my games — 6 app(s) added

Add games automatically ○

Game Space on Homescreen — Enabled

Game Sidebar ○

Graphics Acceleration ○

More Game Space features:

Game Engine — Improves gaming performance through custom optimization of both the game and your phone.

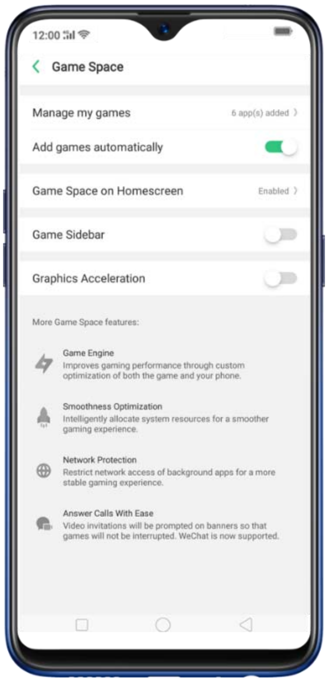
Smoothness Optimization — Intelligently allocate system resources for a smoother gaming experience.

Network Protection — Restrict network access of background apps for a more stable gaming experience.

Answer Calls With Ease — Video invitations will be prompted on banners so that games will not be interrupted. WeChat is now supported.

## Game Space Settings

- **Add games automatically**. For games to be added to Game Space automatically, click [**Settings]** > **[Game Space]** and toggle **[Add games automatically]** to green to enable.



Game Space

Manage my games 6 app(s) added

Add games automatically ●

Game Space on Homescreen Enabled

Game Sidebar ○

Graphics Acceleration ○

More Game Space features:

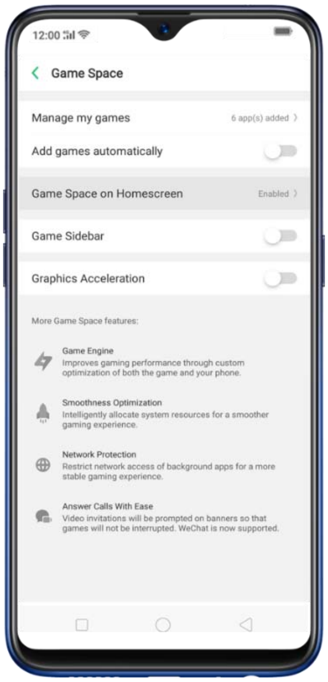
Game Engine
Improves gaming performance through custom optimization of both the game and your phone.

Smoothness Optimization
Intelligently allocate system resources for a smoother gaming experience.

Network Protection
Restrict network access of background apps for a more stable gaming experience.

Answer Calls With Ease
Video invitations will be prompted on banners so that games will not be interrupted. WeChat is now supported.

- **Game Space on Homescreen.** Go to [**Settings**] > [**Game Space**] > [**Game Space on Homescreen**] and switch [**Show Game Icons in Game Space only**] to green to show on the home screen. (**Note**: Disabling Game space on the home screen means Game Space app will not show any more on the home screen).



Game Space

Manage my games 6 app(s) added

Add games automatically ○

Game Space on Homescreen Enabled

Game Sidebar ○

Graphics Acceleration ○

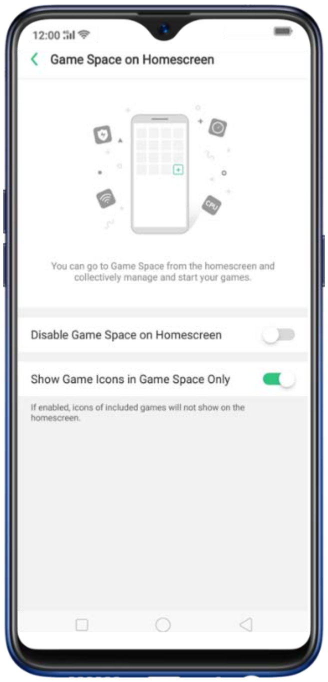
More Game Space features:

Game Engine
Improves gaming performance through custom optimization of both the game and your phone.

Smoothness Optimization
Intelligently allocate system resources for a smoother gaming experience.

Network Protection
Restrict network access of background apps for a more stable gaming experience.

Answer Calls With Ease
Video invitations will be prompted on banners so that games will not be interrupted. WeChat is now supported.



Game Space on Homescreen

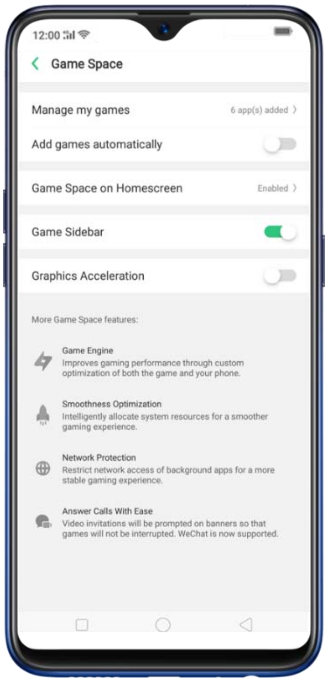
You can go to Game Space from the homescreen and collectively manage and start your games.

Disable Game Space on Homescreen ○

Show Game Icons in Game Space Only ●

If enabled, icons of included games will not show on the homescreen.

- **Game Space Sidebar.** This will enable Smart Sidebar to show on the side when you are playing games. To enable, go to [**Settings**] > [**Game Space**] > and toggle [**Game Sidebar**] to green to enable.



12:00

Game Space

Manage my games — 6 app(s) added

Add games automatically ○

Game Space on Homescreen — Enabled

Game Sidebar ●

Graphics Acceleration ○

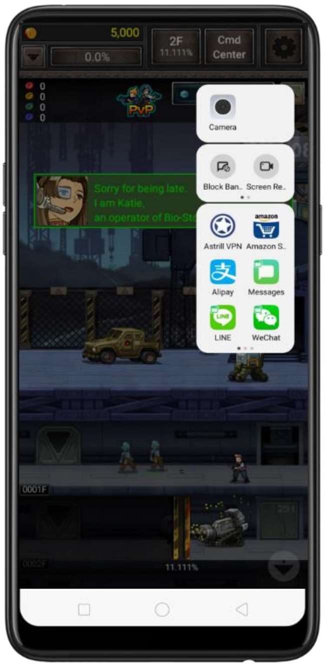
More Game Space features:

Game Engine
Improves gaming performance through custom optimization of both the game and your phone.

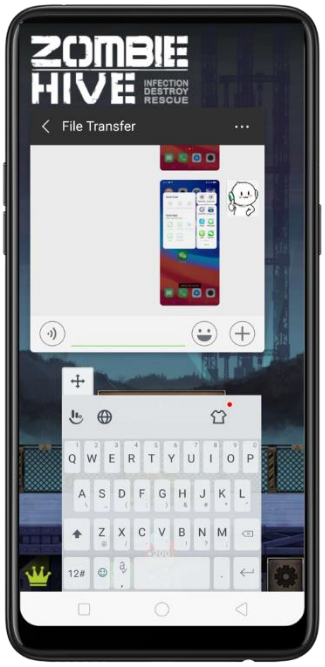
Smoothness Optimization
Intelligently allocate system resources for a smoother gaming experience.

Network Protection
Restrict network access of background apps for a more stable gaming experience.

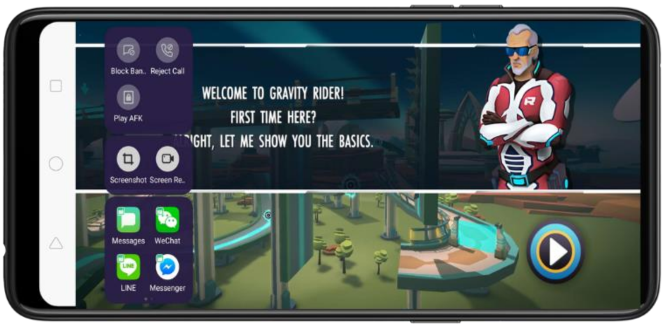
Answer Calls With Ease
Video invitations will be prompted on banners so that games will not be interrupted. WeChat is now supported.



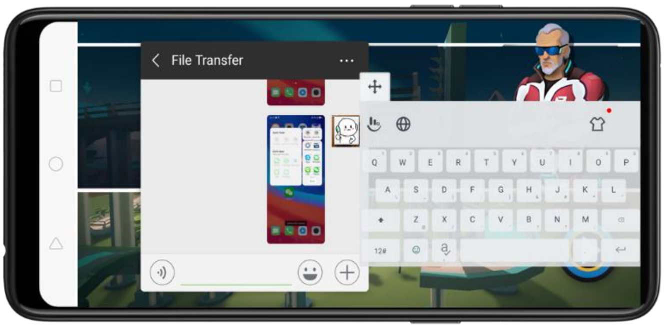
5,000
2F
Cmd Center
0.0%
PvP
Sorry for being late.
I am Katie,
an operator of Bio-St
Camera
Block Ban..
Screen Re..
Astrill VPN
Amazon S..
Alipay
Messages
LINE
WeChat
11.111%



ZOMBIE HIVE
INFECTION DESTROY RESCUE
File Transfer
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M
12#



Block Ban..
Reject Call
Play AFK
Screenshot
Screen Re..
Messages
WeChat
LINE
Messenger
WELCOME TO GRAVITY RIDER!
FIRST TIME HERE?
RIGHT, LET ME SHOW YOU THE BASICS.

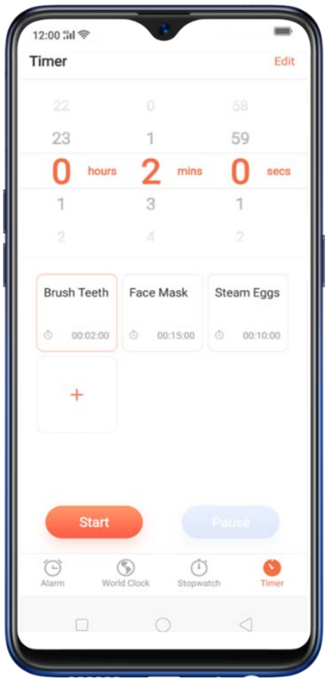


File Transfer
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M
12#

- **Graphics Acceleration.** This will enable vivid graphics when you play games. To enable, go to [**Settings**] > [**Game Space**] > and toggle [**Graphics Acceleration**] to green to enable.

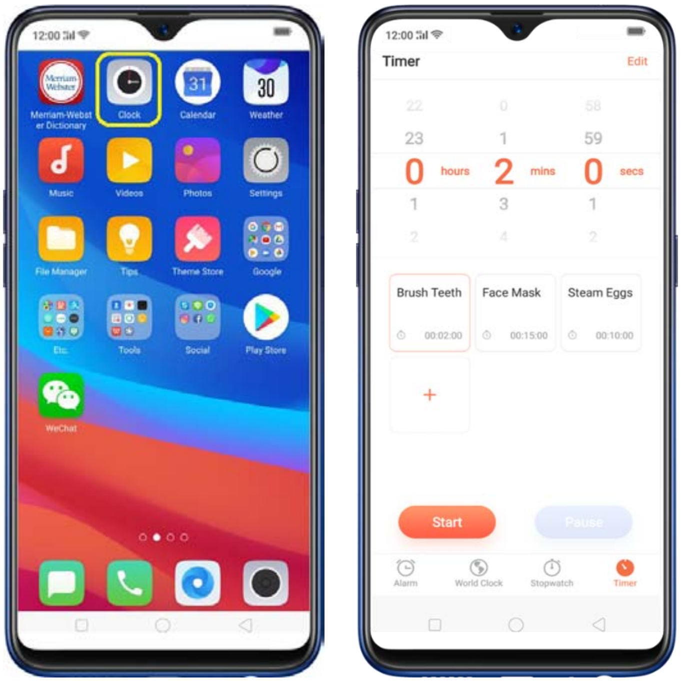
## 4.11 Customizing timer for Clock app

You can now set a timer or countdown for activities that you usually do. You don't need to manually set it each time you'll do something. You can simply save it on the timer and click start when you are ready.


12:00
Timer
Edit
0 hours
2 mins
0 secs
Brush Teeth
00:02:00
Face Mask
00:15:00
Steam Eggs
00:10:00
+
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

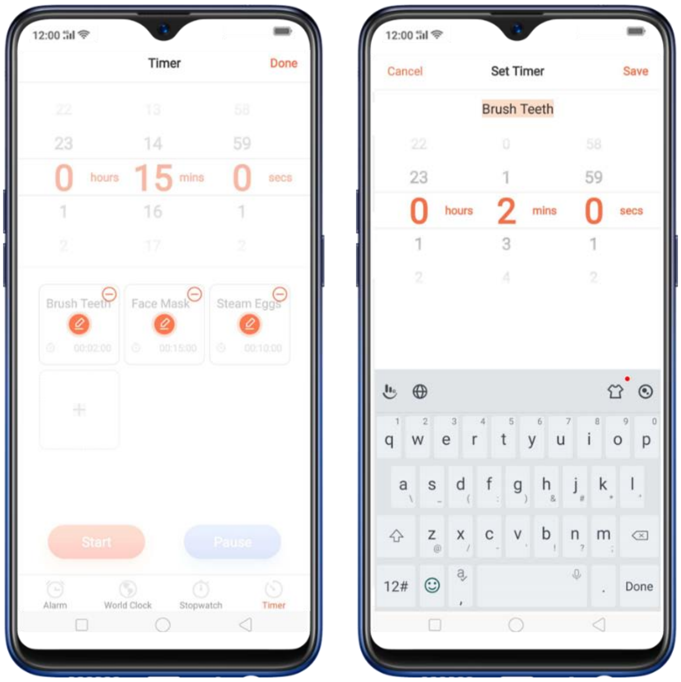
Customizing timer

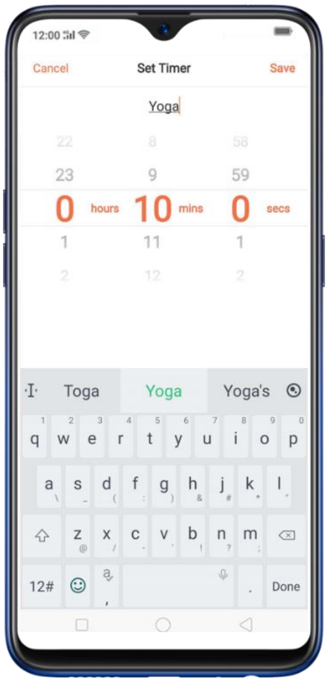
1. On your home screen, click on the **Clock app** and then click **Timer**.

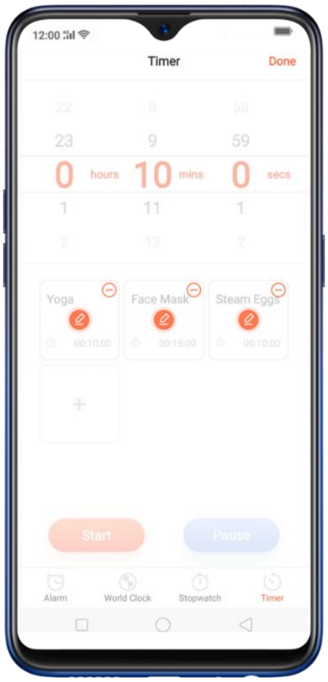

12:00
Merriam-Webster Dictionary
Clock
Calendar
Weather
Music
Videos
Photos
Settings
File Manager
Tips
Theme Store
Google
Etc.
Tools
Social
Play Store
WeChat
Timer
Edit
0 hours 2 mins 0 secs
Brush Teeth 00:02:00
Face Mask 00:15:00
Steam Eggs 00:10:00
+
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

2. There are 3 available activities by default. To change it, choose the activity you want to change then click **Edit** at the top-right portion.

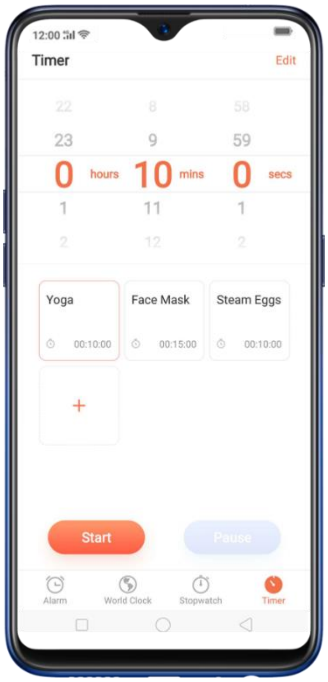
3. Click ✎ to edit the activity, then change the name and time. Click **Save**, then click **Done**.

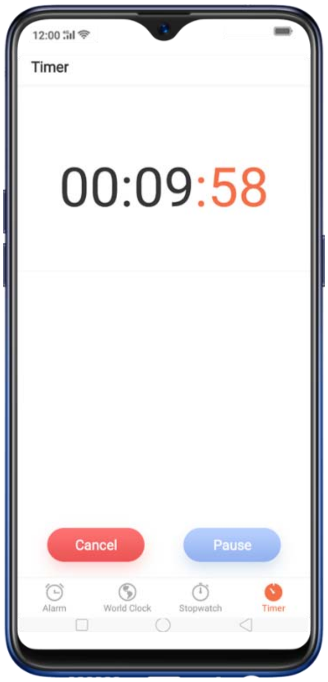

12:00
Timer
Done
0 hours 15 mins 0 secs
Brush Teeth 00:02:00
Face Mask 00:15:00
Steam Eggs 00:10:00
+
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer
Cancel
Set Timer
Save
Brush Teeth
0 hours 2 mins 0 secs
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
12#
Done


12:00
Cancel
Set Timer
Save
Yoga
22 8 58
23 9 59
0 hours 10 mins 0 secs
1 11 1
2 12 2
Toga
Yoga
Yoga's
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
12#
Done


12:00
Timer
Done
22 8 58
23 9 59
0 hours 10 mins 0 secs
1 11 1
2 12 2
Yoga
00:10:00
Face Mask
00:15:00
Steam Eggs
00:10:00
+
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

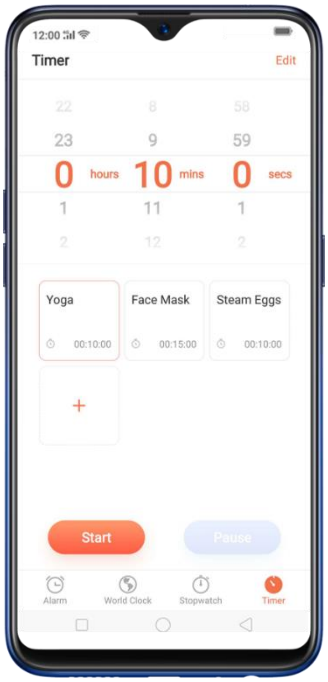
4. Click **Start** so timer starts and choose to either **Pause** or **Cancel** the timer.

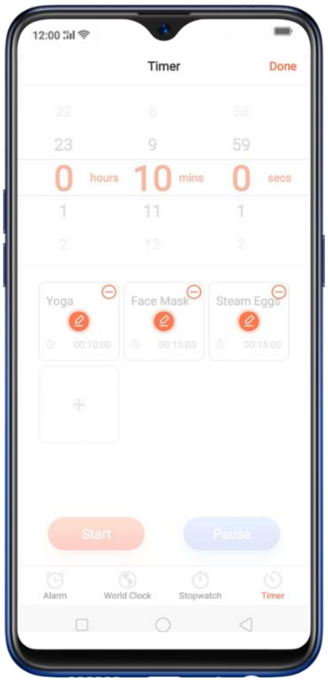

12:00
Timer
Edit
22 8 58
23 9 59
0 hours 10 mins 0 secs
1 11 1
2 12 2
Yoga
00:10:00
Face Mask
00:15:00
Steam Eggs
00:10:00
+
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

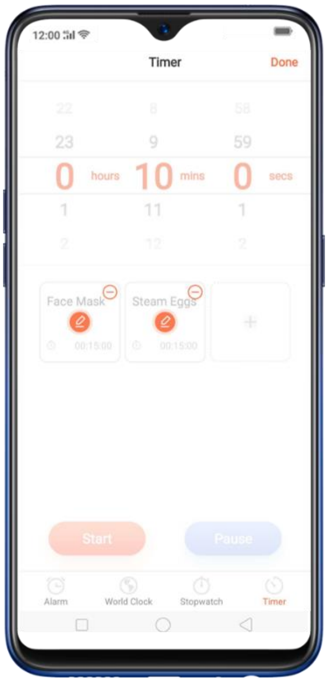

12:00
Timer
00:09:58
Cancel
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

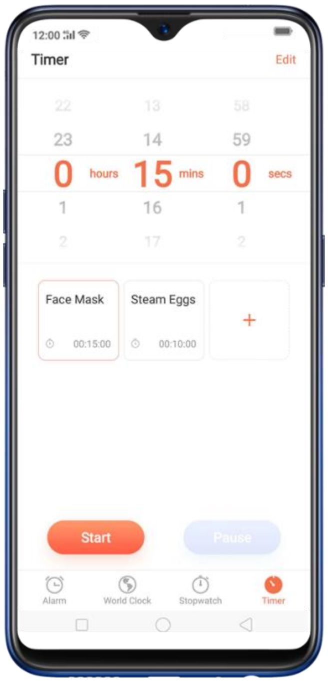
### Delete an activity

To delete an activity, click **Edit** then click ⊖, choose the activity you want to delete and click **Done**.


12:00
Timer
Edit
0 hours 10 mins 0 secs
Yoga 00:10:00
Face Mask 00:15:00
Steam Eggs 00:10:00
+
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

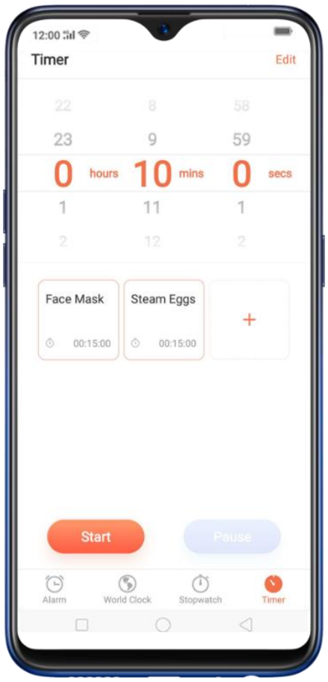

12:00
Timer
Done
0 hours 10 mins 0 secs
Yoga 00:10:00
Face Mask 00:15:00
Steam Eggs 00:15:00
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

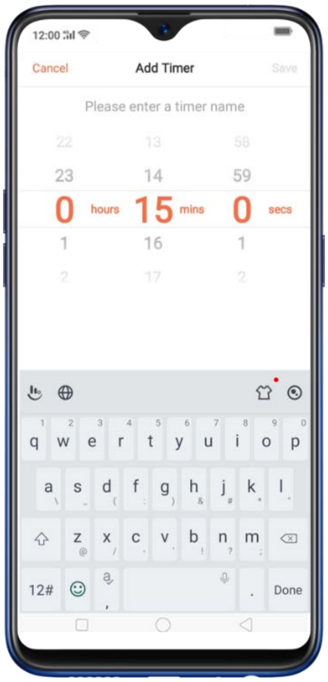

12:00
Timer
Done
0 hours 10 mins 0 secs
Face Mask 00:15:00
Steam Eggs 00:15:00
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer


12:00
Timer
Edit
0 hours 15 mins 0 secs
Face Mask 00:15:00
Steam Eggs 00:10:00
+
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

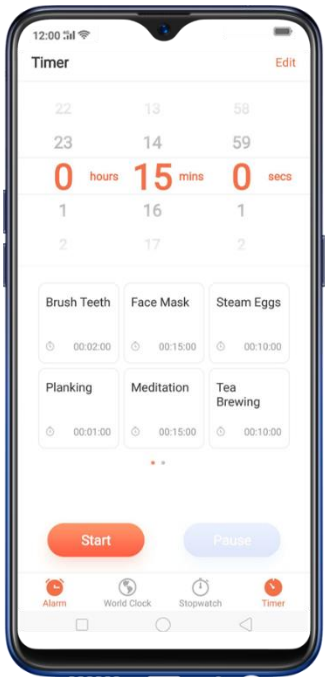
## Add an activity

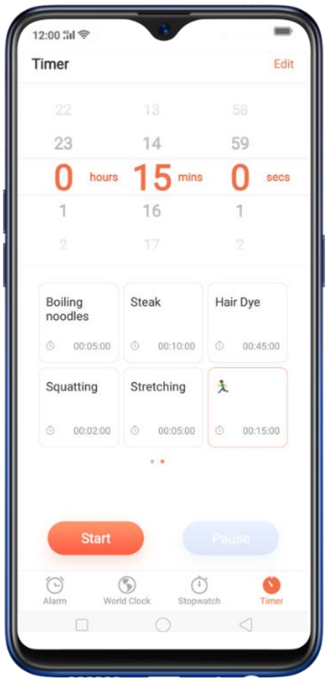
To add an activity on the timer, click +, type the timer name and the time, then click **Save**.


12:00
Timer
Edit
0 hours 10 mins 0 secs
Face Mask 00:15:00
Steam Eggs 00:15:00
+
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer


12:00
Cancel
Add Timer
Save
Please enter a timer name
0 hours 15 mins 0 secs
12#
Done

You can add up to 12 activities on the timer and you can timer name to emoji's as well.


12:00
Timer
Edit
0 hours 15 mins 0 secs
Brush Teeth 00:02:00
Face Mask 00:15:00
Steam Eggs 00:10:00
Planking 00:01:00
Meditation 00:15:00
Tea Brewing 00:10:00
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

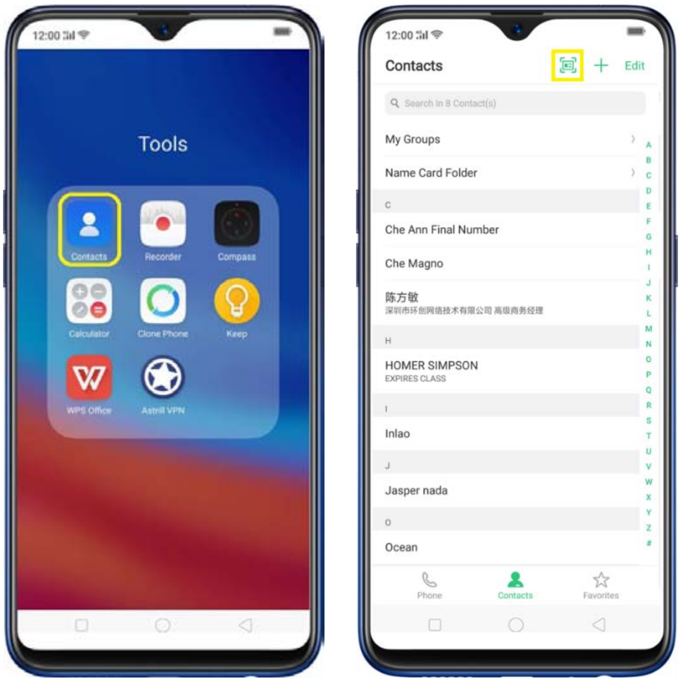

12:00
Timer
Edit
0 hours 15 mins 0 secs
Boiling noodles 00:05:00
Steak 00:10:00
Hair Dye 00:45:00
Squatting 00:02:00
Stretching 00:05:00
🏃 00:15:00
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

## 4.12 Scanning names to save on Contacts

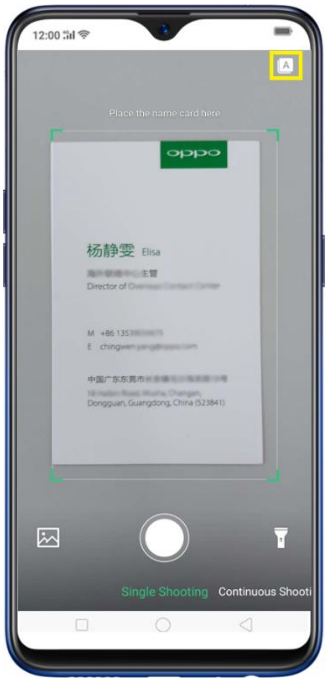
Save new contact information in a snap. You just need a name card or business card. Before scanning the business card or name card, click A for the name card recognition language. Make sure to fit the name card or business card on the frame.

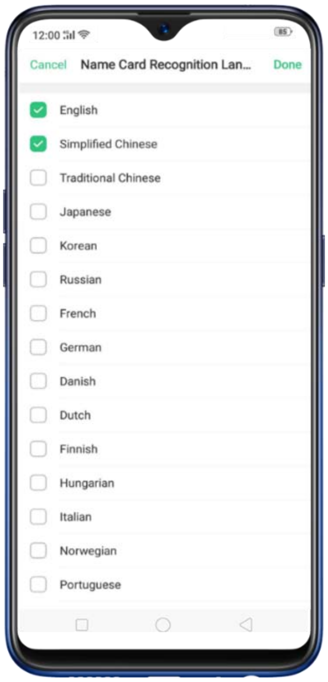
There are three ways you can add contacts in a snap using the Scan Name card feature.

1. Through the Contacts app. On your home screen, click [**Contacts app**] > [**Contacts**] then click on the top-right corner of the screen.


12:00
Tools
Contacts
Recorder
Compass
Calculator
Clone Phone
Keep
WPS Office
Astrill VPN
12:00
Contacts
Edit
Search in 8 Contact(s)
My Groups
Name Card Folder
C
Che Ann Final Number
Che Magno
陈方敏
H
HOMER SIMPSON
EXPIRES CLASS
I
Inlao
J
Jasper nada
O
Ocean
Phone
Contacts
Favorites

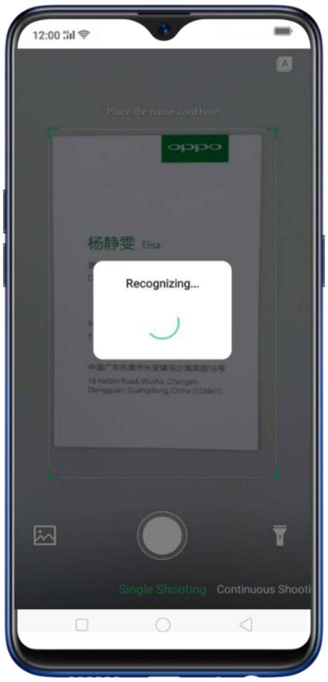
Then click for the name card recognition language. Make sure to fit the name card or business card on the frame.

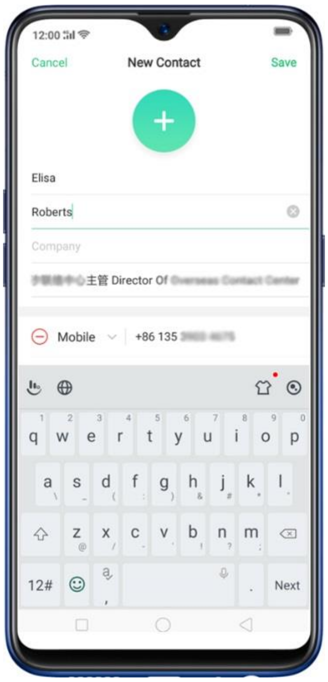

12:00
Place the name card here
oppo
杨静雯 Elisa
Director of
Dongguan, Guangdong, China (523841)
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooti


12:00
Cancel
Name Card Recognition Lan...
Done

☑ English
☑ Simplified Chinese
☐ Traditional Chinese
☐ Japanese
☐ Korean
☐ Russian
☐ French
☐ German
☐ Danish
☐ Dutch
☐ Finnish
☐ Hungarian
☐ Italian
☐ Norwegian
☐ Portuguese

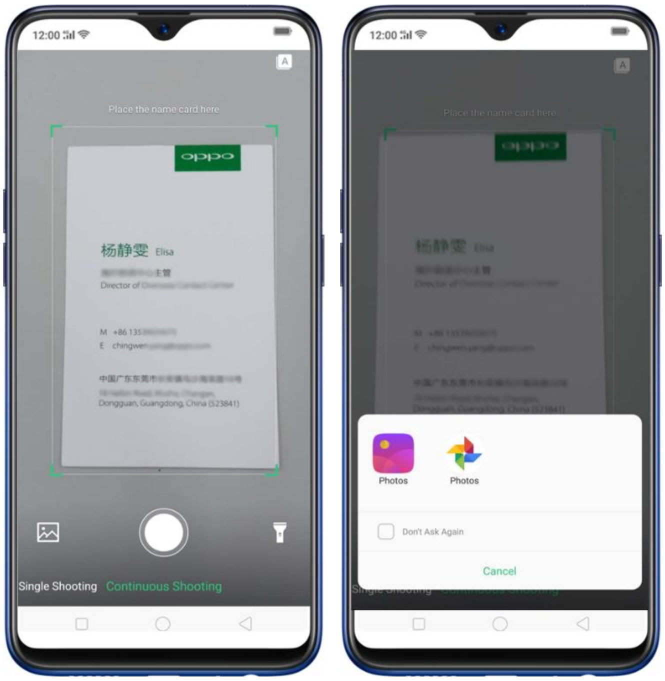
Click ○ to start recognizing the name card or business card and all information will directly be inputted on your Contacts app then click **Save.**


12:00
Place the name card here
oppo
杨静雯 Elisa
Recognizing...
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooti

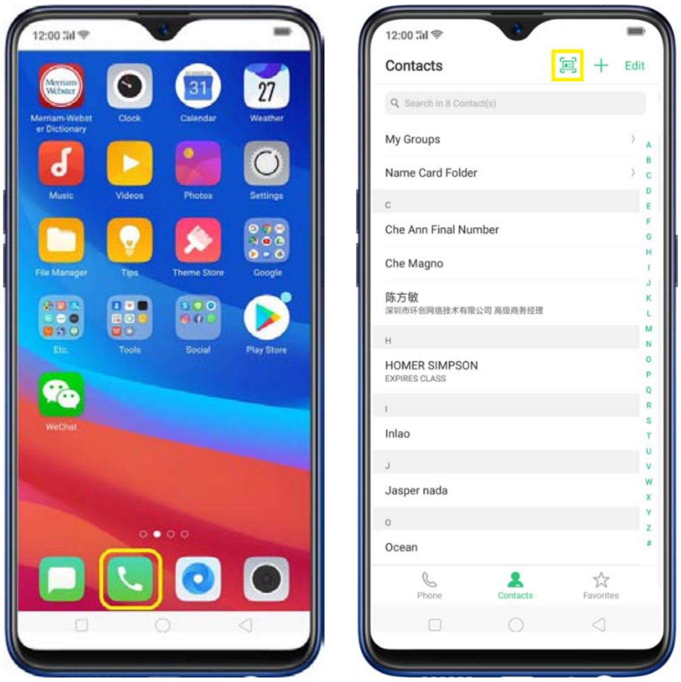

12:00
Cancel
New Contact
Save
Next

Elisa
Roberts
Company
[redacted]主管 Director Of [redacted]
Mobile +86 135 [redacted]

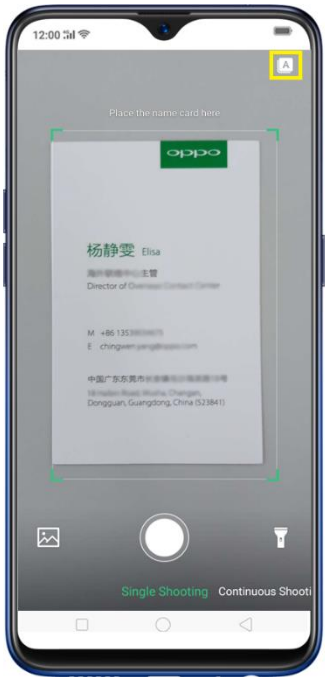
You also have an option to do **Continuous Shooting**, open Photos app if a name card or business card is saved there, or use the flashlight if area to scan is dimly lit.

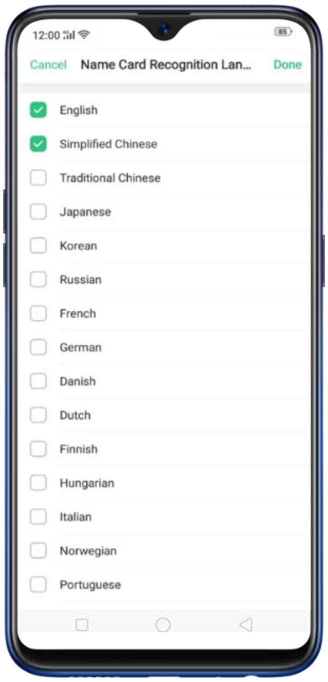

12:00
Place the name card here
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooting
Photos
Photos
Don't Ask Again
Cancel

2. Through the Phone App. On your home screen, click [**Phone app**] > [**Contacts**] then click on the top-right corner of the screen.


12:00
Merriam-Webster Dictionary
Clock
Calendar
Weather
Music
Videos
Photos
Settings
File Manager
Tips
Theme Store
Google
Etc.
Tools
Social
Play Store
WeChat
Contacts
Edit
Search in 8 Contact(s)
My Groups
Name Card Folder
Che Ann Final Number
Che Magno
陈方敏
HOMER SIMPSON
EXPIRES CLASS
Inlao
Jasper nada
Ocean
Phone
Contacts
Favorites

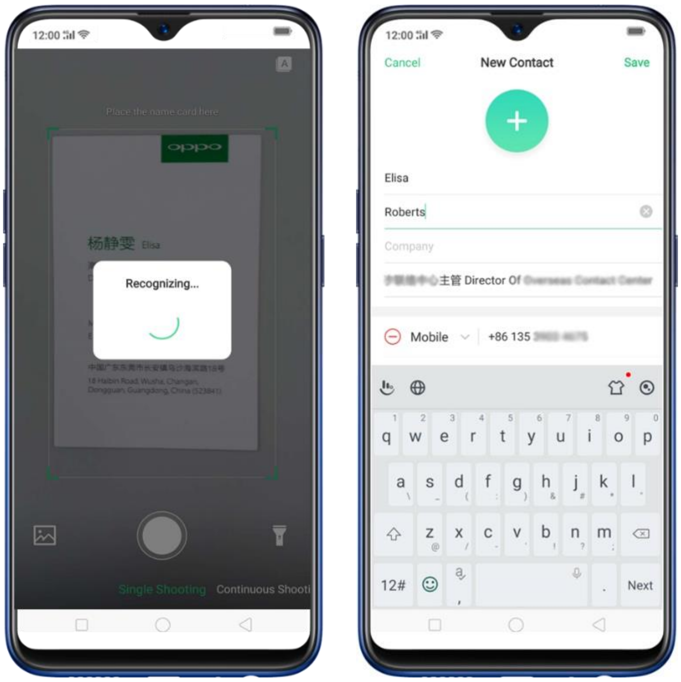
Then click for the name card recognition language. Make sure to fit the name card or business card on the frame.


12:00
Place the name card here
oppo
杨静雯 Elisa
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooti


12:00
Cancel
Name Card Recognition Lan...
Done

☑ English
☑ Simplified Chinese
☐ Traditional Chinese
☐ Japanese
☐ Korean
☐ Russian
☐ French
☐ German
☐ Danish
☐ Dutch
☐ Finnish
☐ Hungarian
☐ Italian
☐ Norwegian
☐ Portuguese

Click ○ to start recognizing the name card or business card and all information will directly be inputted on your Contacts app then click **Save.**


12:00
Place the name card here
oppo
杨静雯 Elisa
Recognizing...
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooti
Cancel
New Contact
Save
Company
Next

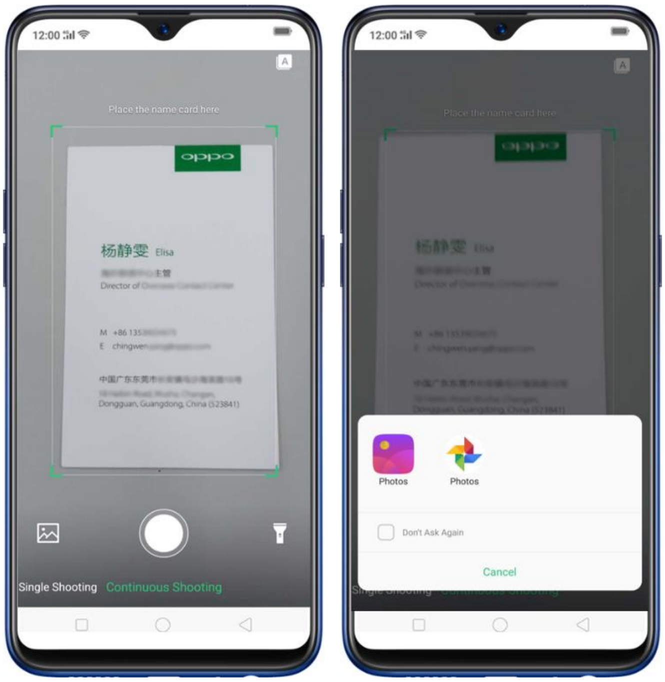
Elisa

Roberts

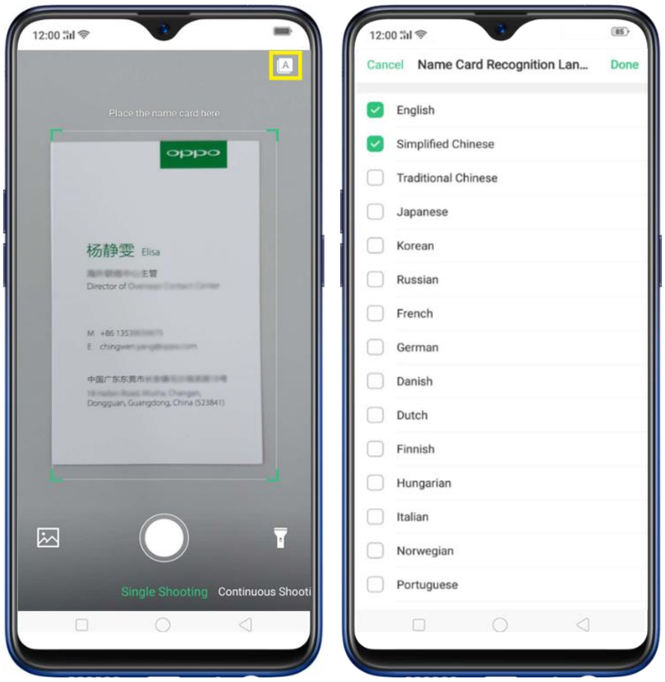
Director Of

Mobile +86 135

You also have an option to do **Continuous Shooting**, open Photos app if a namecard or business card is saved there, or use the flashlight if area to scan is dimly lit.


12:00
Place the name card here
oppo
杨静雯 Elisa
Director of
Dongguan, Guangdong, China (523841)
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooting
Photos
Photos
☐ Don't Ask Again
Cancel

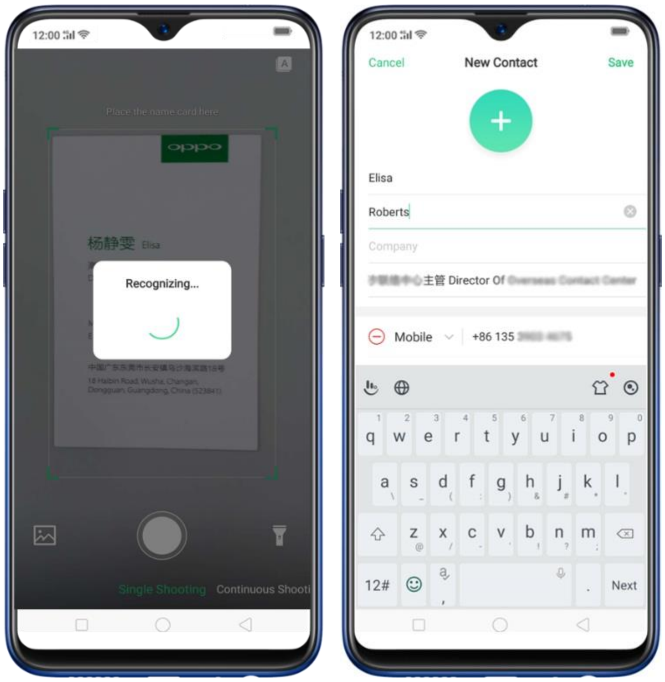
- On Smart Assistant, Click Scan Namecard to launch Contacts app and open this feature directly. Before scanning the business card or namecard, click A for the namecard recognition language. Make sure to fit the namecard or business card on the frame.


12:00
Place the name card here
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooti

Cancel Name Card Recognition Lan... Done

- ☑ English
- ☑ Simplified Chinese
- ☐ Traditional Chinese
- ☐ Japanese
- ☐ Korean
- ☐ Russian
- ☐ French
- ☐ German
- ☐ Danish
- ☐ Dutch
- ☐ Finnish
- ☐ Hungarian
- ☐ Italian
- ☐ Norwegian
- ☐ Portuguese

Click ○ to start recognizing the namecard or business card and all information will directly be stored on your Contacts app then click **Save.**


12:00
Place the name card here
Recognizing...
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooti

Cancel New Contact Save

Elisa

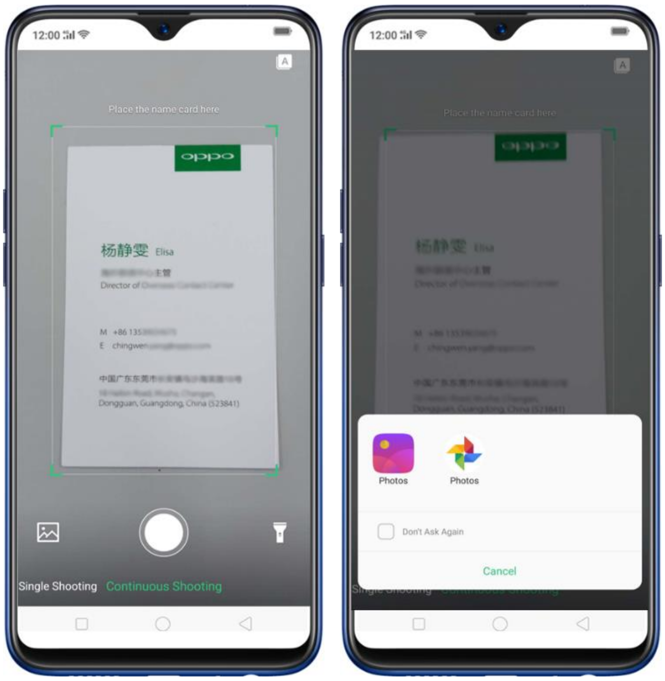
Roberts

Company

Director Of

Mobile +86 135

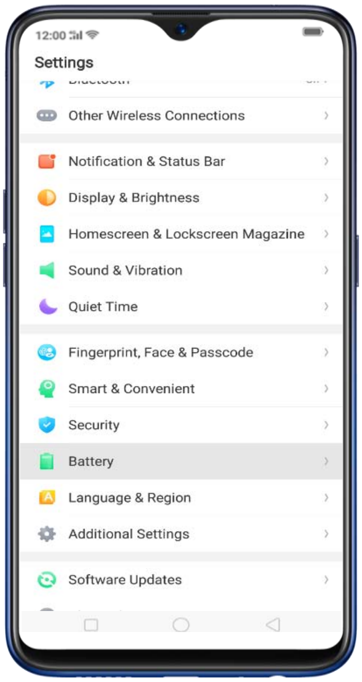
You also have an option to do **Continuous Shooting**, open Photos app if a namecard or business card is saved there, or use the flashlight if area to scan is dimly lit.

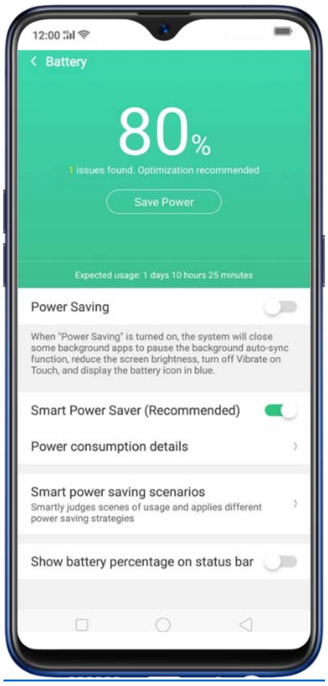

12:00
Place the name card here
oppo
杨静雯 Elisa
Director of
Dongguan, Guangdong, China (523841)
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooting
12:00
Place the name card here
Photos
Photos
☐ Don't Ask Again
Cancel

## 4.13 Save more battery with Smart Power Saver

Optimize the power of your battery and manage those apps and settings that used up the most power. Know how to save more power so you can use it especially when it is most needed.

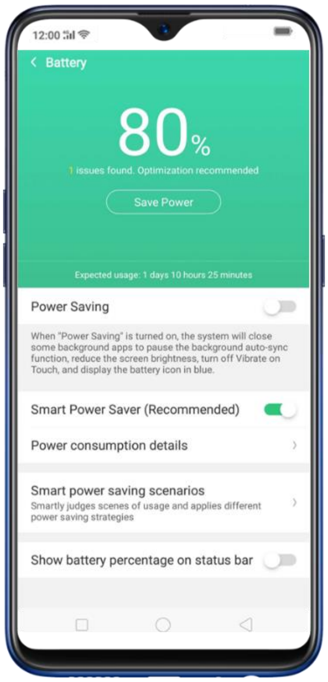
To enable Smart Power Saver, go to [**Settings**] > [**Battery**] > toggle [**Smart Power Saver (Recommended)**] to green to enable.

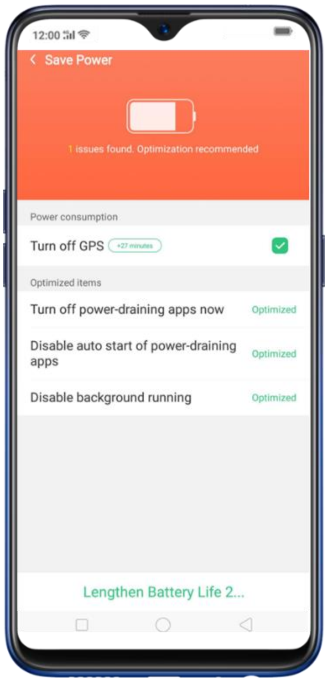

12:00
Settings
Other Wireless Connections
Notification & Status Bar
Display & Brightness
Homescreen & Lockscreen Magazine
Sound & Vibration
Quiet Time
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
Smart & Convenient
Security
Battery
Language & Region
Additional Settings
Software Updates

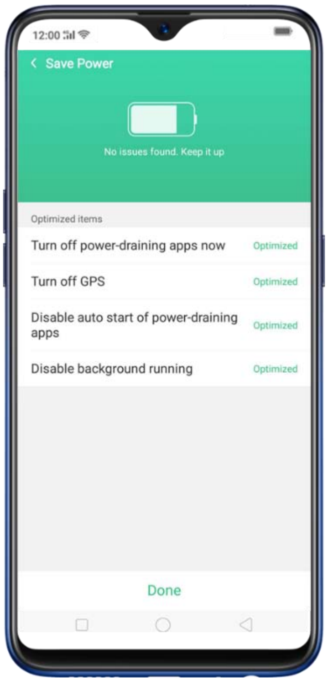

12:00
Battery
80%
1 issues found. Optimization recommended
Save Power
Expected usage: 1 days 10 hours 25 minutes
Power Saving
When "Power Saving" is turned on, the system will close some background apps to pause the background auto-sync function, reduce the screen brightness, turn off Vibrate on Touch, and display the battery icon in blue.
Smart Power Saver (Recommended)
Power consumption details
Smart power saving scenarios
Smartly judges scenes of usage and applies different power saving strategies
Show battery percentage on status bar

## When Optimization is needed

When issue or issues are found, then it will prompt you that optimization is recommended. Just click on **Save Power** and check those that needed optimization, click **Lengthen Battery Life**, and then click **Done** when finished. (Note: Expected usage will be shown but this still depends on the usage and running apps on the background).

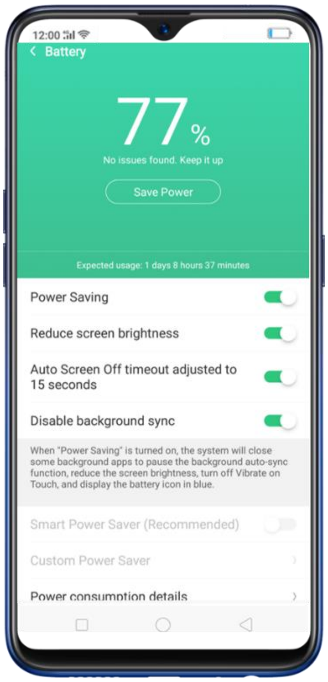

12:00
Battery
80%
1 issues found. Optimization recommended
Save Power
Expected usage: 1 days 10 hours 25 minutes
Power Saving
When "Power Saving" is turned on, the system will close some background apps to pause the background auto-sync function, reduce the screen brightness, turn off Vibrate on Touch, and display the battery icon in blue.
Smart Power Saver (Recommended)
Power consumption details
Smart power saving scenarios
Smartly judges scenes of usage and applies different power saving strategies
Show battery percentage on status bar


12:00
Save Power
1 issues found. Optimization recommended
Power consumption
Turn off GPS +27 minutes ☑
Optimized items
Turn off power-draining apps now Optimized
Disable auto start of power-draining apps Optimized
Disable background running Optimized
Lengthen Battery Life 2...


12:00
Save Power
No issues found. Keep it up
Optimized items
Turn off power-draining apps now Optimized
Turn off GPS Optimized
Disable auto start of power-draining apps Optimized
Disable background running Optimized
Done

## Other Power Saving features

- **Power Saving.** When this is enabled, the system will close some background apps to pause functions such as auto-sync. It will also reduce screen brightness, turn off vibrate, and would be displaying the battery icon in blue. To enable, just toggle [**Power Saving**] to green.


12:00
Battery
77%
No issues found. Keep it up
Save Power
Expected usage: 1 days 8 hours 37 minutes

Power Saving ☑

Reduce screen brightness ☑

Auto Screen Off timeout adjusted to 15 seconds ☑

Disable background sync ☑

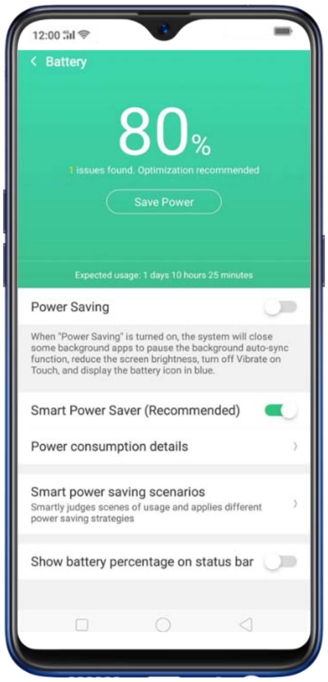
When "Power Saving" is turned on, the system will close some background apps to pause the background auto-sync function, reduce the screen brightness, turn off Vibrate on Touch, and display the battery icon in blue.

Smart Power Saver (Recommended) ☐

Custom Power Saver

Power consumption details

- **Smart Power Saver (Recommended).** This will intelligently identify the running status of Apps when enabled. Just toggle [**Smart Power Saver (Recommended)]** to green to enable.


12:00
Battery
80%
1 issues found. Optimization recommended
Save Power
Expected usage: 1 days 10 hours 25 minutes

Power Saving ☐

When "Power Saving" is turned on, the system will close some background apps to pause the background auto-sync function, reduce the screen brightness, turn off Vibrate on Touch, and display the battery icon in blue.

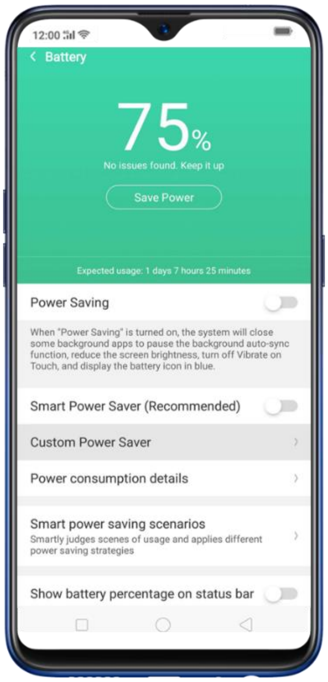
Smart Power Saver (Recommended) ☑

Power consumption details

Smart power saving scenarios
Smartly judges scenes of usage and applies different power saving strategies

Show battery percentage on status bar ☐

- **Custom Power Saver.** You can customize apps that will intelligently identify the running status of Apps when enabled. Just click on **Custom Power Saver**, choose an app then click **Intelligently Restrict Background Running (Recommended)**.



12:00

Battery

75%

No issues found. Keep it up

Save Power

Expected usage: 1 days 7 hours 25 minutes

Power Saving

When "Power Saving" is turned on, the system will close some background apps to pause the background auto-sync function, reduce the screen brightness, turn off Vibrate on Touch, and display the battery icon in blue.

Smart Power Saver (Recommended)

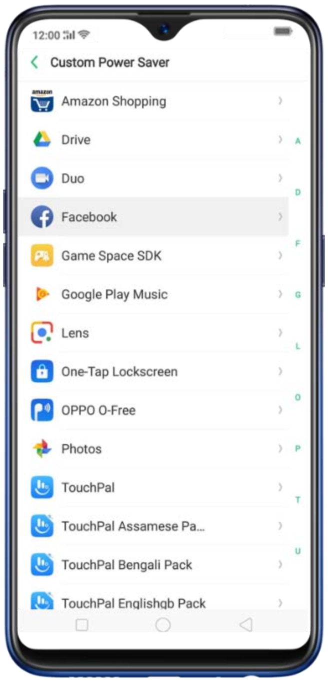
Custom Power Saver

Power consumption details

Smart power saving scenarios

Smartly judges scenes of usage and applies different power saving strategies

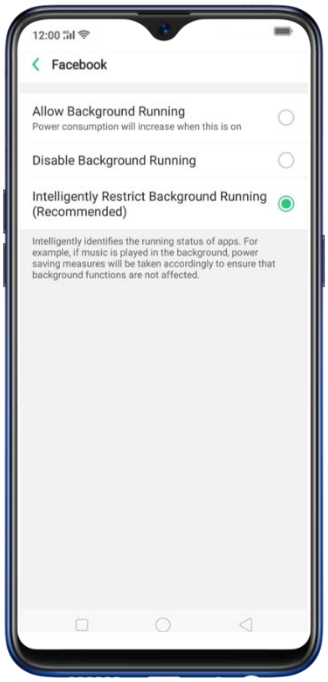
Show battery percentage on status bar



12:00

Custom Power Saver

- Amazon Shopping
- Drive
- Duo
- Facebook
- Game Space SDK
- Google Play Music
- Lens
- One-Tap Lockscreen
- OPPO O-Free
- Photos
- TouchPal
- TouchPal Assamese Pa...
- TouchPal Bengali Pack
- TouchPal Englishgb Pack



12:00

Facebook

Allow Background Running ○

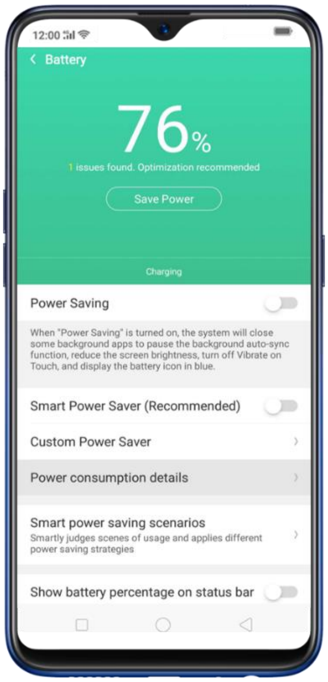
Power consumption will increase when this is on

Disable Background Running ○

Intelligently Restrict Background Running (Recommended) ●

Intelligently identifies the running status of apps. For example, if music is played in the background, power saving measures will be taken accordingly to ensure that background functions are not affected.

- **Power Consumption Details.** This will show you the apps, settings, or features that consumed the most power. You can check Today, Yesterday, and 2 Days ago for consumption details.



12:00

Battery

76%

1 issues found. Optimization recommended

Save Power

Charging

Power Saving

When "Power Saving" is turned on, the system will close some background apps to pause the background auto-sync function, reduce the screen brightness, turn off Vibrate on Touch, and display the battery icon in blue.

Smart Power Saver (Recommended)

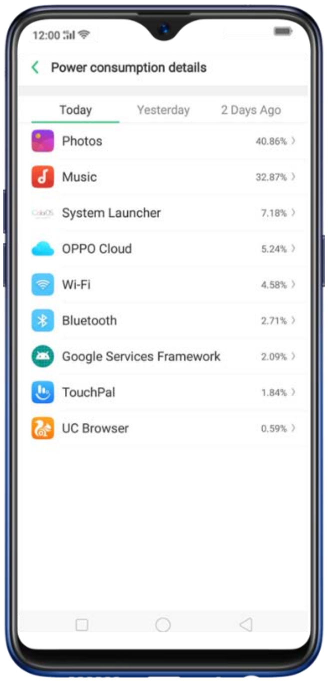
Custom Power Saver

Power consumption details

Smart power saving scenarios

Smartly judges scenes of usage and applies different power saving strategies

Show battery percentage on status bar

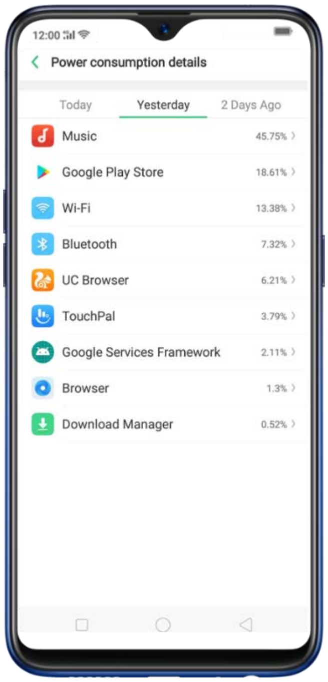


12:00

Power consumption details

**Today** Yesterday 2 Days Ago

| | |
|---|---|
| Photos | 40.86% |
| Music | 32.87% |
| System Launcher | 7.18% |
| OPPO Cloud | 5.24% |
| Wi-Fi | 4.58% |
| Bluetooth | 2.71% |
| Google Services Framework | 2.09% |
| TouchPal | 1.84% |
| UC Browser | 0.59% |



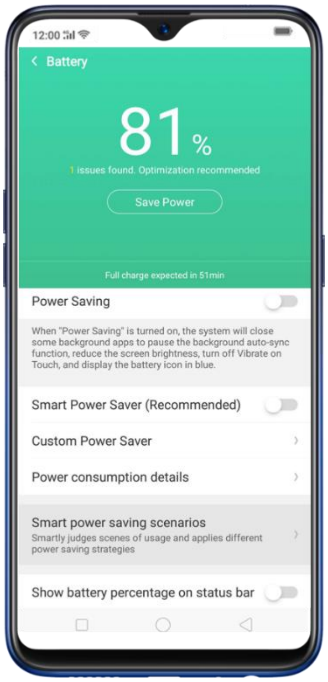
12:00

Power consumption details

Today **Yesterday** 2 Days Ago

| | |
|---|---|
| Music | 45.75% |
| Google Play Store | 18.61% |
| Wi-Fi | 13.38% |
| Bluetooth | 7.32% |
| UC Browser | 6.21% |
| TouchPal | 3.79% |
| Google Services Framework | 2.11% |
| Browser | 1.3% |
| Download Manager | 0.52% |

- **Smart power saving scenarios.** This will smartly judge scenes of usage and applies different power saving strategies like sensing when you might be sleeping. Click **Smart power saving scenarios**, the toggle **Sleeping Mode** to green.



1 issues found. Optimization recommended

Full charge expected in 51min

Power Saving

When "Power Saving" is turned on, the system will close some background apps to pause the background auto-sync function, reduce the screen brightness, turn off Vibrate on Touch, and display the battery icon in blue.

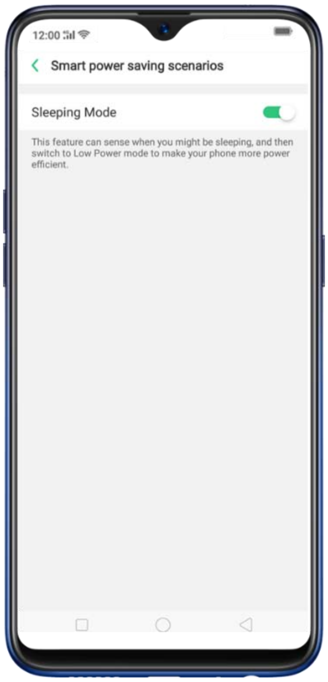
Smart Power Saver (Recommended)

Custom Power Saver

Power consumption details

Smart power saving scenarios
Smartly judges scenes of usage and applies different power saving strategies

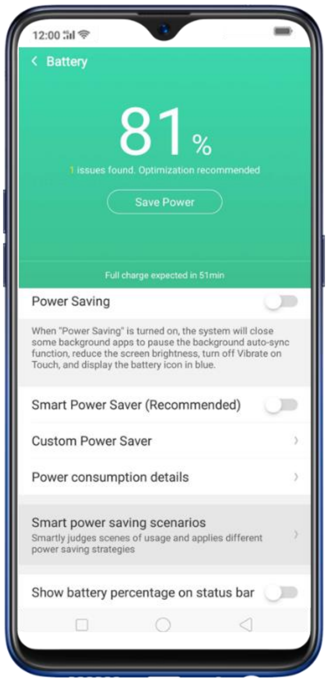
Show battery percentage on status bar



Sleeping Mode

This feature can sense when you might be sleeping, and then switch to Low Power mode to make your phone more power efficient.

- **Show battery percentage on the status bar.** If you want to see how much battery is left just enable this feature by toggling [**Show battery percentage on the status bar]** to green to enable.



1 issues found. Optimization recommended

Full charge expected in 51min

Power Saving

When "Power Saving" is turned on, the system will close some background apps to pause the background auto-sync function, reduce the screen brightness, turn off Vibrate on Touch, and display the battery icon in blue.

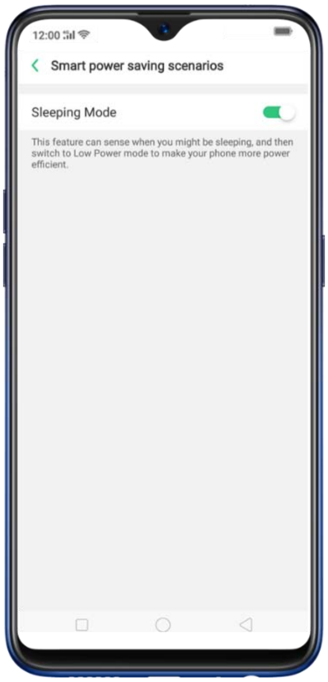
Smart Power Saver (Recommended)

Custom Power Saver

Power consumption details

Smart power saving scenarios
Smartly judges scenes of usage and applies different power saving strategies

Show battery percentage on status bar

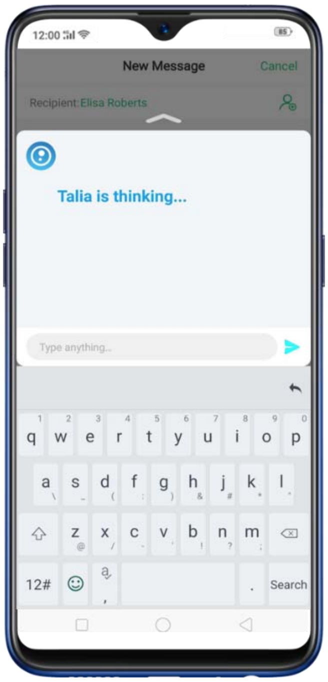


Sleeping Mode

This feature can sense when you might be sleeping, and then switch to Low Power mode to make your phone more power efficient.

## 4.14 Say hello to Talia, your TouchPal assistant

Talia will be your new pro-active TouchPal assistant when typing stuff and rest assured that she will never left side. Talia makes it a point that you don't need to go to other apps when checking for the weather or just want to add or multiply some numbers. She will make sending message faster, efficient, and a whole lot of fun.

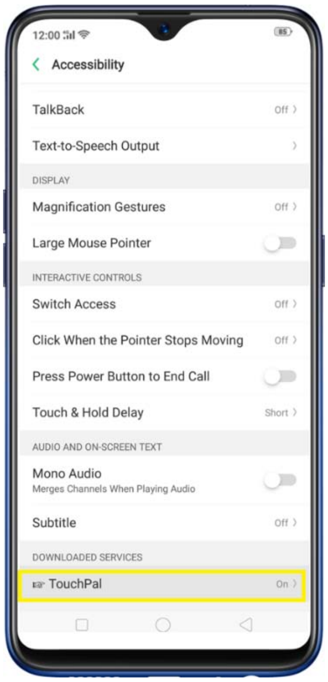


Recipient: Elisa Roberts

Talia is thinking...

Type anything...

To enable Talia, go to [**Settings**] > [**Additional Settings**] > [**Accessibility**] > [**TouchPal**] > Toggle [**TouchPal**] to green to enable. Open your message app on the home screen and enjoy Talia's great service.



Accessibility

TalkBack Off

Text-to-Speech Output

DISPLAY

Magnification Gestures Off

Large Mouse Pointer

INTERACTIVE CONTROLS

Switch Access Off

Click When the Pointer Stops Moving Off

Press Power Button to End Call

Touch & Hold Delay Short

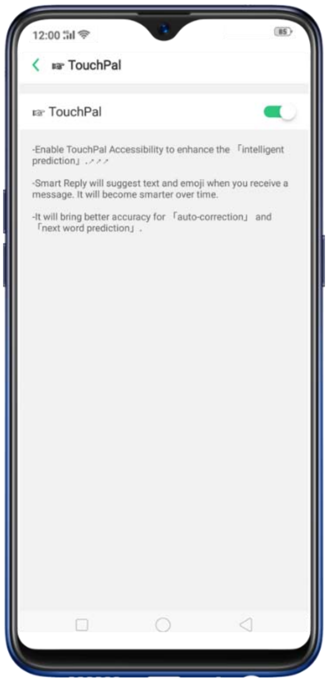
AUDIO AND ON-SCREEN TEXT

Mono Audio
Merges Channels When Playing Audio

Subtitle Off

DOWNLOADED SERVICES

TouchPal On



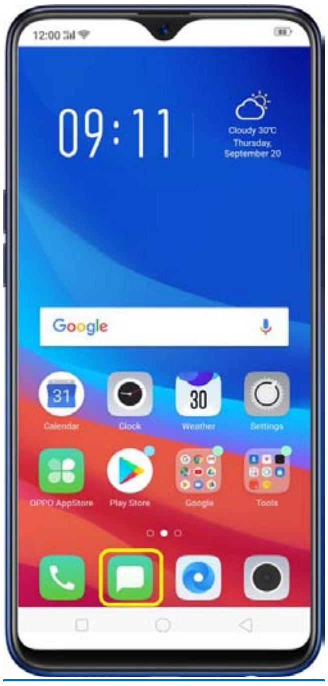
TouchPal

TouchPal

-Enable TouchPal Accessibility to enhance the 「intelligent prediction」.

-Smart Reply will suggest text and emoji when you receive a message. It will become smarter over time.

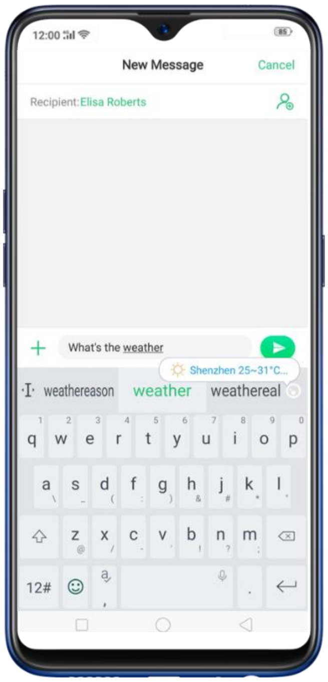
-It will bring better accuracy for 「auto-correction」 and 「next word prediction」.



09:11
Cloudy 30℃
Thursday, September 20
Google
31
Calendar
Clock
30
Weather
Settings
OPPO AppStore
Play Store
Google
Tools

Smart and fun features of Talia

- **Check the weather at all times.** Talia will automatically think what the weather is in your current location. You can also manually type it to ask and then click ◎ so that Talia will start thinking and recognizing what you've typed. (Note: It doesn't work when you need to know other weather of other places or locations. See Weather).

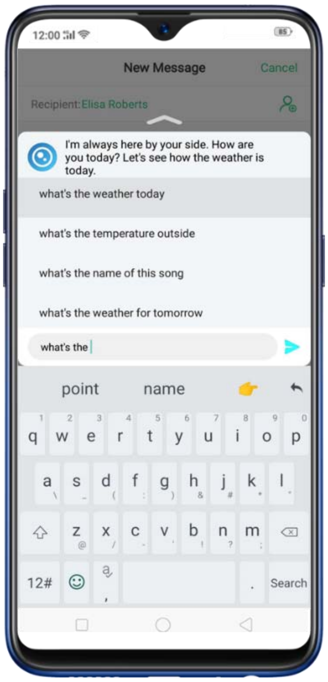


New Message Cancel

Recipient: Elisa Roberts

What's the weather

Shenzhen 25~31°C
weathereason
weather
weathereal
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
12#



New Message Cancel

Recipient: Elisa Roberts

I'm always here by your side. How are you today? Let's see how the weather is today.

what's the weather today

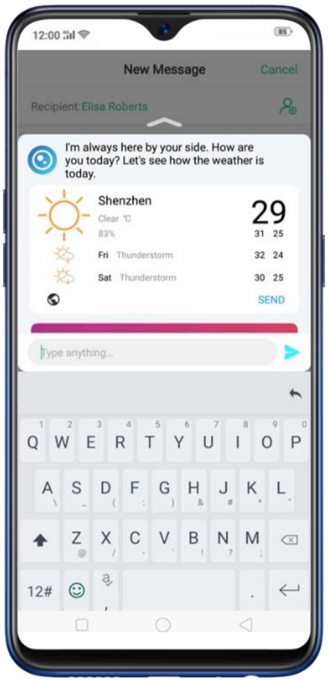
what's the temperature outside

what's the name of this song

what's the weather for tomorrow

what's the

point
name
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
12#
Search



New Message Cancel

Recipient: Elisa Roberts

I'm always here by your side. How are you today? Let's see how the weather is today.

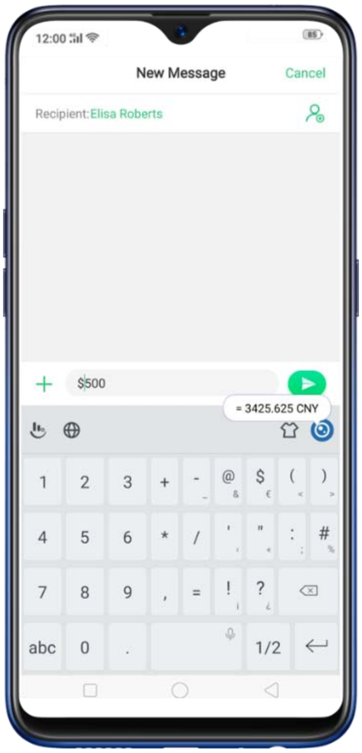
Shenzhen 29
Clear ℃
83%
31 25
Fri Thunderstorm 32 24
Sat Thunderstorm 30 25

SEND

Type anything...

Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M
12#

- **Smart Reply.** Give response suggestions.
- **Swift paste.** Get useful information such as emails, links, and phone numbers our of clipboard.
- **Quick Fill.** Talia will remember people’s names, phone numbers, and addresses for you.
- **Currency conversions.** Get live currency exchange rates.

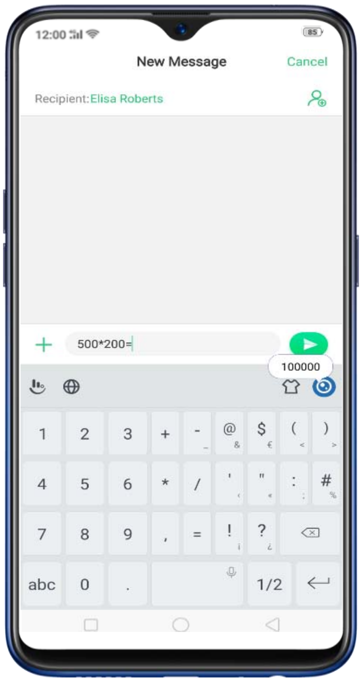


Recipient:Elisa Roberts

$500

= 3425.625 CNY

- **Calculations.** Talia will automatically calculate basic math operations. Don’t forget to put = so it will start calculating.


12:00
New Message
Cancel

Recipient:Elisa Roberts

500*200=

100000

1 2 3 + - @ $ ( )
4 5 6 * / ' " : #
7 8 9 , = ! ?
abc 0 . 1/2

**Note**: Some features may not be available to other regions

# 5 Basics

## 5.1 Use apps

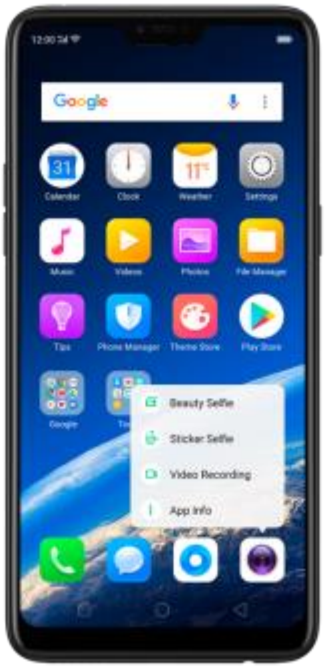
### Open apps

The Home screen shows all the apps on your phone. Click any application icon to get started.
Apps will show the number of messages pending to be read in red on their Home screen icon.
If you're using swipe gestures, see Navigation Gestures.

Google
Calendar
Clock
Weather
Settings
Music
Videos
Photos
File Manager
Tips
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Play Store
Google
Tools

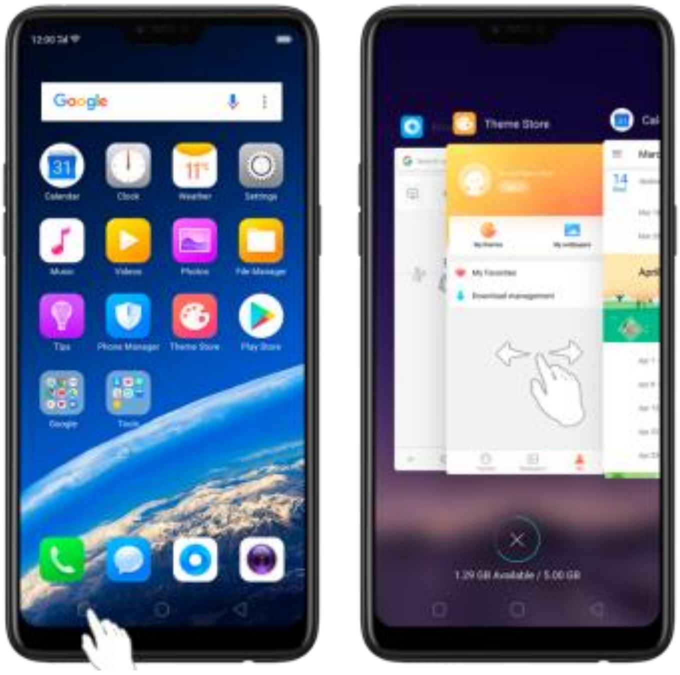
## Quick Actions

Press and hold an app icon to bring up "Quick Actions," which offers shortcuts to specific features within that app. When the menu appears, click the shortcut you would like to use, then the app will open directly to that feature. For example, go to your Home screen and press and hold on the icon for the Camera app, you'll see a mini menu that lets you jump straight to a beauty selfie, a sticker selfie, a video, or the app info page.


Google
Calendar
Clock
Weather
Settings
Music
Videos
Photos
File Manager
Tips
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Play Store
Google
Beauty Selfie
Sticker Selfie
Video Recording
App Info

## Switch between apps

Clicking Menu button on the bottom left would bring up a menu for apps that you were in. Swipe left or right to see more. To switch to another app, click it.


Google
Calendar
Clock
Weather
Settings
Music
Videos
Photos
File Manager
Tips
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Play Store
Google
Tools
Theme Store
1.29 GB Available / 5.00 GB

## Close apps

Click Menu button on the bottom left, and then:

- **Close an app**: Swipe the app up to the top edge of the screen.
- **Close all apps**: Click ⊗ to clean up the list.

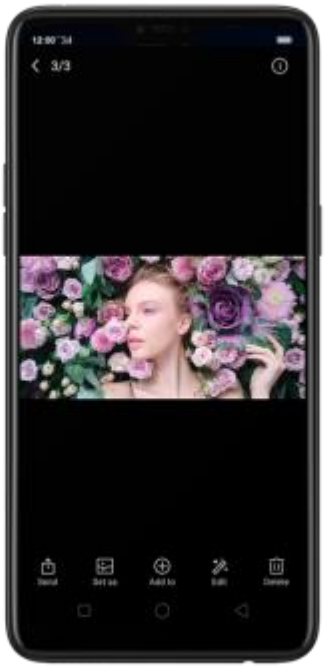
March
April 2018
Calendar
March
April 2018
2.06 GB Available / 5.00 GB

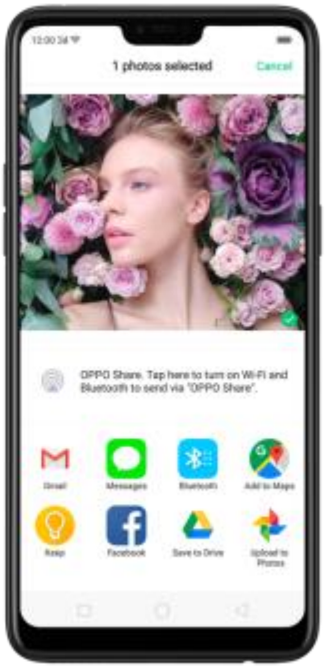
## 5.2 Share from apps

In addition to sharing your information from the Files app, you can also share from many other apps on your OPPO smartphone.

**Share from apps**. In many apps, you can click Send or ↥ to choose how to share your information. The choices vary depending on the app you're using. Additional options may appear if you've downloaded apps with multiple sharing options.

Take the Photos app as an example, click ↥ and you'll see all the sharing options.

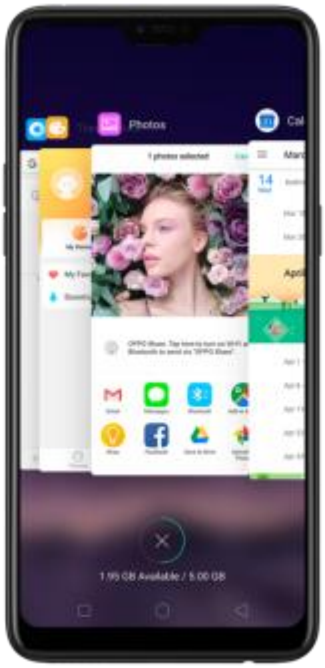

12:00
3/3
Send
Set as
Add to
Edit
Delete


12:00
1 photos selected
Cancel
OPPO Share. Tap here to turn on Wi-Fi and Bluetooth to send via "OPPO Share".
Gmail
Messages
Bluetooth
Add to Maps
Keep
Facebook
Save to Drive
Upload to Photos

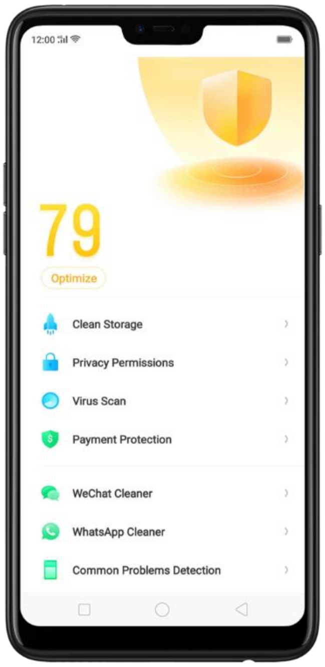
## 5.3 One-click cleanup

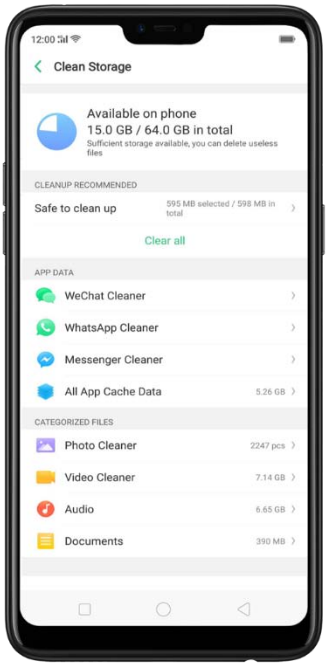
One-click cleanup option helps you to make your phone perform steadily and faster.

**Stop background apps.** Click Menu button > ⊗ to close all active apps. If you want to close a specific app, swipe it up.


Photos
Cal
1.95 GB Available / 5.00 GB

**Clean-up & Accelerate**. Click Phone Manager on the Home screen, then click **[Clean Storage]**. Scan and delete all kinds of junk files. You can also delete the app data and other unnecessary files, such as photos, audio, videos**,** and documents.


12:00
79
Optimize
Clean Storage
Privacy Permissions
Virus Scan
Payment Protection
WeChat Cleaner
WhatsApp Cleaner
Common Problems Detection


Available on phone
15.0 GB / 64.0 GB in total
Sufficient storage available, you can delete useless files

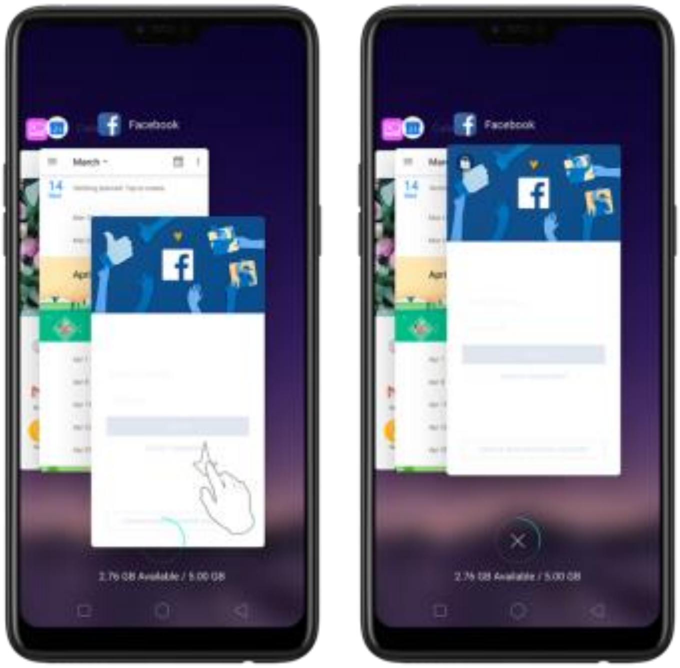
12:00
Clean Storage
CLEANUP RECOMMENDED
Safe to clean up
595 MB selected / 598 MB in total
Clear all
APP DATA
WeChat Cleaner
WhatsApp Cleaner
Messenger Cleaner
All App Cache Data 5.26 GB
CATEGORIZED FILES
Photo Cleaner 2247 pcs
Video Cleaner 7.14 GB
Audio 6.65 GB
Documents 390 MB

## 5.4 Lock the running background apps

You may close the running background apps frequently to make your phone perform steadily and faster. If you want some apps to be always connected and reachable, do the following:

**Lock an app**. Click **Menu** button to reveal your open apps, then swipe an app down to the bottom edge of the screen. Notice that a lock appears on the upper-left corner of the app.

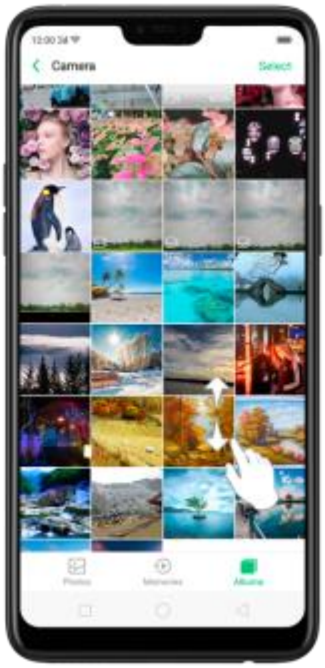
Repeat the action for other apps.


Facebook
March
2.76 GB Available / 5.00 GB
Facebook
2.76 GB Available / 5.00 GB

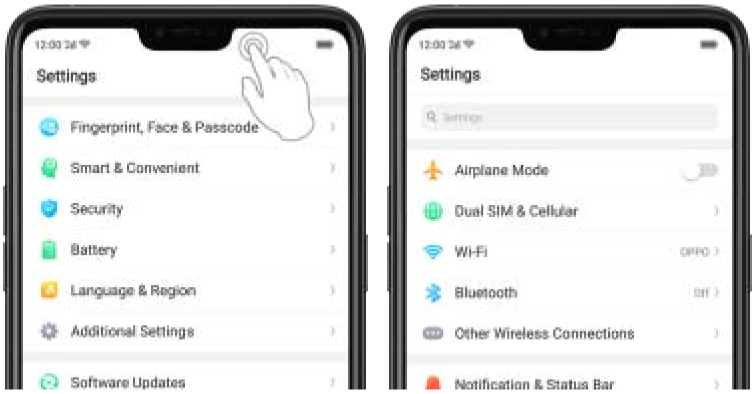
## 5.5 View, zoom in and out

Use the touchscreen to interact directly with what is displayed on your phone's screen.

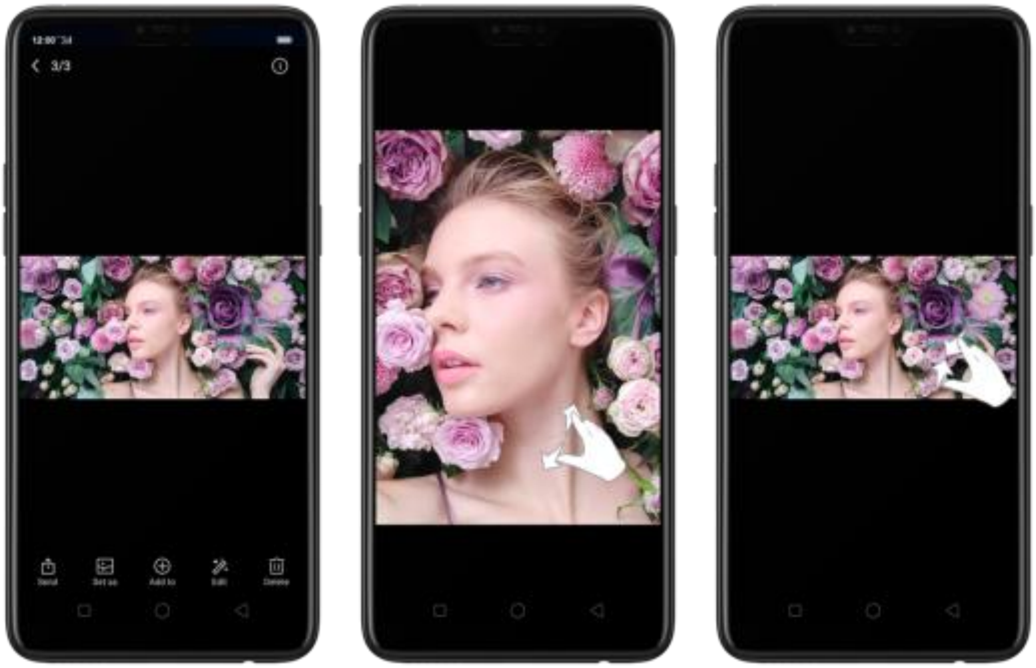
**View items**. Drag up or down to scroll. You can also drag some screens in any direction, such as webpages. Flick to scroll quickly. You can wait for the scrolling to come to a stop, or touch anywhere on the screen to stop it immediately.


Camera
Select
Photos
Memories
Albums

On some screens such as Settings and Contacts page, double-click the status bar to quickly scroll to the top.


Settings
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
Smart & Convenient
Security
Battery
Language & Region
Additional Settings
Software Updates
Settings
Airplane Mode
Dual SIM & Cellular
Wi-Fi
OPPO
Bluetooth
Off
Other Wireless Connections
Notification & Status Bar

**Zoom in and out**. When viewing photos, maps, or web pages, you can zoom in and out. Pinch your fingers together or apart. For photos and web pages, you can double-click to zoom in, then double-click again to zoom out. For maps, double-click to zoom in and click once with two fingers to zoom out.



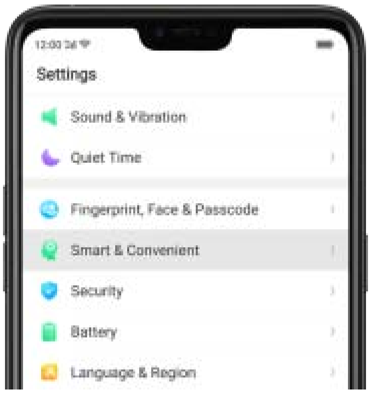
**Note:** Memories and Stories are terms that can be interchangeably used and doesn't affect the full functionality of the phone.

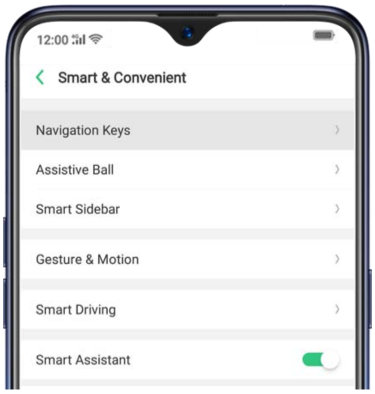
## 5.6 Smart & Convenient Operation

### 5.6.1. Navigation Keys

With ColorOS 5.0, all navigation is handled with the on-screen virtual keys and gestures. The three virtual navigation keys appear at the bottom of every screen and can be hidden when not in use. You can also arrange the order of "Back" and "Recent" depending on your preference. Besides, if you are in love with gesture navigation control, you can use a gesture-based system to navigate around the phone instead of the traditional navigation key.

To switch between navigation keys and gestures, go to **[Settings]** > **[Smart & Convenient]** > **[Navigation Keys]**.

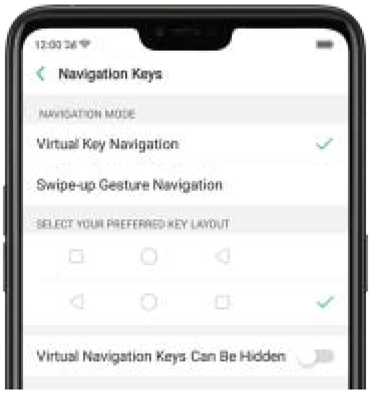

12:00
Settings
Sound & Vibration
Quiet Time
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
Smart & Convenient
Security
Battery
Language & Region


12:00
Smart & Convenient
Navigation Keys
Assistive Ball
Smart Sidebar
Gesture & Motion
Smart Driving
Smart Assistant

## Virtual Key Navigation

**Enable virtual key navigation**. Virtual key navigation the default setting. If you want to enable it manually, click **Virtual Key Navigation**.

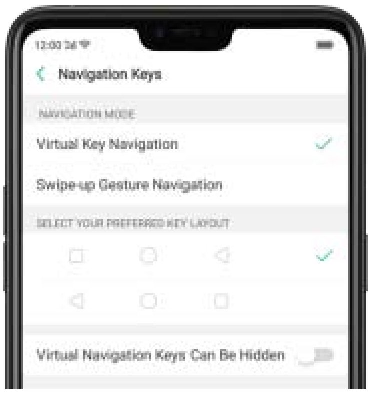
**Change the order of virtual navigation keys**. The keys follow the typical order for OPPO: Menu, Home, and Return from left to right. If you are left-handed, you can change them to the **Return-Home Menu** order.


12:00
Navigation Keys
NAVIGATION MODE
Virtual Key Navigation ✓
Swipe-up Gesture Navigation
SELECT YOUR PREFERRED KEY LAYOUT
☐ ○ ◁
◁ ○ ☐ ✓
Virtual Navigation Keys Can Be Hidden

**Hide the virtual navigation keys**. When you launch a full-screen app, the keys will automatically hide~~,~~and can be brought back with a simple swipe:

- When in portrait mode, swipe up from the bottom.
- When in landscape mode, swipe from the bottom to the left.

**Manually hide the virtual navigation keys**. To set the keys to appear only when needed, turn on **Virtual Navigation Keys Can Be Hidden.** Then you can click ﹀ on the left-lower corner of the screen to hide the keys, and swipe from the bottom to reveal them.



Navigation Keys

NAVIGATION MODE

Virtual Key Navigation ✓

Swipe-up Gesture Navigation

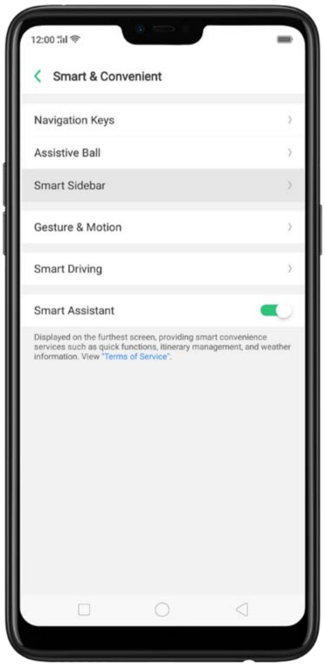
SELECT YOUR PREFERRED KEY LAYOUT

Virtual Navigation Keys Can Be Hidden

## Swipe-up Gesture Navigation

Four kinds of new swipe-up navigation gestures are added to your phone, and you can choose one that suits you most.

**Use swipe-up navigation gestures**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Smart & Convenient]** > **[Navigation Keys]** and click **[Swipe-up Gesture Navigation]**.



Smart & Convenient

Navigation Keys

Assistive Ball

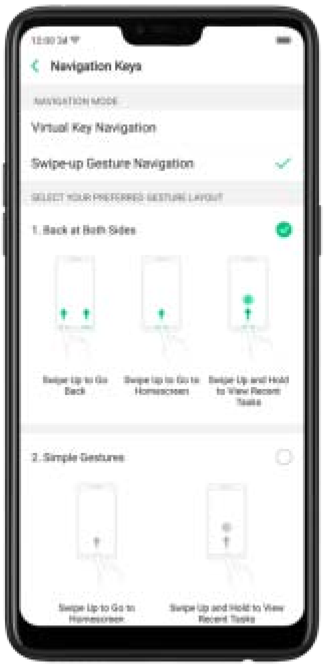
Smart Sidebar

Gesture & Motion

Smart Driving

Smart Assistant

Displayed on the furthest screen, providing smart convenience services such as quick functions, itinerary management, and weather information. View "Terms of Service".



Navigation Keys

NAVIGATION MODE

Virtual Key Navigation

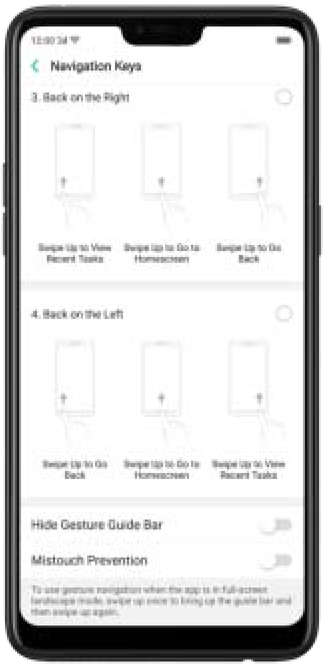
Swipe-up Gesture Navigation ✓

SELECT YOUR PREFERRED GESTURE LAYOUT

1. Back at Both Sides ●

2. Simple Gestures ○

Swipe Up to Go Back
Swipe Up to Go to Homescreen
Swipe Up and Hold to View Recent Tasks
Swipe Up to Go to Homescreen
Swipe Up and Hold to View Recent Tasks



Navigation Keys

3. Back on the Right ○

4. Back on the Left ○

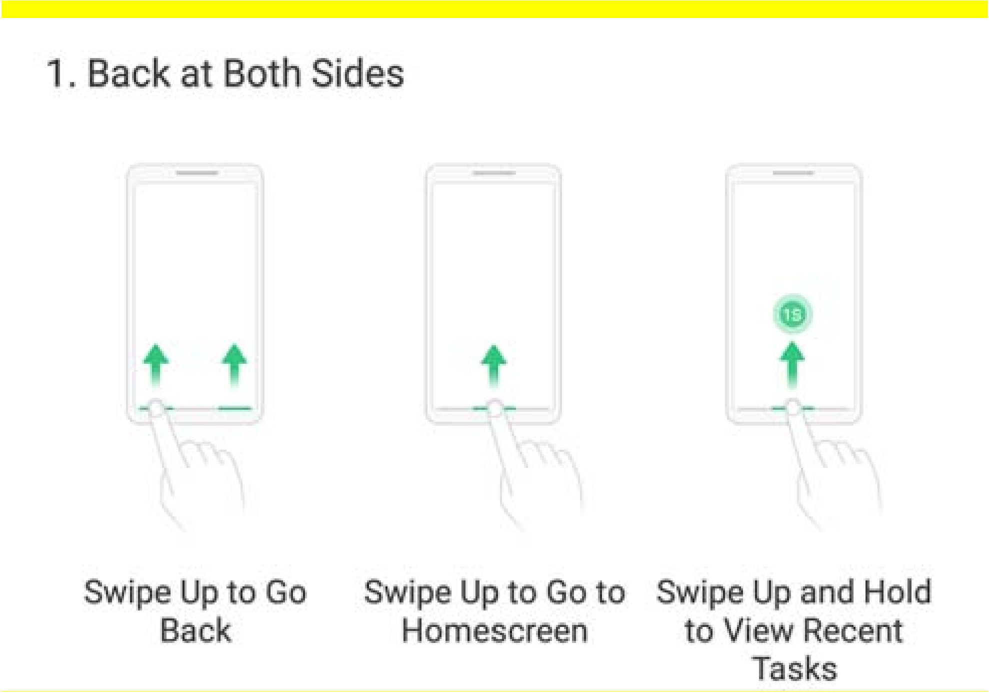
Hide Gesture Guide Bar

Mistouch Prevention

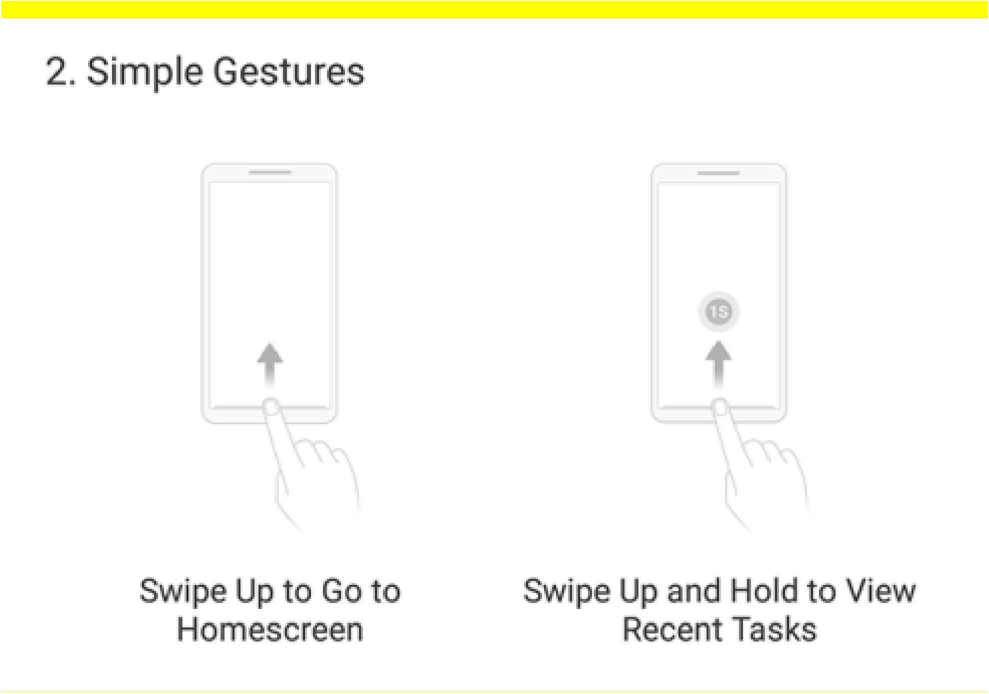
To use gesture navigation when the app is in full-screen landscape mode, swipe up once to bring up the guide bar and then swipe up again.

Swipe Up to View Recent Tasks
Swipe Up to Go to Homescreen
Swipe Up to Go Back
Swipe Up to Go Back
Swipe Up to Go to Homescreen
Swipe Up to View Recent Tasks

**Back at both sides**. Swipe up from the left or right bottom to return to upper page, swipe up from the middle bottom to get to the Home screen, and swipe up from the middle bottom and pause 1 second to view recent tasks.

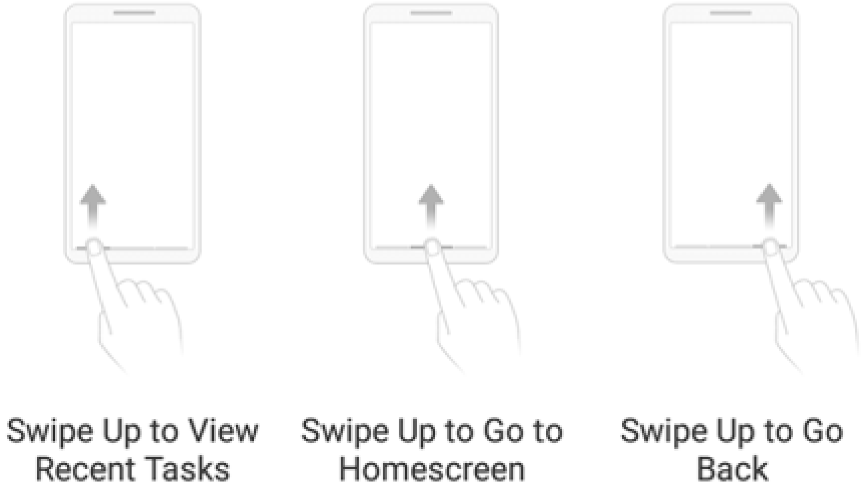

1. Back at Both Sides
Swipe Up to Go Back
Swipe Up to Go to Homescreen
1S
Swipe Up and Hold to View Recent Tasks

**Simple gestures**. Swipe up from the middle bottom to get to the Home screen, and swipe up from the middle bottom and pause 1 second to view recent tasks.


2. Simple Gestures
Swipe Up to Go to Homescreen
1S
Swipe Up and Hold to View Recent Tasks

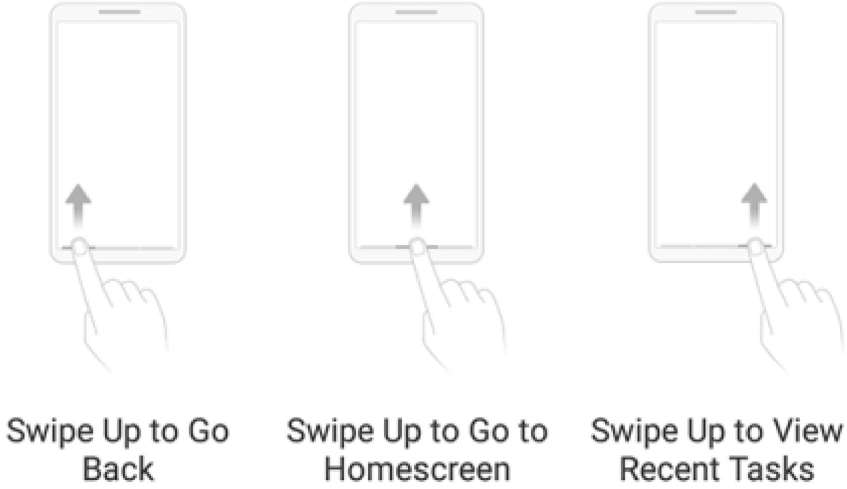
**Back on the right**. Swipe up from the left bottom to view recent tasks, swipe up from the middle bottom to get to the Home screen, and swipe up from the right bottom to return to upper page.

### 3. Back on the Right


Swipe Up to View Recent Tasks
Swipe Up to Go to Homescreen
Swipe Up to Go Back

**Back on the left**. Swipe up from the left bottom to return to upper page, swipe up from the middle bottom to get to the Home screen, and swipe up from the right bottom to view recent tasks.

### 4. Back on the Left

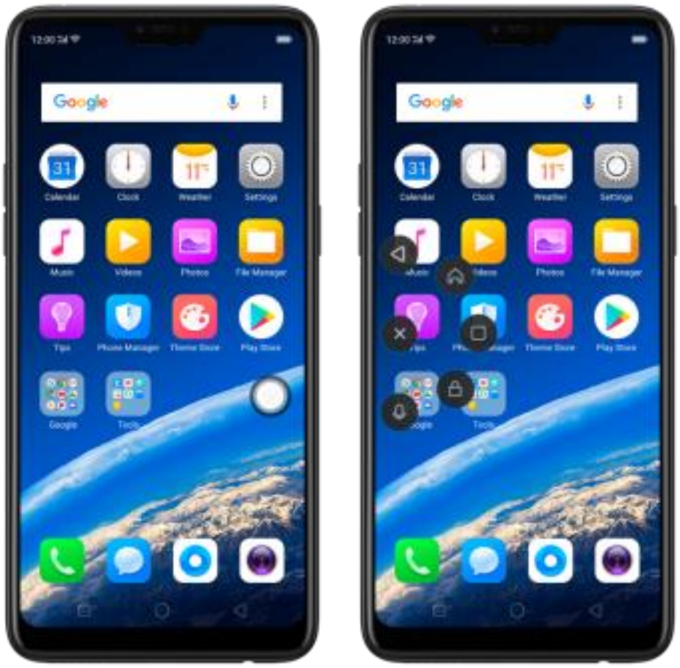

Swipe Up to Go Back
Swipe Up to Go to Homescreen
Swipe Up to View Recent Tasks

**Hide Gesture Guide Bar**. Gesture Guide Bar is the translucent line at the bottom of the screen, which allows you to quickly distinguish the left, middle, and right swipe-up regions. To hide the guide bar, turn on **[Hide Gesture Guide Bar]**.

**Prevent mistakenly touching**. Turn on **[Mistouch Prevention]**. To use gesture navigation when the app is in Landscape Mode, you need to swipe up to bring up the guide bar first, then swipe up again in the same area.

## 5.6.2. Assistive Ball

Applying the Assistive Ball feature provides options to access several regular phone features through the touchscreen, rather than the tactile buttons. It enables you to use the virtual navigation keys with just one finger, and also open the notification center, take a screenshot, and more. When you perform gestures that are difficult for you, Assistive Ball can help.



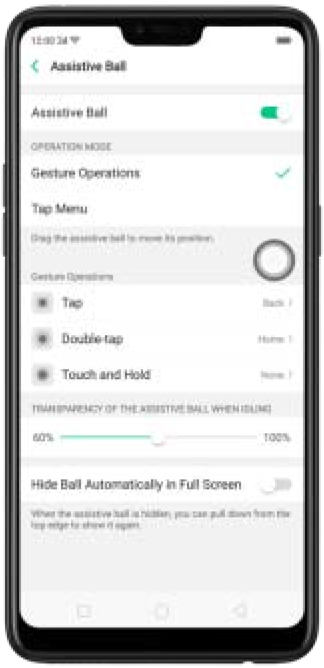
Assistive Ball lets you perform a wide range of features:

- Return to upper page
- Go to the Home screen
- View recent tasks
- Open Notification Center
- Lock the screen
- Enter One-hand Mode
- Take a screenshot

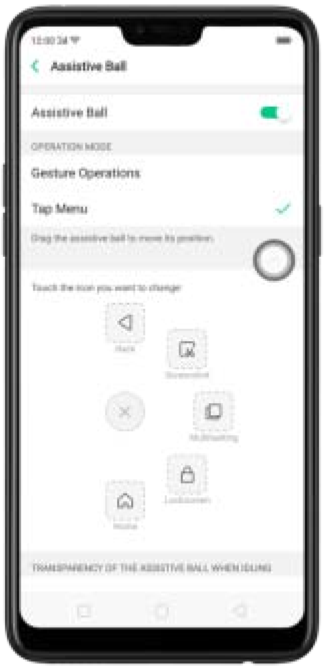
To configure the Assistive Ball menu, go to **[Settings]** > **[Smart & Convenient]** > **[Assistive Ball]**, then choose one operation mode:

**Gesture Operations**. Below Gesture Operations, you can assign different actions to a single tap, double tap, or long press. For example, assign “Home” to “Touch and hold", then you can long press the Assistive Ball to go to the Home screen.

**Tap Menu**. There are five shortcuts for enabling different features in Tap Menu. Click a shortcut and change the option to the one you preferred. On any screen, click the Assistive Ball to pop up the shortcut menu.

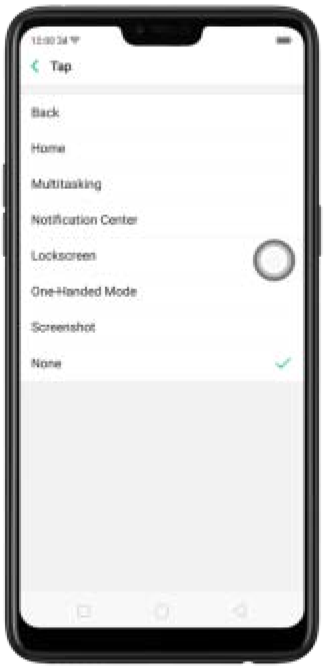


Assistive Ball
Assistive Ball
OPERATION MODE
Gesture Operations ✓
Tap Menu
Drag the assistive ball to move its position.
Gesture Operations
Tap Back
Double-tap Home
Touch and Hold None
TRANSPARENCY OF THE ASSISTIVE BALL WHEN IDLING
60% 100%
Hide Ball Automatically in Full Screen
When the assistive ball is hidden, you can pull down from the top edge to show it again.



Assistive Ball
Assistive Ball
OPERATION MODE
Gesture Operations
Tap Menu ✓
Drag the assistive ball to move its position.
Touch the icon you want to change

TRANSPARENCY OF THE ASSISTIVE BALL WHEN IDLING



Tap
Back
Home
Multitasking
Notification Center
Lockscreen
One-Handed Mode
Screenshot
None ✓

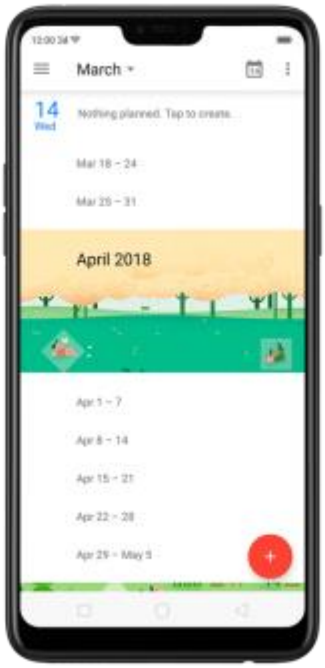
When Assistive Ball is on, you can hold the floating button and pull it around the screen to any location to get it out of the way or make it more accessible.

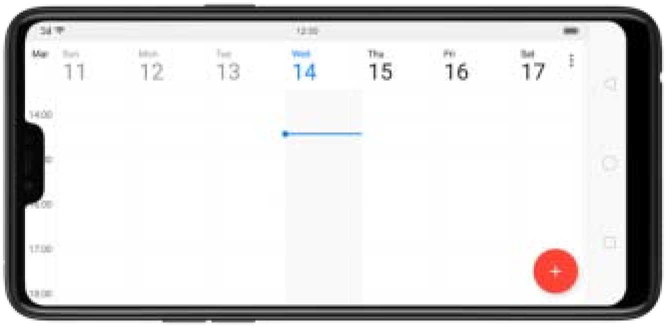
**Adjust the transparency of the Assistive Ball when not in use**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Smart & Convenient]** > **[Assistive Ball]**, then drag the slider.

**Hide the Assistive Ball automatically in full screen**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Smart & Convenient]** > **[Assistive Ball]** and turn on **[Hide Ball Automatically in Full screen]**. To reveal the Assistive Ball, swipe down from the top of the screen.

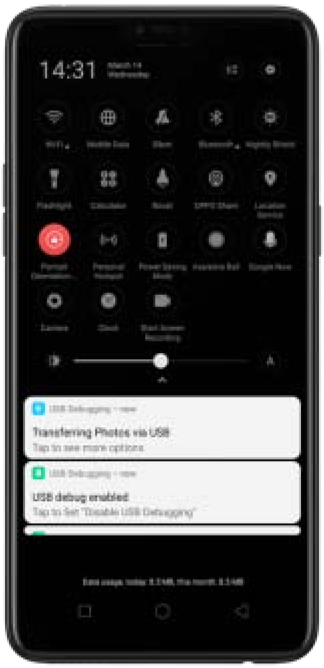
## 5.7. Change the screen orientation

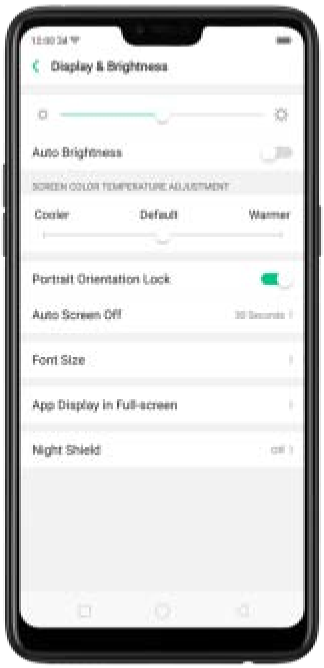
OPPO smartphone supports portrait and landscape screen orientations. Every time you shift your hands, the screen rotates.


March
14
Nothing planned. Tap to create.
Mar 18 – 24
Mar 25 – 31
April 2018
Apr 1 – 7
Apr 8 – 14
Apr 15 – 21
Apr 22 – 28
Apr 29 – May 5


11
12
13
14
15
16
17

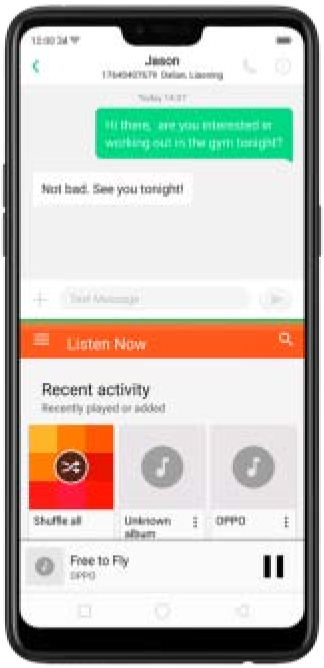
To lock the screen in portrait orientation, swipe down from the top of the screen to open Control Center, then click 🔒. Or go to **[Settings]** > **[Display & Brightness]** and toggle the **[Portrait Orientation Lock]** slider to green. Notice that 🔒 appears in the status bar.


14:31
Transferring Photos via USB
USB debug enabled


Display & Brightness
Auto Brightness
SCREEN COLOR TEMPERATURE ADJUSTMENT
Cooler
Default
Warmer
Portrait Orientation Lock
Auto Screen Off
Font Size
App Display in Full-screen
Night Shield

## 5.8. Split-screen

ColorOS 5.0 lets you set multiple modes to fulfill your personal needs. The split-screen mode allows you to divide the screen into two areas, with each area showing a different scene at the same time. Now you can watch a movie and chat with friends at the same screen.



Hi there, are you interested in working out in the gym tonight?

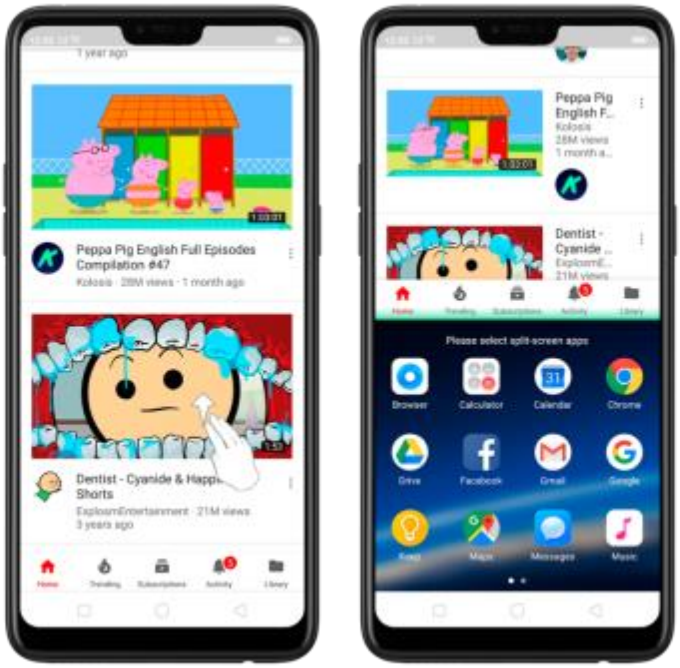
Not bad. See you tonight!

Jason
Listen Now
Recent activity
Recently played or added
Shuffle all
Unknown album
OPPO
Free to Fly
OPPO

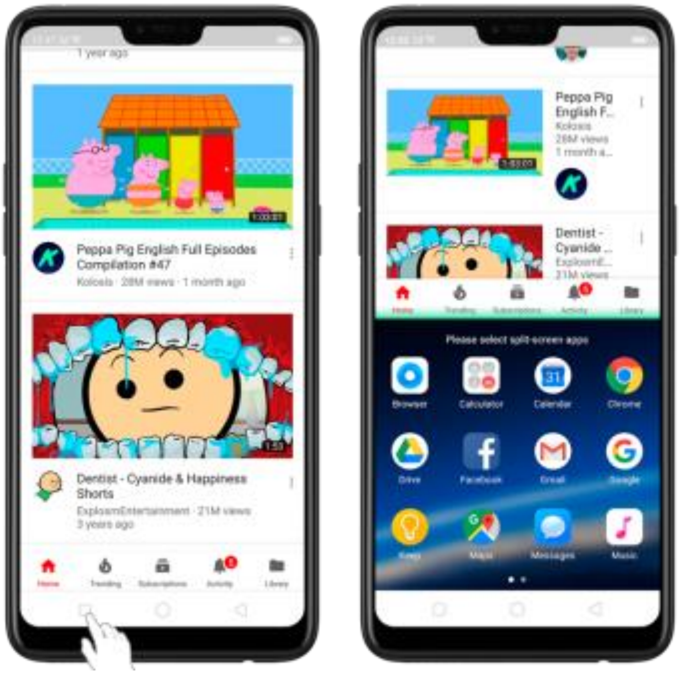
**Use Split-screen**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Split-screen]**, then turn on **[App Split-screen]** and **[Swipe up with 3 Fingers for Split-screen]**. There are four methods to enter Split-screen mode:

**Note**: Both apps need to support Split-screen function. Your phone will alert you if the app doesn't support that.

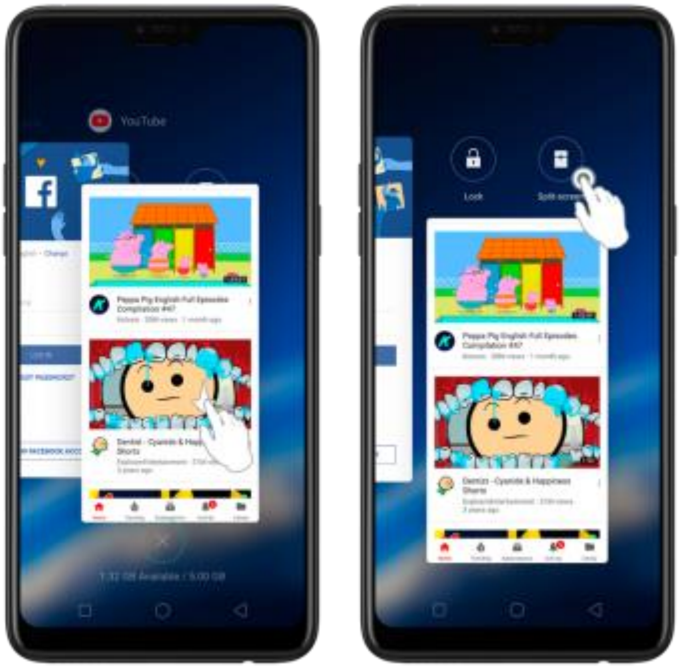
- Under the interface of an app, swipe up the screen with three fingers to enter split-screen mode.


Peppa Pig English Full Episodes Compilation #47
Dentist - Cyanide & Happiness Shorts
Please select split-screen apps
Browser
Calculator
Calendar
Chrome
Drive
Facebook
Gmail
Google
Keep
Maps
Messages
Music

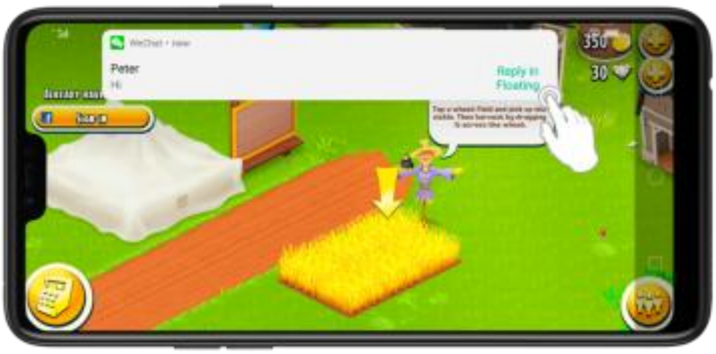
- Under the interface of an app, press and hold the Multitask button to enter split-screen mode.


Peppa Pig English Full Episodes Compilation #47
Dentist - Cyanide & Happiness Shorts
Please select split-screen apps
Browser
Calculator
Calendar
Chrome
Drive
Facebook
Gmail
Google
Keep
Maps
Messages
Music

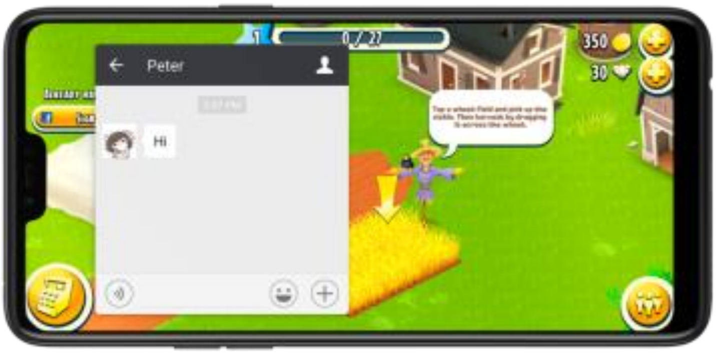
- In recent tasks screen, swipe down a task card, then click the “Spilt-screen” button to enter split-screen mode.


YouTube
Lock
Split-screen

- When you use an app in landscape mode and receive a message from other apps, click “Split-screen Reply” to enter split-screen mode.


WeChat • now
Reply in Floating
350
30

Peter
Hi


Peter
0 / 22
350
30

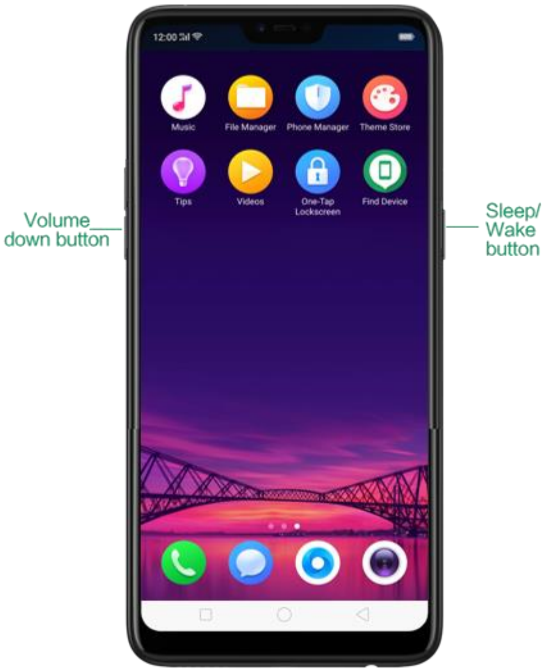
Hi

# 5.9. Take and edit a screenshot

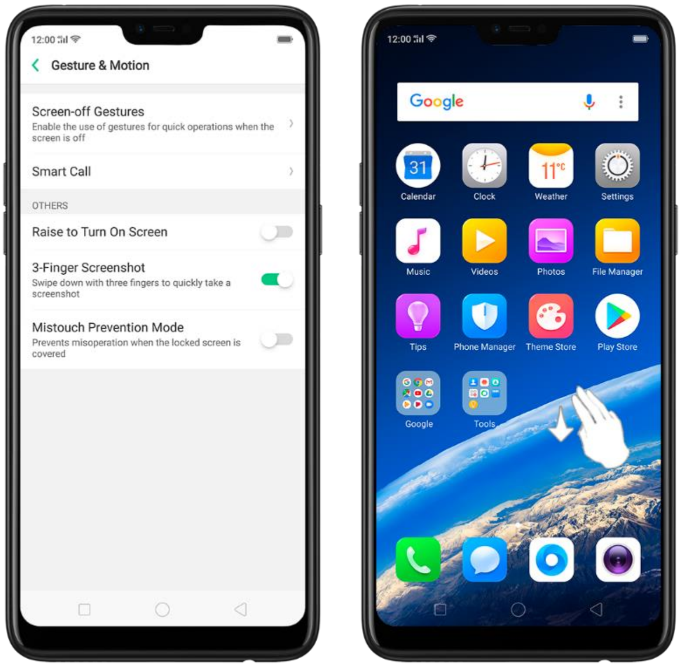
You can capture the screen on your OPPO smartphone using the following ways:

## Capture the current page

- **Press and hold the Power and Volume Down buttons** for about 2 seconds, the screen will briefly flash white, and you'll hear a shutter sound if your phone's sound is on.


Volume down button
Sleep/ Wake button
12:00
Music
File Manager
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Tips
Videos
One-Tap Lockscreen
Find Device

- **Gesture Screenshot:** Go to **[Settings]**> **[Smart& Convenient]** ＞**[Gesture & Motion]** and turn on **[3-Finger Screenshot]**. Then swipe down the screen with three fingers to take a screenshot.



Gesture & Motion

Screen-off Gestures
Enable the use of gestures for quick operations when the screen is off

Smart Call

OTHERS

Raise to Turn On Screen ○

3-Finger Screenshot ●
Swipe down with three fingers to quickly take a screenshot

Mistouch Prevention Mode ○
Prevents misoperation when the locked screen is covered

12:00
Google
Calendar
Clock
Weather
Settings
Music
Videos
Photos
File Manager
Tips
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Play Store
Google
Tools

## Capture a long screenshot

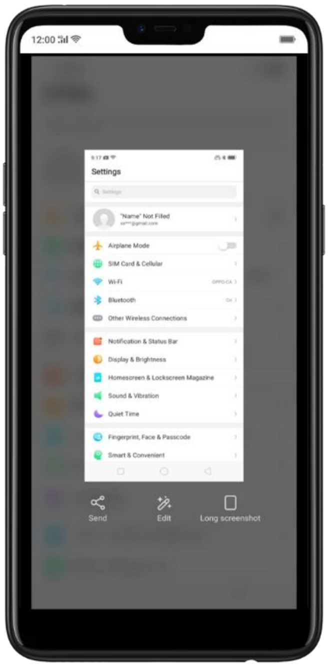
With OPPO smartphone, you can easily take longer and scrolling screenshot with simple clicks. Long screenshot allows you to take scrolling screenshot of your conversations on messaging apps or a full webpage.

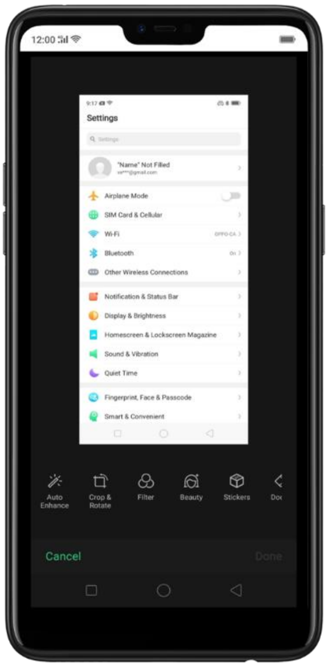
**To capture long screenshots**:

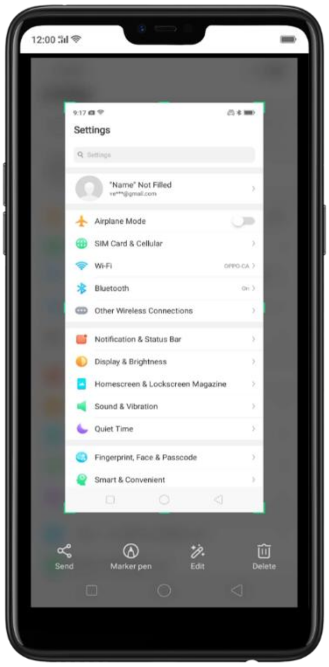
1. **Press and hold the Power and Volume Up buttons** for about 2 seconds, or swipe down the screen with three fingers to take a screenshot of the current page.
2. Click the screenshot, click **Long Screenshot**, **then** scroll the page up or down and stop whenever you want to.
3. Click **Done** to generate a long screenshot. The image is saved in the **Photos** app.

## Edit a screenshot

After you've taken a screenshot, click it, then click **Edit**. You can use the fancy new markup features to optimize it instantly, such as adding text, light, filters, and more. Click **Done** to save your changes.

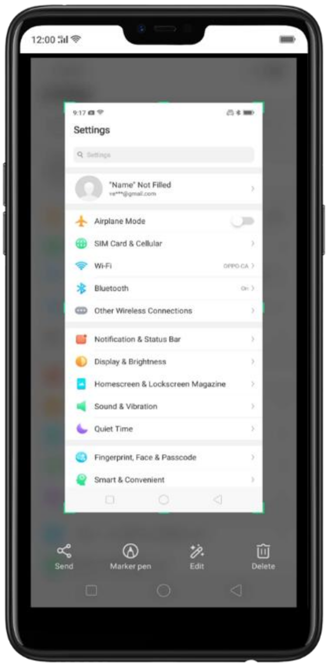

Settings
Send
Edit
Long screenshot


Settings
Auto Enhance
Crop & Rotate
Filter
Beauty
Stickers
Cancel
Done


Settings
Send
Marker pen
Edit
Delete

## Use a Marker Pen

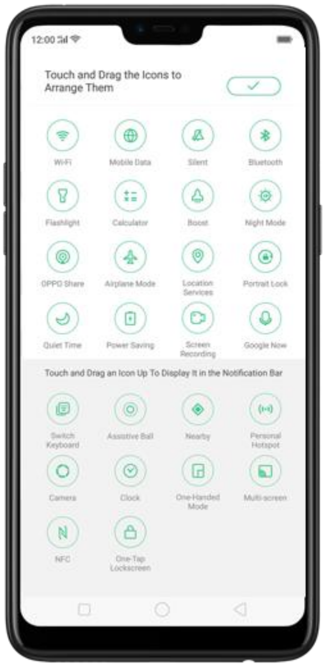
After you've taken a screenshot, click it, then click **Marker Pen**. You can highlight a word or write a note on the image. Click **Done** to save your changes. (Note: Marker pen is only available in red color).


Settings
Send
Marker pen
Edit
Delete

# 5.10. Control Center, Notification, and Status Bar

## Control Center

Control Center gives you instant access to the most frequently used features and allows you to view recent and earlier notifications with just a swipe. You can open Control Center from anywhere on your phone from any app or screen, even from the lock screen.



Touch and Drag the Icons to Arrange Them

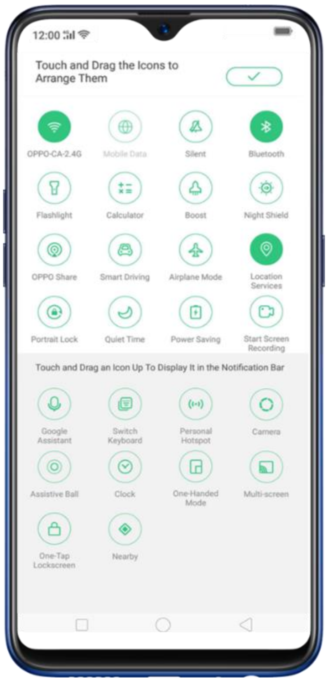
Touch and Drag an Icon Up To Display It in the Notification Bar

12:00
✓
Wi-Fi
Mobile Data
Silent
Bluetooth
Flashlight
Calculator
Boost
Night Mode
OPPO Share
Airplane Mode
Location Services
Portrait Lock
Quiet Time
Power Saving
Screen Recording
Google Now
Switch Keyboard
Assistive Ball
Nearby
Personal Hotspot
Camera
Clock
One-Handed Mode
Multi-screen
NFC
One-Tap Lockscreen

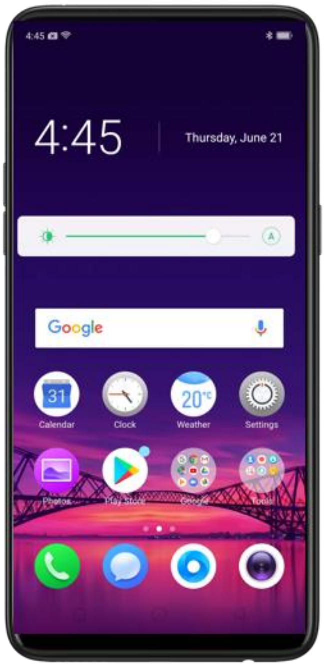
**Open Control Center**. Swipe down from the very top of any screen (except the notch at the top center of the display). You'll see the shortcuts listed on top, and notifications below.

**Customize the shortcuts**. By default, the phone will list ten shortcuts when you open Control Center. Click ⌄ or swipe down the screen to show other shortcuts.

To change or rearrange the shortcuts, click ⠿↕ on the top, then hold down and drag an icon to your preferred position. To save your changes, click ✓.


12:00
Touch and Drag the Icons to Arrange Them
OPPO-CA-2.4G
Mobile Data
Silent
Bluetooth
Flashlight
Calculator
Boost
Night Shield
OPPO Share
Smart Driving
Airplane Mode
Location Services
Portrait Lock
Quiet Time
Power Saving
Start Screen Recording
Touch and Drag an Icon Up To Display It in the Notification Bar
Google Assistant
Switch Keyboard
Personal Hotspot
Camera
Assistive Ball
Clock
One-Handed Mode
Multi-screen
One-Tap Lockscreen
Nearby

**Control the brightness.** Drag the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen. When you drag the slider, other parts of Control Center will be temporarily hidden.


4:45
4:45
Thursday, June 21
Google
31
Calendar
Clock
20°C
Weather
Settings
Photos
Play Store
Google
Tools

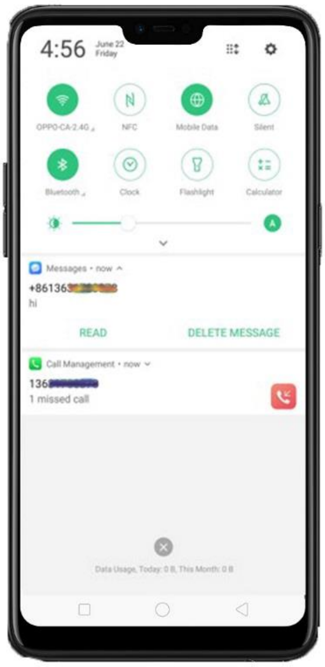
## Notifications

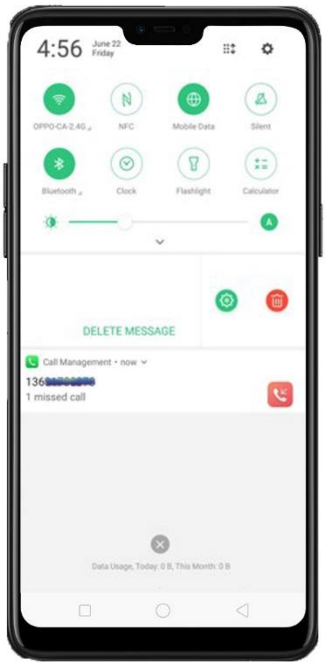
**View all notifications**. Swipe down from the very top to view recent notifications.

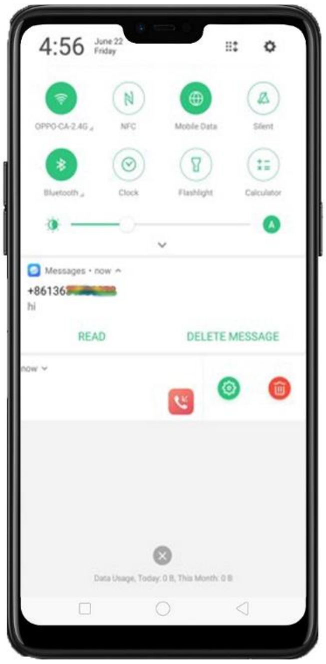
**Open the app to respond**. Click a notification to go to the related app.

When phone screen is locked, swipe the notification to the right. You may need to enter your passcode.

**Dismiss notifications**. Swipe the notification to the left, then click **Delete**. To dismiss all notifications, Click ✕.

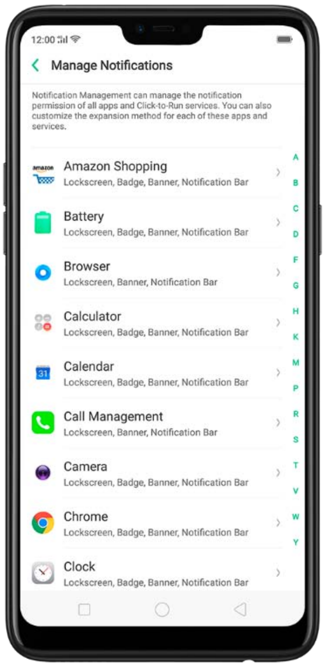

4:56
June 22 Friday
OPPO-CA-2.4G
NFC
Mobile Data
Silent
Bluetooth
Clock
Flashlight
Calculator
Messages • now
+861363[redacted]
hi
READ
DELETE MESSAGE
Call Management • now
136[redacted]
1 missed call
Data Usage, Today: 0 B, This Month: 0 B


4:56
June 22 Friday
OPPO-CA-2.4G
NFC
Mobile Data
Silent
Bluetooth
Clock
Flashlight
Calculator
DELETE MESSAGE
Call Management • now
136[redacted]
1 missed call
Data Usage, Today: 0 B, This Month: 0 B


4:56
June 22 Friday
OPPO-CA-2.4G
NFC
Mobile Data
Silent
Bluetooth
Clock
Flashlight
Calculator
Messages • now
+861363[redacted]
hi
READ
DELETE MESSAGE
now
Data Usage, Today: 0 B, This Month: 0 B

**Manage your notification settings**. Swipe the notification to the left, click **Settings**, or go to **[Settings] > [Notification & Status Bar] > [Manage notifications]**.

Select an app from the list to customize whether new notifications from that app appear on the lock screen or notification bar, display a banner, play a sound or vibrate, or whether show icon badges on the Home screen. You can also allow ringing for notifications when Do Not Disturb is on.



12:00

Manage Notifications

Notification Management can manage the notification permission of all apps and Click-to-Run services. You can also customize the expansion method for each of these apps and services.

Amazon Shopping
Lockscreen, Badge, Banner, Notification Bar

Battery
Lockscreen, Badge, Banner, Notification Bar

Browser
Lockscreen, Banner, Notification Bar

Calculator
Lockscreen, Badge, Banner, Notification Bar

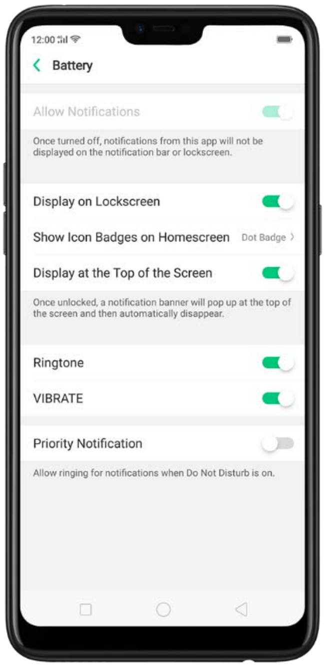
Calendar
Lockscreen, Badge, Banner, Notification Bar

Call Management
Lockscreen, Banner, Notification Bar

Camera
Lockscreen, Badge, Banner, Notification Bar

Chrome
Lockscreen, Badge, Banner, Notification Bar

Clock
Lockscreen, Badge, Banner, Notification Bar



12:00

Battery

Allow Notifications

Once turned off, notifications from this app will not be displayed on the notification bar or lockscreen.

Display on Lockscreen

Show Icon Badges on Homescreen Dot Badge

Display at the Top of the Screen

Once unlocked, a notification banner will pop up at the top of the screen and then automatically disappear.

Ringtone

VIBRATE

Priority Notification

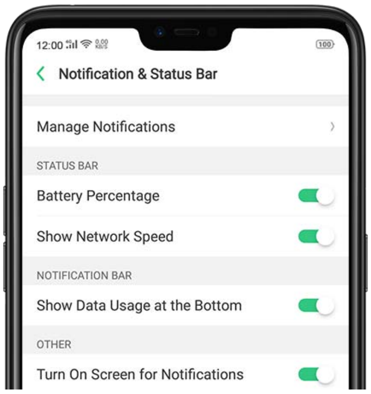
Allow ringing for notifications when Do Not Disturb is on.

- **Show data usage at the bottom**. Go to **[Settings] > [Notification & Status Bar]** and turn its slider to green. Your daily and monthly data usage will display at the bottom of the notification bar.
- **Turn on screen for notifications**. Go to **[Settings] > [Notification & Status Bar]** and turn its slider to green.

## Status Bar

Status icons are displayed on the status bar, indicating, for instance, wireless connectivity, the battery status and time.

**Display or hide battery percentage and network speed.** Go to **[Settings]** > **[Notification & Status Bar]**, and switch the sliders to green/white.



12:00 100

Notification & Status Bar

Manage Notifications

STATUS BAR

Battery Percentage

Show Network Speed

NOTIFICATION BAR

Show Data Usage at the Bottom

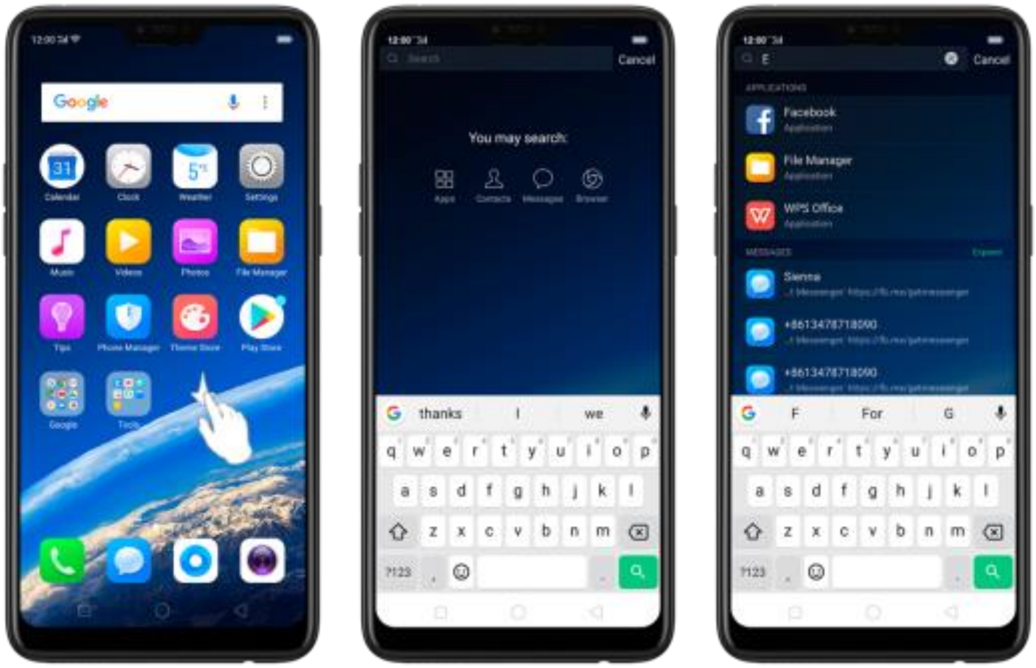
OTHER

Turn On Screen for Notifications

# 5.11. Search

Use the OPPO smartphone's Search feature to find specific apps, contacts, messages, or quickly search the Internet.

**Search with OPPO phone**. Swipe down on any page of the Home screen. Do not start swiping at the very top of the screen - that will open the Notification Center instead. Type in your search query, then click a search result on the list to open it.


Google
Calendar
Clock
Weather
Settings
Music
Videos
Photos
File Manager
Tips
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Play Store
Google
Tools
Search
Cancel
You may search:
Apps
Contacts
Messages
Browser
thanks
I
we
E
APPLICATIONS
Facebook
File Manager
WPS Office
MESSAGES
Sienna
+8613478718090
+8613478718090
F
For
G
?123

**Close Search.** You can either Click "Cancel", press the Return button, or swipe up the "Back" gesture that you have set.

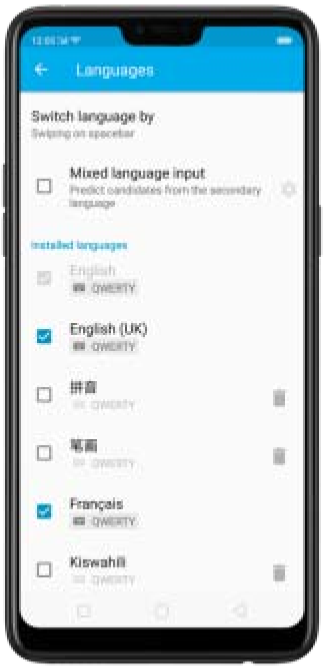
# 5.12. Test

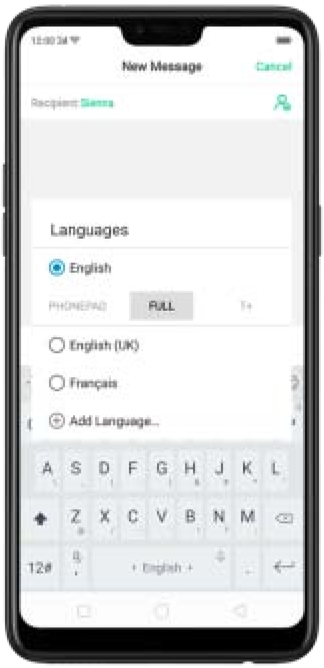
## 5.12.1. Add or change keyboard languages

If you need to type in a foreign language on your OPPO phone, you can do so by adding and changing the input language:

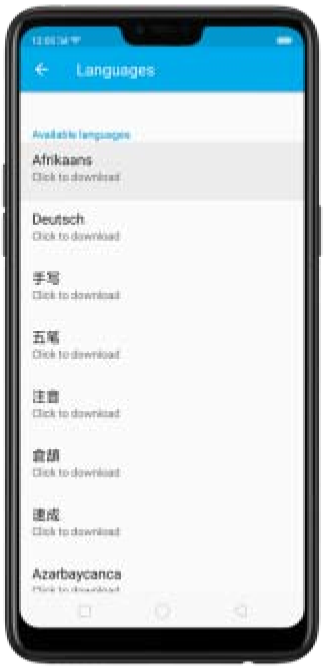
**Add installed languages**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Keyboard & Input Method]** > **[TouchPal for OPPO]** > **[Languages]**, then tick the languages to use.

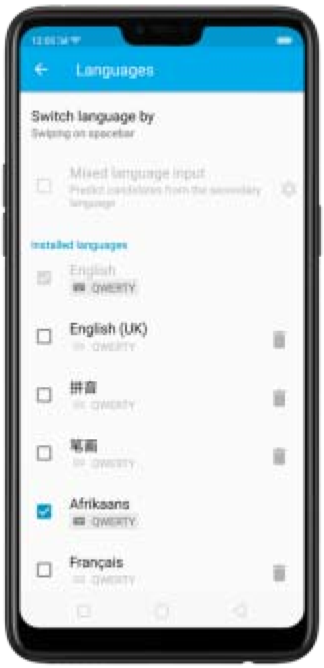
You can also add languages as you type. Click 🌐 > **[Add language]** and tick the languages to use.


Languages
Switch language by
Swiping on spacebar
Mixed language input
Predict candidates from the secondary language
Installed languages
English
QWERTY
English (UK)
QWERTY
拼音
QWERTY
笔画
QWERTY
Français
QWERTY
Kiswahili
QWERTY

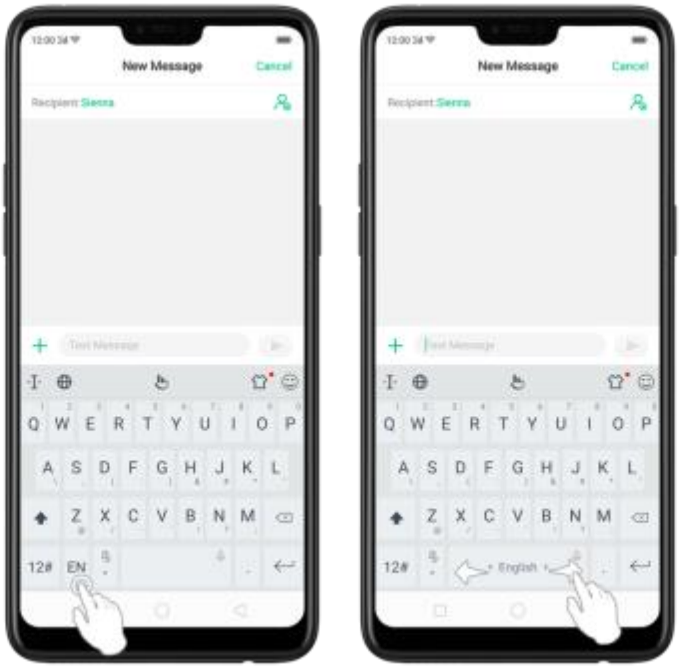

New Message
Cancel
Recipient: Sierra
Languages
English
PHONEPAD
FULL
T+
English (UK)
Français
Add Language...
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M
12#
English

**Download available languages.** Click to download the language pack. You'll see the language in Installed languages list when the download is completed.


Languages
Available languages
Afrikaans
Click to download
Deutsch
Click to download
手写
Click to download
五笔
Click to download
注音
Click to download
倉頡
Click to download
速成
Click to download
Azarbaycanca


Languages
Switch language by
Swiping on spacebar
Mixed language input
Predict candidates from the secondary language
Installed languages
English
QWERTY
English (UK)
QWERTY
拼音
QWERTY
笔画
QWERTY
Afrikaans
QWERTY
Français
QWERTY

**Change Keyboard languages**. As you type, switch language by clicking **EN** or swiping on spacebar.


New Message
Cancel
Recipient: Sienna
Text Message
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M
12#
EN
English

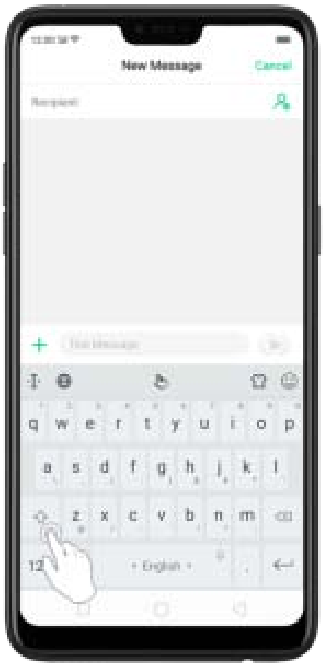
## 5.12.2.Type, edit, and delete text

### Type text

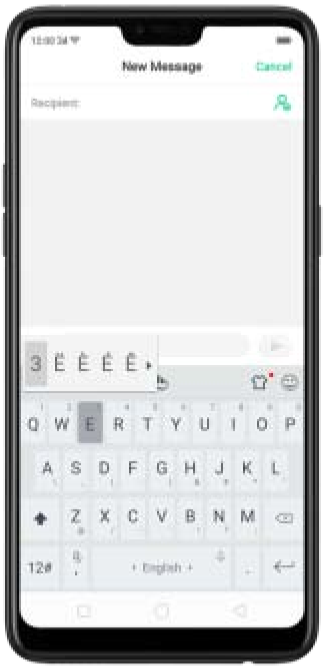
Click a text field to pop up the keyboard, then click the letter to type.

**Type capital letters**. OPPO smartphone is auto-capitalizing the first letter of a sentence, or you can click ⇧ to type capital letters.

**Turn on Caps Lock**. Double-click ⇧. A line will appear under the arrow if you have done this correctly.


New Message
Cancel
Recipient
12
English

**Enter numbers, punctuation, or symbols**. Click 12#. To type alternate characters, touch and hold a key, then slide to choose one of the options.


New Message
Cancel
Recipient
3 È É Ê Ë
12#
English

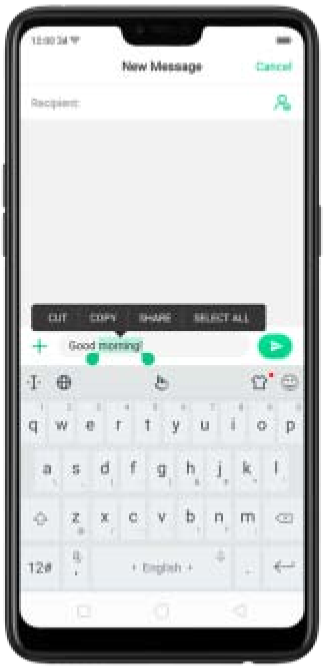
**Switch language**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Keyboard & Input Method]** > **[TouchPal for OPPO]** > **[Languages]**.

Tick the languages to use, then switch language by clicking **EN** or swiping on spacebar.

**Revise text**. Click on your text to move the cursor to the insertion point.

## Edit text

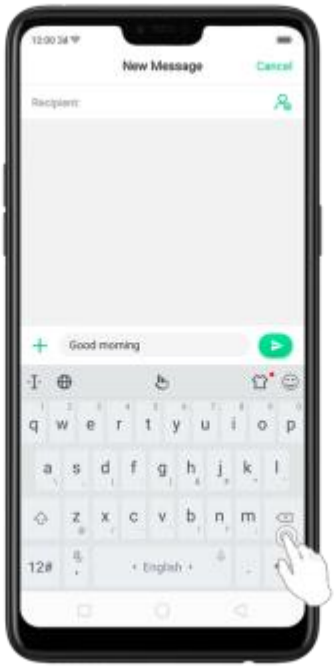
**Select text**. Touch and hold the target text, or double-click the target text to select. Drag the control points on either side of the highlighted word to select more or less text, or click **[Select all]** to highlight all of the text.
You can cut, copy, paste or share your text ~~then~~.


New Message
Cancel
Recipient
CUT
COPY
SHARE
SELECT ALL
English

Good morning

## Delete text

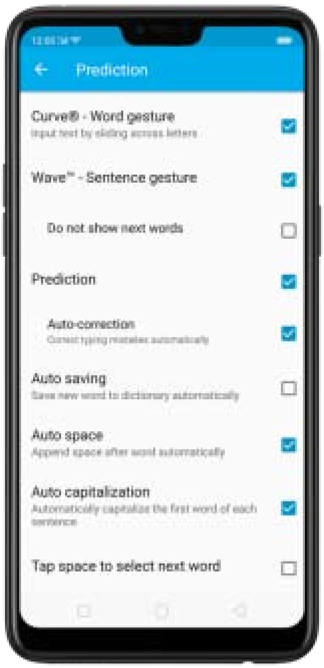
Click ⌫ to delete the selected text or characters before the cursor.


New Message
Cancel
Recipient
English

Good morning

## 5.12.3.Prediction

Prediction feature lets you to enter text with ease and without errors.
Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Keyboard & Input Method]** > **[TouchPal for OPPO]** > **[Prediction]**.



Prediction

Curve® - Word gesture ☑
Input text by sliding across letters

Wave™ - Sentence gesture ☑

Do not show next words ☐

Prediction ☑

Auto-correction ☑
Correct typing mistakes automatically

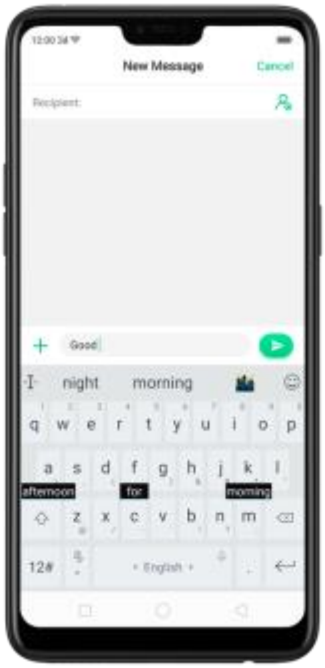
Auto saving ☐
Save new word to dictionary automatically

Auto space ☑
Append space after word automatically

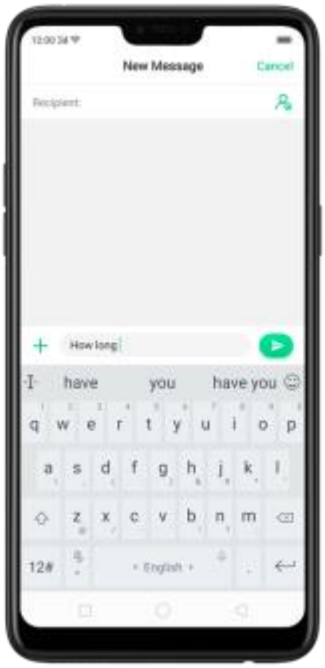
Auto capitalization ☑
Automatically capitalize the first word of each sentence

Tap space to select next word ☐

**Use TouchPal Curve** to input text simply by swiping across the keyboard, from one letter to another.
**Use Wave – Sentence gesture** to input commonly used phrases/sentences.


New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
Good
night
morning
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
afternoon
for
morning
z x c v b n m
12#
English

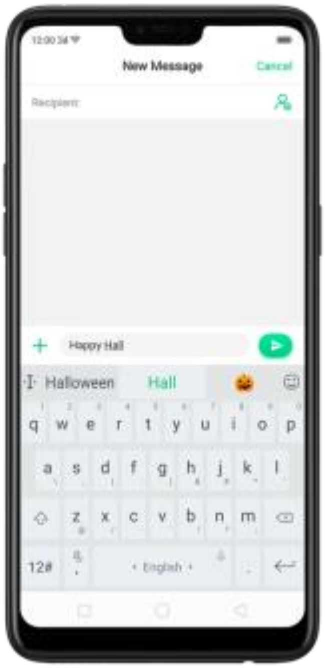
**Predict text**. While you type, the keyboard predicts your next word, and offer suggestions for likely words before you finish typing. Click the word or the spacebar to select


New Message
Cancel
Recipient
How long
have
you
have you
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
12#
English

**Correct spelling automatically**. The keyboard will automatically check and correct the spelling of the text.

**Auto-saving new words, adding space, and capitalizing**. As you type, the keyboard will also automatically save new words to the dictionary, add space after a word and capitalize the first word of each sentence.

**Predict Emojis**. As you type, the keyboard predicts what emoji comes next.

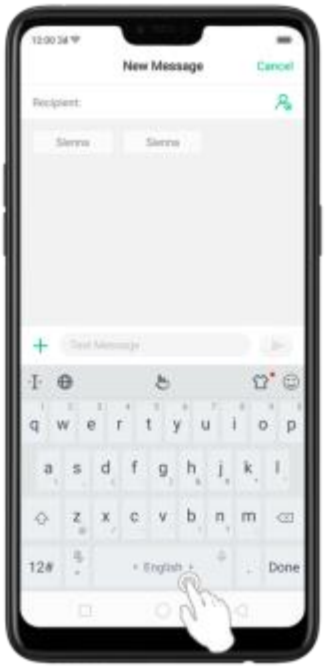

New Message
Cancel
Recipient
Happy Hall
Halloween
Hall
🎃
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
12#
English

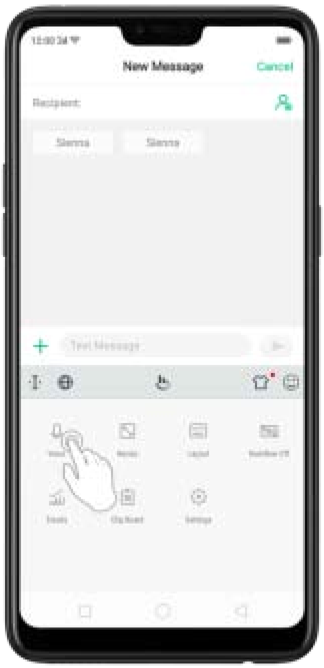
**Contextual prediction**. The keyboard will suggest what it thinks are the most likely words based on what you're typing.
**Import contact names**. The names of your contacts will be added to user dictionary.
**Learn from messages**. Let the keyboard learn from your conversations and predict words you use most.
**User dictionary**. Click **Edit user words**, then add your own words into the dictionary so that they appear in the word prediction fields when typing. You can also back up or restore your dictionary to or from the SD card, or rebuild, or clear your dictionary.

## 5.12.4.Voice typing

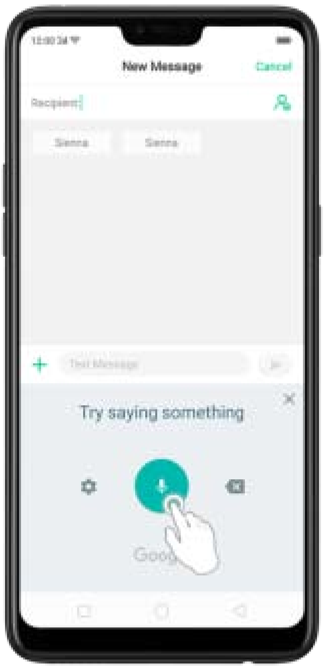
When you're connected to the Internet, you can use the built-in microphone to speak the text instead of typing it.

**Start voice typing**. Touch and hold the space bar on the bottom of the screen, or click > **[Voice]**, then speak.

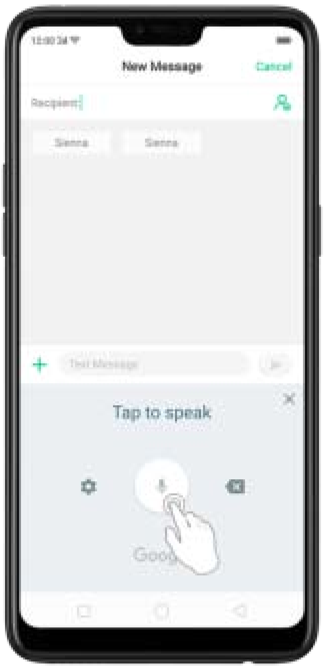

New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
Sienna
Sienna
Text Message
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
12#
English
Done


New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
Sienna
Sienna
Text Message
Voice
Resize
Layout
Clip Board
Settings

**Pause voice typing**. Click the microphone icon to pause/continue dictating the words. Click ✕ to quit voice typing.


New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
Sienna
Sienna
Text Message
Goog

Try saying something


New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
Sienna
Sienna
Text Message
Goog

Tap to speak

**Select input languages**. Click ⚙ on the panel, or go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Keyboard & Input Method]** > **[Google voice typing]** > **[Languages]**. Select your preferred languages. To select a primary language, touch and hold the language.

**Insert and delete text**. To insert or delete text, click to place the insertion point first.

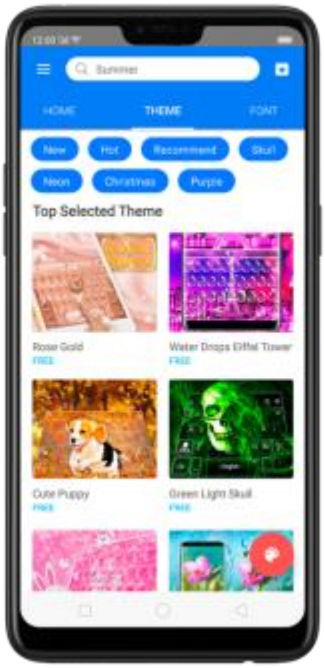
Click ⌫ to the right of the microphone icon to delete text.

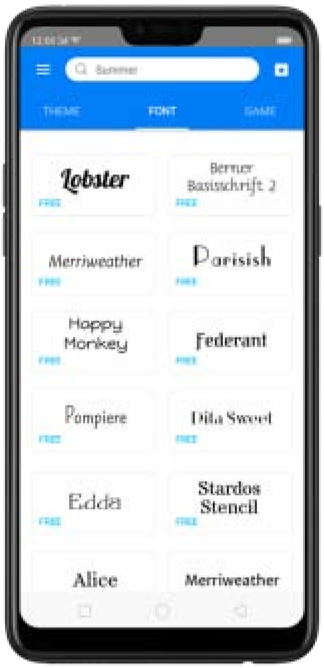
**To enable voice input while offline：** Click ⚙ on the panel to manage **[Offline speech recognition].**

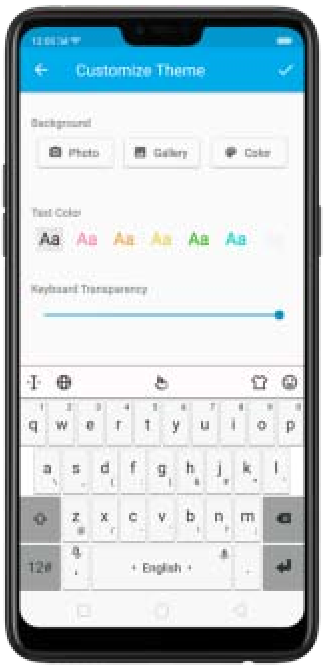
## 5.12.5.TouchPal for OPPO

TouchPal Keyboard is the default keyboard on OPPO smartphones. You can use it to enter text by tapping on the keys or swiping across the keyboard, from one letter to another. Besides its basic typing features, TouchPal has introduced some innovations. Click 👆 on the on-screen keyboard to get more information.

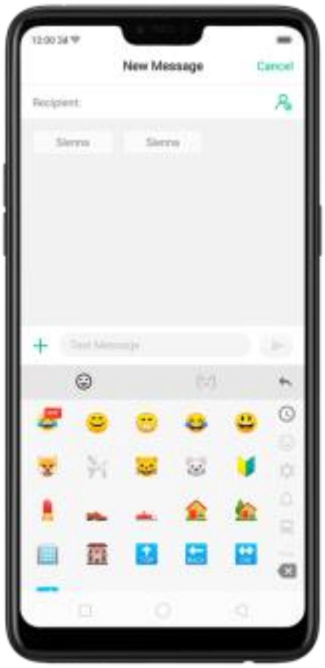
**Multiple themes available**. You can dress up the keyboard with various themes or customize the keyboard by yourself.


Summer
HOME
THEME
FONT
New
Hot
Recommend
Skull
Neon
Christmas
Purple
Top Selected Theme
Rose Gold
FREE
Water Drops Eiffel Tower
FREE
Cute Puppy
FREE
Green Light Skull
FREE


Summer
THEME
FONT
GAME
Lobster
FREE
Berner Basisschrift 2
FREE
Merriweather
FREE
Parisish
FREE
Happy Monkey
FREE
Federant
FREE
Pompiere
FREE
Dila Sweet
FREE
Edda
FREE
Stardos Stencil
FREE
Alice
Merriweather


Customize Theme
Background
Photo
Gallery
Color
Text Color
Aa
Aa
Aa
Aa
Aa
Aa
Keyboard Transparency
English
12#

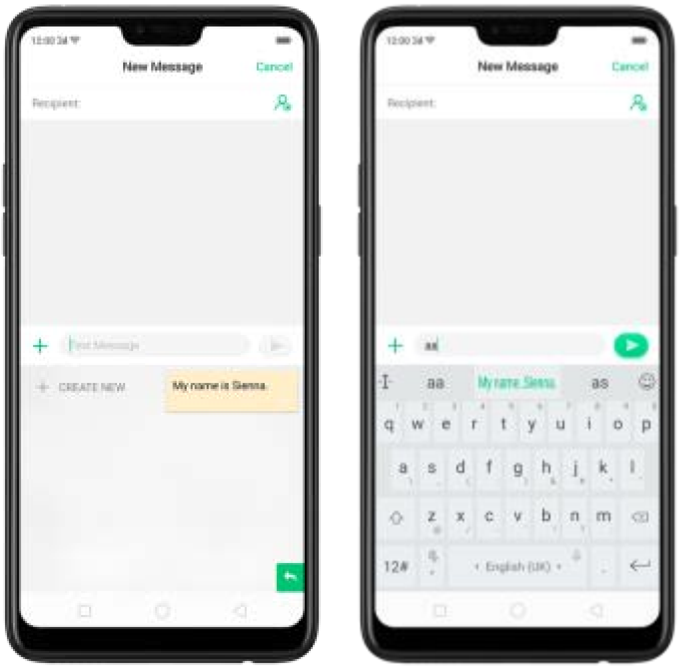
**Emojis and stickers**. TouchPal has multiple emojis and stickers and can predict what emoji comes next.


New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
Sienna
Sienna
Text Message

**Intelligent input**. With TouchPal Curve®, you can type by sliding from letter to letter instead of tapping. Advanced technologies such as Contextual Prediction, Autocorrection, and User Dictionary also make typing faster. See Prediction.

**Different on-screen keyboard styles**. In addition to the default keyboard style, the undocked, one-handed, and split keyboard on the screen makes typing with both thumbs a breeze. You can use "Undock" feature to position the keyboard anywhere on screen, or narrow the keyboard with one-handed mode, or split the keyboard in half.

**Clip board**. It allows you to type a long string of text by entering a shorter string. Create a keyboard shortcut for a word, phrase, or sentence. Whenever you type a specific shortcut, it will replace those letters with a predefined piece of text.

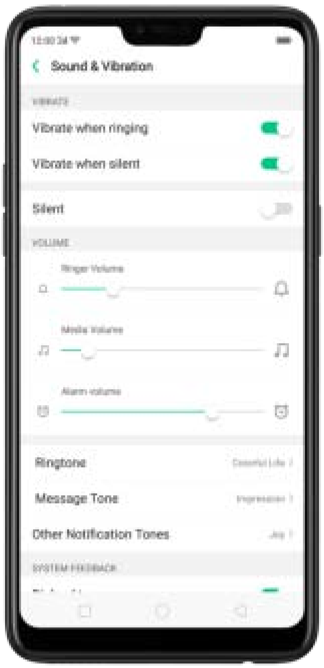

New Message
Cancel
Recipient
Text Message
CREATE NEW
My name is Sienna.
New Message
Cancel
Recipient
as
aa
My name Sienna
as
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
12#
English (UK)

## 5.13. Sound, Vibration, and System Feedback

You can set an OPPO smartphone to sound or vibrate for incoming calls, messages, and other notifications, and let your phone send sound or haptic feedbacks on key clicks.

**Set your phone to vibrate**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Sound & Vibration]**. Separate controls let you set your phone to vibrate in ring mode, silent mode, or both.

**Turn ringing on or off**. Toggle the **[Silent]** slider to green or white. You can also swipe down from the top of the screen to open the Control Center, then click 🔕 to turn on Silent mode.



Sound & Vibration

VIBRATE

Vibrate when ringing

Vibrate when silent

Silent

VOLUME

Ringer Volume

Media Volume

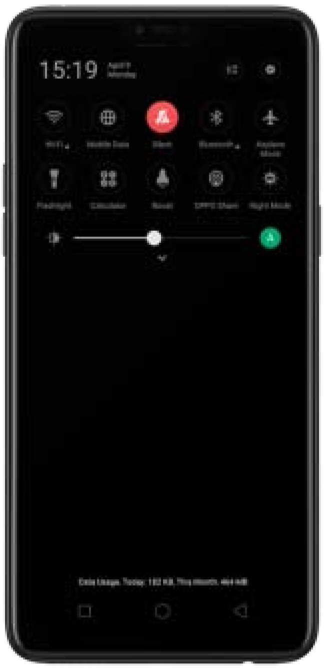
Alarm volume

Ringtone Colorful Life

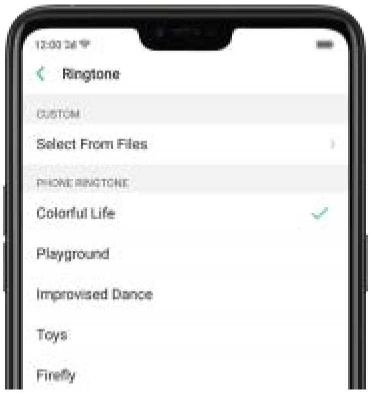
Message Tone Impression

Other Notification Tones Joy

SYSTEM FEEDBACK



**Adjust the ringer, media and alarm volume**. Drag the control point left or right. **Change ringtones for incoming calls, messages, and other notifications**. In addition to the default ringtones, you can create ringtones using your own audio files.



Ringtone

CUSTOM

Select From Files

PHONE RINGTONE

Colorful Life ✓

Playground

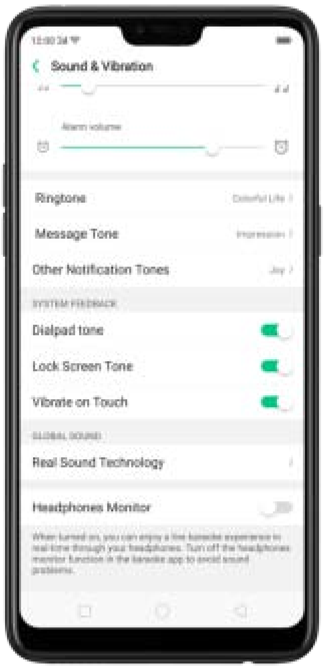
Improvised Dance

Toys

Firefly

**Turn system feedback on or off**. Toggle the sliders to green or white. When turn **Vibrate on Touch** on, your phone vibrates when you touch the **Menu**, **Home**, and **Return** buttons.

To temporarily silence incoming calls and alerts (without vibrations), see Quite Time.



Sound & Vibration

Alarm volume

Ringtone Colorful Life

Message Tone Impression

Other Notification Tones Joy

SYSTEM FEEDBACK

Dialpad tone

Lock Screen Tone

Vibrate on Touch

GLOBAL SOUND

Real Sound Technology

Headphones Monitor

**Real Sound Technology**. Real Original Sound Technology is jointly developed by Dirac Research AB and OPPO. It delivers original sound in full fidelity and creates a spatial three-dimensional sound arena to provide you with a listening experience that’s just like being at a live performance. Plug in the headphones then select a scene you want the sound to change to.

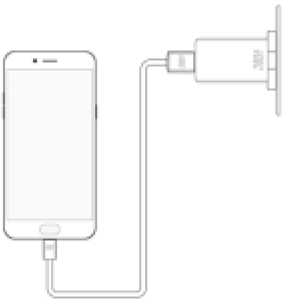
**Headphones Monitor**. When turned on, you can enjoy a live karaoke experience in real-time through your headphones.

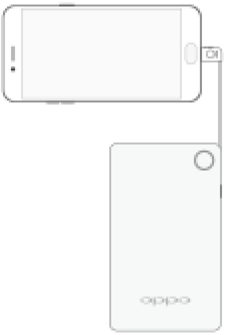
Turn off the default headphones monitor function in the karaoke app to avoid sound problems.

## 5.14. Charge and monitor the battery

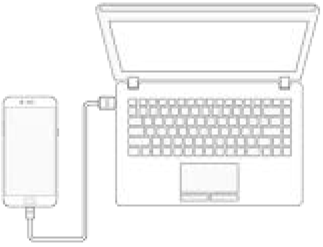
OPPO smartphones are equipped with a non-removable, lithium-ion rechargeable battery. Do not attempt to open your phone. Charge the phone using the cable and USB power adapter that’s included when you purchased it.

**Charge the battery**. Connect your phone to a standard power outlet or a Power Bank.





**Charge the battery and transfer files**. Connect your phone to a computer.

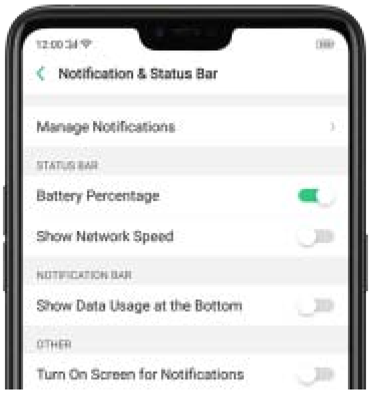


**Note**:

* All photos shown are for illustration purpose ONLY. Actual products may vary.

* Rechargeable batteries have a limited number of charge cycles and may eventually need to be replaced. The OPPO smartphone battery is not user replaceable; it can only be replaced by an authorized service provider. **Removing the battery yourself will void your warranty and might cause damage to your phone**.

**Show percentage of battery in the status bar**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Notification & Status Bar]** and turn on **[Battery Percentage]**. Or go to **[Settings]** > **[Battery]** and turn on **[Show battery percentage on status bar]**.



Notification & Status Bar

Manage Notifications

STATUS BAR

Battery Percentage

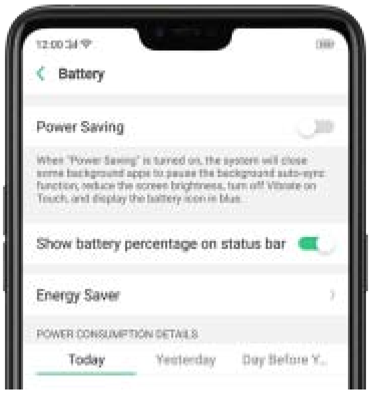
Show Network Speed

NOTIFICATION BAR

Show Data Usage at the Bottom

OTHER

Turn On Screen for Notifications



Battery

Power Saving

When "Power Saving" is turned on, the system will close some background apps to pause the background auto-sync function, reduce the screen brightness, turn off Vibrate on Touch, and display the battery icon in blue.

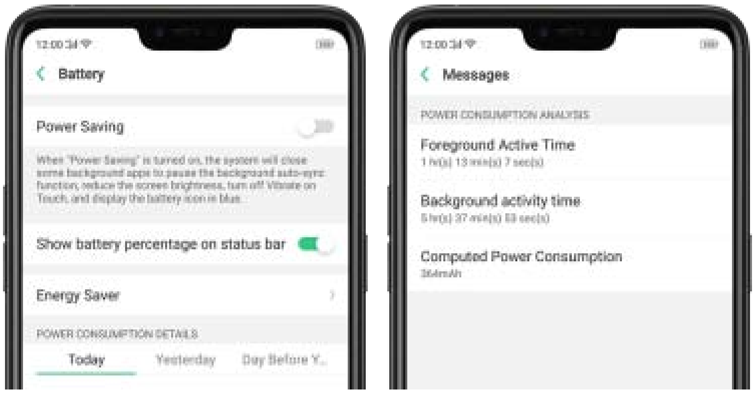
Show battery percentage on status bar

Energy Saver

POWER CONSUMPTION DETAILS

Today Yesterday Day Before Y...

**View detailed battery info listed for each app**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Battery]**.



Battery

Power Saving

When "Power Saving" is turned on, the system will close some background apps to pause the background auto-sync function, reduce the screen brightness, turn off Vibrate on Touch, and display the battery icon in blue.

Show battery percentage on status bar

Energy Saver

POWER CONSUMPTION DETAILS

Today | Yesterday | Day Before Y...

Messages

POWER CONSUMPTION ANALYSIS

Foreground Active Time
1 hr(s) 13 min(s) 7 sec(s)

Background activity time
5 hr(s) 37 min(s) 53 sec(s)

Computed Power Consumption
364mAh

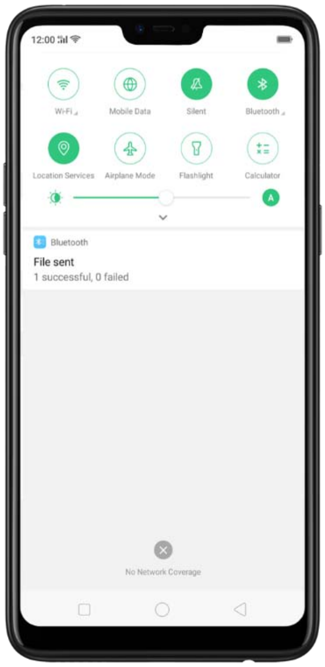
**Use USB OTG**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** and enable **[OTG Connection]**. Connect the OTG cable to your phone, then attach the USB Flash Drive. Once connected, you can directly view and transfer files between the USB Flash Drive and your phone without requiring a PC. You can also connect a gaming controller, an external hard drive, printer, and much more to your phone with the help of this feature.

## 5.15. Location Service

Apps like Maps, Weather, and Compass must know your exact position before it can provide accurate services and results.

**Turn on Location Service.** Swipe down from the top of the screen to open Control Center, then click 📍. You can also go to **[Settings]** > **[Google]** > **[Location]** and toggle the slider to green.

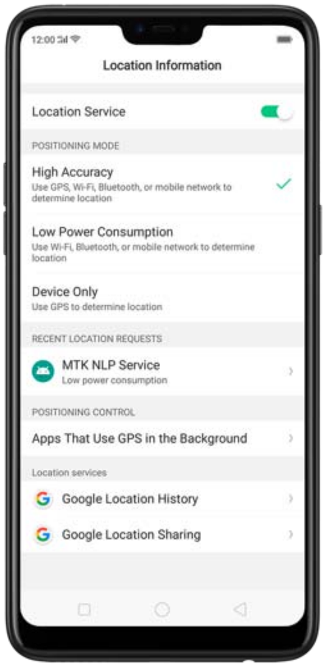
like Maps, Weather and Compass must know your exact position before it can provide accurate services and results.



12:00
Wi-Fi
Mobile Data
Silent
Bluetooth
Location Services
Airplane Mode
Flashlight
Calculator
A

Bluetooth
File sent
1 successful, 0 failed

No Network Coverage



Location Information

Location Service

POSITIONING MODE

High Accuracy ✓
Use GPS, Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, or mobile network to determine location

Low Power Consumption
Use Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, or mobile network to determine location

Device Only
Use GPS to determine location

RECENT LOCATION REQUESTS

MTK NLP Service
Low power consumption

POSITIONING CONTROL

Apps That Use GPS in the Background

Location services

Google Location History

Google Location Sharing

You can choose from three types of **positioning modes**, which differ in accuracy and battery drain:

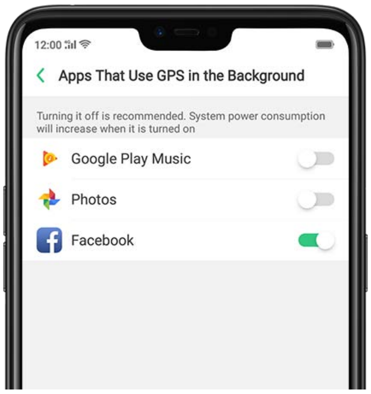
1. **High accuracy** (GPS, Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, and mobile network).

2. **Battery saving** (Wi-Fi, Bluetooth and mobile network).

3. **Device only** (GPS).

**A history of recent location requests.** You'll see a list of apps that have requested location. Click an app to enter the App info page that allows you to manage the app directly.

**Apps that use GPS in the background**. Turn the slider to green if you allow the app to use GPS in the background. Keeping background GPS of the apps active may drain the battery significantly.



Apps That Use GPS in the Background

Turning it off is recommended. System power consumption will increase when it is turned on

### Google Location service

Use **Google Location History** to retrace your steps. Google Location History will customize search results for location and search history.

Use **Google Location Sharing** to share your locations with friends and contacts in real time.

## 5.16. Use the phone internationally

When you travel overseas, do the following steps to make sure you stay connected to friends and family while traveling - without paying more than you have to.

**Unlock your phone**. Call your wireless operator and ask if your phone needs to be unlocked. In order to prevent selling beyond agreed areas, you need to call the Customer Service Center to get the unlock code.

**Shop international data roaming plans with your operator**. Consult your operator or visit online websites to check for roaming plans and fees that are mostly used in the country or region that you will visit.

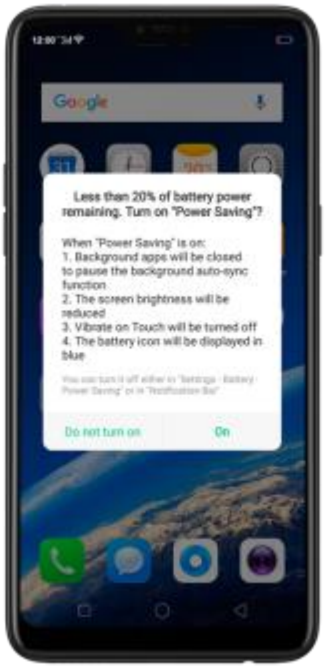
**Buy or rent local Nano SIM cards**. You can buy or rent SIM cards for most of the countries and regions. Learn more from travel guides and websites related to the country or region.

**Use Wi-Fi**. Turn off global roaming on your phone and head to a Wi-Fi hotspot, such as a hotel lobby, or local cafes.

## 5.17. Power Saver

Power Saver helps increase battery life by turning off or limiting certain features, for example, turning off some background apps to pause background syncing, turning off Vibrate on Touch, and dimming the screen. Using Power Saver can give you at least extra 30 minutes to use the phone.

**Turn on Power Saving**. The phone will let you know when your battery level goes down to 20%, and again at 10%, and will ask you to turn on Power Saving. The battery indicator ~~in~~ on the top right corner will turn blue while Power Saving is enabled.

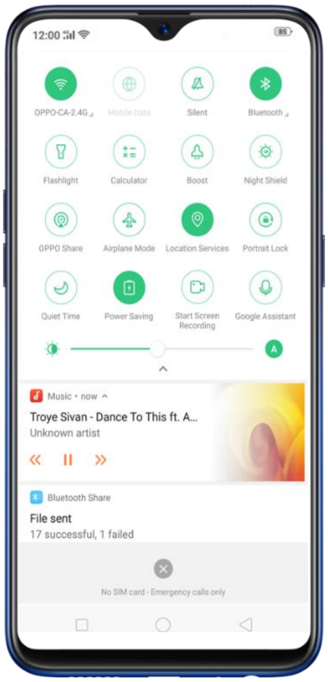


Less than 20% of battery power remaining. Turn on "Power Saving"?

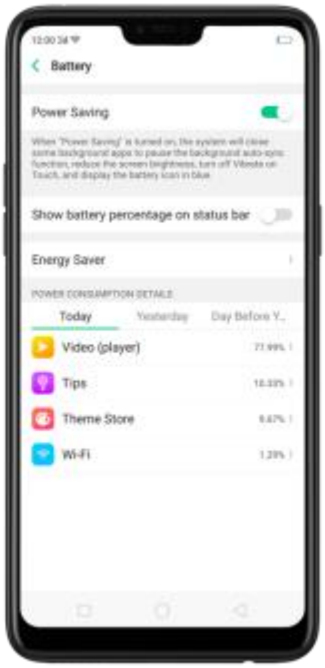
When "Power Saving" is on:
1. Background apps will be closed to pause the background auto-sync function
2. The screen brightness will be reduced
3. Vibrate on Touch will be turned off
4. The battery icon will be displayed in blue

Do not turn on
On

To manually turn on or off Power Saving Mode at any time, swipe down from the top of your screen to open Control Center, then click 🔋. You can also go to **[Settings]** > **[Battery]** and enable Power Saving.



12:00
OPPO-CA-2.4G
Mobile Data
Silent
Bluetooth
Flashlight
Calculator
Boost
Night Shield
OPPO Share
Airplane Mode
Location Services
Portrait Lock
Quiet Time
Power Saving
Start Screen Recording
Google Assistant
Music • now
Troye Sivan - Dance To This ft. A...
Unknown artist
Bluetooth Share
File sent
17 successful, 1 failed
No SIM card - Emergency calls only



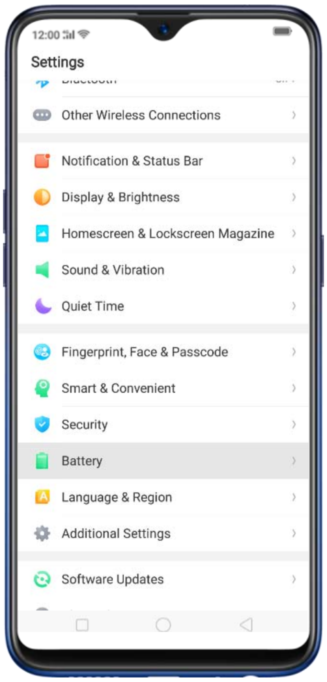
When "Power Saving" is turned on, the system will close some background apps to pause the background auto-sync function, reduce the screen brightness, turn off Vibrate on Touch, and display the battery icon in blue

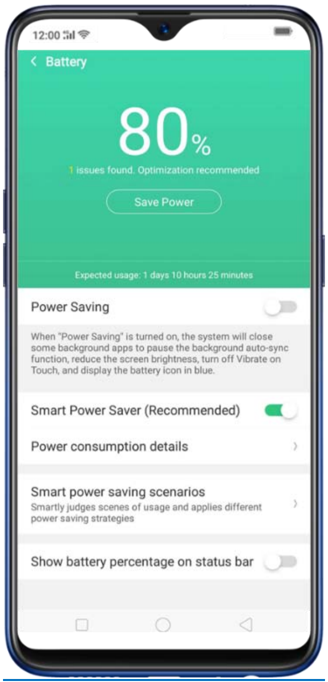
12:00
Battery
Power Saving
Show battery percentage on status bar
Energy Saver
POWER CONSUMPTION DETAILS
Today
Yesterday
Day Before Y...
Video (player)
Tips
Theme Store
Wi-Fi

**Note**: Your phone will automatically disable Power Saving when you charge it up to 80%. Power Saving is always temporary and only lasts until the next proper charge.

Optimize the power of your battery and manage those apps and settings that used up the most power. Know how to save more power so you can use it especially when it is most needed.

To enable Smart Power Saver, go to [**Settings**] > [**Battery**] > toggle [**Smart Power Saver (Recommended)**] to green to enable.


12:00
Settings
Other Wireless Connections
Notification & Status Bar
Display & Brightness
Homescreen & Lockscreen Magazine
Sound & Vibration
Quiet Time
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
Smart & Convenient
Security
Battery
Language & Region
Additional Settings
Software Updates


12:00
Battery
80%
Save Power
Power consumption details
Smart power saving scenarios

1 issues found. Optimization recommended

Expected usage: 1 days 10 hours 25 minutes

Power Saving ○

When "Power Saving" is turned on, the system will close some background apps to pause the background auto-sync function, reduce the screen brightness, turn off Vibrate on Touch, and display the battery icon in blue.

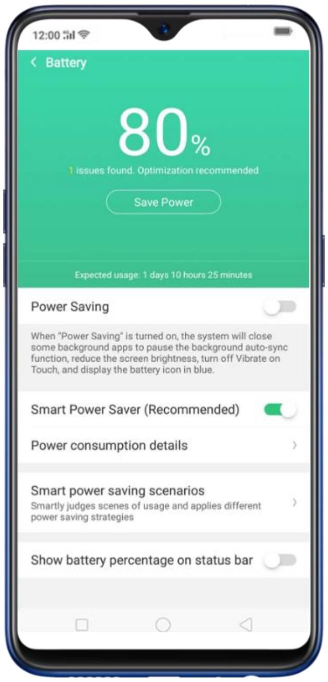
Smart Power Saver (Recommended) ●

Smartly judges scenes of usage and applies different power saving strategies

Show battery percentage on status bar ○

## When Optimization is needed

When issue or issues are found, then it will prompt you that optimization is recommended. Just click on **Save Power** and check those that needed optimization, click **Lengthen Battery Life**, and then click **Done** when finished. (Note: Expected usage will be shown but this still depends on the usage and running apps on the background).


12:00
Battery
80%
1 issues found. Optimization recommended
Save Power

Expected usage: 1 days 10 hours 25 minutes

Power Saving ○

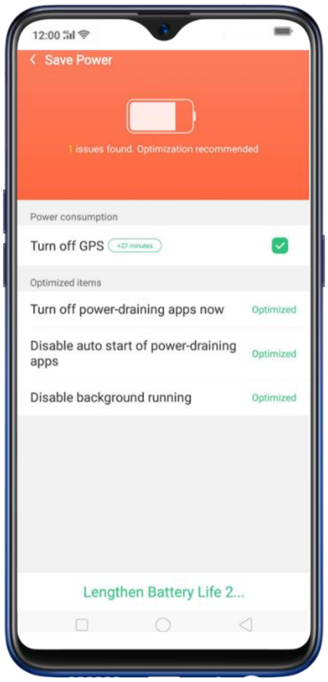
When "Power Saving" is turned on, the system will close some background apps to pause the background auto-sync function, reduce the screen brightness, turn off Vibrate on Touch, and display the battery icon in blue.

Smart Power Saver (Recommended) ●

Power consumption details ›

Smart power saving scenarios ›
Smartly judges scenes of usage and applies different power saving strategies

Show battery percentage on status bar ○


12:00
Save Power
1 issues found. Optimization recommended

Power consumption

Turn off GPS +27 minutes ☑

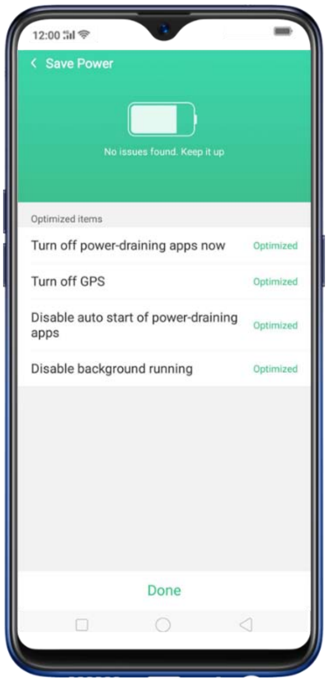
Optimized items

Turn off power-draining apps now Optimized

Disable auto start of power-draining apps Optimized

Disable background running Optimized

Lengthen Battery Life 2...


12:00
Save Power
No issues found. Keep it up

Optimized items

Turn off power-draining apps now Optimized

Turn off GPS Optimized

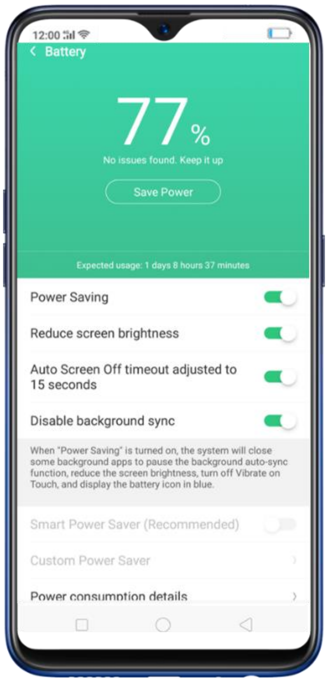
Disable auto start of power-draining apps Optimized

Disable background running Optimized

Done

## Other Power Saving features

- **Power Saving.** When this is enabled, the system will close some background apps to pause functions such as auto-sync. It will also reduce screen brightness, turn off vibrate, and would be displaying the battery icon in blue. To enable, just toggle [**Power Saving**] to green.


12:00
Battery
77%
No issues found. Keep it up
Save Power

Expected usage: 1 days 8 hours 37 minutes

Power Saving ●

Reduce screen brightness ●

Auto Screen Off timeout adjusted to 15 seconds ●

Disable background sync ●

When "Power Saving" is turned on, the system will close some background apps to pause the background auto-sync function, reduce the screen brightness, turn off Vibrate on Touch, and display the battery icon in blue.

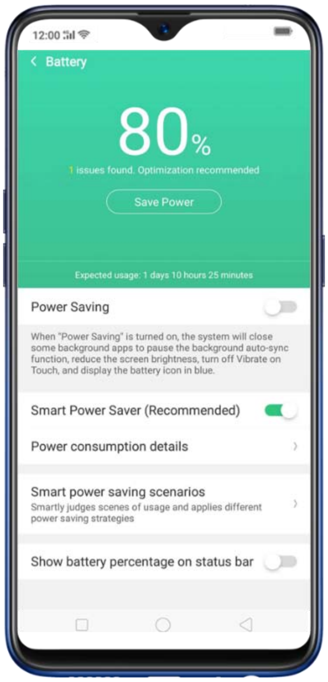
Smart Power Saver (Recommended) ○

Custom Power Saver ›

Power consumption details ›

- **Smart Power Saver (Recommended).** This will intelligently identify the running status of Apps when enabled. Just toggle [**Smart Power Saver**

**(Recommended)]** to green to enable.


12:00
Battery
80%
1 issues found. Optimization recommended
Save Power
Expected usage: 1 days 10 hours 25 minutes

Power Saving ○

When "Power Saving" is turned on, the system will close some background apps to pause the background auto-sync function, reduce the screen brightness, turn off Vibrate on Touch, and display the battery icon in blue.

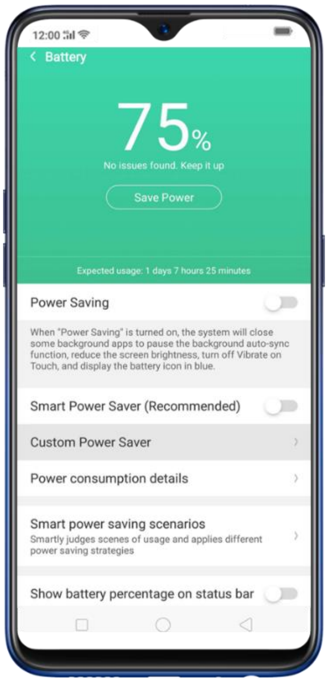
Smart Power Saver (Recommended) ●

Power consumption details

Smart power saving scenarios
Smartly judges scenes of usage and applies different power saving strategies

Show battery percentage on status bar ○

- **Custom Power Saver.** You can customize apps that will intelligently identify the running status of Apps when enabled. Just click on **Custom Power Saver**, choose an app then click **Intelligently Restrict Background Running (Recommended)**.


12:00
Battery
75%
No issues found. Keep it up
Save Power
Expected usage: 1 days 7 hours 25 minutes

Power Saving ○

When "Power Saving" is turned on, the system will close some background apps to pause the background auto-sync function, reduce the screen brightness, turn off Vibrate on Touch, and display the battery icon in blue.

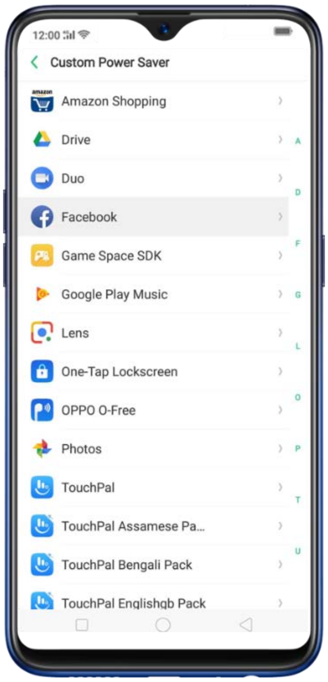
Smart Power Saver (Recommended) ○

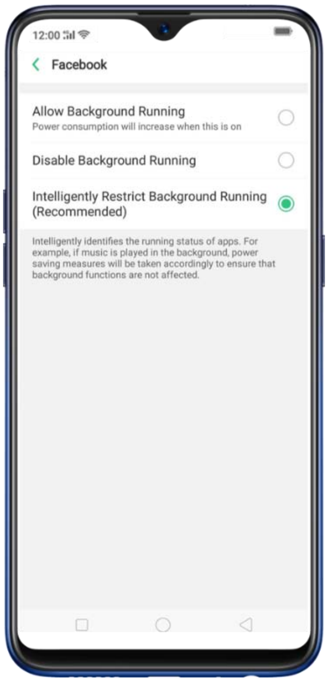
Custom Power Saver

Power consumption details

Smart power saving scenarios
Smartly judges scenes of usage and applies different power saving strategies

Show battery percentage on status bar ○


12:00
Custom Power Saver
Amazon Shopping
Drive
Duo
Facebook
Game Space SDK
Google Play Music
Lens
One-Tap Lockscreen
OPPO O-Free
Photos
TouchPal
TouchPal Assamese Pa...
TouchPal Bengali Pack
TouchPal Englishgb Pack
A
D
F
G
L
O
P
T
U


12:00
Facebook

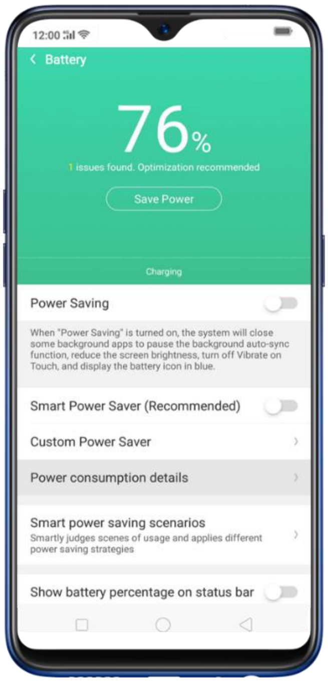
Allow Background Running ○
Power consumption will increase when this is on

Disable Background Running ○

Intelligently Restrict Background Running (Recommended) ●

Intelligently identifies the running status of apps. For example, if music is played in the background, power saving measures will be taken accordingly to ensure that background functions are not affected.

- **Power Consumption Details.** This will show you the apps, settings, or features that consumed the most power. You can check Today, Yesterday, and 2 Days ago for consumption details.



12:00

Battery

76%

1 issues found. Optimization recommended

Save Power

Charging

Power Saving

When "Power Saving" is turned on, the system will close some background apps to pause the background auto-sync function, reduce the screen brightness, turn off Vibrate on Touch, and display the battery icon in blue.

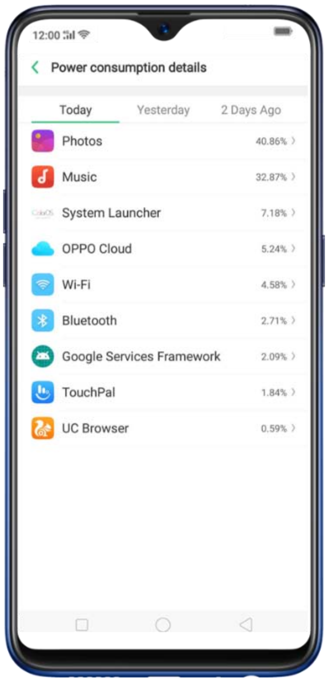
Smart Power Saver (Recommended)

Custom Power Saver

Power consumption details

Smart power saving scenarios
Smartly judges scenes of usage and applies different power saving strategies

Show battery percentage on status bar

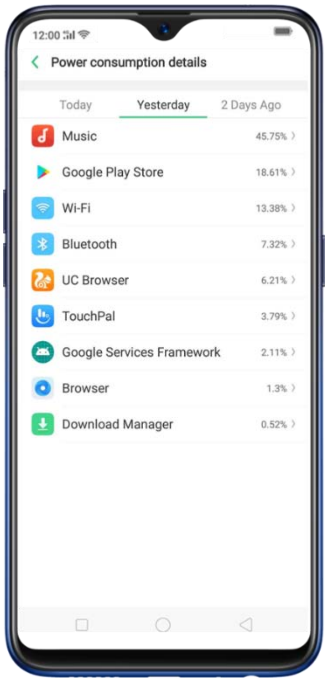


12:00

Power consumption details

Today | Yesterday | 2 Days Ago

| | |
|---|---|
| Photos | 40.86% |
| Music | 32.87% |
| System Launcher | 7.18% |
| OPPO Cloud | 5.24% |
| Wi-Fi | 4.58% |
| Bluetooth | 2.71% |
| Google Services Framework | 2.09% |
| TouchPal | 1.84% |
| UC Browser | 0.59% |



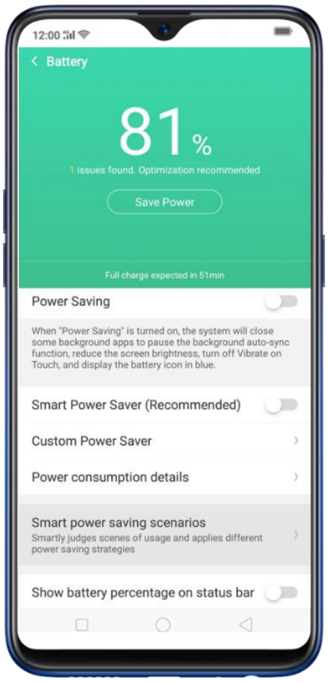
12:00

Power consumption details

Today | Yesterday | 2 Days Ago

| | |
|---|---|
| Music | 45.75% |
| Google Play Store | 18.61% |
| Wi-Fi | 13.38% |
| Bluetooth | 7.32% |
| UC Browser | 6.21% |
| TouchPal | 3.79% |
| Google Services Framework | 2.11% |
| Browser | 1.3% |
| Download Manager | 0.52% |

- **Smart power saving scenarios.** This will smartly judge scenes of usage and applies different power saving strategies like sensing when you might be sleeping. Click **Smart power saving scenarios**, the toggle **Sleeping Mode** to green.



12:00

Battery

81%

1 issues found. Optimization recommended

Save Power

Full charge expected in 51min

Power Saving

When "Power Saving" is turned on, the system will close some background apps to pause the background auto-sync function, reduce the screen brightness, turn off Vibrate on Touch, and display the battery icon in blue.

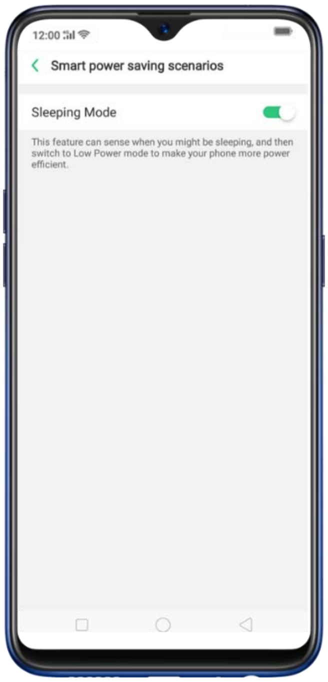
Smart Power Saver (Recommended)

Custom Power Saver

Power consumption details

Smart power saving scenarios
Smartly judges scenes of usage and applies different power saving strategies

Show battery percentage on status bar



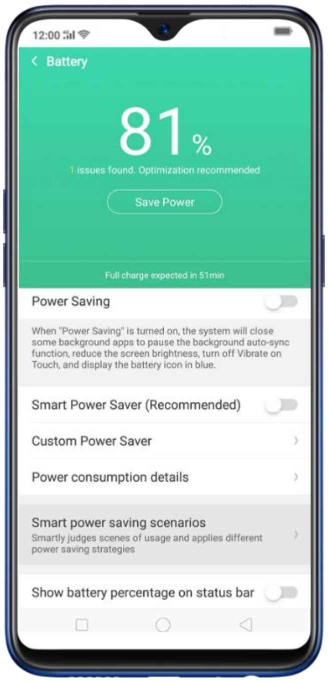
12:00

Smart power saving scenarios

Sleeping Mode

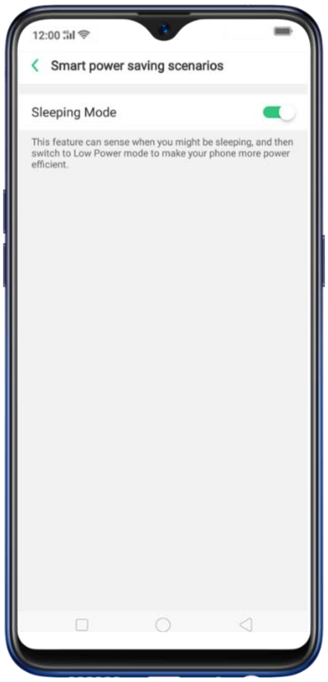
This feature can sense when you might be sleeping, and then switch to Low Power mode to make your phone more power efficient.

- **Show battery percentage on the status bar.** If you want to see how much battery is left just enable this feature by toggling [**Show battery percentage on the status bar]** to green to enable.


12:00
Battery
81%
1 issues found. Optimization recommended
Save Power
Full charge expected in 51min
Power Saving
Smart Power Saver (Recommended)
Custom Power Saver
Power consumption details
Smart power saving scenarios
Show battery percentage on status bar

When "Power Saving" is turned on, the system will close some background apps to pause the background auto-sync function, reduce the screen brightness, turn off Vibrate on Touch, and display the battery icon in blue.

Smartly judges scenes of usage and applies different power saving strategies


12:00
Smart power saving scenarios
Sleeping Mode

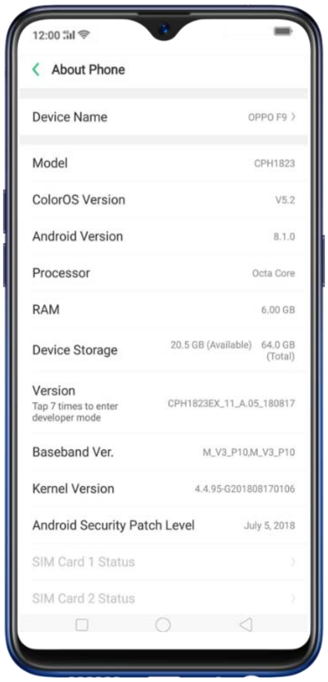
This feature can sense when you might be sleeping, and then switch to Low Power mode to make your phone more power efficient.

# 6. Personalize your OPPO phone

## 6.1.ColorOS 5.2 device name

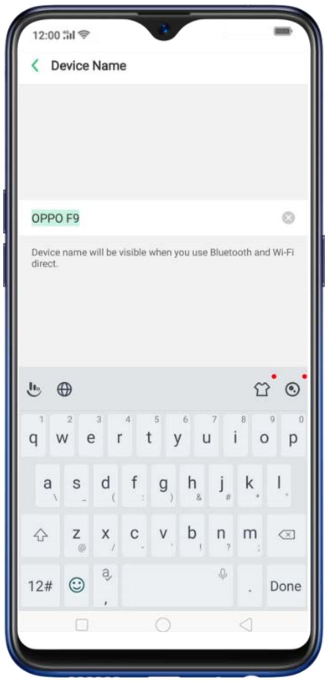
If you scan for a Wi-Fi Direct or Bluetooth connection with your OPPO phone, your device name will display on the target devices.

**Change device name for Wi-Fi and Bluetooth**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[About Phone]**. You can also change the device name when you enable Bluetooth or Wi-Fi Direct.



About Phone

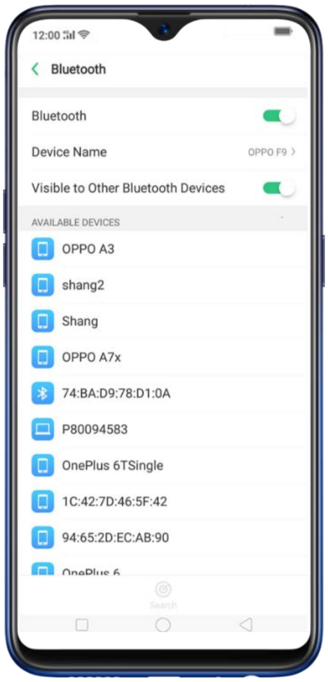
Device Name: OPPO F9
Model: CPH1823
ColorOS Version: V5.2
Android Version: 8.1.0
Processor: Octa Core
RAM: 6.00 GB
Device Storage: 20.5 GB (Available) 64.0 GB (Total)
Version
Tap 7 times to enter developer mode
CPH1823EX_11_A.05_180817
Baseband Ver.: M_V3_P10,M_V3_P10
Kernel Version: 4.4.95-G201808170106
Android Security Patch Level: July 5, 2018
SIM Card 1 Status
SIM Card 2 Status



Device Name

OPPO F9

Device name will be visible when you use Bluetooth and Wi-Fi direct.



Bluetooth

Bluetooth
Device Name: OPPO F9
Visible to Other Bluetooth Devices

AVAILABLE DEVICES
OPPO A3
shang2
Shang
OPPO A7x
74:BA:D9:78:D1:0A
P80094583
OnePlus 6TSingle
1C:42:7D:46:5F:42
94:65:2D:EC:AB:90
OnePlus 6

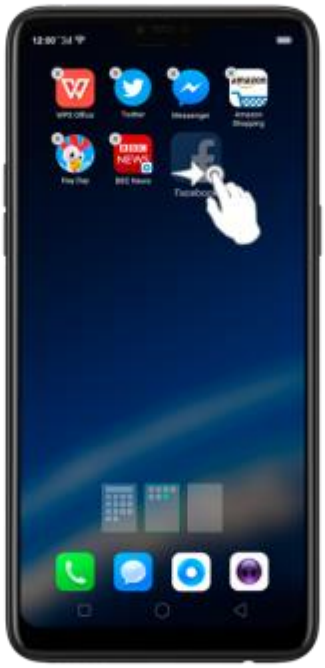
# 6.2.Personalize the Home screen

## 6.2.1. Organize the Home screen

From the Home screen, you can access all your apps and widgets. To keep everything in order, you can organize your home screen to make it more manageable and ~~keep it~~ looking neat.

### Add or Remove a Home screen page

**Add a Home screen page.** Swipe to the rightmost screen and drag an app or widget off the screen to the right.

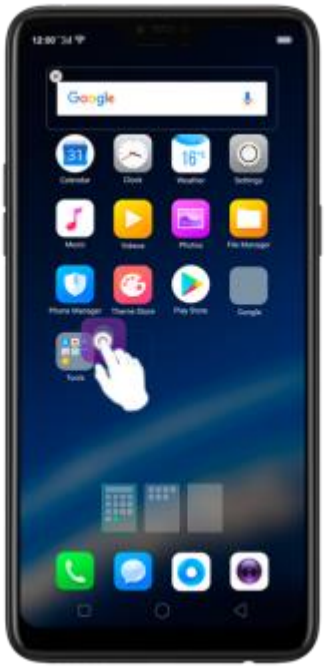


**Remove a Home screen page**. Drag all the apps and widgets on a Home screen page to another page. The empty Home screen page will be automatically deleted.

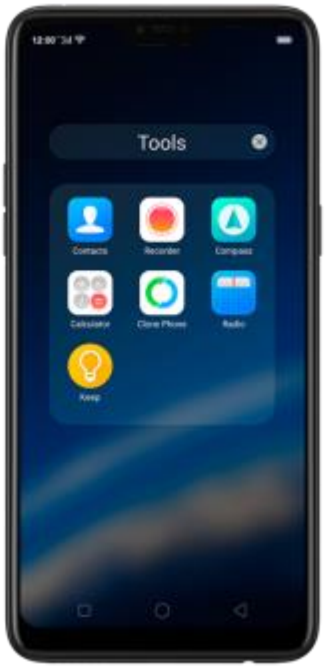
## Group Apps

You can put apps in folders, which can keep your home screen neat or help to organize similar apps.

**Create a folder**. Tap and hold an app until the icons start wiggling. Drag one of the apps into the other, and lift your finger when the first app seems to merge into the second one. Add more apps by dragging them in.


Google
Calendar
Clock
Weather
Settings
Music
Videos
Photos
File Manager
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Play Store
Google
Tools

**Edit the folder's name.** When you first create a folder, your phone assigns a suggested name to it. To edit the name, tap on the text.


Tools
Contacts
Recorder
Compass
Calculator
Clone Phone
Radio
Keep

## Rearrange apps and folders

OPPO smartphone has set a default arrangement for users, but you can still rearrange the apps and folders to fit how you use your phone.

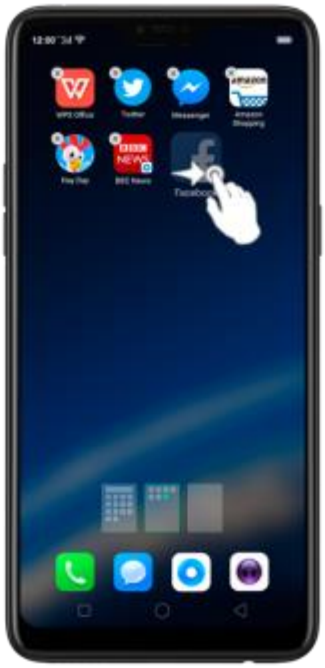
**Remove apps from a folder**. Tap the folder, then tap and hold-an app until the icons start wiggling. Drag the app out of the folder and into the home screen.

Delete a folder. Drag all the apps out of the folder and into the home screen, and the folder will disappear.

**Rearrange apps**. Tap and hold ~~on~~ an app until the icons start wiggling. Drag and drop the app icon to a new location. To save your changes, press the **Home** or **Return** button.

*Note*: Icons will be aligned to the left automatically.

**Move the icon to a new screen**. Drag the icon of the screen to the right and let it go when the new page appears.



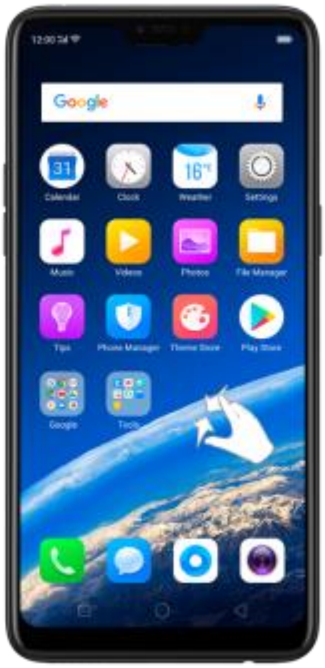
**Add or remove Home screen widgets**. See Home screen widgets.

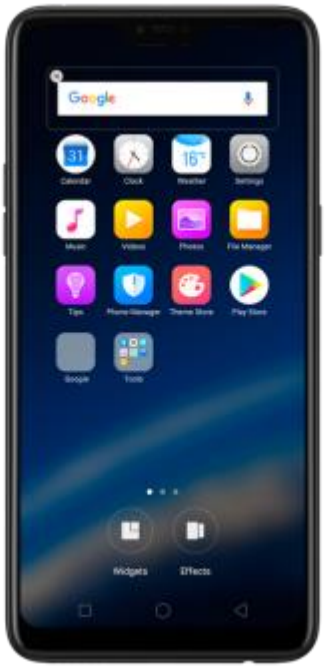
## 6.2.2. Home screen widgets & Transition Effects

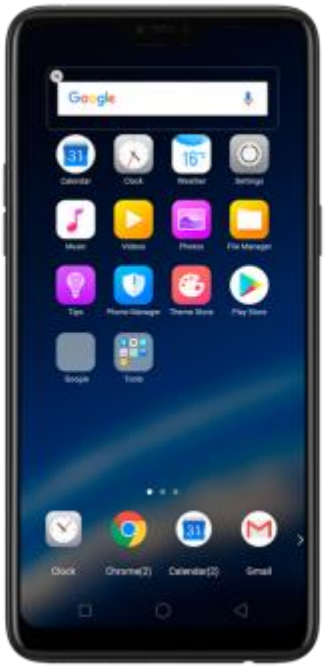
You can give yourself a fancy home screen with a highly-detailed set of widgets, for example, clock, weather, battery or mail widgets. You can also use them to tweak notifications, alarms and other options. In other words, there's considerably more here than just widgets. You can also change the transition effect on your phone, which is the style in which you slide the home screen right or left.

## Manage widgets

**Add a widget**. Pinch your fingers together, then click **[Widgets]**. You'll see all available widgets. Touch, hold and drag one widget to the screen. Make sure there is enough space for that widget.


Google
Calendar
Clock
Weather
Settings
Music
Videos
Photos
File Manager
Tips
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Play Store
Google
Tools


Google
Widgets
Effects

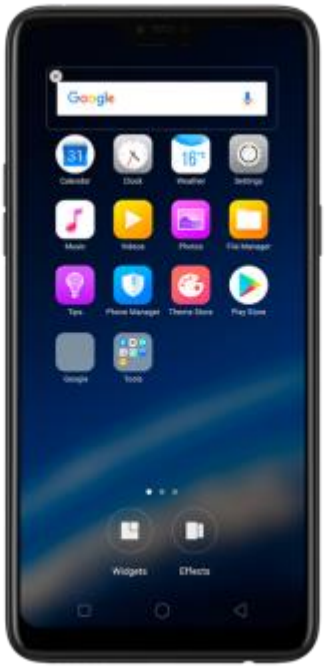

Google
Clock
Chrome(2)
Calendar(2)
Gmail

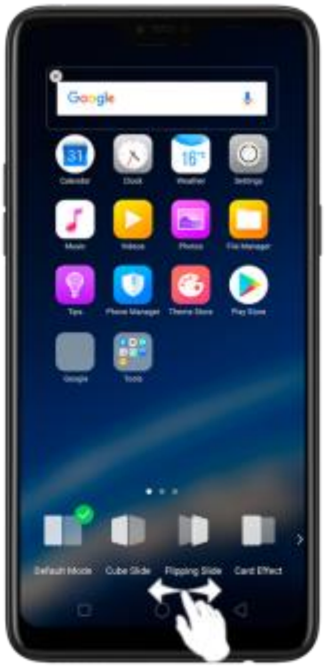
**Move a widget**. Touch and hold a widget for about 2 seconds, then drag it around.

**Delete a widget**. Click × in the upper left corner of the widget.

### Customize transition effect

**Set up transition effect**. Pinch your fingers together, then click **[Effects]**.


Google
Calendar
Clock
Weather
Settings
Music
Videos
Photos
File Manager
Tips
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Play Store
Google
Tools
Widgets
Effects


Google
Calendar
Clock
Weather
Settings
Music
Videos
Photos
File Manager
Tips
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Play Store
Google
Tools
Default Mode
Cube Slide
Flipping Slide
Card Effect

**Preview and choose an effect**. Click a transition effect and it will show the preview effect. You can choose one from the five options:

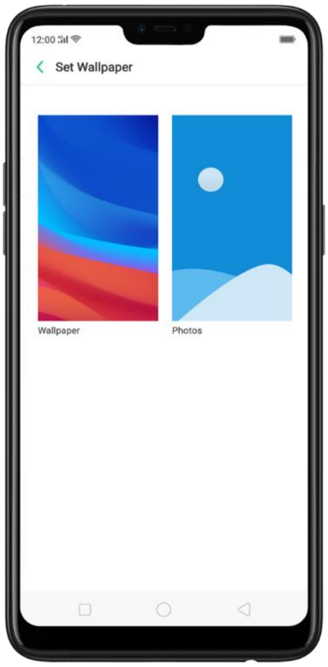
- Default Mode
- Cube Slide
- Flipping Slider
- Card Effect
- Tilting Mode

## 6.3.Change the wallpaper

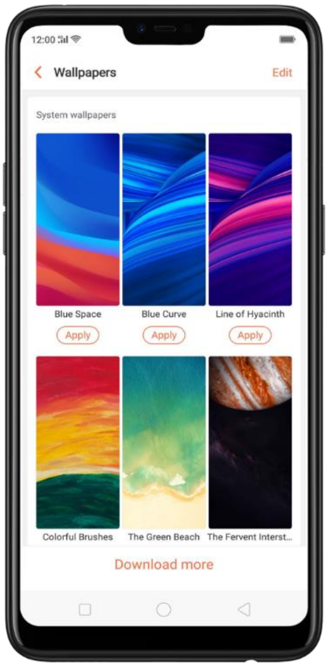
You see a wallpaper background picture when you unlock your OPPO phone. You can select one of the images that came with the phone, or use a photo from your photo gallery, or get some more wallpapers online.

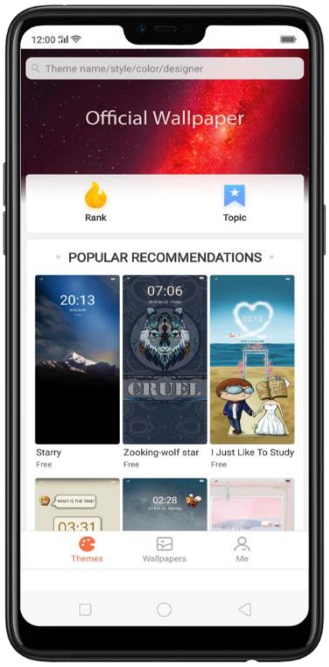
**Change the wallpaper**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Homescreen & Lockscreen Magazine]**. Scroll to the end of the page, then click **[Set wallpaper]**.

**Tip**: When setting the wallpaper as your Home screen or Lock screen, you can drag to move the image, or pinch to zoom in and out, so the image fits the screen.

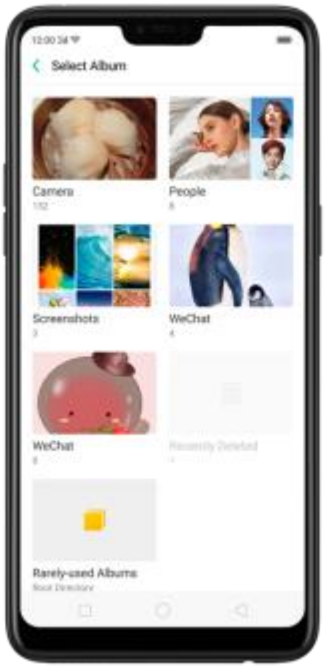

12:00
Set Wallpaper
Wallpaper
Photos

**Download online wallpapers**. Click Wallpaper, then click Download more. You can also click Theme Store on the Home screen directly to find more.


12:00
Wallpapers
Edit
System wallpapers
Blue Space
Apply
Blue Curve
Apply
Line of Hyacinth
Apply
Colorful Brushes
The Green Beach
The Fervent Interst...
Download more


12:00
Theme name/style/color/designer
Official Wallpaper
Rank
Topic
POPULAR RECOMMENDATIONS
20:13
07:06
CRUEL
Starry
Free
Zooking-wolf star
Free
I Just Like To Study
Free
03:31
02:28
Themes
Wallpapers
Me

**Use your own photos**. Click Photos, then select your favorite image **from the photo gallery.**

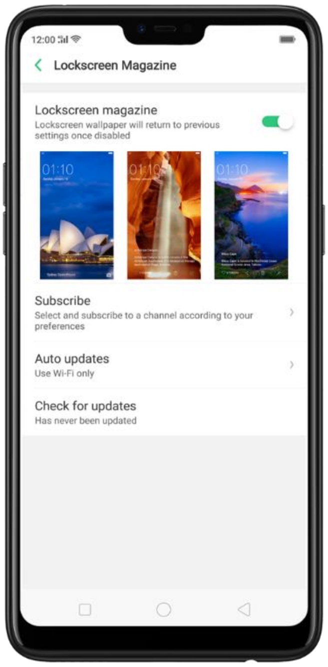

Select Album
Camera
132
People
8
Screenshots
3
WeChat
4
WeChat
8
Recently Deleted
Rarely-used Albums
Root Directory

View more details in [Change the wallpaper and theme on your OPPO smartphone](#).

## 6.4.Lock screen magazine

You can let your lock screen's wallpaper to switch to a new picture every time you wake up your phone, lessening the likelihood of you getting bored with the same look.

**Turn on Lock screen magazine**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Homescreen & Lockscreen Magazine]** and turn on **[Lockscreen magazine]**.



Lockscreen Magazine

Lockscreen magazine
Lockscreen wallpaper will return to previous settings once disabled

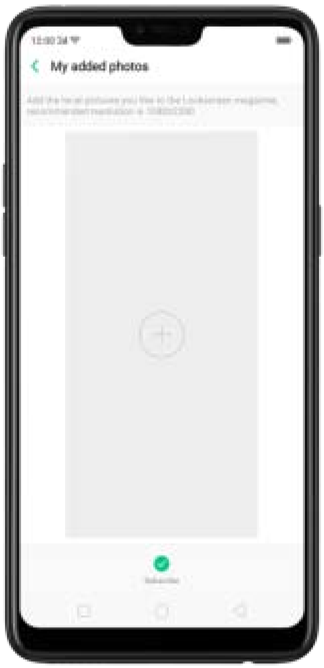
Subscribe
Select and subscribe to a channel according to your preferences

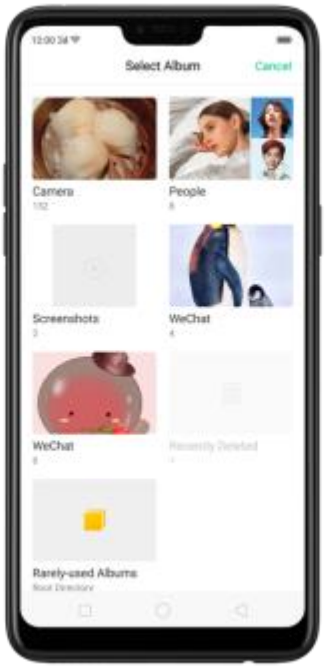
Auto updates
Use Wi-Fi only

Check for updates
Has never been updated

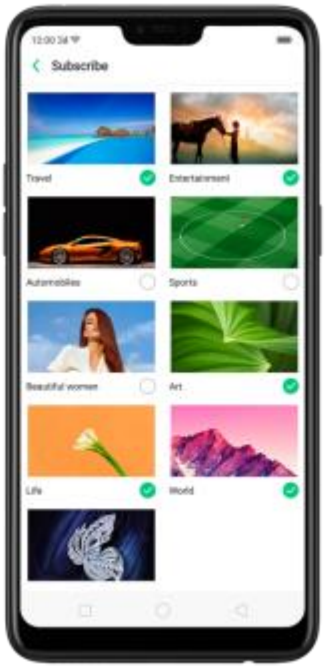
12:00
01:10
01:10
01:10

**Add your local pictures to Lock screen magazine**. Click My added photos, click ⊕, then select your preferred pictures.


12:00
My added photos
Subscribe


12:00
Select Album
Cancel
Camera
People
Screenshots
WeChat
WeChat
Recently Deleted
Rarely-used Albums

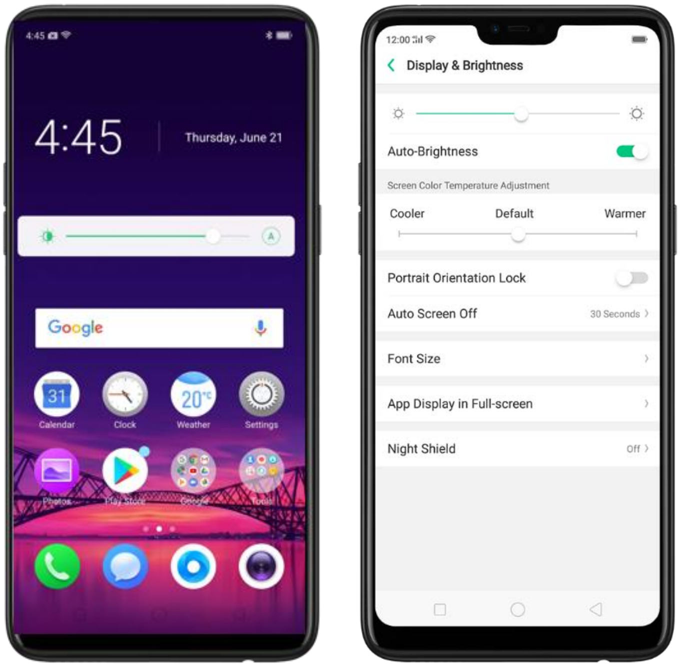
**Add online pictures to Lock screen magazine**. Click Subscribe and select your preferred channels, then go back and click Check for updates. You can also set the lock screen magazine to update automatically.


12:00
Subscribe
Travel
Entertainment
Automobiles
Sports
Beautiful women
Art
Life
World

## 6.5 Adjust the screen brightness and color temperature

Adjusting the brightness on your OPPO phone tailors visibility to suit your environment. You can manually dim the screen when reading in bed, for example, or make it brighter when you're in a direct sunlight situation. Or use Auto-Brightness, which can automatically change screen brightness depending on the level of ambient light. Reducing screen brightness can also help to conserve battery life.

**Adjust the screen brightness**. Swipe up from the bottom of the screen to open Control Center, then drag ☀ . Or go to **[Settings]** > **[Display & Brightness]**, then drag the slider.


4:45
Thursday, June 21
Google
31
Calendar
Clock
20°
Weather
Settings
Photos
Play Store
Google
Tools
12:00
Display & Brightness
Screen Color Temperature Adjustment
Cooler
Default
Warmer
Portrait Orientation Lock
Font Size
App Display in Full-screen

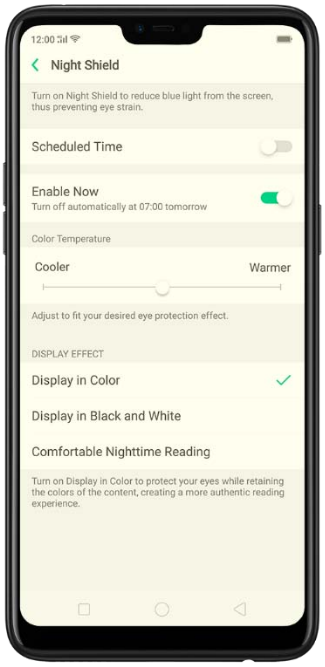
Auto-Brightness ●

Auto Screen Off 30 Seconds

Night Shield Off

**Set OPPO phone to adjust screen brightness automatically**. Open Control Center, then click A. Or go to**[Settings]** > **[Display & Brightness]**, then toggle the Auto-Brightness slider to green. If Auto-Brightness is on, your phone adjusts the screen brightness for current light conditions using the built-in ambient light sensor.

7. **Use Night Shield**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Display & Brightness]** > **[Night Shield].** Drag the control point to adjust color temperature. The warmer you set your screen, the less blue light will be emitted from the display. When you use the OPPO phone at night, you can turn on Night Shield to cut down on eye strain and sleeplessness you might get.



12:00

Night Shield

Turn on Night Shield to reduce blue light from the screen, thus preventing eye strain.

Scheduled Time

Enable Now
Turn off automatically at 07:00 tomorrow

Color Temperature

Cooler Warmer

Adjust to fit your desired eye protection effect.

DISPLAY EFFECT

Display in Color ✓

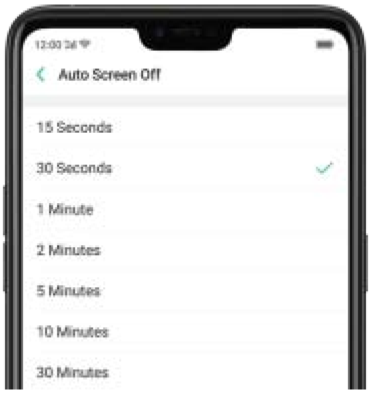
Display in Black and White

Comfortable Nighttime Reading

Turn on Display in Color to protect your eyes while retaining the colors of the content, creating a more authentic reading experience.

## 6.6. Change auto-lock time

By default, your OPPO smartphone locks automatically after 30 seconds. To modify this, alter the amount of time yourself.
**Change auto-lock time**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Display & Brightness]** > **[Auto Screen off]**. Options range from 15 seconds to 30 minutes.
**Tip**: The longer your display, the more the battery drain**s.**



12:00

Auto Screen Off

15 Seconds

30 Seconds ✓

1 Minute

2 Minutes

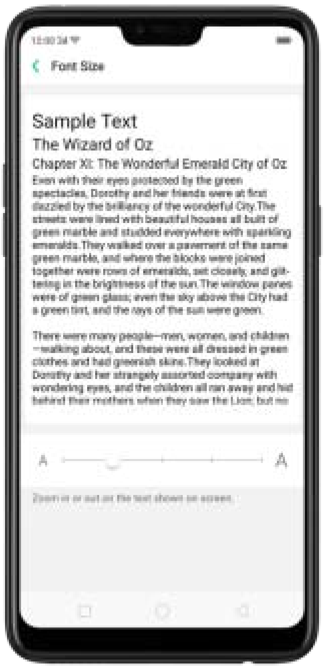
5 Minutes

10 Minutes

30 Minutes

# 6.7. Change the font size

OPPO smartphone lets you change the font size to-that of your eyesight needs. **Change the font size**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Display & Brightness]** > **[Font Size]**. Drag the slider to the left or right to shrink or enlarge sample text, then you'll see your new text size immediately applied to the menu text in the upper-left corner of the screen.
**Tip**: This will not affect the size of your icon text.



Sample Text

The Wizard of Oz

Chapter XI: The Wonderful Emerald City of Oz

Even with their eyes protected by the green spectacles, Dorothy and her friends were at first dazzled by the brilliancy of the wonderful City. The streets were lined with beautiful houses all built of green marble and studded everywhere with sparkling emeralds. They walked over a pavement of the same green marble, and where the blocks were joined together were rows of emeralds, set closely, and glittering in the brightness of the sun. The window panes were of green glass; even the sky above the City had a green tint, and the rays of the sun were green.

There were many people—men, women, and children—walking about, and these were all dressed in green clothes and had greenish skins. They looked at Dorothy and her strangely assorted company with wondering eyes, and the children all ran away and hid behind their mothers when they saw the Lion; but no

Zoom in or out on the text shown on screen.

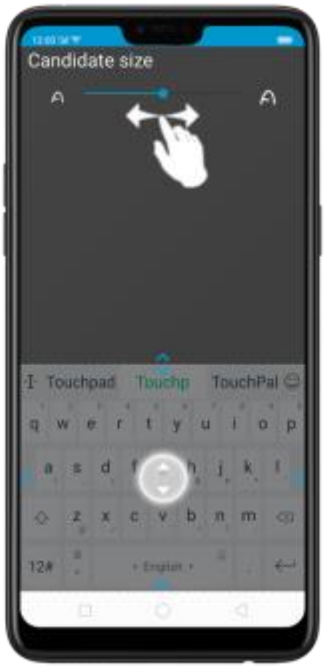
# 6.8. Keyboard and input method

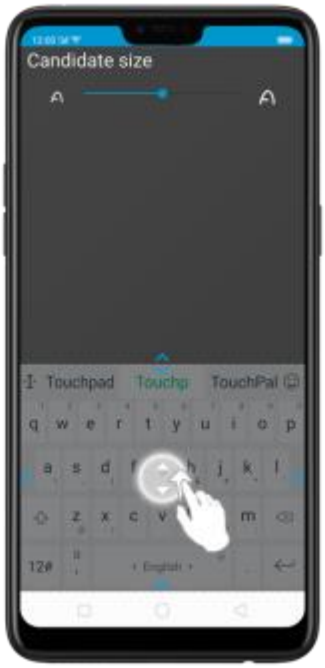
## 6.8.2. Customize the look of the keyboard

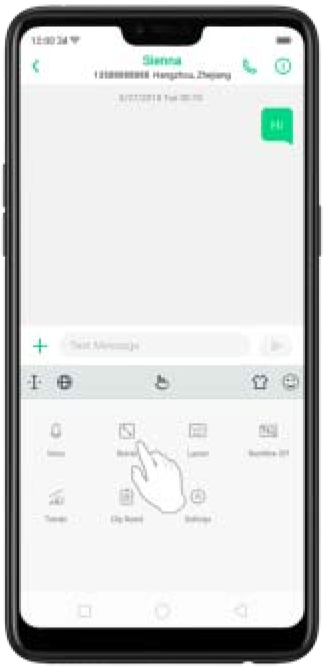
Make your own keyboard by customizing the font and appearance.
Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Keyboard & Input Method]** > **[TouchPal for OPPO]** > **[Look & Feel]**.

**Adjust the size of candidate words**. Click **[Candidate Size]**, then drag the control point to change font size to small, normal or large.

**Customize keyboard appearance**. Click **[Candidate Size]**, or click on the on-screen keyboard > **[Resize]**, then drag the control arrow to adjust keyboard height, width, and position.


Candidate size
Touchpad
Touchp
TouchPal
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f h j k l
z x c v b n m
12#
English


Candidate size
Touchpad
Touchp
TouchPal
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f h j k l
z x c v m
12#
English

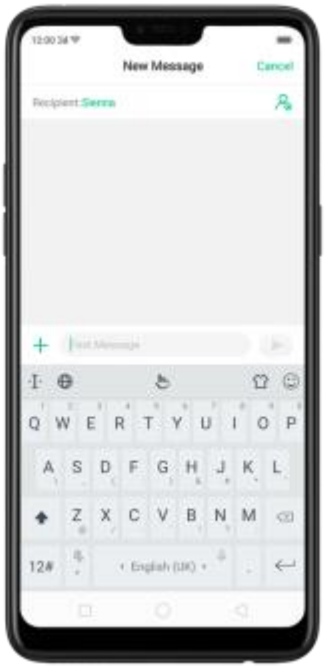

Sienna
Hi
Text Message

## 6.8.3. Keyboard Layout

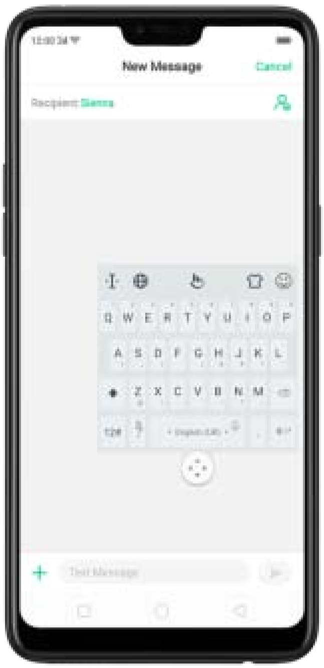
In addition to the default keyboard style, the undocked, one-handed, and split keyboard on the screen makes typing with both thumbs a breeze. You can use “Undock” feature to position the keyboard anywhere on screen, or narrow the keyboard with one-handed mode, or split the keyboard in half.

To change the keyboard layout, click on the on-screen keyboard, then click Layout.

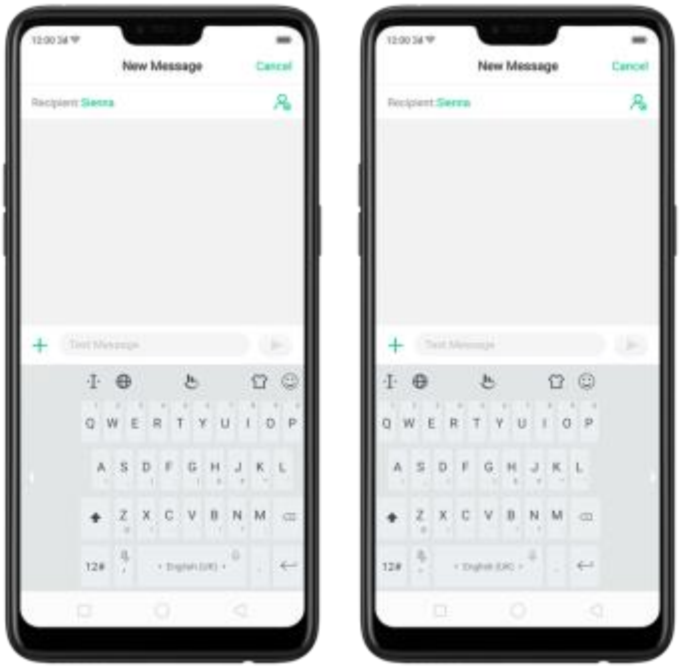
- **Normal keyboard**. The default keyboard layout on your phone.


New Message
Cancel
Recipient: Sienna
Text Message
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M
12#
English (UK)

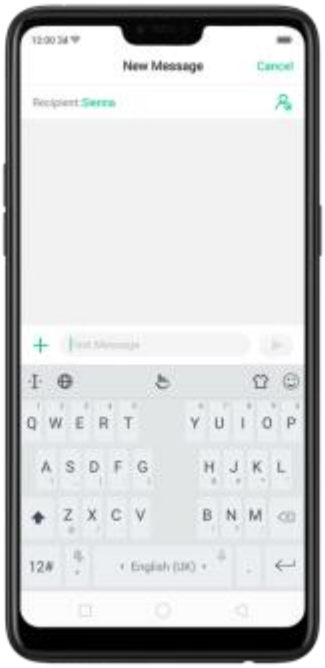
- **Undocked keyboard**. The keyboard becomes suspended and can be moved around on the screen. Click ✥ to drag the keyboard to wherever on the screen that is most comfortable or convenient to you.


New Message
Cancel
Recipient: Sienna
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M
12#
English (UK)
Text Message

- **One-handed keyboard**. Shrink the keyboard so you can type with one hand easily. Click ◁ or ▷ to adjust the keyboard left or right, depending on your preferred hand usage.


New Message
Cancel
Recipient: Sienna
Text Message
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M
12#
English (UK)

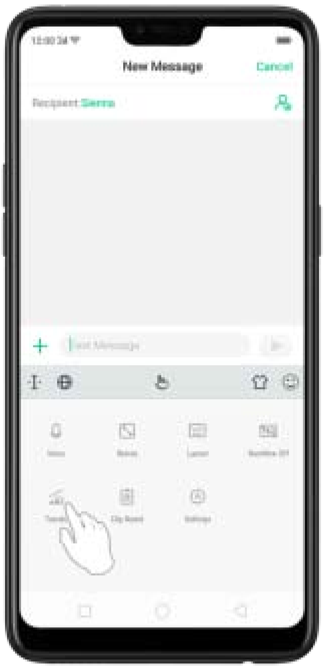
- **Split keyboard**. The keyboard will divide into two sections for easy thumb typing.

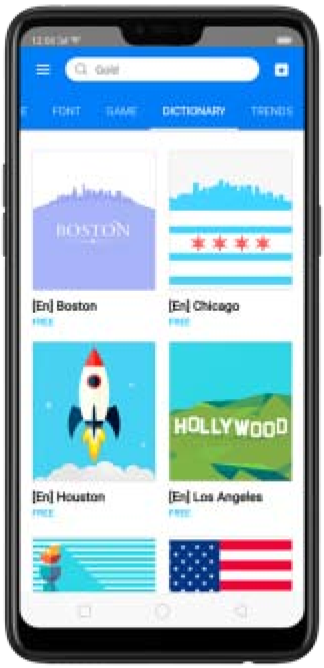

New Message
Cancel
Recipient: Sienna
Text Message
Q W E R T
Y U I O P
A S D F G
H J K L
Z X C V
B N M
12#
English (UK)

## 6.8.4. Trends

With TouchPal's Trends feature, you can download the buzzwords, change the keyboard theme and font, and get the latest headlines and games.

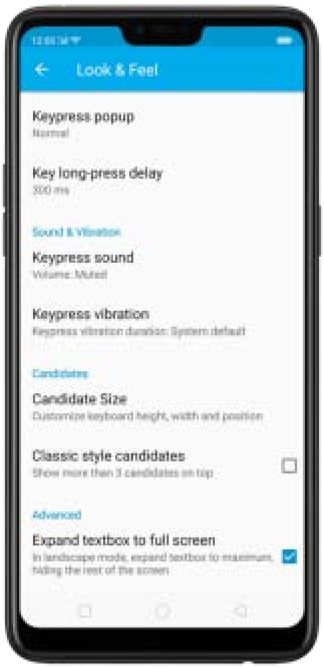
**Get the latest trends**. Click on the on-screen keyboard, then click Trends.


New Message
Cancel
Recipient: Sierra
Text Message
Trends
Settings


Gold
FONT
GAME
DICTIONARY
TRENDS
BOSTON
[En] Boston
FREE
[En] Chicago
FREE
HOLLYWOOD
[En] Houston
FREE
[En] Los Angeles
FREE

## 6.8.5. Keyboard general settings

OPPO smartphones come preloaded with TouchPal Keyboard. You can change the keyboard settings directly on your phone. click on the on-screen keyboard, then click **[Settings]** > **[Look & Feel]**.



Look & Feel

Keypress popup
Normal

Key long-press delay
300 ms

Sound & Vibration

Keypress sound
Volume: Muted

Keypress vibration
Keypress vibration duration: System default

Candidates

Candidate Size
Customize keyboard height, width and position

Classic style candidates ☐
Show more than 3 candidates on top

Advanced

Expand textbox to full screen ☑
In landscape mode, expand textbox to maximum, hiding the rest of the screen

| Setting | Effect |
|---|---|
| **Keypress popup** | A popup bubble displays when you click a key. |
| **Key long-press delay** | Adjust the long-press delay time ranging from 200ms to 1000ms. |
| **Keypress sound** | Adjust the key press sound, or use the system volume. |
| **Keypress vibration** | Adjust the key press vibration duration, or use the system default setting. |
| **Candidate Size** | Change the size of candidate words, and adjust keyboard height, width, and position. See Customize the look of the keyboard. |
| **Classic style candidate** | Show more than three candidate words on top. |
| **Expand textbox to full screen** | Keyboard opens as full screen in landscape mode. |

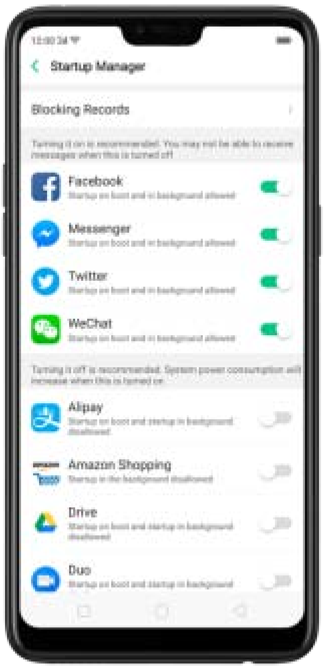
| | |
|---|---|
| **Expand textbox to full screen** | Keyboard opens as full screen in landscape mode. |

# 6.9. Set up Startup Manager

Startup Manager helps you to manage system startup entries. You can choose what apps to start first when your phone boots to meet your using habits.

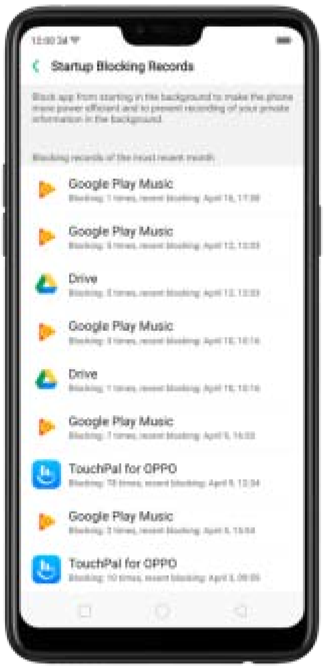
* Too many self-starting apps may cause a low startup or operating speed.

**Set up Startup Manager**. Click Phone Manager on the Home screen, then click **[Privacy Permissions]** > **[Startup Manager]**. Toggle the sliders to white if you don't want to start apps when phone boots or in background.


Startup Manager
Blocking Records
Facebook
Messenger
Twitter
WeChat
Alipay
Amazon Shopping
Drive
Duo

*Tip*: For apps that receive real-time messages, such as Facebook, Messenger, WhatsApp, and Twitter, it is best to allow them running in the background without ~~their~~ being suspended.

**View the apps that had been blocked from starting in the background**. Click Blocking Records.


Startup Blocking Records
Google Play Music
Google Play Music
Drive
Google Play Music
Drive
Google Play Music
TouchPal for OPPO
Google Play Music
TouchPal for OPPO

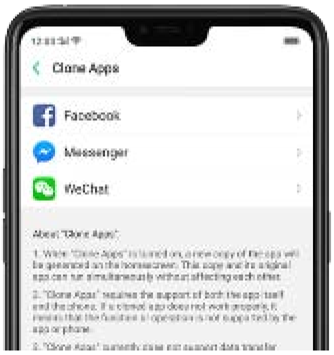
## 6.10. Clone Apps

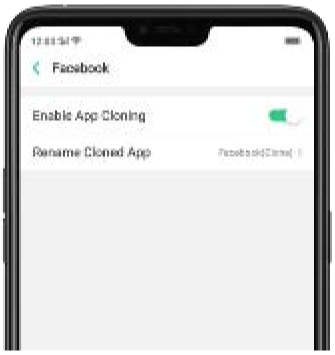
Clone Apps allows an app to run two accounts on a single phone.
To turn on **[Clone Apps],** go to **[Settings] > [Clone Apps]**, choose an app and turn on **[Enable App Cloning]**. A new copy of this app will be generated on the homescreen after Clone Apps is enabled. This copy and its original app can run simultaneously without affecting each other.

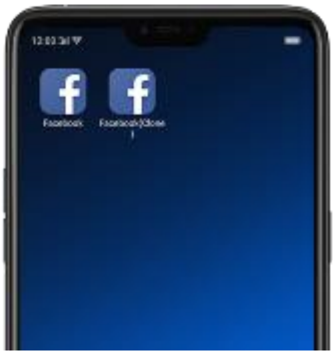
1. "Clone Apps" works only if both the app itself and the phone supports it. If a cloned app does not work properly, it means that the function or operation is not supported by the app or phone.

2. "Clone Apps" currently does not support data transfer between a cloned app and a computer.

3. "Clone Apps" currently does not support **to** run more than two app clones simultaneously.


Clone Apps
Facebook
Messenger
WeChat
About "Clone Apps"


Facebook
Enable App Cloning
Rename Cloned App

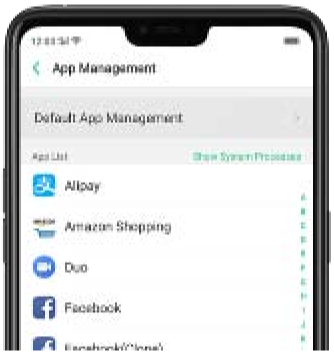


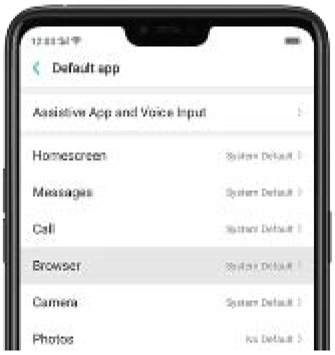
# 6.11. Manage Default App

**What is Default App:** If you've installed two different applications that essentially do the same thing, for example, Google Chrome and Firefox Web Browser, you'll likely be presented with a pop-up menu when trying to open a web page, asking you which application you'd like to complete the action with. You can manage your default app and never be bothered when performing that action again.

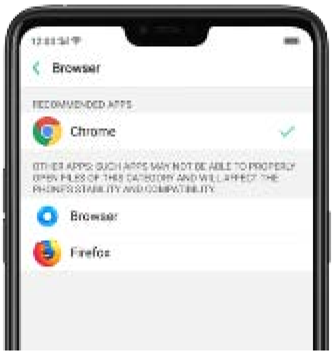
**Manage Default App.** Go to **[Settings]** > **[App Management]** and click **[Default App Management]**.

Take **[Browser]** as an example, there are three apps and you can choose one of them to be the default one. You are suggested to use the original apps to get the best performance.


App Management
Default App Management
App List
Show System Processes
Alipay
Amazon Shopping
Duo
Facebook


Default app
Assistive App and Voice Input

Homescreen System Default
Messages System Default
Call System Default
Browser System Default
Camera System Default
Photos No Default


Browser
RECOMMENDED APPS
Chrome ✓

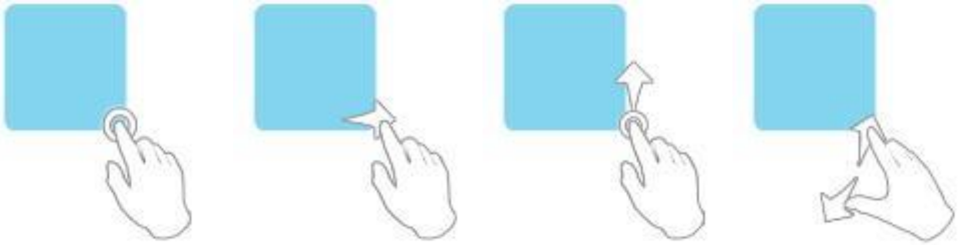
OTHER APPS: SUCH APPS MAY NOT BE ABLE TO PROPERLY OPEN FILES OF THIS CATEGORY AND WILL AFFECT THE PHONE'S STABILITY AND COMPATIBILITY.

Browser
Firefox

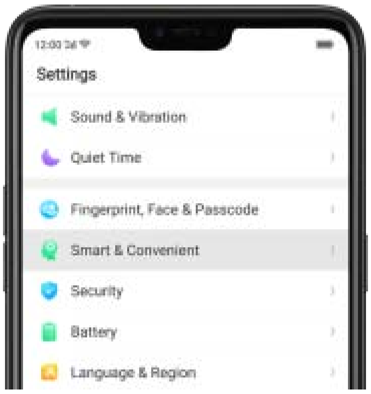
# 6.12. Gesture & Motion

## Gestures

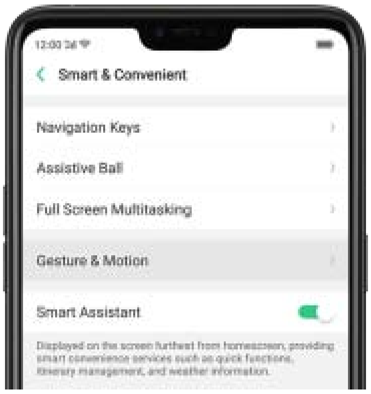
OPPO smartphone is designed to understand gestures. You can use gestures such as tap, swipe, drag, and spread to operate your phone.



To set up complex gestures for specific functions, go to **[Settings]** > **[Smart & Convenient]** > **[Gesture & Motion]**.



12:00
Settings
Sound & Vibration
Quiet Time
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
Smart & Convenient
Security
Battery
Language & Region



12:00
Smart & Convenient
Navigation Keys
Assistive Ball
Full Screen Multitasking
Gesture & Motion
Smart Assistant

## Screen-off Gestures

To set up screen-off gestures, you need to turn it on first.

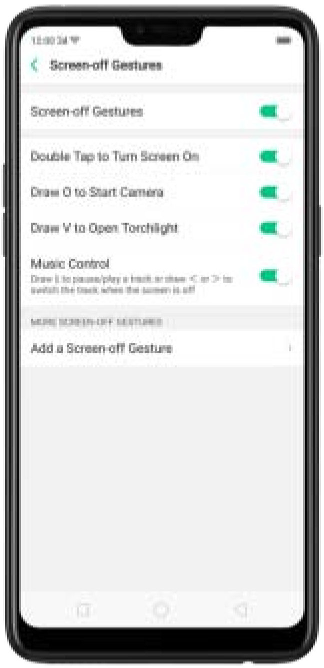
**Double tap to turn screen on**: Turn it on to wake up your locked screen with a double-click on the screen.

**Draw O to start camera**: When on lock or sleep mode, you can draw O on the locked screen to open Camera app.

**Draw V to open torchlight**: When on lock or sleep mode, you can draw V on the locked screen to open the torchlight.

**Music control**: When on lock or sleep mode, you can draw || to pause/play a track, or draw < or > to switch the track when the screen is off.

**Add more screen-off gestures**: OPPO smartphone of ColorOS 5.0 gives you 7 options, which are **Draw ^, Slide up, Slide down, Slide left, Slide right, Draw M and Draw W**. Choose one to unlock the phone, call someone or start an app.



Screen-off Gestures

Screen-off Gestures

Double Tap to Turn Screen On

Draw O to Start Camera

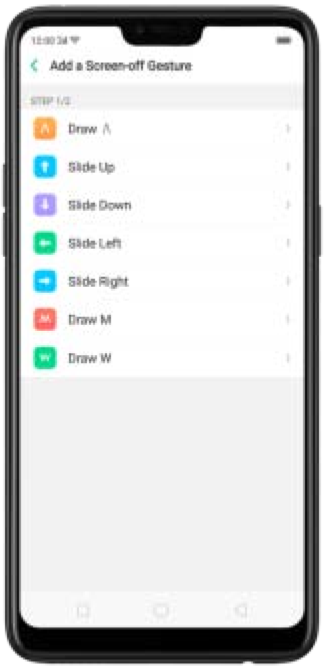
Draw V to Open Torchlight

Music Control

Draw || to pause/play a track or draw < or > to switch the track when the screen is off

MORE SCREEN-OFF GESTURES

Add a Screen-off Gesture



Add a Screen-off Gesture

STEP 1/2

Draw ∧

Slide Up

Slide Down

Slide Left

Slide Right

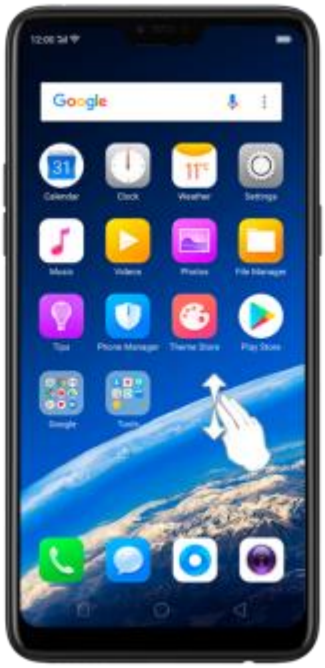
Draw M

Draw W

## 3-Finger Gesture

**Take a screenshot**. Swipe down the screen with three fingers.

**Use Split-screen**. Under the interface of an app, swipe up the screen with three fingers to enter split-screen mode.


Google
Calendar
Clock
Weather
Settings
Music
Videos
Photos
File Manager
Tips
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Play Store
Google
Tools

### Motion

The motion-sensing technology is used in OPPO smartphone. Use it to let your phone response to motion.

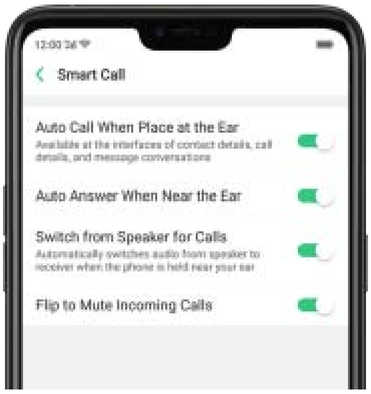
## Smart call

**Auto call when place at the ear**: Before you can use auto call, you need to set the default SIM card for calling. Go to a contact detail, call detail, message conversation or info interface, put the phone near your ear and your phone will automatically call that specific person.

**Auto answer when near the ear**: This function lets your phone ~~to~~ answer any incoming calls automatically when putting the phone near your ear.

**Switch from speaker for calls**: Use it to automatically switch from speaker to receiver when you put the phone near your ear during phone calls.

**Flip to mute incoming calls**: Use it to silence the ringer by turning the phone over on the table or other flat surfaces.



Smart Call

Auto Call When Place at the Ear ●
Available at the interfaces of contact details, call details, and message conversations

Auto Answer When Near the Ear ●

Switch from Speaker for Calls ●
Automatically switches audio from speaker to receiver when the phone is held near your ear

Flip to Mute Incoming Calls ●

## Mistouch Prevention Mode

Turn it on to prevent incorrect operations if the lock screen is covered.

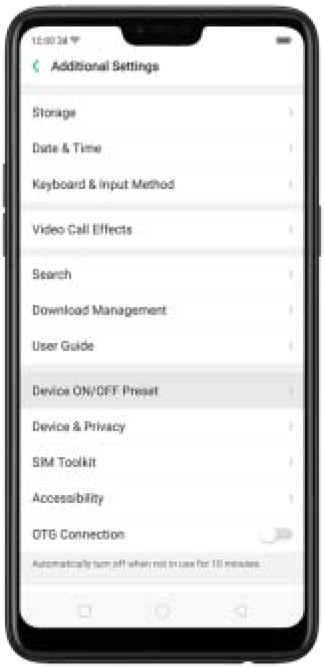
## Take selfies

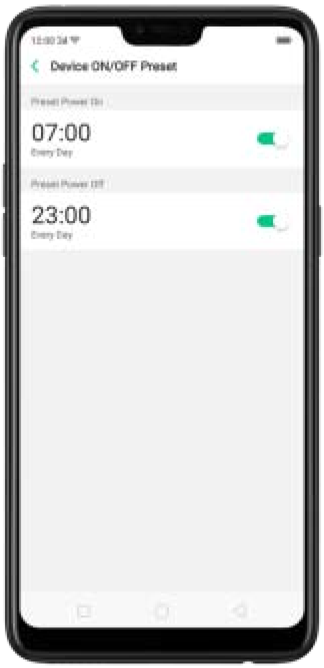
Open Camera app and switch to the front camera. Click > Gesture on the top of the screen. Pose the same hand gesture towards the camera, once the camera captures that, it will take a photo automatically after two seconds. You can change your pose and expression within this two seconds.

## 6.13. Preset device on/off time or Automatic on/off

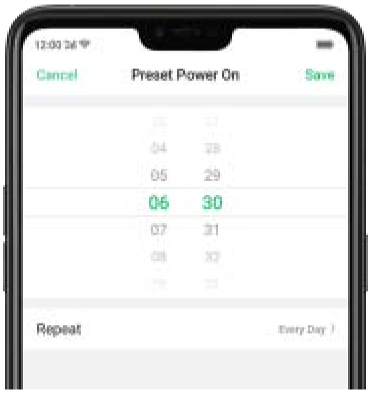
The feature helps you to automatically turn on or off your OPPO smartphone at the scheduled time you specify – for example, you can fall asleep while listening to your favorite music without having to worry about turning off your phone. It also gives you different ways to schedule the events for your needs, such as daily, weekly and only once.

**Turn on Device ON/OFF Preset** . Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Device ON/OFF Preset]**, then toggle the sliders to green as needed.

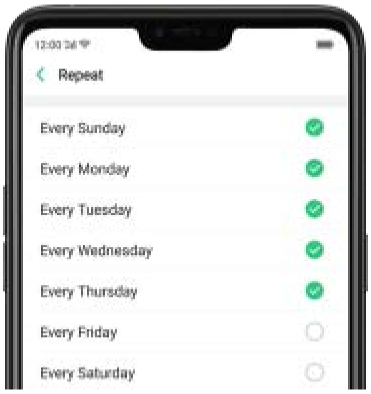

Additional Settings
Storage
Date & Time
Keyboard & Input Method
Video Call Effects
Search
Download Management
User Guide
Device ON/OFF Preset
Device & Privacy
SIM Toolkit
Accessibility
OTG Connection


Device ON/OFF Preset
07:00
Every Day
23:00
Every Day

**Set when to turn on or off the phone automatically**. Click the time, drag your finger across each column to change the time, then click Save.


Cancel
Preset Power On
Save
04
05
06
07
08
28
29
30
31
32
Repeat
Every Day

**Repeat the event on certain days**. Click the time, click Repeat, then choose the days.

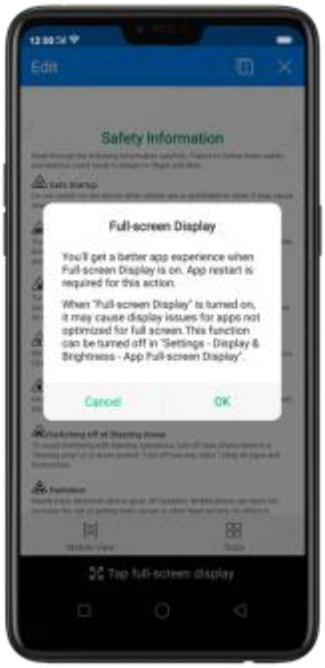


Every Sunday ✓
Every Monday ✓
Every Tuesday ✓
Every Wednesday ✓
Every Thursday ✓
Every Friday ○
Every Saturday ○

## 6.14. App display in Full-screen

ColorOS 5.0 device features a new display format with an aspect ratio of 19:9, and most of the apps are supposed to adapt their size automatically to the new screen size. If some apps are not suitable for full-screen mode, they will display at the 16:9 ratio by default, but you can let the phone ~~to~~ make changes in your app to accommodate the new screen's size and rounded corners.

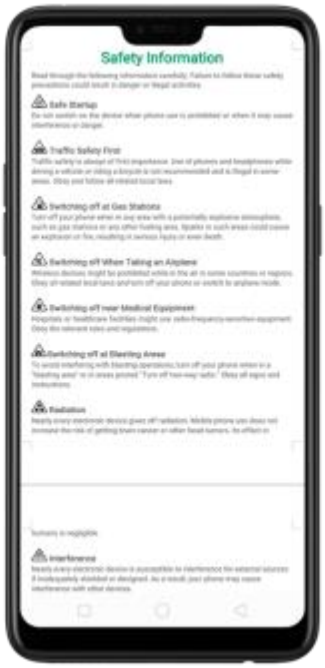
**Adjust your app layouts**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Display & Brightness]** > **[App Display in Full-screen]** and you will see a list of apps that doesn't support the 19:9 aspect ratio. Toggle the sliders to green if you want the apps to display in full-screen. Or you can open an app, then click "Tap full-screen display." App will restart when you turn on this feature.



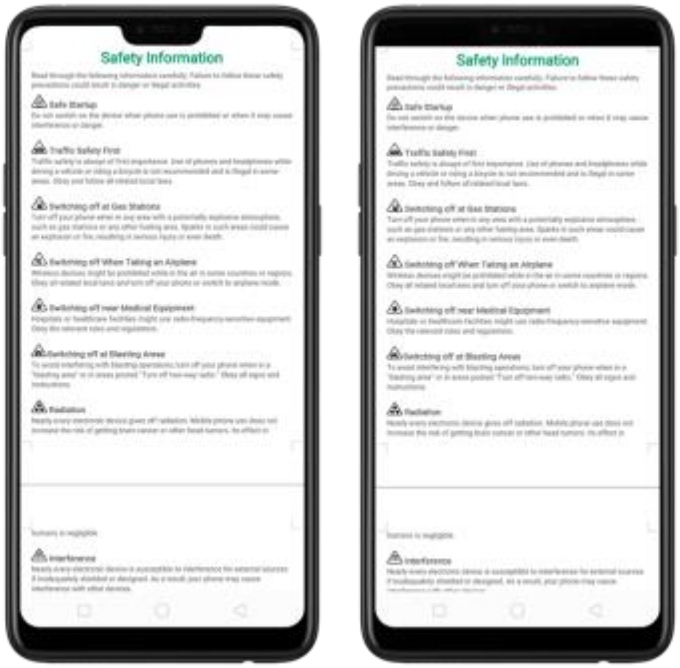
Full-screen Display

You'll get a better app experience when Full-screen Display is on. App restart is required for this action.

When "Full-screen Display" is turned on, it may cause display issues for apps not optimized for full screen. This function can be turned off in 'Settings - Display & Brightness - App Full-screen Display'.



**Control the display of notch area**. When app content is obscured by the notch area, click **[Notch Area Display Control]** and toggle the slider to white, then your app content will be positioned below the status bar. App will restart when you turn on this feature.



**Note**: Turning on "Full-screen display" will improve your experience, but it may cause display issues due to incompatibility or other reasons.

# 7. Apps

## 7.1. Phone

### 7.1.1 Make and Answer Phone Calls

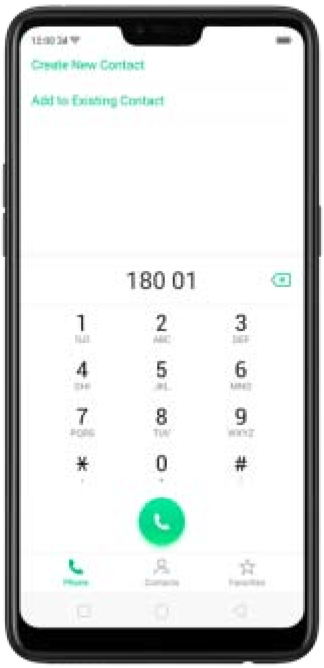
#### Make a call

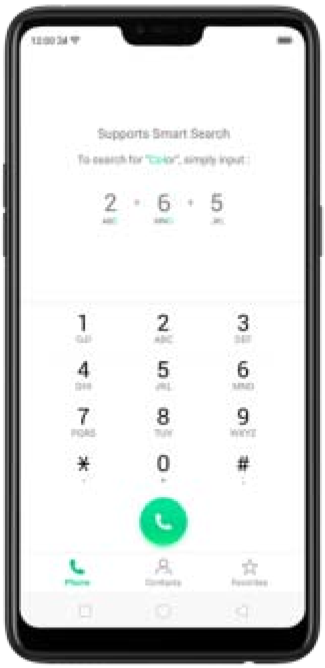
To make a call and talk to your friends, you can manually enter a phone number on the dialer, choose a number on your Contacts or Favorites, or click one of the recent calls.

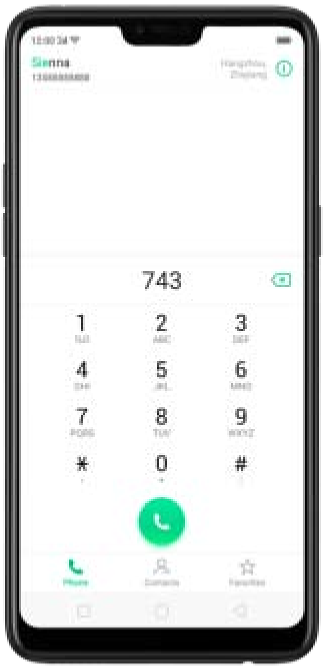
**Note**: The signal indicator at the upper-left corner of the screen shows whether you're in range of your operator's network and can make and receive calls. The more bars, the stronger the signal.

**Dial the number you want to call**. Click Phone, click the keypad to enter the number, then click 📞. Click ⌫ if you make a mistake. You can also copy a phone number and open the keypad, then click the number to paste it to the keypad.

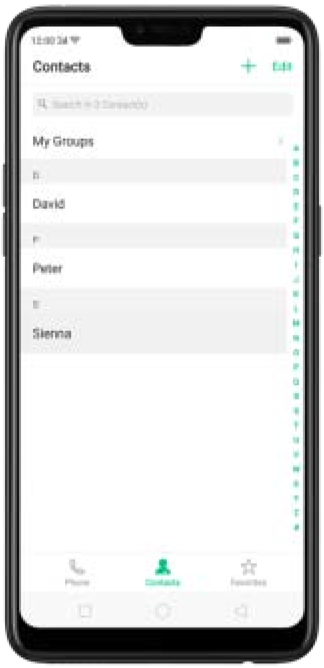
Besides, if you’re not sure what the exact phone number is, you can quickly search the contact by dialing the numbers that contain the contact's name or initial letters on the keypad. For example, if you want to call Sienna, click “743” and you’ll see the contact.

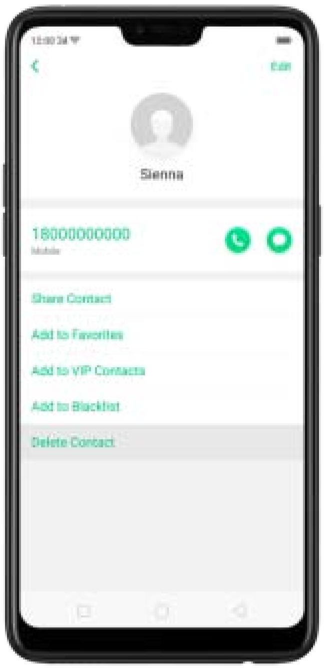

Create New Contact
Add to Existing Contact
180 01
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
*
0
#
Phone
Contacts
Favorites


Supports Smart Search
To search for "Color", simply input :
2 · 6 · 5
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
*
0
#
Phone
Contacts
Favorites

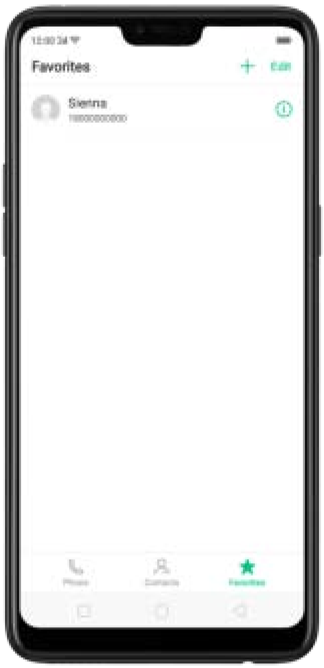

Sienna
743
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
*
0
#
Phone
Contacts
Favorites

**Call someone on your contacts list**. Click Contacts and choose a contact, then click the phone number to make a call. You can also use Search feature to find a contact, see Search.

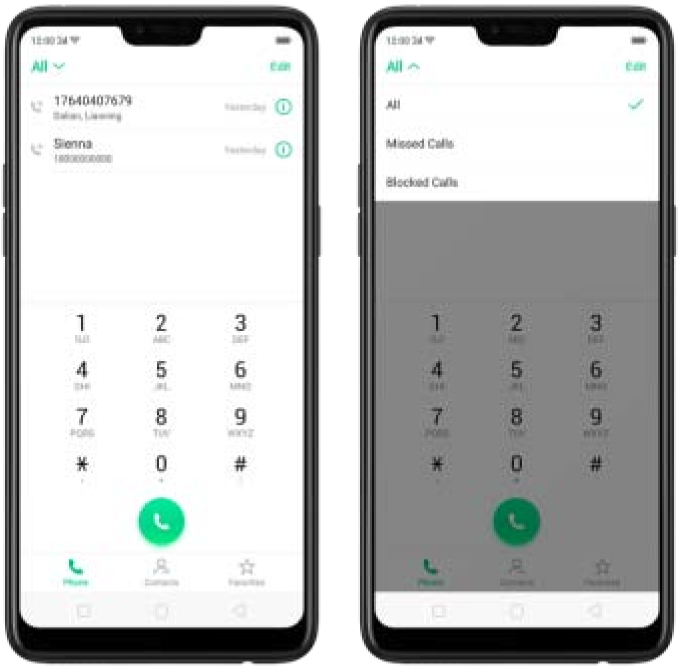

Contacts
Edit
My Groups
D
David
P
Peter
S
Sienna
Phone
Contacts
Favorites


Edit
Sienna
18000000000
Mobile
Share Contact
Add to Favorites
Add to VIP Contacts
Add to Blacklist
Delete Contact

**Call someone on your favorites list**. Click Favorites and choose a contact. To add favorites, click +.

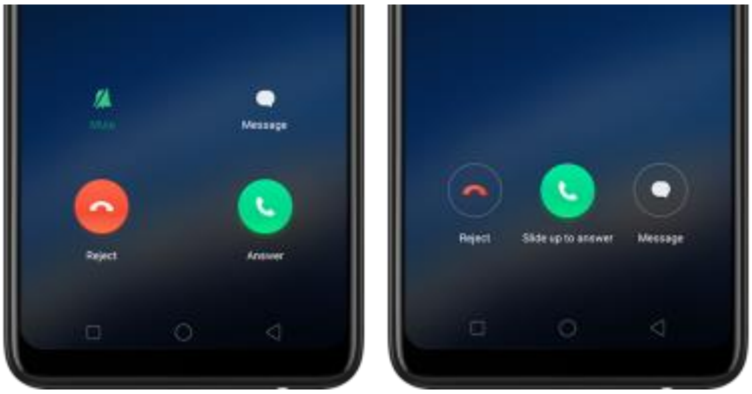

Favorites
Edit
Sienna
18000000000
Phone
Contacts
Favorites

**Call someone you've recently called or who has recently called you**. Click Phone, and you'll see the recent calls. Click a number to make the call. Click ⓘ to get more info about the call, or the caller. Click "All" to see all, only missed, or only blocked calls.


All
Edit
17640407679
Yesterday
Sienna
Yesterday
All
Edit
All
Missed Calls
Blocked Calls

## Answer or reject a call

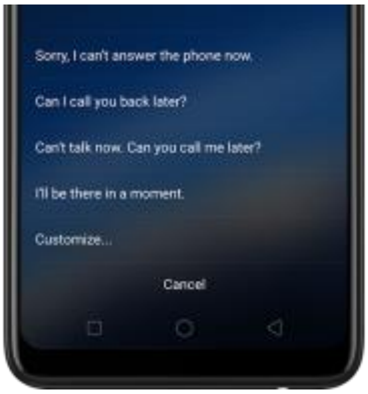
When someone calls you, the OPPO smartphone rings and displays the caller's information, if available.
**Answer a call**. Click Answer. If the phone is locked, click Slide up to answer.


Mute
Message
Reject
Answer
Reject
Slide up to answer
Message

- If you're listening through the headset, you can click the mic button to answer.

**Silence a call**. Click Mute, or press the **Sleep/Wake** button or either of the volume buttons once to stop the phone from ringing or vibrating.
**Reject a call**. Click Reject, or press the **Sleep/Wake** button twice quickly.
**Respond with a text message instead of answering**. Click Message, then choose

a reply or click Customize to reply with your own words. To create your own default replies, go to **[Settings]** > **[Call]** > **[Respond with SMS]**. Click a reply and edit the message.


Sorry, I can't answer the phone now.

Can I call you back later?

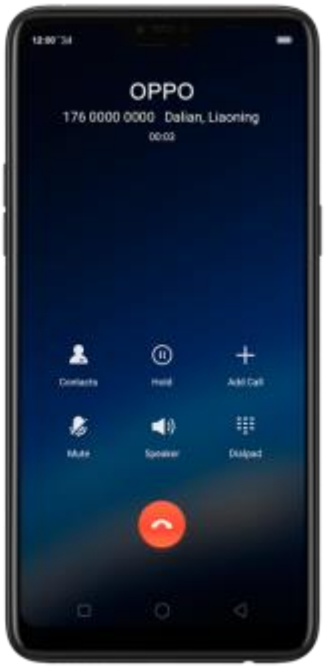
Can't talk now. Can you call me later?

I'll be there in a moment.

Customize...
Cancel

## While you're on a call

While on a call, call options will show up on your screen.

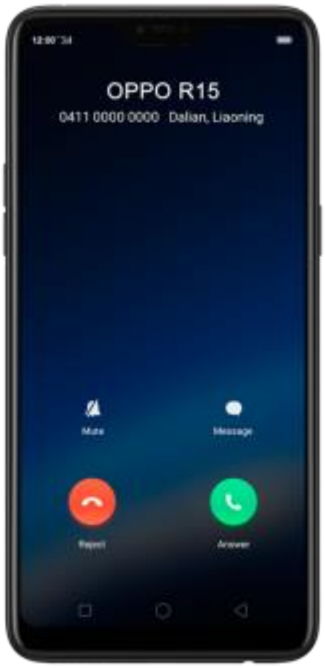

OPPO
176 0000 0000 Dalian, Liaoning
00:03
Contacts
Hold
Add Call
Mute
Speaker
Dialpad

| To | Do this |
|---|---|
| **Get contact info.** | Click Contacts. |
| **Put a call on hold.** | Click Hold. |
| **Mute the microphone.** | Click Mute. The caller can't hear you when you are on mute, but you can still hear the caller. Click Mute again to cancel it. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Activate Speakerphone**. | Click Speaker. |
| **Use the dial pad to enter information**. | Click Dialpad. |
| **Make a second call during a call**. | Click Add call and make a second call. The first call will be put on hold. Click the phone number to switch back to the first call and put the second call on hold. Click Merge calls to merge the two calls, so all three of you can talk and hear each other. See Conference calls. |

**Respond to a second call**, do one of the following:

- **To reject the call**, click Reject.
- **To hold the first call and answer the new call**, click Answer.



**Use other features while on a call**. Click the **Home** button or swipe up the middle bottom to return home. Click the green status bar on the top of the screen to return the call.

### 7.1.2. Conference calls

A conference call lets you talk to more than one person at a time. You can merge up to six calls including the host for a phone conference.

**Notice**: You might need to contact your network operator to activate conferencing services first.

**Make a conference call**. Do the following:

1. Make a call.
2. Tap Add Call and make another call. The first call will be put on hold.
3. Tap Merge calls. The calls are merged onto one line and everyone can hear each other.
4. Repeat the second and third steps to add more calls to the conference.

12:00
176 0000 0000
On hold
134 0000 0000
00:03
Contacts
Swap
Merge calls
Mute
Speaker
Dialpad

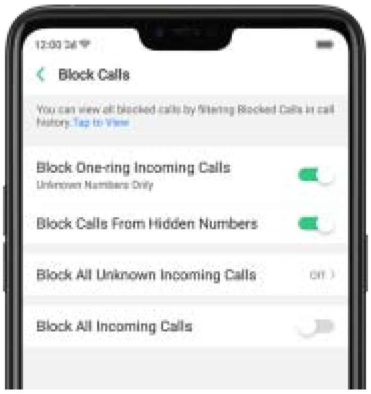
## 7.1.3. Block calls

Block feature does help to prevent unwanted phone calls. You can also add numbers to blacklist to block specific phone numbers from calling.

**Block calls**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Call]** > **[Block]**, or go to **[Settings]** > **[Security]** > **[Anti-harassment/Fraud]**. Click **[Block Calls]**, you'll see several options available for blocking incoming calls:

- Block one-ring incoming calls
- Block calls from hidden numbers
- Block all unknown incoming calls (Do not block repeated incoming calls)
- Block all incoming calls

**Note**: The unknown number refers to an unsaved real phone number, and your phone is able to show its number and location; while the hidden number means the caller's number or location is not accessible. ~~which usually is a harassing call.~~



12:00

Block Calls

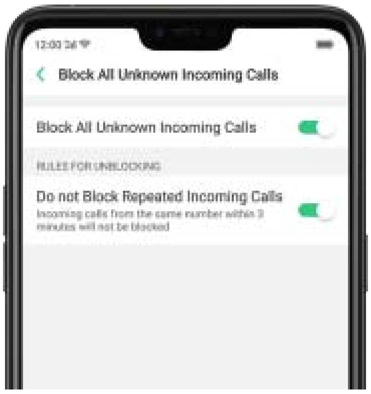
You can view all blocked calls by filtering Blocked Calls in call history. Tap to View

Block One-ring Incoming Calls ●
Unknown Numbers Only

Block Calls From Hidden Numbers ●

Block All Unknown Incoming Calls Off ›

Block All Incoming Calls ○



12:00

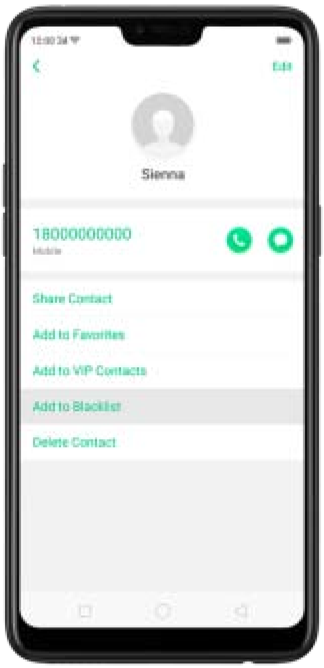
Block All Unknown Incoming Calls

Block All Unknown Incoming Calls ●

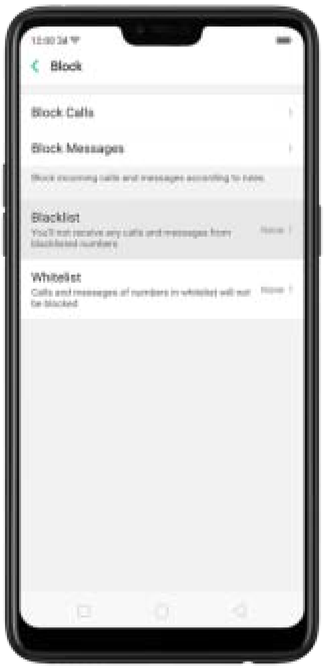
RULES FOR UNBLOCKING

Do not Block Repeated Incoming Calls ●
Incoming calls from the same number within 3 minutes will not be blocked

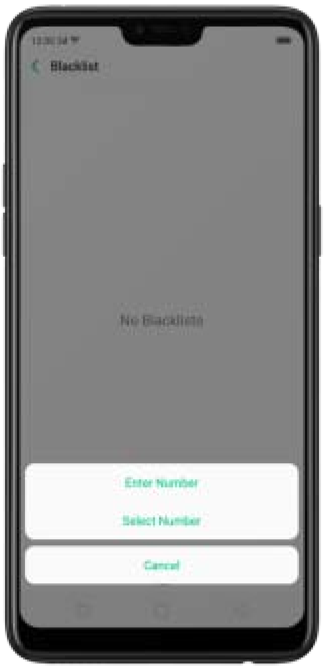
**Add a contact or a phone number to the blacklist**. Click Phone, then click Contacts. Choose a contact, then click Add to Blacklist. You can also go to **[Settings]** > **[Call]** > **[Block]**, or go to **[Settings]** > **[Security]** > **[Block]**, click **[Blacklist]**, click + Add , then enter the number or choose your contacts.



Edit
Sienna
18000000000
Mobile
Share Contact
Add to Favorites
Add to VIP Contacts
Add to Blacklist
Delete Contact



Block
Block Calls
Block Messages
Block incoming calls and messages according to rules
Blacklist
You'll not receive any calls and messages from blacklisted numbers
None
Whitelist
Calls and messages of numbers in whitelist will not be blocked
None



Blacklist
No Blacklists
Enter Number
Select Number
Cancel

You can also add contacts or phone numbers to the whitelist, which calls and messages from these numbers will not be blocked.

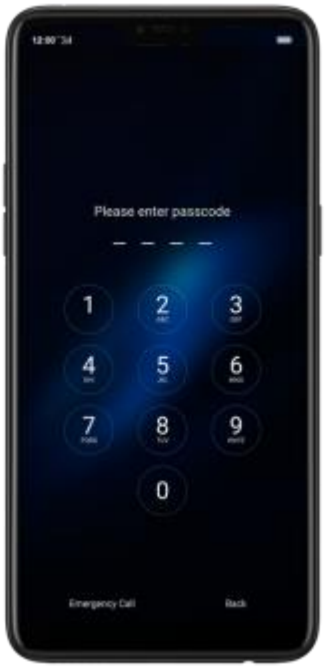
## 7.1.4. Emergency calls

What is emergency Number?
Emergency numbers are numbers of emergency services which provide immediate help during Medical emergency, Threat to life, Fire, Accidents.

In many countries, the public telephone network has a single emergency telephone number (sometimes known as the universal emergency telephone number or occasionally the emergency services number) that allows a caller to contact local emergency services for assistance.

You can make an emergency call even if you do not have a SIM card installed on your OPPO smartphone.
**Make an emergency call**. Click Phone, click keypad and dial the number, then click ☎. Or if your phone is locked with a passcode, click Emergency Call, then dial the

emergency number.

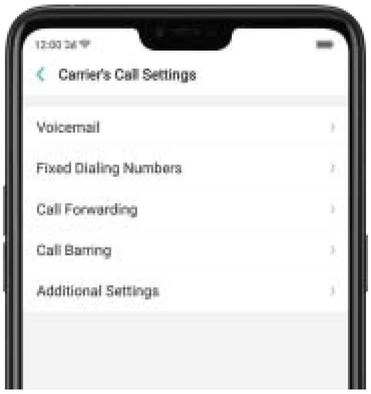


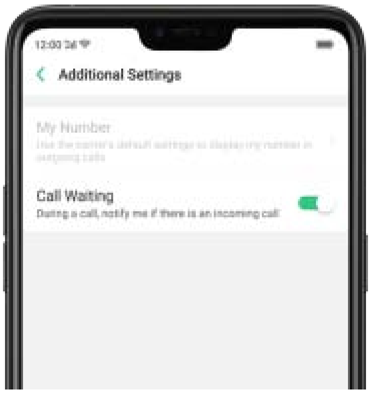
### 7.1.5. Carrier’s Call Settings

OPPO smartphone includes several calling features such as Call Forwarding, Call Waiting, Voicemail, and more.

**Set up calling features**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Call]** > **[Carrier’s Call Settings]**.

- **Voicemail**: When you're away or can't get to the phone, your Voicemail does the answering for you. Callers can leave recorded audio messages to you, and you can view, listen to, and manage the messages.
- **Fixed Dialing Numbers**: Add numbers to the FDN list, and when activated, FDN restricts outgoing calls to only those numbers listed, or to numbers with certain prefixes.
- **Call Forwarding**: An incoming call will be redirected to another telephone number where the desired called party is able to answer. Notice that ☎ appears on the status bar.
- **Call Barring**: Certain types of outgoing calls (such as international calls) and/or incoming calls will be restricted.
- **Call Waiting**: You'll hear short beeps if someone calls you while you’re on **a** call.


12:00
Carrier's Call Settings
Voicemail
Fixed Dialing Numbers
Call Forwarding
Call Barring
Additional Settings


12:00
Additional Settings
My Number
Call Waiting
During a call, notify me if there is an incoming call

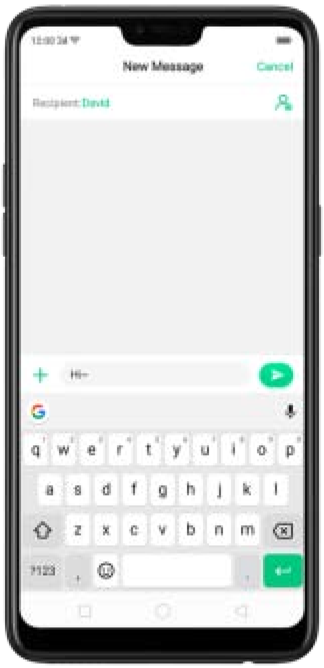
# 7.6. Message

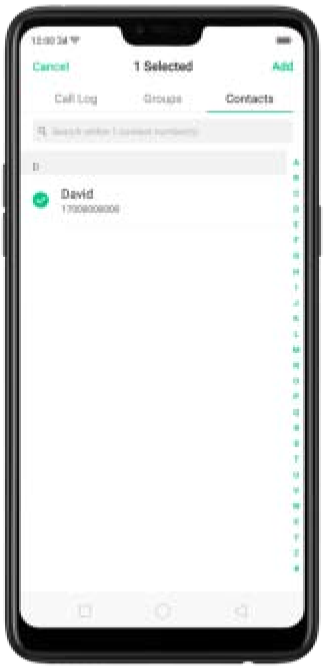
## 7.6.2. Send and receive messages

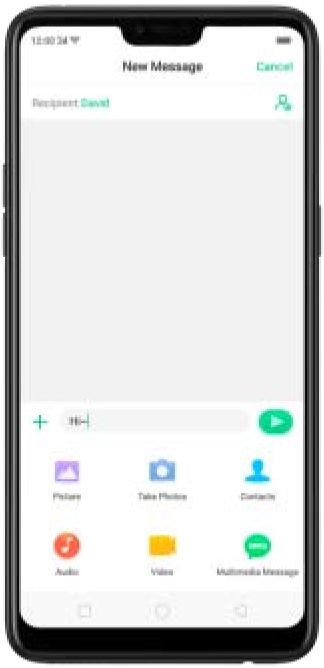
You can send and receive text messages anytime you're in range of the cell network. Depending on your phone plan, you may be charged for messages you send or receive.

**Send a new message**. Click +, then enter a phone number or name. Contacts matching what you've typed appear below. Or click 👤 and choose a contact from your contacts list. Type a message and click ▶.

**Tip**: As you type, click + next to the text field to add an attachment.

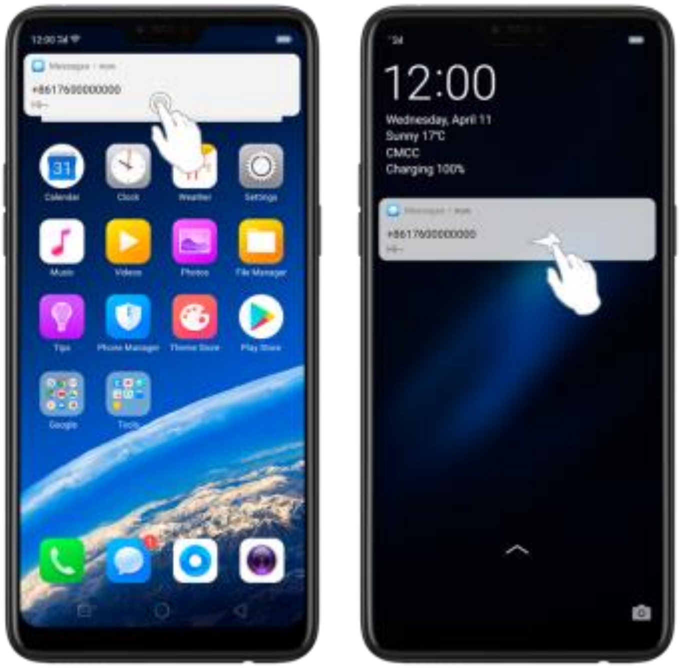

New Message
Cancel
Recipient: David
Hi~


Cancel
1 Selected
Add
Call Log
Groups
Contacts
D
David


New Message
Cancel
Recipient: David
Hi~
Picture
Take Photos
Contacts
Audio
Video
Multimedia Message

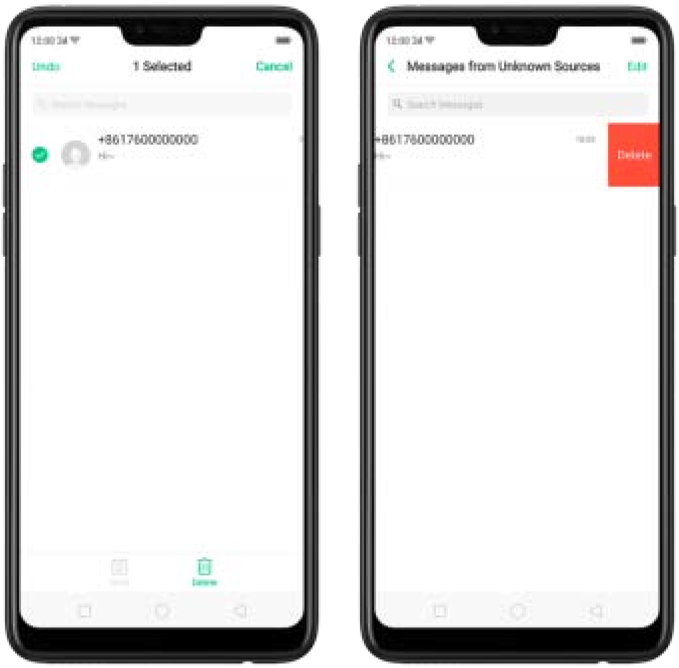
**Send a message to multiple people.** Click +, then enter multiple recipients, or click 👤 and tick all contacts you wish to include in the group message, then click **Add**.

**Read and reply to a new message.** Click the notification on the top of your screen, or click 💬. When phone screen is locked, swipe the notification right. Type your message and click ▶.


+8617600000000
Hi~
Calendar
Clock
Weather
Settings
Music
Videos
Photos
File Manager
Tips
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Play Store
Google
Tools
12:00
Wednesday, April 11
Sunny 17℃
CMCC
Charging 100%
+8617600000000
Hi~

**Tip**: The Messages icon on the Home screen shows the total number of unread text messages you have.

**Delete conversations from the Messages list**. Click **Edit**, tick the conversations and click **Delete**. You can also delete a conversation by swiping left over a conversation and clicking **Delete**.

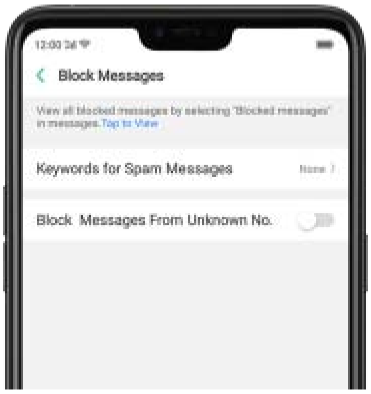

Undo
1 Selected
Cancel
+8617600000000
Hi~
Delete
Messages from Unknown Sources
Edit
Search Messages
+8617600000000
Hi~
Delete

### 7.6.3. Customize message settings

The Messages settings menu lets you control options for your text and MMS messages including message limits, displays, notifications, and more. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Messages]**.

**Block messages**. Click **[Block]** > **[Block Messages]**. Enter the keywords for spam messages. To block all unknown messages, toggle the slider to green.

**Note**: When **Block all unknown messages** is turned on, you might miss important verification text messages, as well as messages from people who you know, but are not on your contact list.

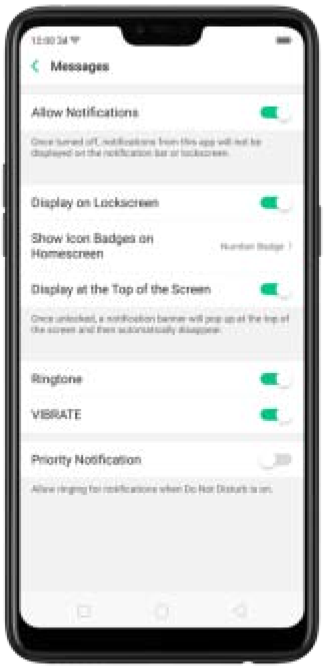

Block Messages

View all blocked messages by selecting "Blocked messages" in messages. Tap to View

Keywords for Spam Messages: None

Block Messages From Unknown No. ○

**Manage Messages settings**. To display notifications of new messages, turn on **[Allow Notifications]**. You can customize whether new notifications from Messages appear on the lock screen or notification bar, display a banner, play a sound or vibrate, or whether show icon badges on the Home screen. You can also allow ringing for notifications when Do Not Disturb is on.


Messages

Allow Notifications ●

Once turned off, notifications from this app will not be displayed on the notification bar or lockscreen.

Display on Lockscreen ●

Show Icon Badges on Homescreen: Number Badge

Display at the Top of the Screen ●

Once unlocked, a notification banner will pop up at the top of the screen and then automatically disappear.

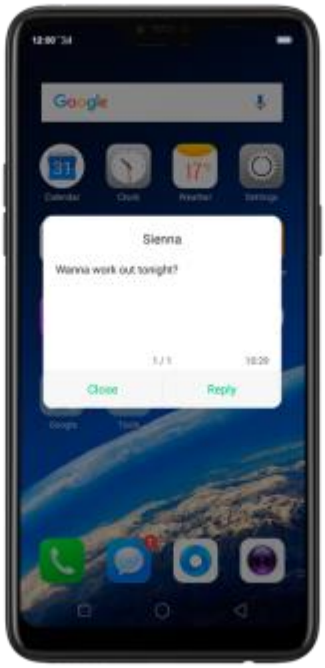
Ringtone ●

VIBRATE ●

Priority Notification ○

Allow ringing for notifications when Do Not Disturb is on.

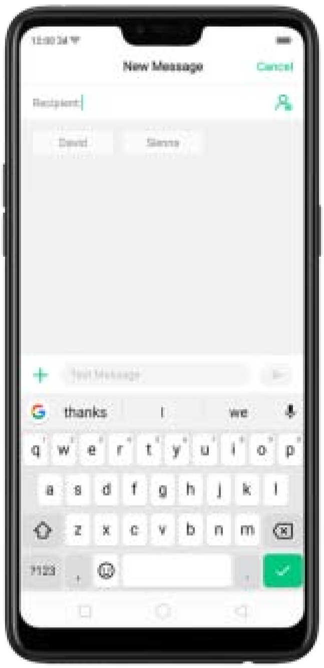
**Display received messages in pop-up window.** The phone will automatically pop up a window with the content of the message. You can close the window or reply to the message directly.

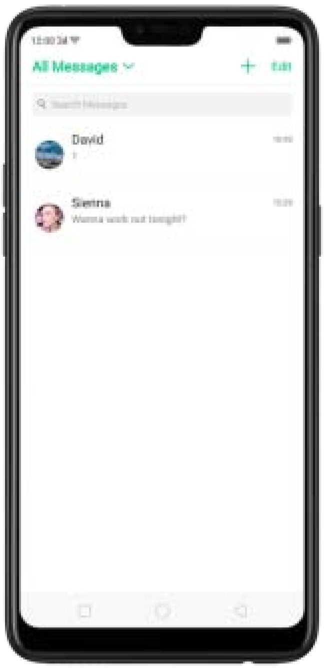

Sienna
1 / 1
10:29
Close
Reply

Wanna work out tonight?

**Receive instant SMS messages**. Toggle the slider to green if you want to receive life-related messages pushed by your operator during a call.

**Display recent contacts when sending a message and show contact's portrait in the Message list**. Toggle the sliders to green.

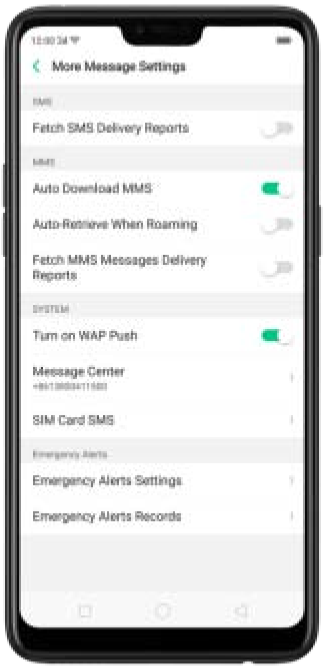

New Message
Cancel
Recipient:
David
Sienna
Text Message
thanks
I
we


All Messages
Edit
Search Messages
David
Sienna

Wanna work out tonight?

**Customize advanced settings**. Click **[More Message Settings]**, then set up more

SMS, MMS, system, and emergency alert related settings.



More Message Settings

SMS

Fetch SMS Delivery Reports ○

MMS

Auto Download MMS ●

Auto-Retrieve When Roaming ○

Fetch MMS Messages Delivery Reports ○

SYSTEM

Turn on WAP Push ●

Message Center

SIM Card SMS

Emergency Alerts

Emergency Alerts Settings

Emergency Alerts Records

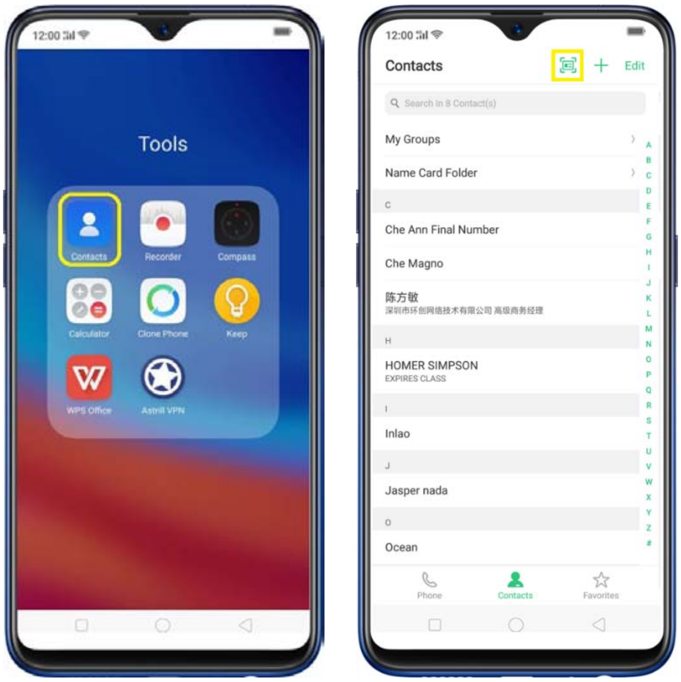
# 7.7. Contacts

## 7.7.2. Add a contact

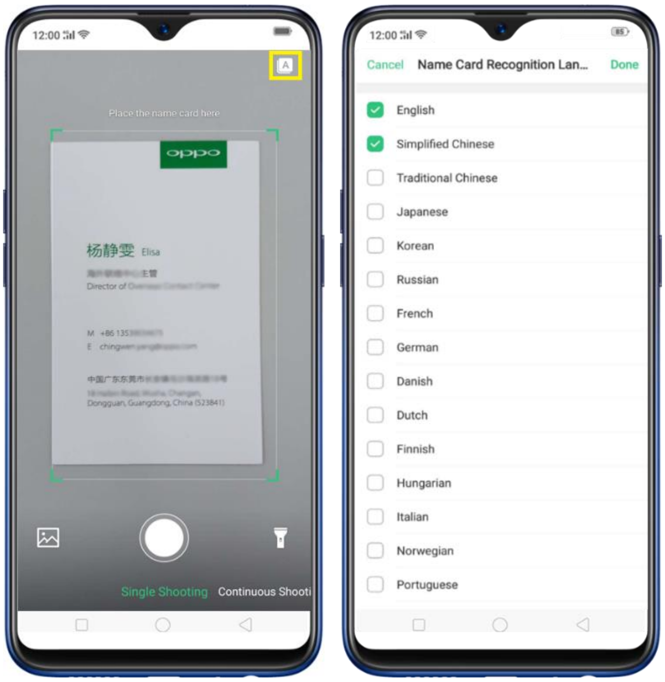
Save new contact information in a snap. You just need a name card or business card.

There are three ways you can add contacts in a snap using the Scan Name card feature.

3. Through the Contacts app. On your home screen, click [**Contacts app**] > [**Contacts**] then click ▣ on the top-right corner of the screen.

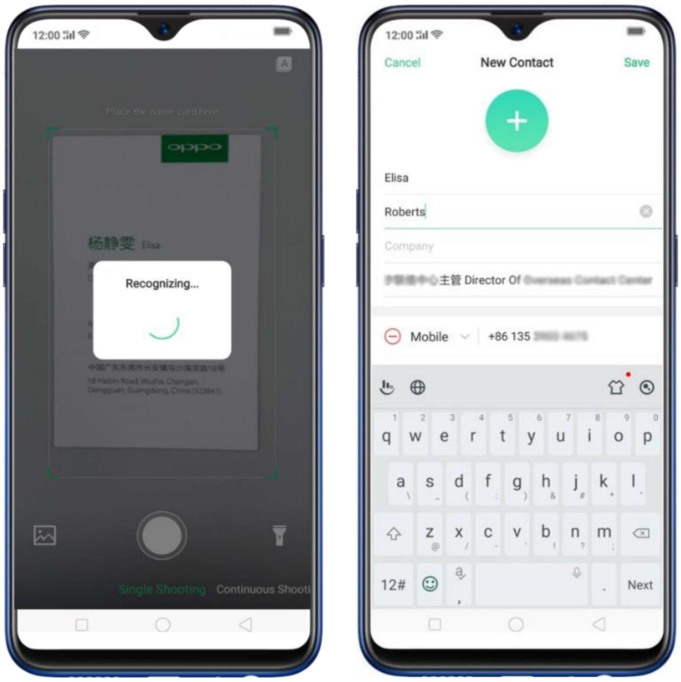

12:00
Tools
Contacts
Recorder
Compass
Calculator
Clone Phone
Keep
WPS Office
Astrill VPN
12:00
Contacts
Edit
Search in 8 Contact(s)
My Groups
Name Card Folder
C
Che Ann Final Number
Che Magno
陈方敏
深圳市环创网络技术有限公司 高级商务经理
H
HOMER SIMPSON
EXPIRES CLASS
I
Inlao
J
Jasper nada
O
Ocean
Phone
Contacts
Favorites

Then click A for the name card recognition language. Make sure to fit the name card or business card on the frame.


12:00
Place the name card here
oppo
杨静雯 Elisa
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooti
12:00
Cancel
Name Card Recognition Lan...
Done

☑ English
☑ Simplified Chinese
☐ Traditional Chinese
☐ Japanese
☐ Korean
☐ Russian
☐ French
☐ German
☐ Danish
☐ Dutch
☐ Finnish
☐ Hungarian
☐ Italian
☐ Norwegian
☐ Portuguese

Click ○ to start recognizing the name card or business card and all information will directly be inputted on your Contacts app then click **Save.**


12:00
Place the name card here
oppo
杨静雯 Elisa
Recognizing...
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooti
12:00
Cancel
New Contact
Save
Company
Mobile
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
12#
Next

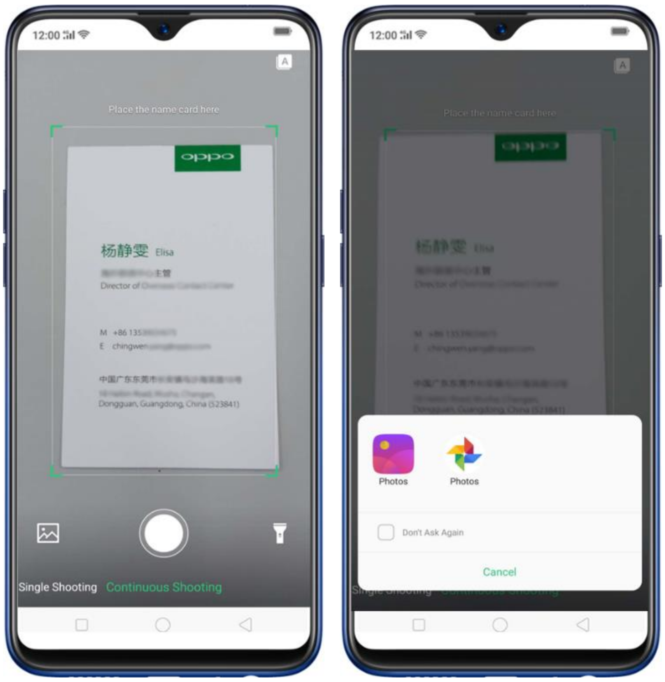
Elisa

Roberts

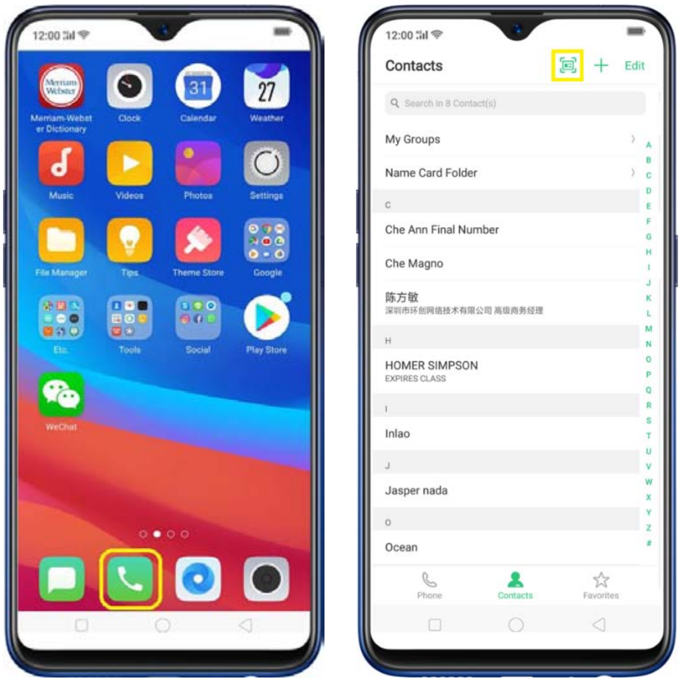
主管 Director Of

+86 135

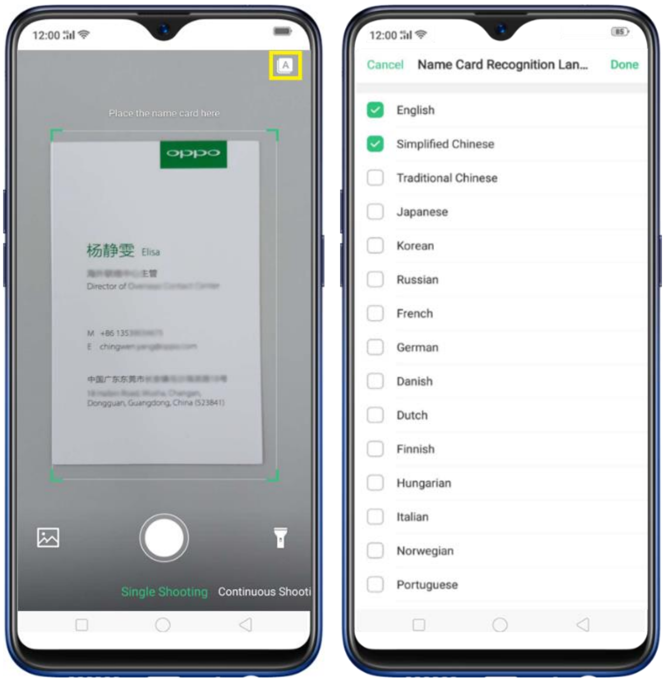
You also have an option to do **Continuous Shooting**, open Photos app if a name card or business card is saved there, or use the flashlight if area to scan is dimly lit.


12:00
Place the name card here
oppo
杨静雯 Elisa
Director of
M +86 135
E chingwen
Dongguan, Guangdong, China (523841)
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooting
12:00
Place the name card here
Photos
Photos
Don't Ask Again
Cancel

4. Through the Phone App. On your home screen, click [**Phone app**] > [**Contacts**] then click on the top-right corner of the screen.

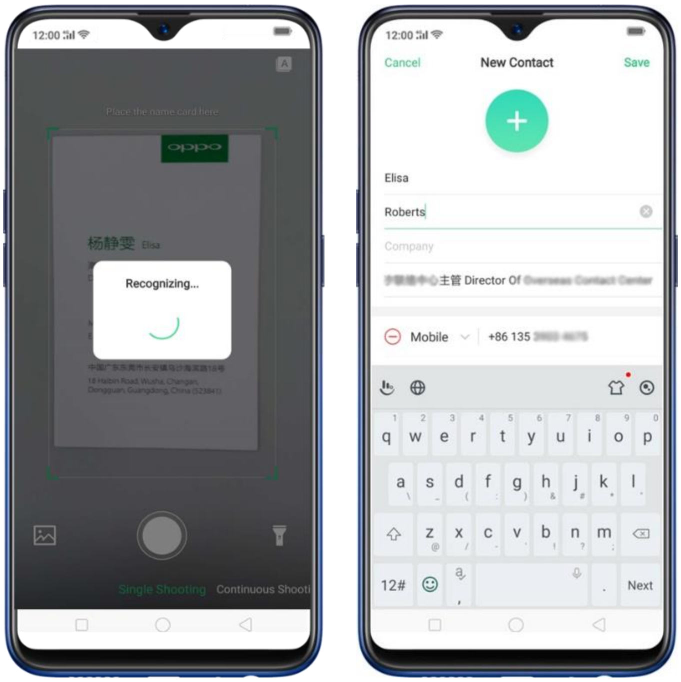

12:00
Merriam-Webster Dictionary
Clock
Calendar
Weather
Music
Videos
Photos
Settings
File Manager
Tips
Theme Store
Google
Etc.
Tools
Social
Play Store
WeChat
Contacts
Edit
Search in 8 Contact(s)
My Groups
Name Card Folder
C
Che Ann Final Number
Che Magno
陈方敏
H
HOMER SIMPSON
EXPIRES CLASS
I
Inlao
J
Jasper nada
O
Ocean
Phone
Contacts
Favorites

Then click A for the name card recognition language. Make sure to fit the name card or business card on the frame.


12:00
A
Place the name card here
oppo
杨静雯 Elisa
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooti
12:00
Cancel
Name Card Recognition Lan...
Done

☑ English
☑ Simplified Chinese
☐ Traditional Chinese
☐ Japanese
☐ Korean
☐ Russian
☐ French
☐ German
☐ Danish
☐ Dutch
☐ Finnish
☐ Hungarian
☐ Italian
☐ Norwegian
☐ Portuguese

Click ○ to start recognizing the name card or business card and all information will directly be inputted on your Contacts app then click **Save.**



12:00
Place the name card here
oppo
杨静雯 Elisa
Recognizing...
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooti
12:00
Cancel
New Contact
Save
Company
Mobile
Next

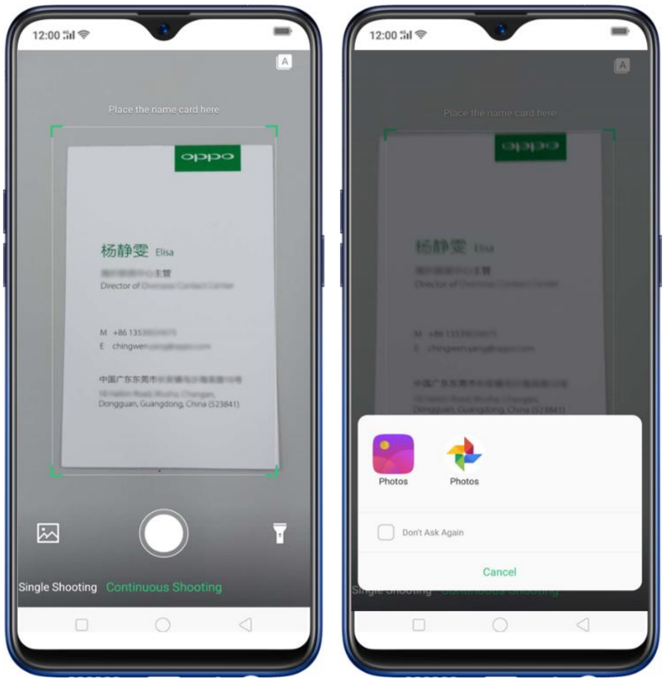
Elisa

Roberts

主管 Director Of

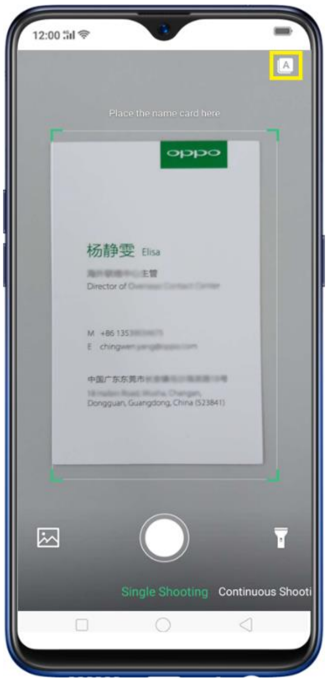
+86 135

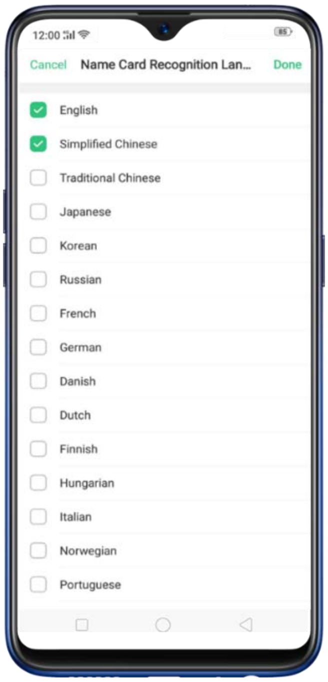
You also have an option to do **Continuous Shooting**, open Photos app if a namecard or business card is saved there, or use the flashlight if area to scan is dimly lit.



12:00
Place the name card here
oppo
杨静雯 Elisa
Director of
Dongguan, Guangdong, China (523841)
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooting
12:00
Place the name card here
Photos
Photos
☐ Don't Ask Again
Cancel

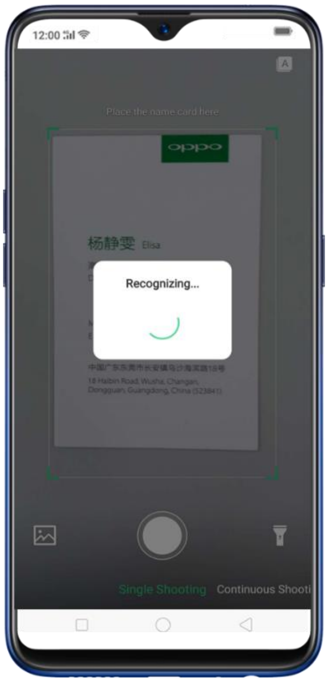
- On Smart Assistant, Click Scan Namecard to launch Contacts app and open this feature directly. Before scanning the business card or namecard, click for the namecard recognition language. Make sure to fit the namecard or business card on the frame.


12:00
A
Place the name card here
oppo
杨静雯 Elsa
Director of
Dongguan, Guangdong, China (523841)
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooti

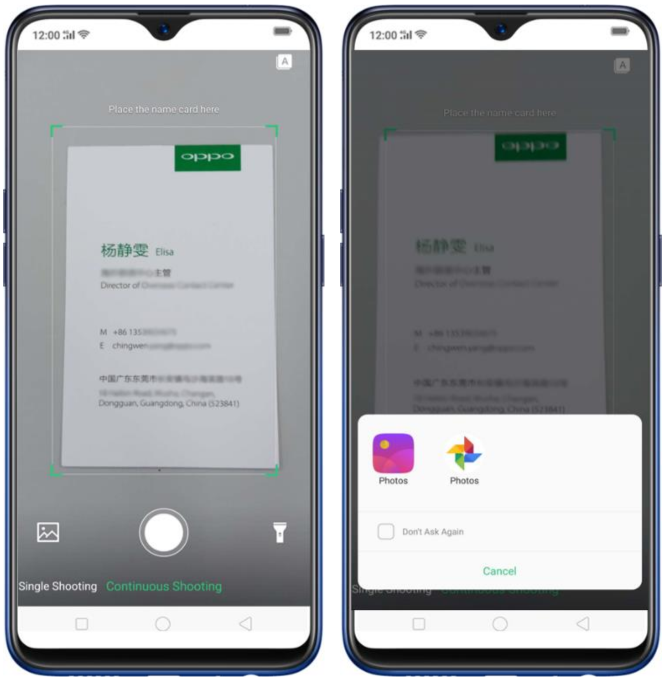

12:00
Cancel
Name Card Recognition Lan...
Done

☑ English
☑ Simplified Chinese
☐ Traditional Chinese
☐ Japanese
☐ Korean
☐ Russian
☐ French
☐ German
☐ Danish
☐ Dutch
☐ Finnish
☐ Hungarian
☐ Italian
☐ Norwegian
☐ Portuguese

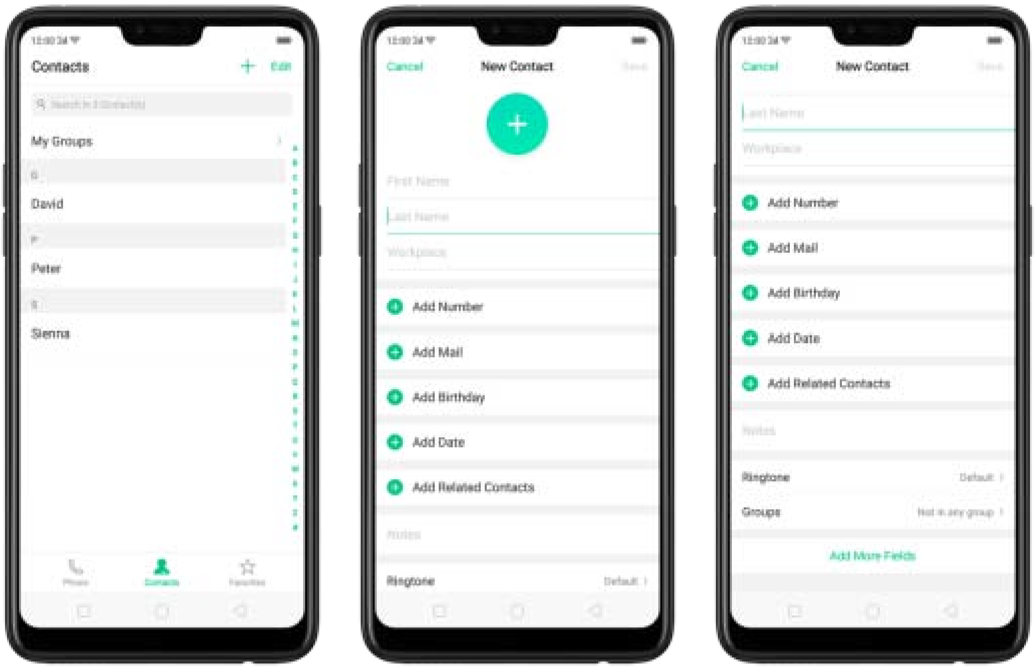
Click to start recognizing the namecard or business card and all information will directly be stored on your Contacts app then click **Save.**


12:00
A
Place the name card here
oppo
杨静雯 Elsa
Recognizing...
18 Haibin Road, Wusha, Chang'an,
Dongguan, Guangdong, China (523841)
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooti

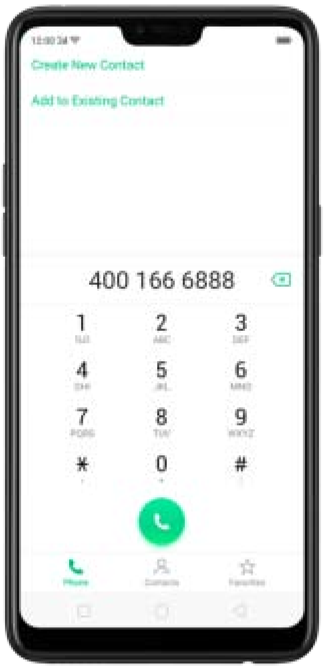
You also have an option to do **Continuous Shooting**, open Photos app if a namecard or business card is saved there, or use the flashlight if area to scan is dimly lit.


12:00
Place the name card here
Single Shooting
Continuous Shooting
Photos
Photos
☐ Don't Ask Again
Cancel

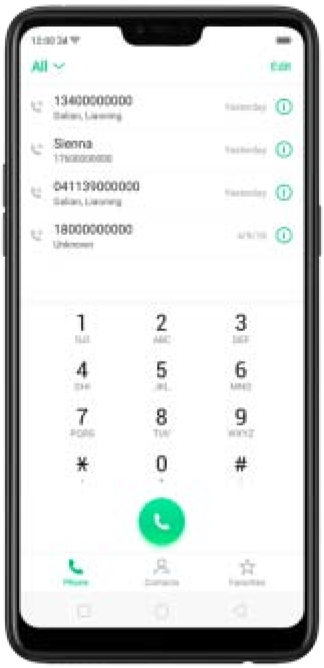
**Add a new contact the old way**. Click Contacts, click +, then enter the contact information.

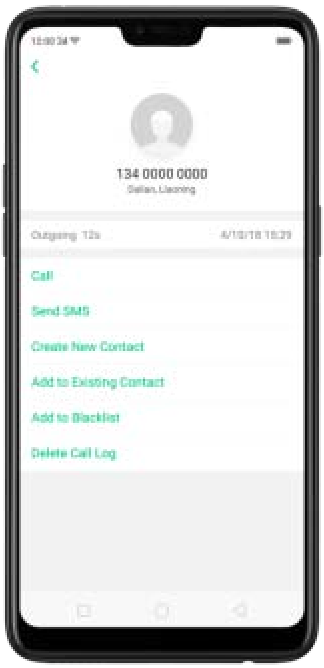

Contacts
+
Edit
My Groups
D
David
P
Peter
S
Sienna
Phone
Contacts
Favorites
Cancel
New Contact
Save
First Name
Last Name
Workplace
Add Number
Add Mail
Add Birthday
Add Date
Add Related Contacts
Notes
Ringtone
Default
Groups
Not in any group
Add More Fields

**Add a contact from a number entered using the keypad**. Click Phone and enter a number, then click **Create New Contact** and enter the contact information, or click **Add to Existing Contact** and choose a contact.


Create New Contact
Add to Existing Contact
400 166 6888
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
*
0
#
Phone
Contacts
Favorites

**Add a recent caller's information to your contacts**. Click Phone, and you'll see the recent calls. Click ⓘ, then click **Create New Contact** or **Add to Existing Contact**.

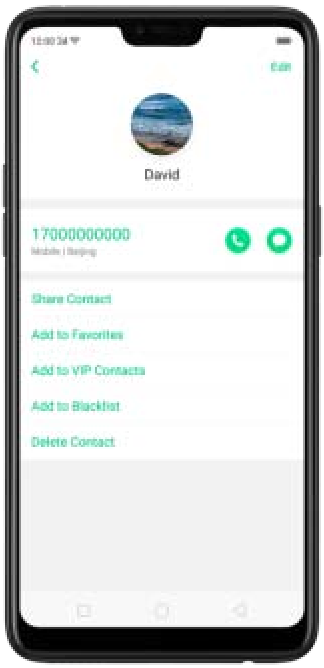

All
Edit
13400000000
Dalian, Liaoning
Yesterday
Sienna
17600000000
Yesterday
041139000000
Dalian, Liaoning
Yesterday
18000000000
Unknown
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
*
0
#
Phone
Contacts
Favorites


134 0000 0000
Dalian, Liaoning
Outgoing 12s
4/10/18 15:29
Call
Send SMS
Create New Contact
Add to Existing Contact
Add to Blacklist
Delete Call Log

## 7.7.3. Edit and delete a contact

You can make changes to your contacts directly on your OPPO smartphone.
**Edit a contact's phone number, address, and other information**. Click Contacts and choose a contact, then tap **Edit**.

- To add an item - such as an Email address or phone number, click ⊕ next to the item.
- To delete an item, click ⊖ next to it.

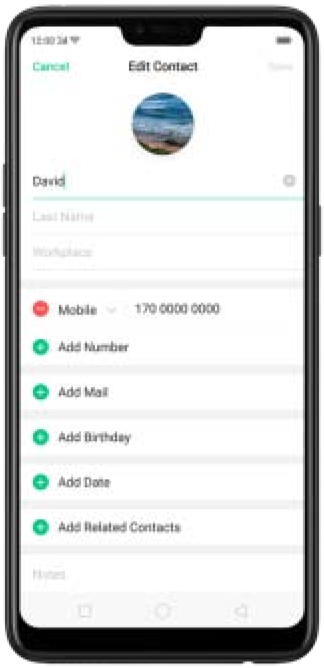


David

17000000000

Mobile | Beijing

Edit
Share Contact
Add to Favorites
Add to VIP Contacts
Add to Blacklist
Delete Contact



David

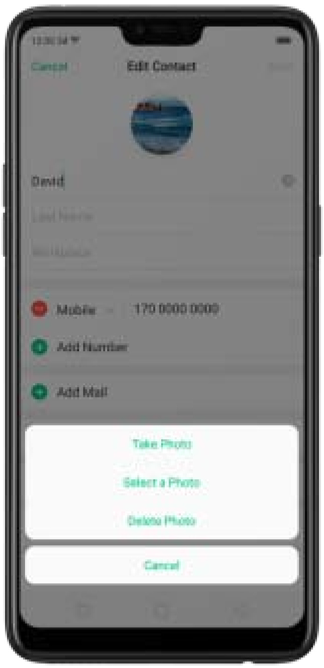
Mobile 170 0000 0000

Cancel
Edit Contact
Last Name
Workplace
Add Number
Add Mail
Add Birthday
Add Date
Add Related Contacts
Notes

**Assign a photo to a contact or change a contact's photo**.

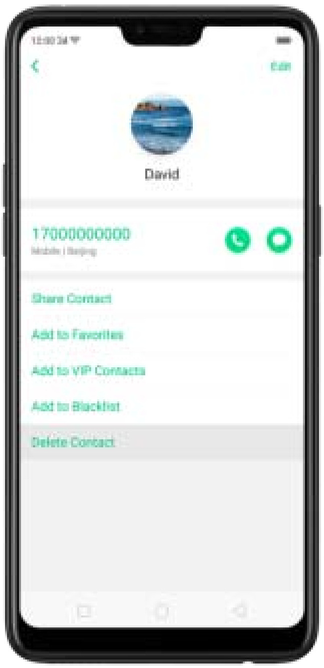
1. Click ⊕, or click the existing photo.

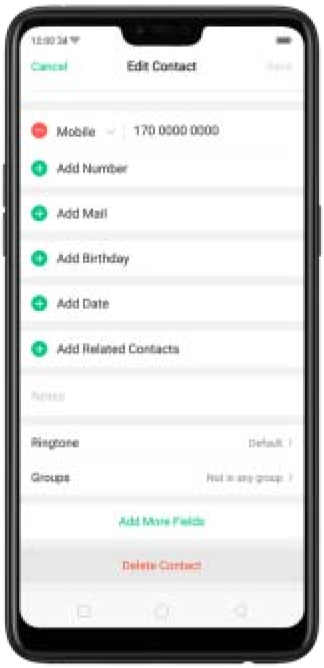
2. Click **Take Photo** to use the camera to take a picture, or click **Select a Photo** and select an existing photo, or click **Delete Photo** to delete the photo.
3. Drag to region to crop the photo, then click Done.


Cancel
Edit Contact
David
Last Name
Workplace
Mobile
170 0000 0000
Add Number
Add Mail
Take Photo
Select a Photo
Delete Photo
Cancel

Cropping Photo
Done

**Delete a contact**. Click **Delete Contact** on the Contact Details page or Scroll to the bottom of the contact information and click **Delete Contact**.


Edit
David
17000000000
Mobile | Beijing
Share Contact
Add to Favorites
Add to VIP Contacts
Add to Blacklist
Delete Contact

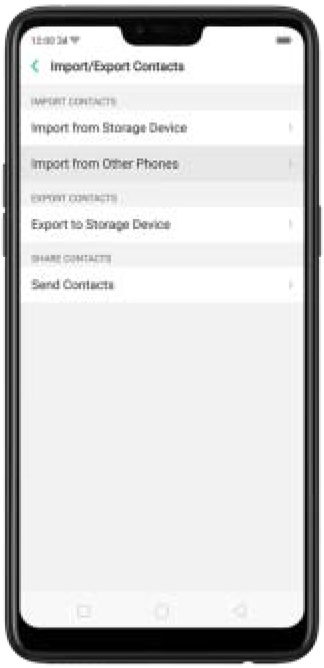

Cancel
Edit Contact
Done
Mobile
170 0000 0000
Add Number
Add Mail
Add Birthday
Add Date
Add Related Contacts
Notes
Ringtone
Default
Groups
Not in any group
Add More Fields
Delete Contact

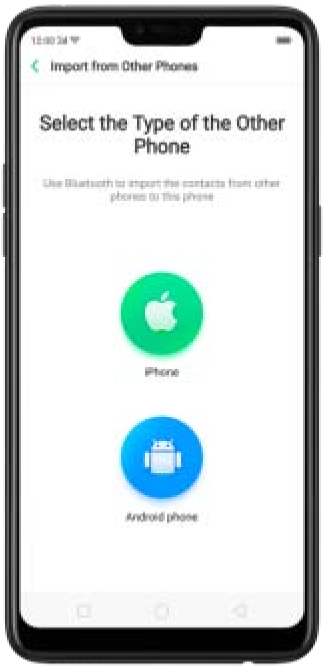
## 7.7.4. Import and export contacts

You can import/export contacts from/to the phone storage or your SIM card. If you have contacts stored on your old phone, you can transfer them through Bluetooth from that phone. If there are repeat contacts, the phone will automatically merge them when you import contacts.

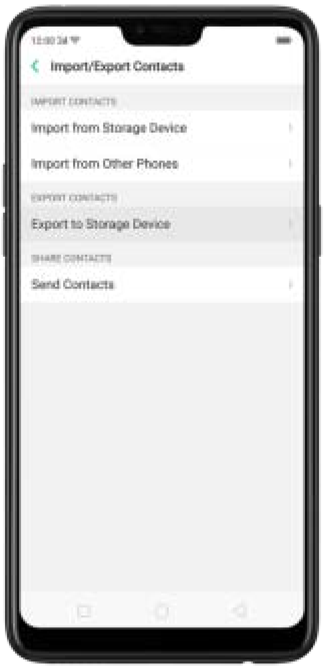
**Import contacts**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Contacts]** > **[Import/Export Contacts]**.

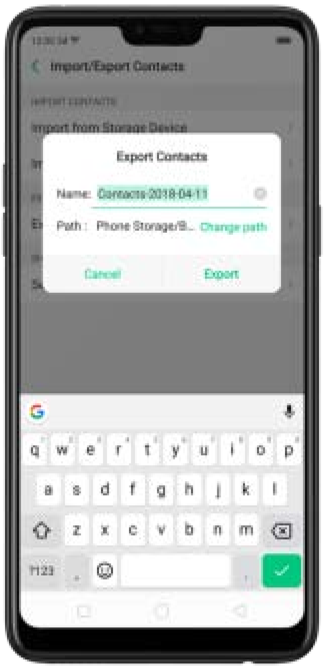
- **Import from storage device**. Save the imported contacts to your phone.
- **Import from other phones**. Import the contacts stored on other phones to your OPPO phone through Bluetooth.


Import/Export Contacts
IMPORT CONTACTS
Import from Storage Device
Import from Other Phones
EXPORT CONTACTS
Export to Storage Device
SHARE CONTACTS
Send Contacts


Import from Other Phones
Select the Type of the Other Phone
iPhone
Android phone

**Export Contacts**. Export your contacts to the phone storage. Contacts you export are saved as .vcf file.


Import/Export Contacts
IMPORT CONTACTS
Import from Storage Device
Import from Other Phones
EXPORT CONTACTS
Export to Storage Device
SHARE CONTACTS
Send Contacts


Import/Export Contacts
Export Contacts

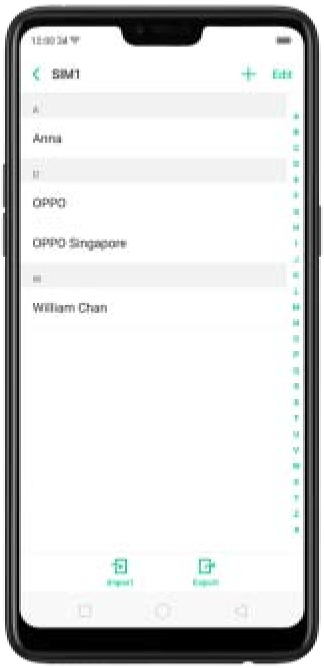
Name: Contacts-2018-04-11

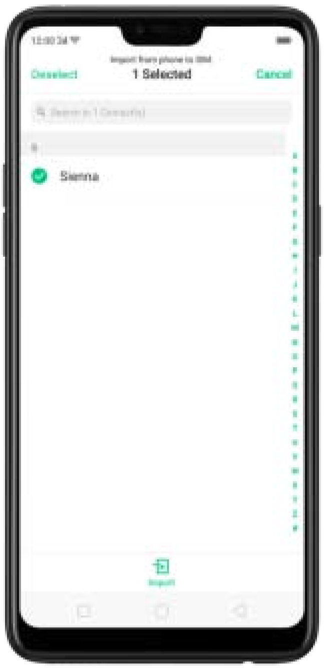
Path : Phone Storage/B...

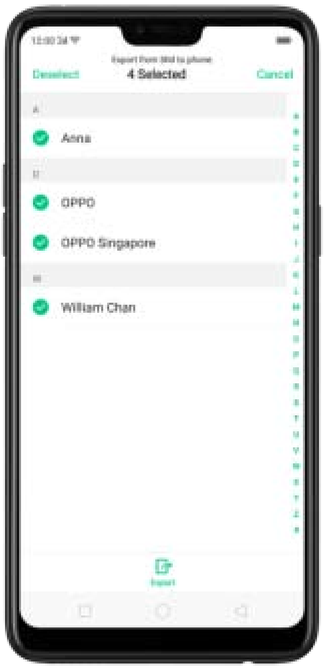
Change path
Cancel
Export

**Import/export SIM card contacts**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Contacts]** > **[SIM Card**

**Contacts]**, click **Import** or **Export**, then tick the contacts and move them to either SIM or phone.


SIM1
Edit
A
Anna
O
OPPO
OPPO Singapore
W
William Chan
Import
Export


Import from phone to SIM
Deselect
1 Selected
Cancel
S
Sienna
Import

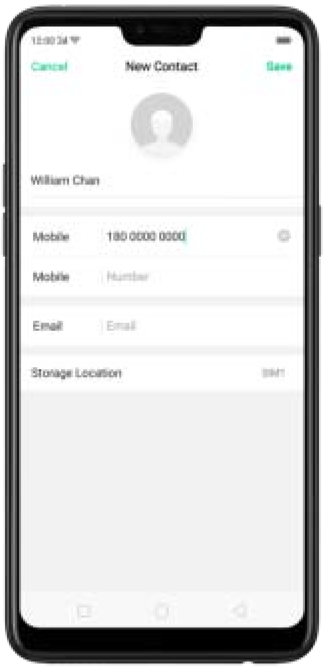

Export from SIM to phone
Deselect
4 Selected
Cancel
A
Anna
O
OPPO
OPPO Singapore
W
William Chan
Export

View more details in [Import and export contacts on your OPPO smartphone]().

### 7.7.5. SIM contacts

You can add, edit, delete, import, and export SIM contacts directly on your OPPO smartphone. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Contacts]** > **[SIM card Contacts]**.

**Add a SIM contact**. Click +, then enter the contact information and click **Save**.


12:00 34
Cancel
New Contact
Save

William Chan

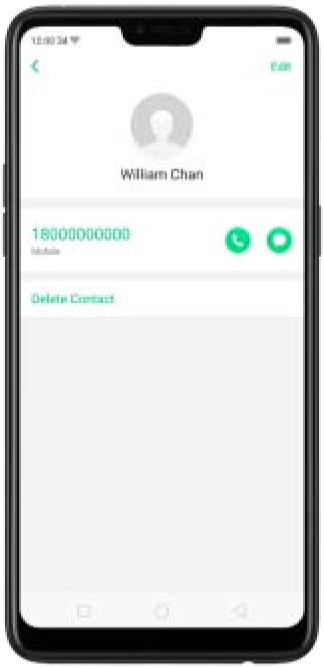
Mobile 180 0000 0000

Mobile Number

Email Email

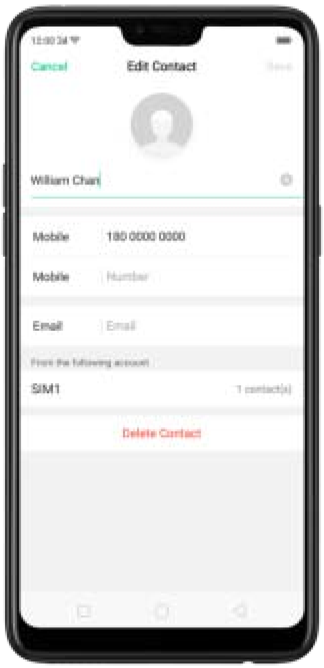
Storage Location SIM1

**Edit and delete a SIM contact**. Click a contact, then click **Edit**. Click **Delete Contact** to delete the contact.


12:00 34
Edit
Delete Contact

William Chan

18000000000
Mobile


12:00 34
Cancel
Edit Contact
Save
Delete Contact

William Chan

Mobile 180 0000 0000

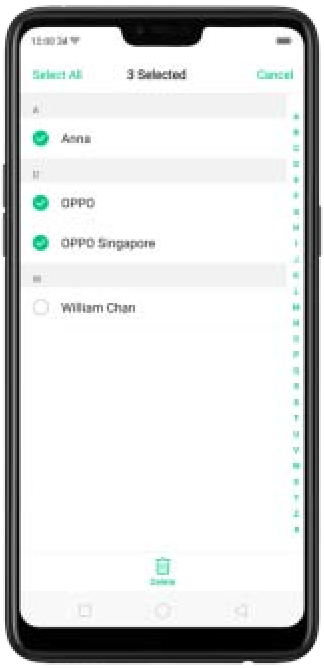
Mobile Number

Email Email

From the following account

SIM1 1 contact(s)

**Delete SIM contacts at a time**. Click **Edit** in the upper-right corner, tick the contacts and click **Delete**.


Select All
3 Selected
Cancel
A
Anna
O
OPPO
OPPO Singapore
W
William Chan
Delete

**Display SIM contacts on the Contacts list**. You need to import SIM contacts to your phone. See [Import and export contacts](#).

## 7.7.6. Manage contacts

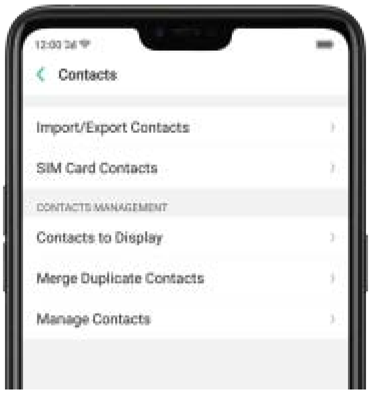
Contacts allows you to easily save and edit contact information, including names, numbers, addresses, and more. To make your contacts more organized and available, do the following:

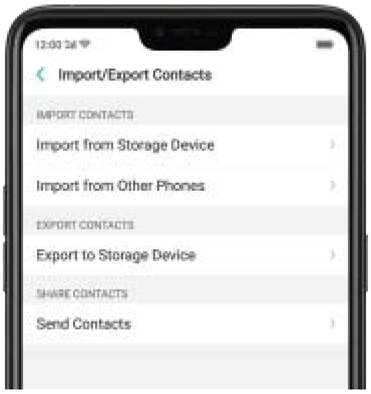
**Add a new contact**. Click Phone on the Home screen, click Contacts, then click + .

The contact will be saved to your phone storage.

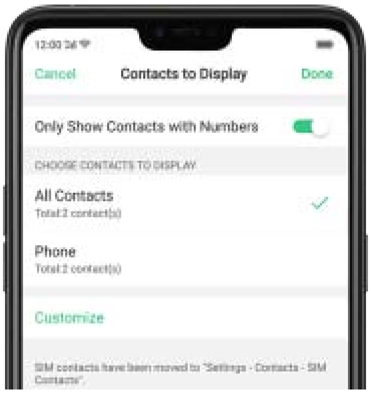
**Modify existing contacts**. If you want to add details to an existing account, click the account then edit.

**Import or export contacts**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Contacts]**, then select the import/export path. View [Import and export contacts on your OPPO smartphone](#).


12:00
Contacts
Import/Export Contacts
SIM Card Contacts
CONTACTS MANAGEMENT
Contacts to Display
Merge Duplicate Contacts
Manage Contacts


12:00
Import/Export Contacts
IMPORT CONTACTS
Import from Storage Device
Import from Other Phones
EXPORT CONTACTS
Export to Storage Device
SHARE CONTACTS
Send Contacts

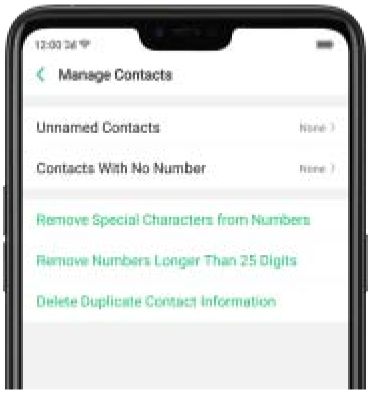
**Contacts to Display.** Go to **[Settings]** > **[Contacts]** then click **Contacts to Display.** To only show contacts with numbers, toggle the slider to green. You can also click a category of contacts that you want to display. Click **Customize** to select contacts by group.


12:00
Cancel
Contacts to Display
Done
Only Show Contacts with Numbers
CHOOSE CONTACTS TO DISPLAY
All Contacts
Total 2 contact(s)
Phone
Total 2 contact(s)
Customize

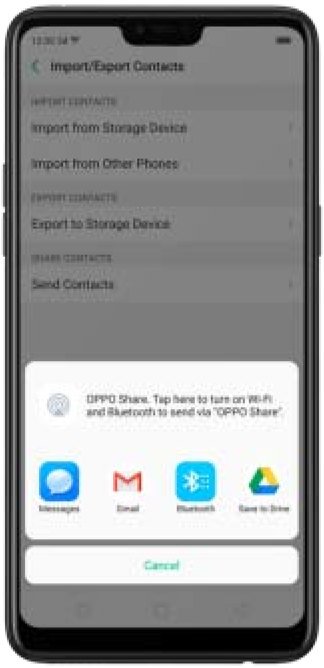
SIM contacts have been moved to "Settings - Contacts - SIM Contacts".

**Merge duplicate contacts**. Click **Merge duplicate contacts**. The phone will automatically merge contacts with the same name.

**Manage contacts**. To manage contacts without name or number, or quickly remove invalid numbers, click **[Manage Contacts]**.


12:00
Manage Contacts
Unnamed Contacts
None
Contacts With No Number
None
Remove Special Characters from Numbers
Remove Numbers Longer Than 25 Digits
Delete Duplicate Contact Information

**Send Contacts**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Contacts]** > **[Import/Export Contacts]** > **[Send Contacts]**. All contacts stored on your phone will be shared.


Import/Export Contacts
IMPORT CONTACTS
Import from Storage Device
Import from Other Phones
EXPORT CONTACTS
Export to Storage Device
SHARE CONTACTS
Send Contacts
Messages
Email
Bluetooth
Save to Drive
Cancel

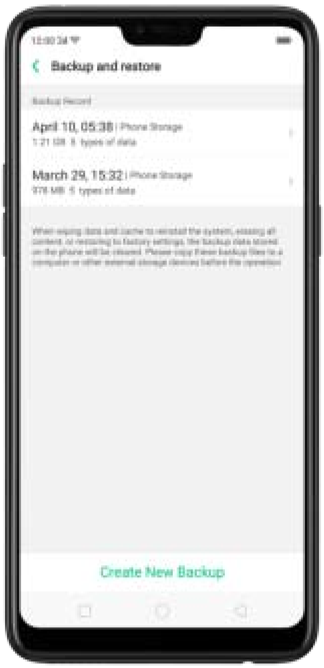
OPPO Share. Tap here to turn on Wi-Fi and Bluetooth to send via "OPPO Share"

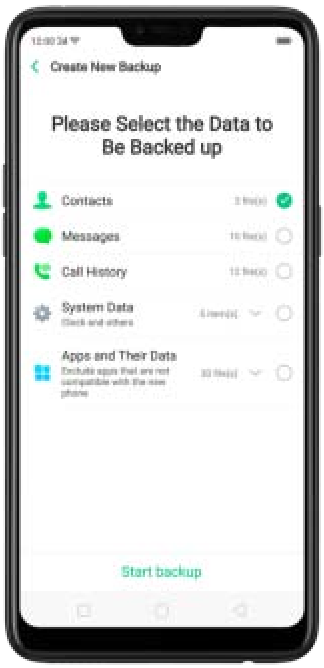
**Backup your contacts**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Back up & reset]** > **[Backup & Restore]** > **[Create New Backup]**. View [Back up your OPPO smartphone](#).

## 7.7.7. Back up your contacts

If you use your OPPO smartphone on a regular basis, it is necessary to back up the contacts so that you can easily restore them or use them on another device.

**Use the built-in backup tool**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Back up and reset]**, then click **[Backup and Restore]**. Back up your contacts. You need to make a copy of the existing backup file and move it to another storage device.


Backup and restore
Backup Record
April 10, 05:38 | Phone Storage
1.21 GB 5 types of data
March 29, 15:32 | Phone Storage
978 MB 5 types of data
Create New Backup

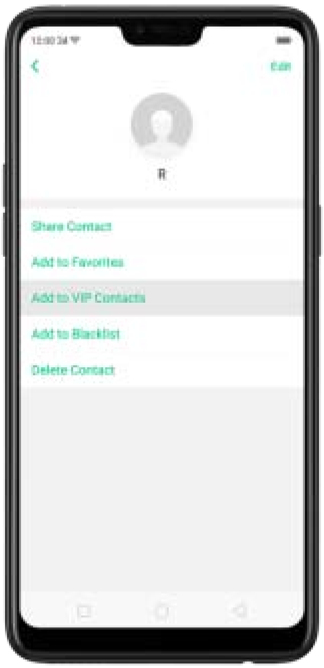

Create New Backup
Please Select the Data to Be Backed up
Contacts
Messages
Call History
System Data
Clock and others
Apps and Their Data
Start backup

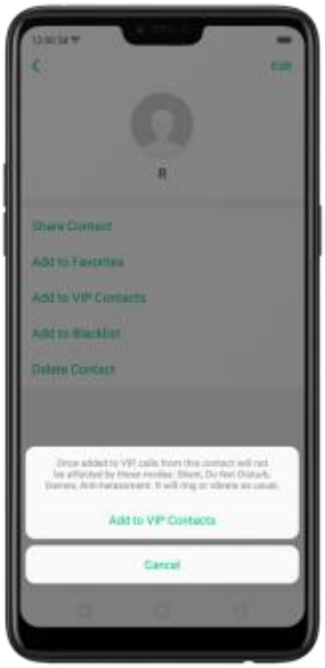
**Export contacts.** Export your contacts to your SIM card or a folder on your phone. See Import and export contacts.

## 7.7.8. VIP Contacts

When you put the phone into Silent mode, or when you set the phone to block calls and notifications using Quiet Time, Game Acceleration, or Anti-harassment, you can add certain contacts to VIP Contacts, which will allow them to override the phone settings and have their calls come through and ring.

**Add contacts to VIP Contacts**. Go to Contacts, select a contact, and then click Add to VIP Contacts.


Edit
R
Share Contact
Add to Favorites
Add to VIP Contacts
Add to Blacklist
Delete Contact


Edit
R
Share Contact
Add to Favorites
Add to VIP Contacts
Add to Blacklist
Delete Contact
Add to VIP Contacts
Cancel

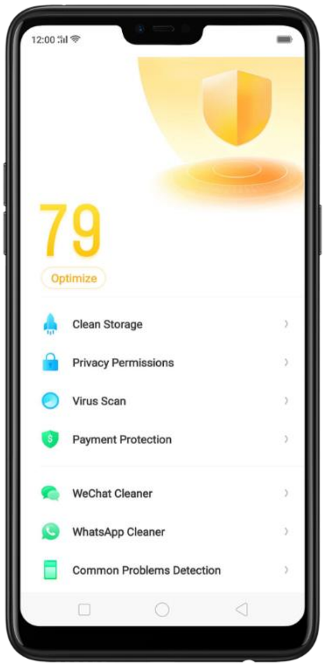
Once added to VIP, calls from this contact will not be affected by these modes: Silent, Do Not Disturb, Games, Anti-harassment. It will ring or vibrate as usual.

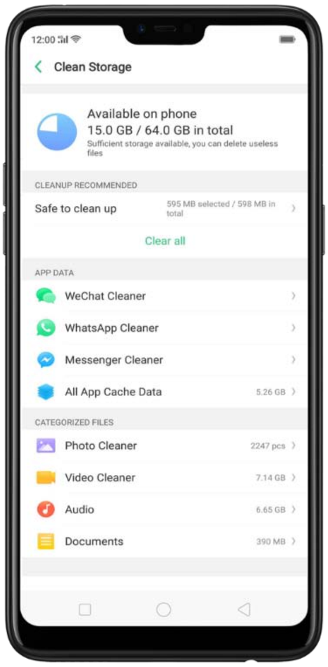
# 7.8. Phone Manager

## 7.8.2. Scan and optimize the phone

Regularly optimizing your OPPO smartphone can make it perform steadily and faster.

**Automatic optimization items**. Go to **[Phone Manager]**, the system will start scanning your phone automatically. After the scan is over, click **[Optimize]**, then click **[One Touch Optimization]**. You can also select the items that you want to optimize optionally.


12:00
79
Optimize
Clean Storage
Privacy Permissions
Virus Scan
Payment Protection
WeChat Cleaner
WhatsApp Cleaner
Common Problems Detection

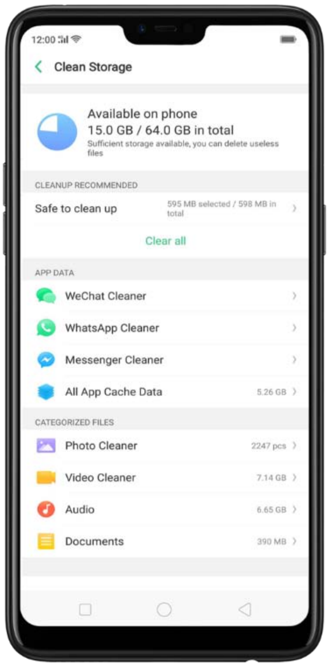

12:00
Clean Storage
Available on phone
15.0 GB / 64.0 GB in total
Sufficient storage available, you can delete useless files
CLEANUP RECOMMENDED
Safe to clean up
595 MB selected / 598 MB in total
Clear all
APP DATA
WeChat Cleaner
WhatsApp Cleaner
Messenger Cleaner
All App Cache Data
5.26 GB
CATEGORIZED FILES
Photo Cleaner
2247 pcs
Video Cleaner
7.14 GB
Audio
6.65 GB
Documents
390 MB

**Manual optimization items**. Click the green button on the right side of each item, respectively, then do as the phone prompts.

### 7.8.3. Clean Storage

Use Clean Storage to quickly detect and remove hidden temp (temporary folders or files), cookie and cache files generated by inner calculations and data exchanges to free up more storage space. You can also quickly browse and delete unnecessary user files.

**Delete junk files**. Click Phone Manager, then click Clean storage. Click **End all** to delete all kinds of junk files. You can also choose files to be deleted.



12:00

Clean Storage

Available on phone
15.0 GB / 64.0 GB in total
Sufficient storage available, you can delete useless files

CLEANUP RECOMMENDED

Safe to clean up — 595 MB selected / 598 MB in total

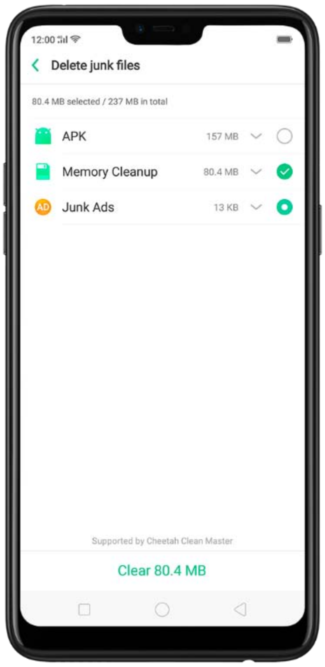
Clear all

APP DATA

- WeChat Cleaner
- WhatsApp Cleaner
- Messenger Cleaner
- All App Cache Data — 5.26 GB

CATEGORIZED FILES

- Photo Cleaner — 2247 pcs
- Video Cleaner — 7.14 GB
- Audio — 6.65 GB
- Documents — 390 MB



12:00

Delete junk files

80.4 MB selected / 237 MB in total

- APK — 157 MB ○
- Memory Cleanup — 80.4 MB ☑
- Junk Ads — 13 KB ●

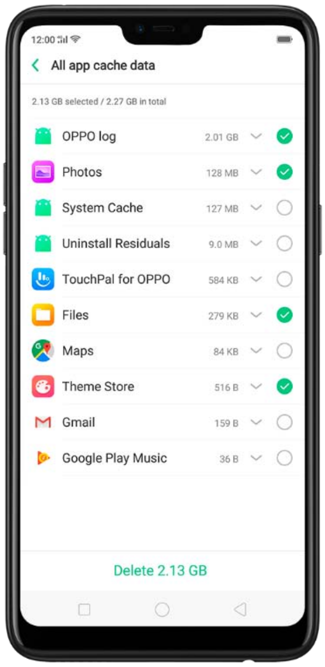
Supported by Cheetah Clean Master

Clear 80.4 MB

**Delete app data.** Click All app cache data, select the apps that has caches, then click **Delete**. The action cannot be undone.

For some commonly used instant-messaging apps like WeChat and WhatsApp, the Phone Manager provides separate entries for you to clean up their files.

See Frequently Used Functions.


12:00
All app cache data

2.13 GB selected / 2.27 GB in total

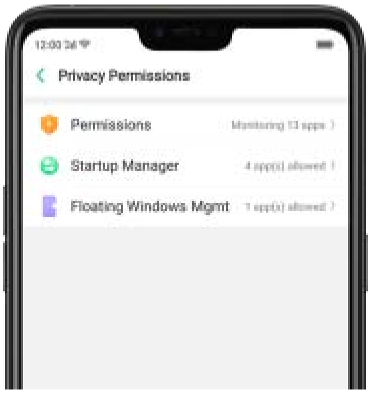
| | | |
|---|---|---|
| OPPO log | 2.01 GB | ✓ |
| Photos | 128 MB | ✓ |
| System Cache | 127 MB | ○ |
| Uninstall Residuals | 9.0 MB | ○ |
| TouchPal for OPPO | 584 KB | ○ |
| Files | 279 KB | ✓ |
| Maps | 84 KB | ○ |
| Theme Store | 516 B | ✓ |
| Gmail | 159 B | ○ |
| Google Play Music | 36 B | ○ |

Delete 2.13 GB

**Free up more storage space**. You can delete your unnecessary files on the phone, including photos, audio, videos, and documents.

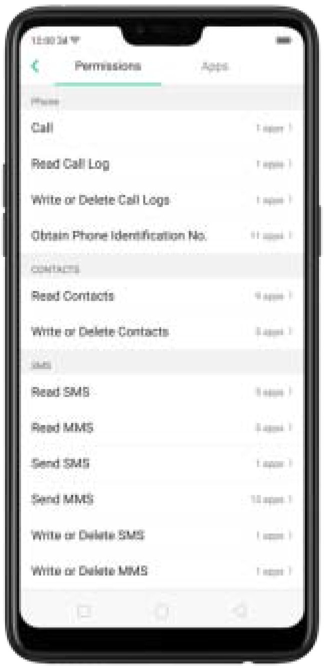
## 7.8.4. Privacy Permissions

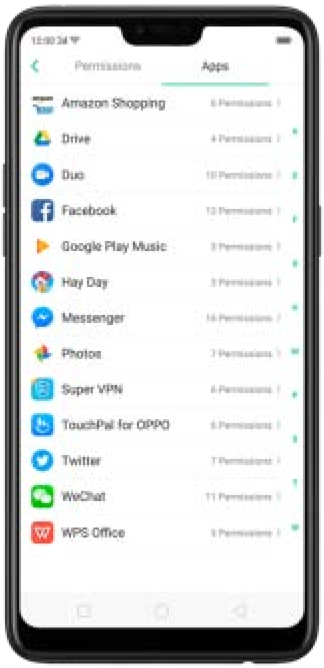
Use Privacy permissions feature to manage app permissions, protect your privacy, and manage apps that start when phone boots up~~.~~Click Phone Manager, then click Privacy Permissions.


12:00
Privacy Permissions

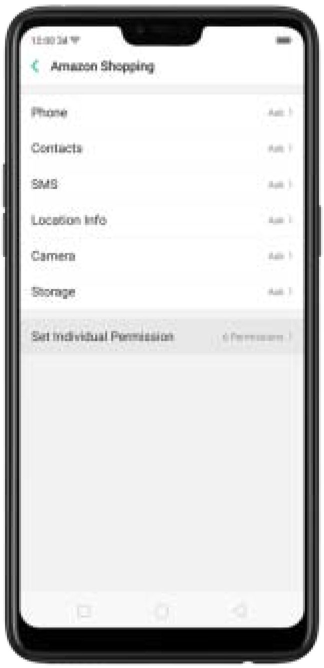
| | |
|---|---|
| Permissions | Monitoring 13 apps |
| Startup Manager | 4 app(s) allowed |
| Floating Windows Mgmt | 1 app(s) allowed |

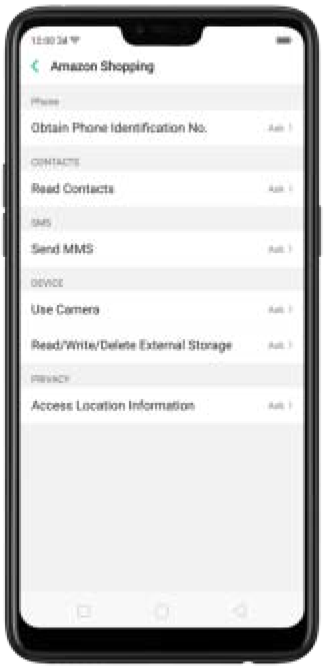
**Manage the app permissions.** Open Phone Manager, then click Privacy Permissions. You can go through each permission or app on your phone and, with full control, accept, decline or limit each permission of apps according to your requirements.


Permissions
Apps
Phone
Call
Read Call Log
Write or Delete Call Logs
Obtain Phone Identification No.
CONTACTS
Read Contacts
Write or Delete Contacts
SMS
Read SMS
Read MMS
Send SMS
Send MMS
Write or Delete SMS
Write or Delete MMS


Permissions
Apps
Amazon Shopping
Drive
Duo
Facebook
Google Play Music
Hay Day
Messenger
Photos
Super VPN
TouchPal for OPPO
Twitter
WeChat
WPS Office

Click **[Set Individual Permission]** to view and set more detailed permissions.

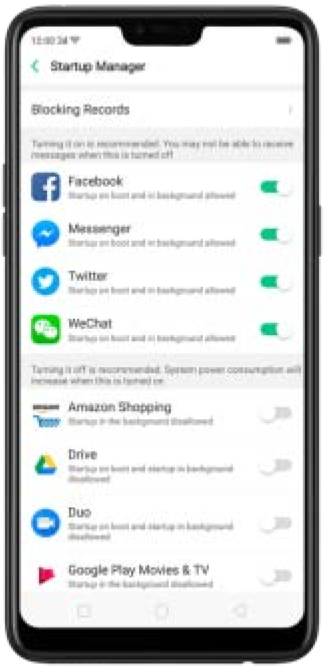

Amazon Shopping
Phone
Contacts
SMS
Location Info
Camera
Storage
Set Individual Permission


Amazon Shopping
Phone
Obtain Phone Identification No.
CONTACTS
Read Contacts
SMS
Send MMS
DEVICE
Use Camera
Read/Write/Delete External Storage
PRIVACY
Access Location Information

**Allow apps to start when phone boots or in background**. Click Startup Manager.

Toggle the app sliders to green. See Set up Startup Manager.

To view the apps that had been blocked from starting in the background, click Blocking Records.


Startup Manager
Blocking Records
Facebook
Messenger
Twitter
WeChat
Amazon Shopping
Drive
Duo
Google Play Movies & TV

**Enable floating windows**. Toggle the app slider to green. Your app message will be displayed in the floating window for easy viewing and use. (Only for apps which can support Floating window feature.)

View more details in Use Phone Manager on your OPPO smartphone.

### 7.8.5. Virus Scan

For better security, you can regularly scan and remove potential and actual threats to your phone.

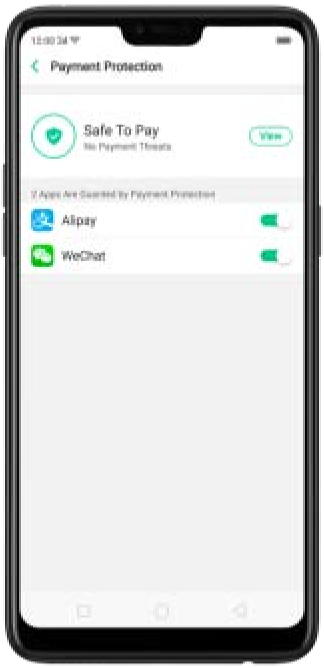
**Scan for virus**. Click Phone Manager, then click Virus Scan. Wait for the scan to complete. If threats were found, remove them; if not, you will see a message that says your phone is in a good state.

100%
Your phone is in a good state
Malicious App
Not Found
Malicious files
Not Found
Done

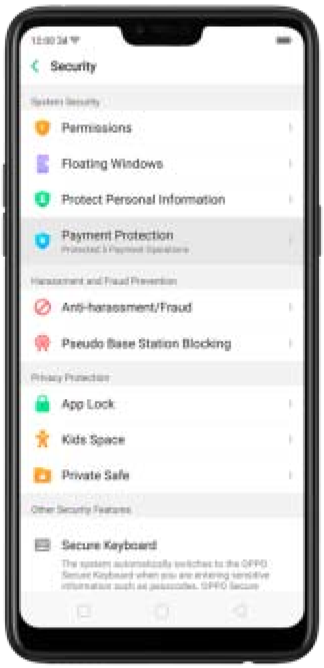
## 7.8.6. Payment protection

While you shop online, your OPPO phone will provide protection for the mobile transactions, such as detecting the security of system, captcha, and the app itself.

**Set up payment protection for apps**. Open Phone Manager, then click Payment Protection. You can also go to **[Settings]** > **[Security]** and click **[Payment Protection]**.

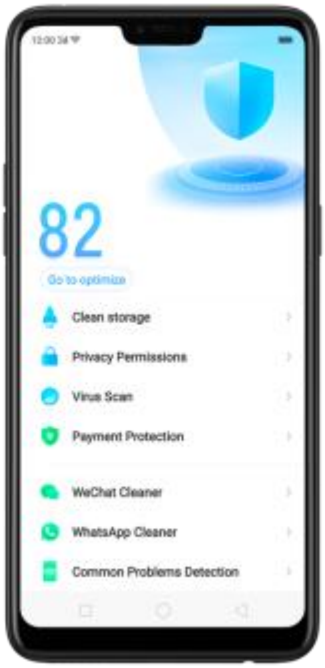

Payment Protection
Safe To Pay
No Payment Threats
View
Alipay
WeChat

Search
Scan
Pay
Collect
Pocket
Transfer
Card Repay
Movies
Lucky Money
Credit Pay
Stock
Air & Rail
Activity
Takeout
More


Security
Permissions
Floating Windows
Protect Personal Information
Payment Protection
Anti-harassment/Fraud
Pseudo Base Station Blocking
Privacy Protection
App Lock
Kids Space
Private Safe
Secure Keyboard

## 7.8.7. Frequently Used Functions

In Phone Manager, you can quickly clear your downloads and junk files of the apps which are used frequently, such as WeChat, WhatsApp, and more.

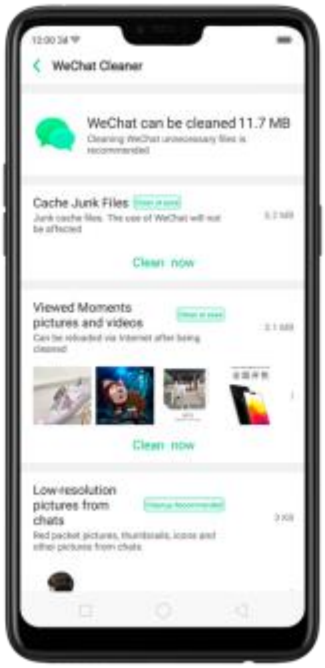

82
Go to optimize
Clean storage
Privacy Permissions
Virus Scan
Payment Protection
WeChat Cleaner
WhatsApp Cleaner
Common Problems Detection

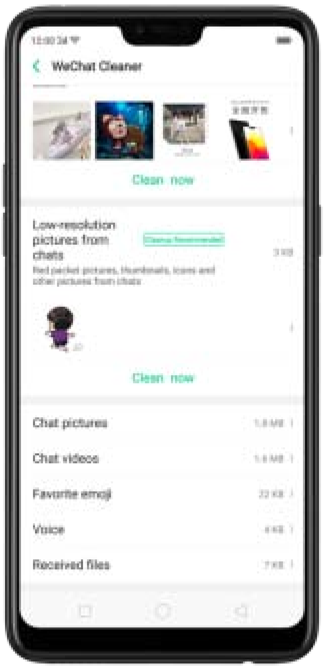
### WhatsApp Cleaner

**Clear cache and junk files**. Click **[Clear Now]** button to clear the cache files generated when the app was in use.

**Clear other app files**. You can delete the app files to free up the phone storage, including pictures, videos, audio, voice messages, and files. Select an option, click Select to select the files, then click Delete.

### WeChat Cleaner

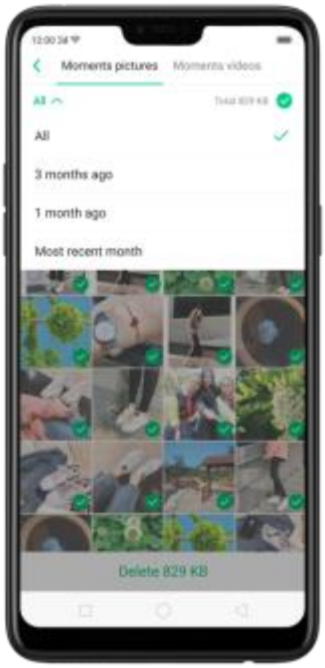

WeChat can be cleaned 11.7 MB
WeChat Cleaner
Cache Junk Files
Clean now
Viewed Moments pictures and videos
Clean now
Low-resolution pictures from chats
Red packet pictures, thumbnails, icons and other pictures from chats


WeChat Cleaner
Clean now
Low-resolution pictures from chats
Red packet pictures, thumbnails, icons and other pictures from chats
Clean now
Chat pictures
Chat videos
Favorite emoji
Voice
Received files

**Clear junk files**. Click **[Clear Now]** button to clear the cache files generated when the app was in use.

**Clear view history**. Click **[Clear Now]** button to clear all the viewed pictures and videos. ~~When~~ The next time you view the post, the photos and videos can be downloaded from the internet again.

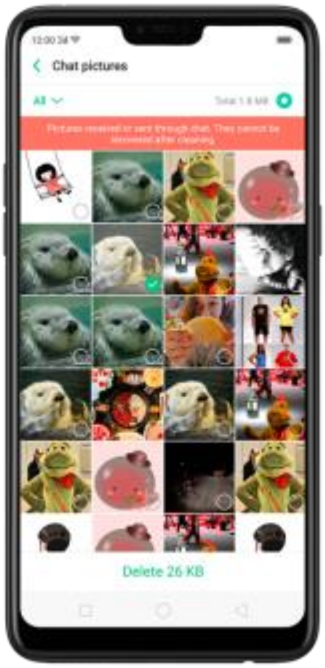
To delete part of the view history, click **[Viewed moments, pictures and videos]**, choose the pictures and videos you want to delete, then click **Delete**.

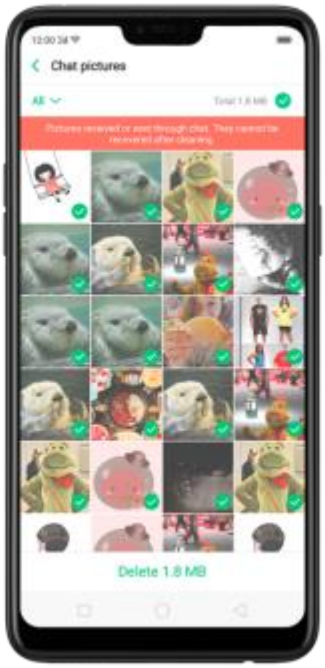

Moments pictures
Moments videos
All
All ✓
3 months ago
1 month ago
Most recent month
Delete 829 KB

**Clear low-resolution pictures from chats**. Click **[Clear Now]** button to clear the red packet pictures, thumbnails, icons, and other pictures.

**Clear files received or sent through chat**. You can delete the app files to free up the phone storage, including chat pictures and videos, emojis, voice files, and received files. Select an option, click ○ to select the files, then click Delete.

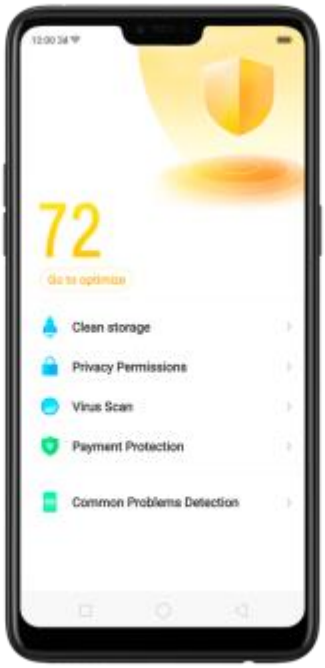
**Note**: These kinds of files cannot be recovered after cleaning.

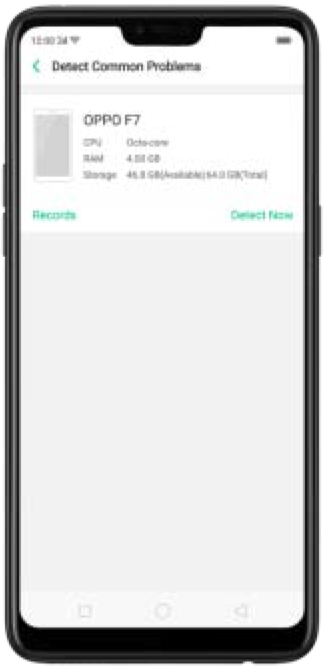

Chat pictures
All
Total 1.8 MB
Delete 26 KB


Chat pictures
All
Total 1.8 MB
Delete 1.8 MB

## 7.8.8. Common Problems Detection

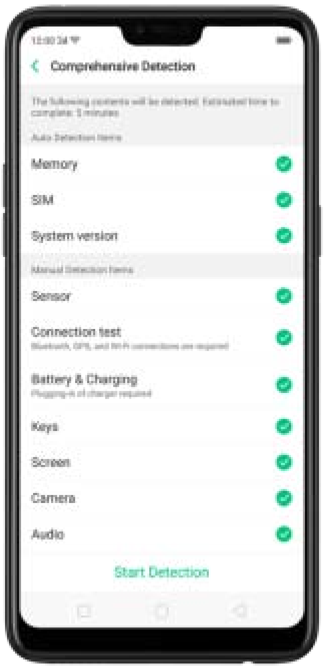
Phone Manager allows you to diagnose common phone problems and find solutions to quickly deal with them.


72
Go to optimize
Clean storage
Privacy Permissions
Virus Scan
Payment Protection
Common Problems Detection

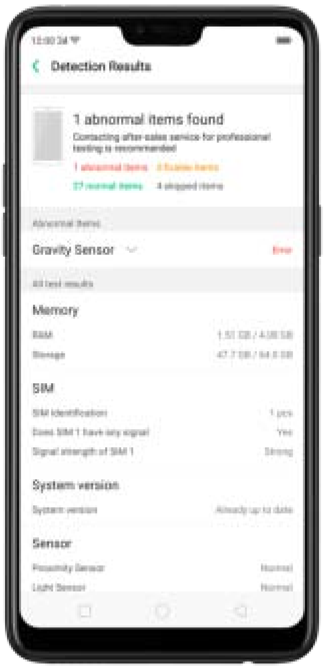

Detect Common Problems
OPPO F7
CPU
RAM
Storage
Records
Detect Now

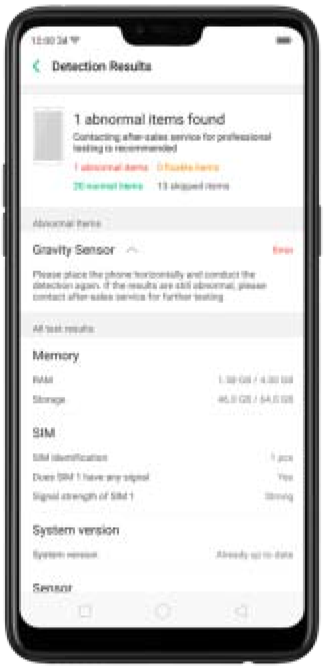
Detect common phone problems. Click [Phone Manager] > [Common Problems Detection], select the items you want to detect, then click [Start Detection].

- Auto-detection items: including phone memory, SIM card(s), and system version. The phone will automatically complete the detection.
- Manual detection items: including sensors, connections, battery and charging, physical keys, screen, camera, audio, and vibration. During the detection, you need to operate the phone as per ~~the~~ onscreen instructions.

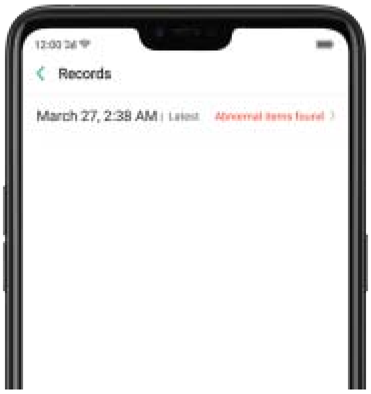

Comprehensive Detection
Memory
SIM
System version
Sensor
Connection test
Battery & Charging
Keys
Screen
Camera
Audio
Start Detection

The phone will list all the test results of the system and intuitively display the abnormal items. Click the abnormal item to view the solution your phone offers.


Detection Results
1 abnormal items found
Contacting after-sales service for professional testing is recommended
4 skipped items
Gravity Sensor
Error
Memory
SIM
System version
Already up to date
Sensor
Normal
Normal


Detection Results
1 abnormal items found
Contacting after-sales service for professional testing is recommended
13 skipped items
Gravity Sensor
Error
Please place the phone horizontally and conduct the detection again. If the results are still abnormal, please contact after-sales service for further testing
Memory
SIM
System version
Already up to date
Sensor

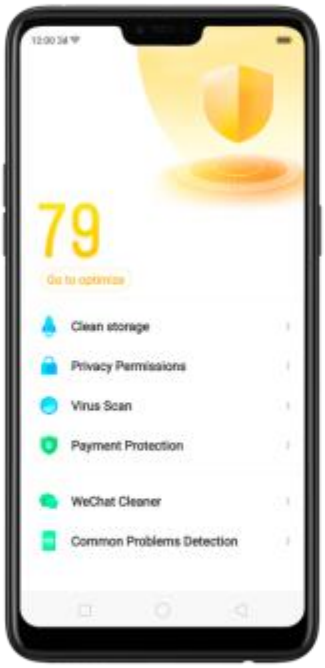
Detection records. Click [Records] and you can view all the detection records.

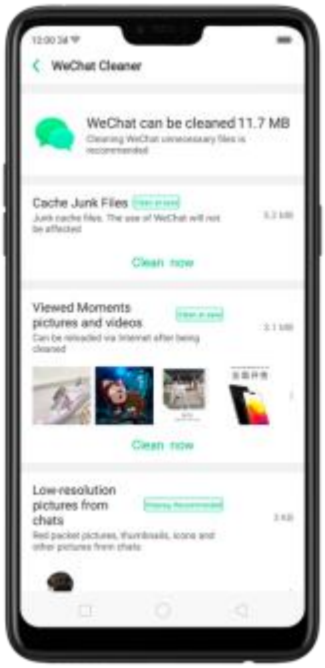

12:00
Records
March 27, 2:38 AM | Latest
Abnormal items found

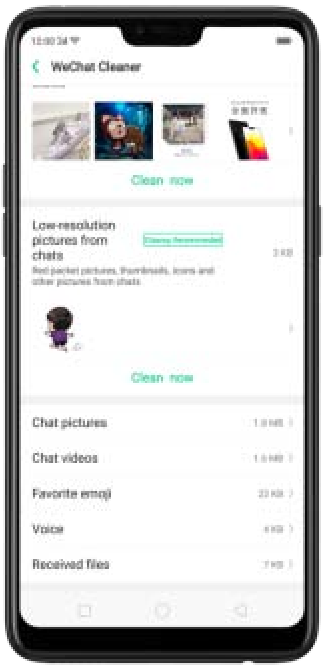
## 7.8.9. WeChat Cleaner

In Phone Manager, you can use WeChat Cleaner to selectively delete any photo, video, voice recording, or any other data sent or received through WeChat to reclaim more space on your phone.

* You can also click File Manager, click Clean Storage, then click WeChat Cleaner.


79
Go to optimize
Clean storage
Privacy Permissions
Virus Scan
Payment Protection
WeChat Cleaner
Common Problems Detection

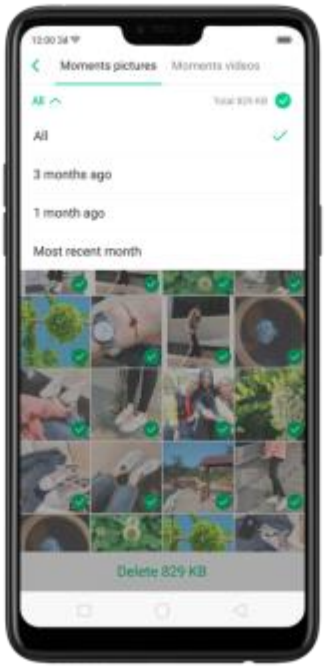

WeChat Cleaner
WeChat can be cleaned 11.7 MB
Cleaning WeChat unnecessary files is recommended
Cache Junk Files
Junk cache files. The use of WeChat will not be affected
Clean now
Viewed Moments pictures and videos
Can be reloaded via Internet after being cleaned
Clean now
Low-resolution pictures from chats
Red packet pictures, thumbnails, icons and other pictures from chats


WeChat Cleaner
Clean now
Low-resolution pictures from chats
Red packet pictures, thumbnails, icons and other pictures from chats
Clean now
Chat pictures
Chat videos
Favorite emoji
Voice
Received files

**Clear junk files**. Click **[Clear Now]** button to clear the cache files generated when the app was in use.

**Clear view history**. Click **[Clear Now]** button to clear all the viewed pictures and videos. The next time you view the post, the photos and videos can be downloaded from the internet again.

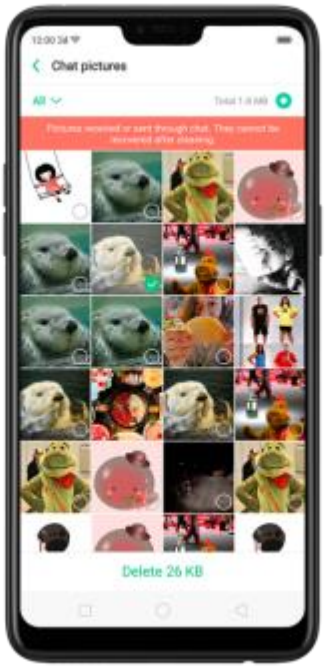
To delete part of the view history, click **[Viewed moments, pictures and videos]**, choose the pictures and videos you want to delete, then click **Delete**. You can also click **All**, then choose a period of time.

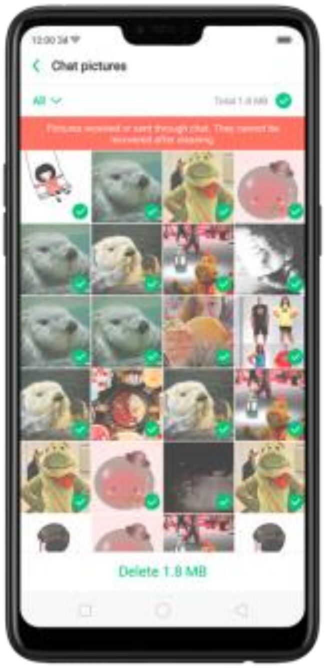

Moments pictures
Moments videos
All
All
3 months ago
1 month ago
Most recent month
Delete 829 KB

**Clear low-resolution pictures from chats**. Click **[Clear Now]** button to clear the red packet pictures, thumbnails, icons and other pictures.

**Clear files received or sent through chat**. You can delete the app files to free up the phone storage, including chat pictures and videos, emojis, voice files and received files. Select an option, click ○ to select the files, then click Delete.

**Note**: These kinds of files cannot be recovered after cleaning.

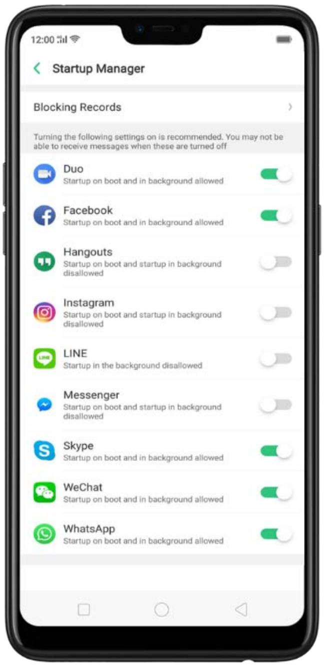




## 7.8.10.Startup Manager

Startup manager makes you choose what apps that will auto-start in the background. To open Startup Manager, click **Phone Manager**, then click **Privacy Permissions**.

**Manage Startup Manager**. Open **Phone Manager** then click **Privacy Permissions**. You can go through each app and toggle to green if you want the chosen apps to run on the background.



12:00

Startup Manager

Blocking Records

Turning the following settings on is recommended. You may not be able to receive messages when these are turned off

Duo
Startup on boot and in background allowed

Facebook
Startup on boot and in background allowed

Hangouts
Startup on boot and startup in background disallowed

Instagram
Startup on boot and startup in background disallowed

LINE
Startup in the background disallowed

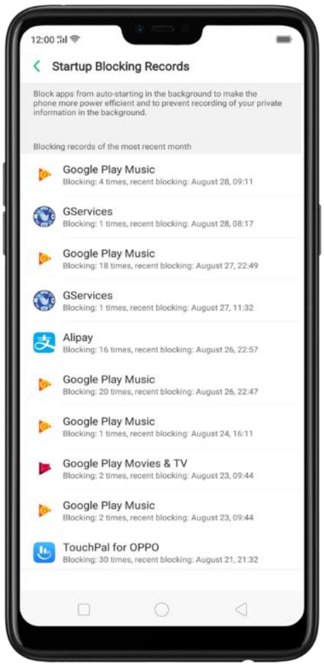
Messenger
Startup on boot and startup in background disallowed

Skype
Startup on boot and in background allowed

WeChat
Startup on boot and in background allowed

WhatsApp
Startup on boot and in background allowed

**Blocking records**. Open **Phone Manager**, click **Privacy Permissions** and click **Blocking Record** then you will see blocking records of the recent month.



12:00

Startup Blocking Records

Block apps from auto-starting in the background to make the phone more power efficient and to prevent recording of your private information in the background.

Blocking records of the most recent month

Google Play Music
Blocking: 4 times, recent blocking: August 28, 09:11

GServices
Blocking: 1 times, recent blocking: August 28, 08:17

Google Play Music
Blocking: 18 times, recent blocking: August 27, 22:49

GServices
Blocking: 1 times, recent blocking: August 27, 11:32

Alipay
Blocking: 16 times, recent blocking: August 26, 22:57

Google Play Music
Blocking: 20 times, recent blocking: August 26, 22:47

Google Play Music
Blocking: 1 times, recent blocking: August 24, 16:11

Google Play Movies & TV
Blocking: 2 times, recent blocking: August 23, 09:44

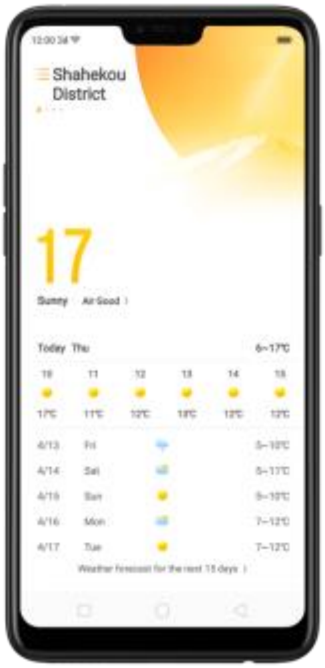
Google Play Music
Blocking: 2 times, recent blocking: August 23, 09:44

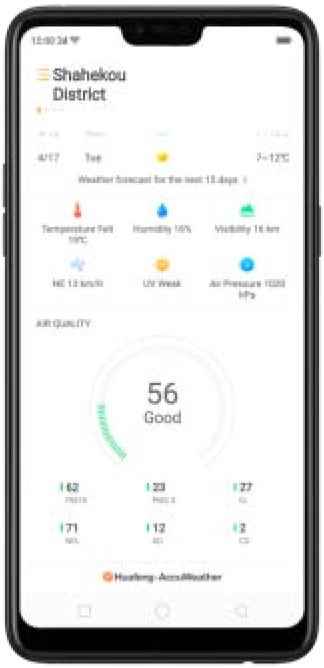
TouchPal for OPPO
Blocking: 30 times, recent blocking: August 21, 21:32

**Note:** Blocking apps from running in the background can save more power and can prevent recording private information. Although you may not receive messages when these are turned off.

## 7.9. Weather

Click Weather from the Home screen to see the latest weather conditions and forecasts for the city of your choice, including the current temperature, hourly forecasts for the next 24 hours, and up to 15-days of forecast information. You can store multiple cities for quick access.


Shahekou District
17
Sunny
Air Good
Today Thu
6~17℃
4/13 Fri
4/14 Sat
4/15 Sun
4/16 Mon
4/17 Tue
Weather forecast for the next 15 days


Shahekou District
4/17 Tue 7~12℃
Weather forecast for the next 15 days
AIR QUALITY
56
Good

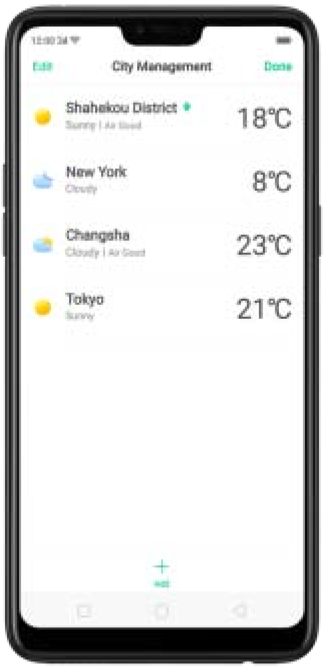
**Look at your local weather**. Open Weather and your phone will find your current location using the Location Services. Scroll down to see more details, including humidity, visibility, and more.

**View the hourly forecast**. Swipe the hourly display left or right. It also provides you the time of sunrise and sunset.

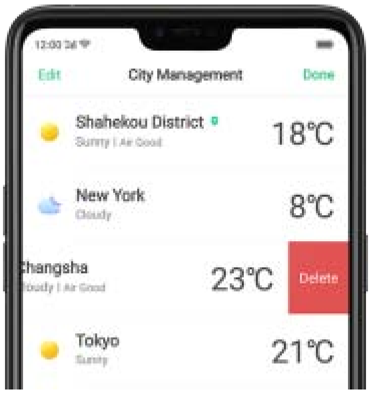
**Get daily forecast for 15 days**. The phone shows the forecast information for the upcoming five days. Click **View weather forecast for the next 15 days** to get extended forecasts on your browser.

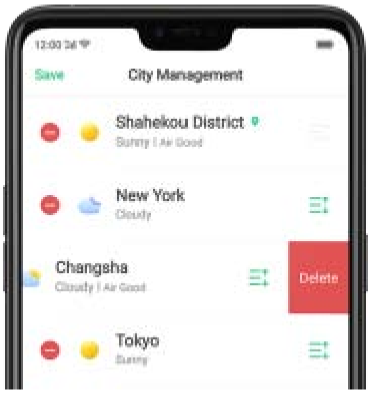
**Add a city**. Click ☰, then click + Add . Enter a city name, then click Search.

**Switch to another city**. Swipe left or right. The number of dots below the city name shows how many cities are stored. You can also click ☰, then choose a city from the list.


12:00 34
Edit
City Management
Done
Shahekou District
Sunny | Air Good
18℃
New York
Cloudy
8℃
Changsha
Cloudy | Air Good
23℃
Tokyo
Sunny
21℃
+
Add

**Delete a city**. Click ☰, swipe left on the city, then click Delete, or click Edit, click ⊖ next to a city, then click Delete.


12:00 34
Edit
City Management
Done
Shahekou District
Sunny | Air Good
18℃
New York
Cloudy
8℃
hangsha
oudy | Air Good
23℃
Delete
Tokyo
Sunny
21℃


12:00 34
Save
City Management
Shahekou District
Sunny | Air Good
New York
Cloudy
Changsha
Cloudy | Air Good
Delete
Tokyo
Sunny

**Reorder cities**. Click ☰, click Edit, then drag ⇅ next to a city up or down in the list.

**Turn on Disaster warning**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Weather]** and toggle the slider to green.

**Choose Fahrenheit or Celsius**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Weather]** > **[Temperature unit]**.

Weather

Disaster warning

Temperature unit Celsius/°C

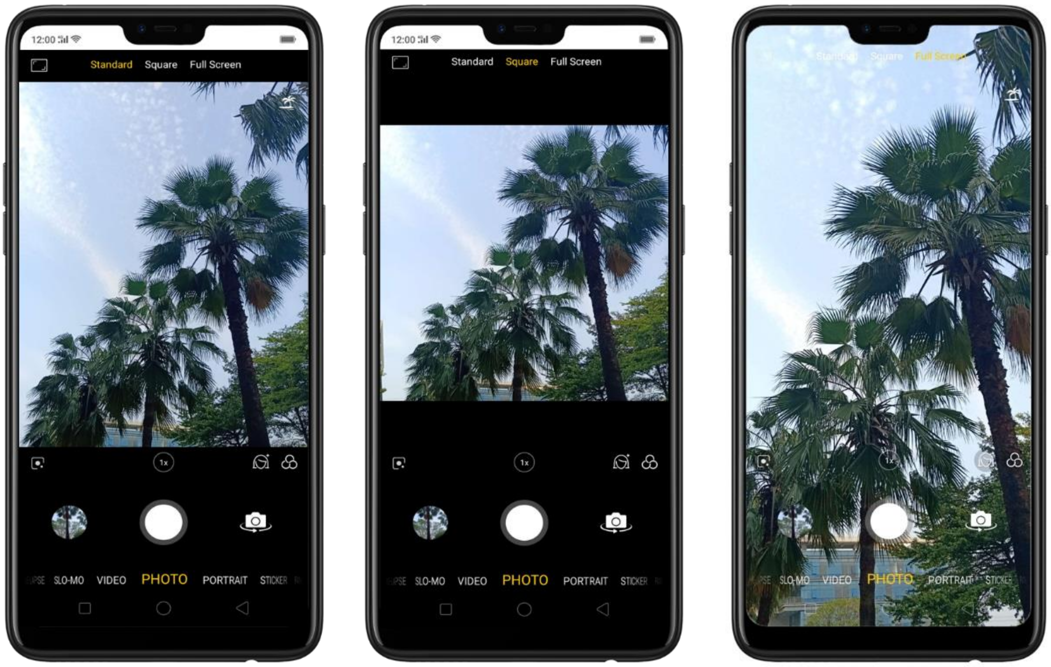
# 7.10. Camera

## 7.10.2.Take photos

You can use the cameras to take pictures and videos.

**Open camera**. Click Camera icon. To quickly get to the camera, touch Camera icon on the Lock screen and swipe up.

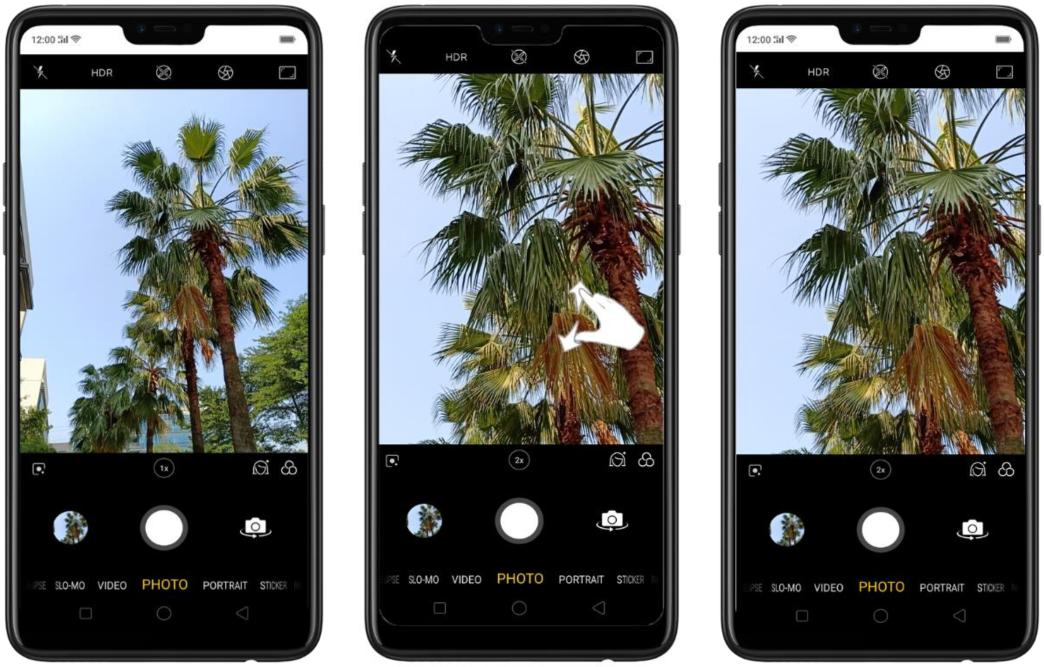
**Choose a photo mode**. Click ▢ , then choose to shoot standard, square-format, or full-screen photos.


12:00
Standard
Square
Full Screen
1x
SLO-MO
VIDEO
PHOTO
PORTRAIT
STICKER

**Switch the cameras**. Click .

**Take a photo**. Aim your camera at the subject and click ○ .

**Zoom in or out**. The camera captures full-resolution video and stills at 1x and 2x zoom. To quickly switch, toggle 1x or 2x . You can also pinch the screen to zoom in and out.



**Turn the flash on or off**. Click ⚡, then click On or Off. When you click Auto, your phone will automatically detect lighting conditions and determine if flash is necessary. When you click Fill Light, your phone will use the built-in flash as the fill light.

**Turn HDR on or off**. Click HDR , then click On, Off or Auto. When HDR (high dynamic range) is on, photos take multiple exposures of the same scene and then combine them to create a better looking, more detailed image.

**Turn on super vivid mode**. Click . The camera will set color enhancement to vivid and make colors of your photo more striking.

**Use the capture timer**. Capture timer gives you time to get in the picture. Click , then click 3s or 10s. Click Tap if you want to take photos by tapping on the screen.

**Use Beauty Mode**. Click . The built-in beauty filter will automatically adjust the skin tone, enhance facial features, and make other minor changes to your appearance. The camera offers six beauty levels.

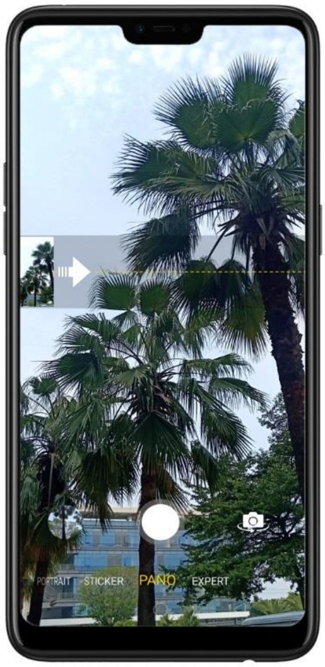
**Add a filter**. You can apply a filter before you take a photo. Click > click **FILTER**, then you'll see a serious of filter options, with each one showing a preview of what it will look like when applied to your photo. Click the filter you want to use. Switch to ORIGINAL to remove the filter.

**Add an AR sticker**. Use stickers to decorate your photo. Choose **STICKER**, click , then choose an AR sticker.

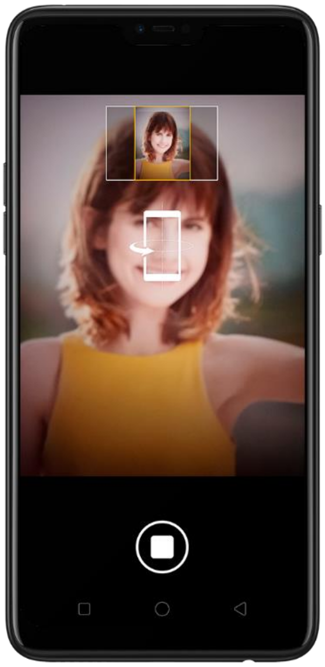
**Take a panorama photo**. Choose PANO.

**Use Google Lens**. Click so Google Lens will start recognizing the image. See Google Lens

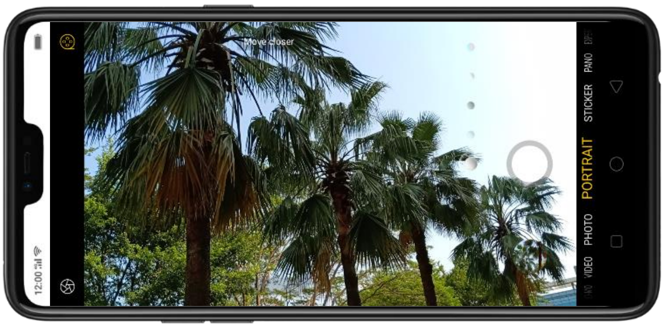
With the rear cameras, click the Shutter button, then move the phone slowly and steadily across the subject you want to capture. Click the button again when you've got your full photo.



With the front camera, click the Shutter button and you'll hear a "Ding" sound. Rotate the phone left or right until the phone sounds again. The photo will be taken automatically.



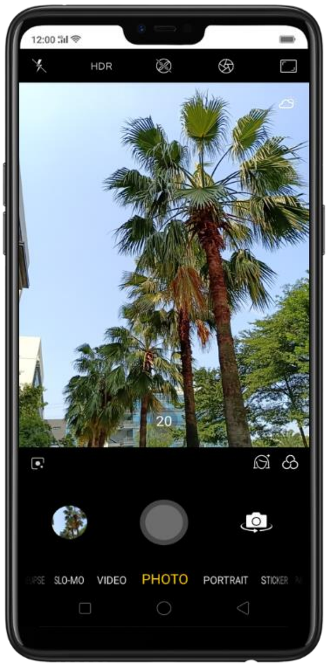
**Make your portrait feel like a movie**. Click and shoot in landscape mode so you would have an image that looks like in a movie.

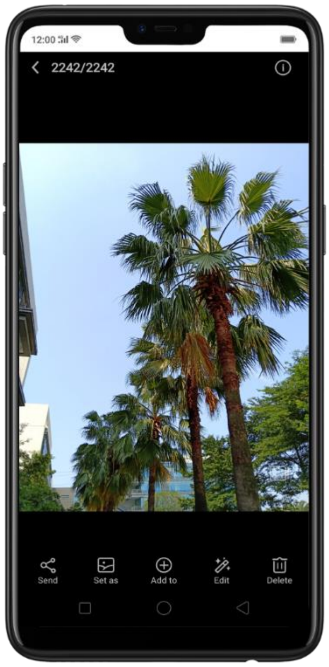


**Use Expert mode**. Expert Mode allows you to take more professional-looking photos. Choose EXPERT, then you can adjust camera's white balance, exposure compensation, ISO, shutter speed, and more.

12:00
WB
EV
ISO
Shutter
1/640s
AF
0.34
AUTO

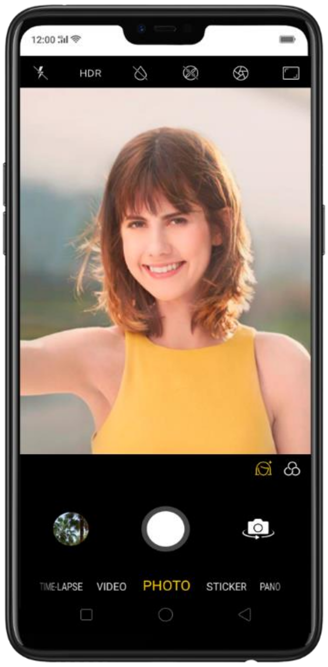
**Take Burst shots**. Choose Photo, touch and hold the Shutter button, and you'll see an onscreen count rapidly rise, which shows the number of photos you're taking. Lift your finger to stop. To select the photos you want to keep, click Gallery, click , select the photos, then click **Done.**


12:00
HDR
20
SLO-MO
VIDEO
PHOTO
PORTRAIT
STICKER

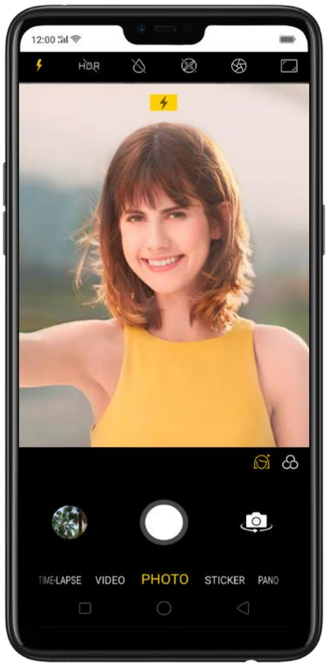

12:00
2242/2242
Send
Set as
Add to
Edit
Delete

## 7.10.3.Take a selfie

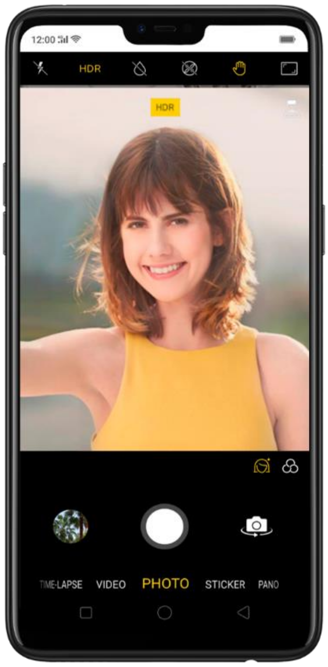
To switch to the front-facing camera, click in the lower-right corner of the screen.


12:00
HDR
TIME-LAPSE
VIDEO
PHOTO
STICKER
PANO

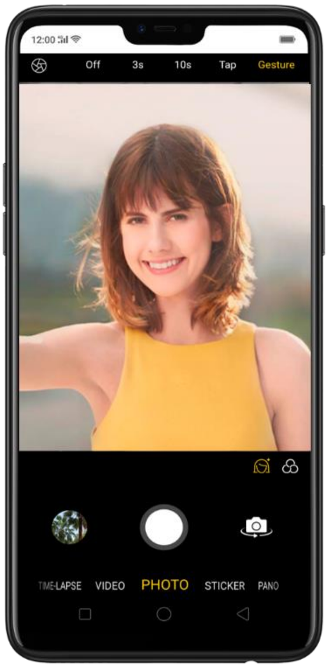
**Turn the flash on**. Click , then click On. A white screen at full brightness is used as front-facing flash.

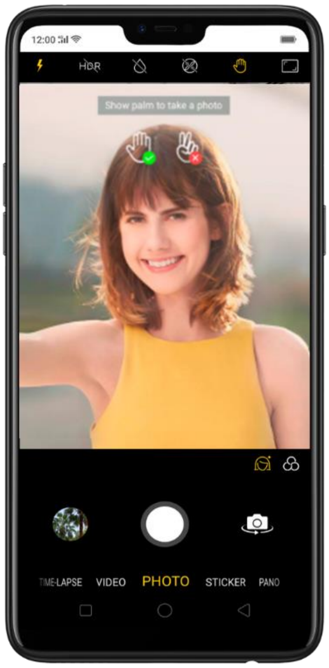

12:00
HDR
TIME-LAPSE
VIDEO
PHOTO
STICKER
PANO

**Turn Front 3-HDR on or off**. Click HDR , then click Off, On or Auto. When capturing images in bright sunlight or shade, front 3-HDR helps you to adjust the ratio of light to dark in the photo and make your subject look better.

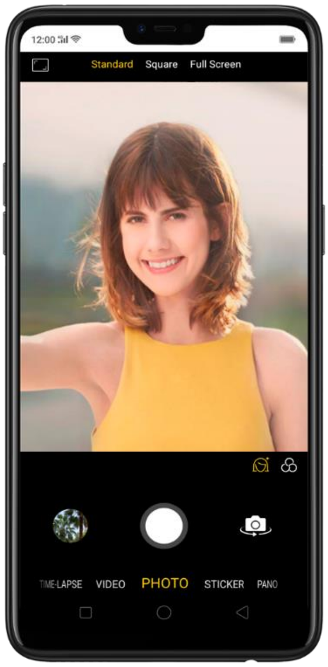

12:00
HDR
HDR
TIME-LAPSE
VIDEO
PHOTO
STICKER
PANO

**Use the capture timer**. Capture timer gives you time to get in the picture. Click , then click 3s or 10s. Click Tap if you want to take photos by tapping on the screen.

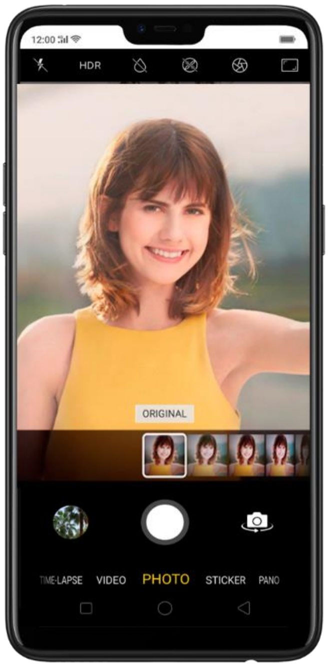

12:00
Off
3s
10s
Tap
Gesture
TIME-LAPSE
VIDEO
PHOTO
STICKER
PANO


Show palm to take a photo
12:00
HDR
TIME-LAPSE
VIDEO
PHOTO
STICKER
PANO

**Choose a photo mode**. Click , then choose to shoot standard, square-format, or full screen photos.


12:00
Standard
Square
Full Screen
TIME-LAPSE
VIDEO
PHOTO
STICKER
PANO

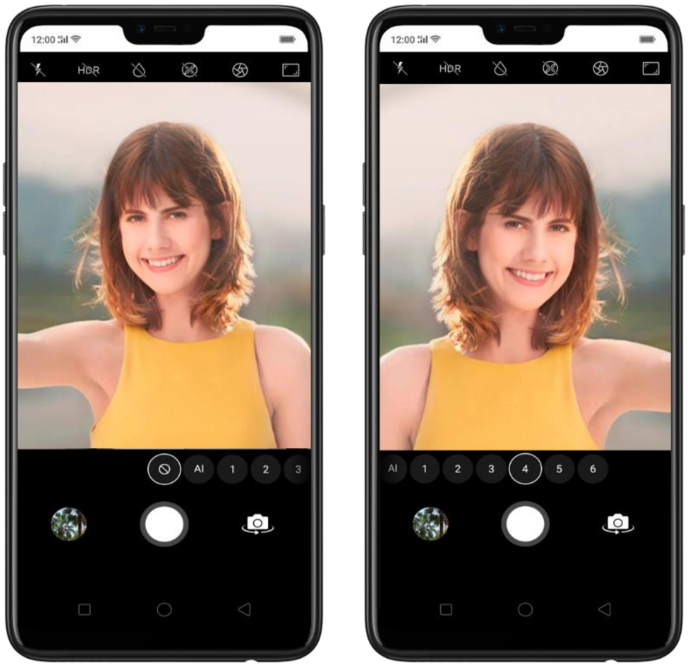
**Add a filter**. You can apply a filter before you take a photo. Click , click FILTER, then you'll see a serious of filter options, with each one showing a preview of what it will look like when applied to your photo. Click the filter you want to use. Switch to ORIGINAL to remove the filter.



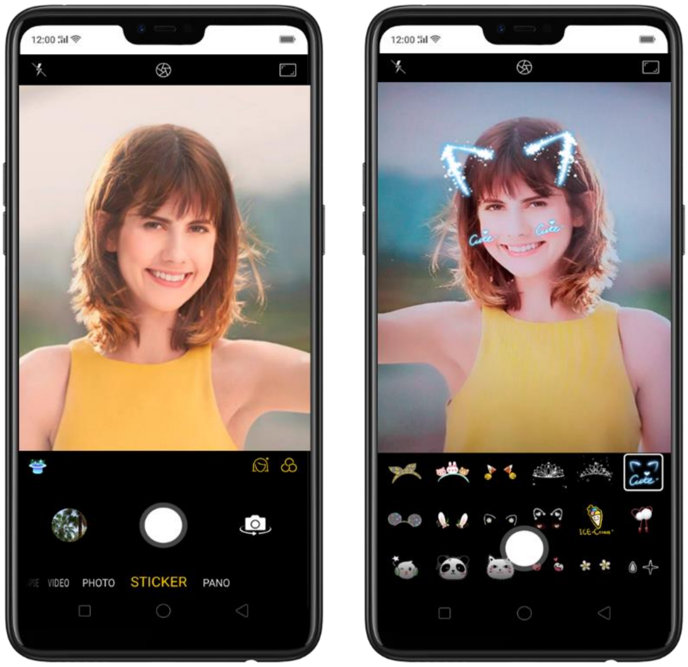
**Use Beauty Mode**. Click . The built-in beauty filter will automatically adjust the skin tone, enhance facial features, and make other minor changes to your appearance.

**Use AI beauty**: Click AI. Personalized AI Beauty provides functionality for precise recognition and delicate beautification of each individual facial feature. Everyone is unique in the camera.

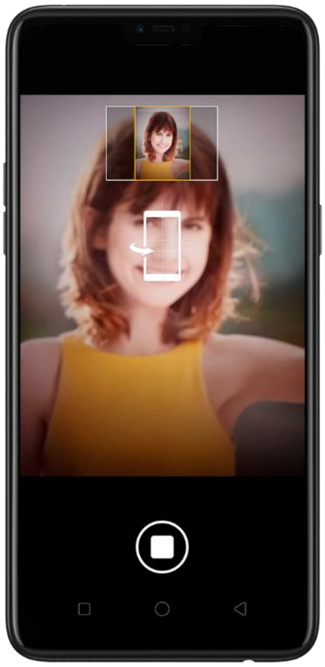
**Choose a beauty level**: Add the same beautifying effect for all the people in the photo. The camera offers six beauty levels.


12:00
HDR
AI
1
2
3
4
5
6

**Add an AR sticker**. Use stickers to decorate your photo. Choose **STICKER**, click , then choose an AR sticker.

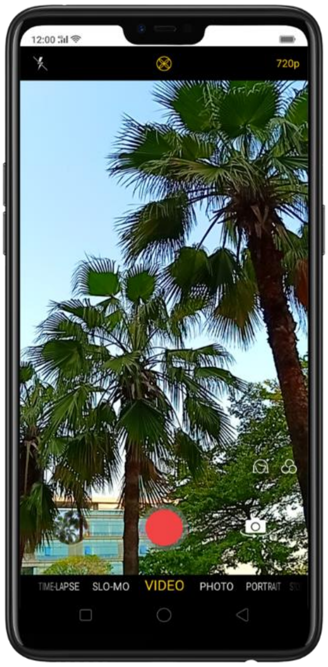

12:00
VIDEO
PHOTO
STICKER
PANO

**Take a panorama photo**. Choose PANO. Click the Shutter button and you'll hear a "Ding" sound. Rotate the phone left or right until the phone sounds again. The photo will be taken automatically.



### 7.10.4.Shoot video

With Camera you can shoot video, including time-lapse and 10s short videos.


12:00
720p
TIME-LAPSE
SLO-MO
VIDEO
PHOTO
PORTRAIT

**Record a video**. Choose Video, then click the Record button, or press either volume button, to start and stop recording. You can choose between 720p and 1080P video.

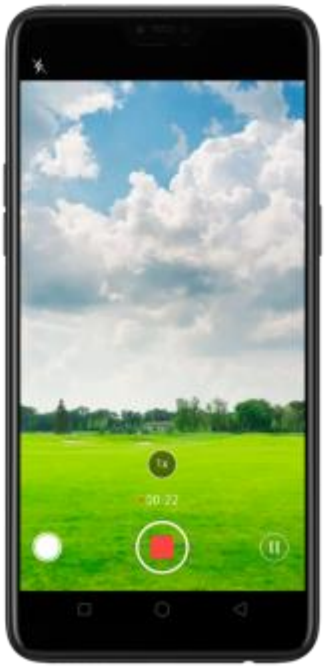
**Zoom in or out when shooting video**. (rear camera) Toggle 1x or 2x. You can also pinch the screen to zoom in and out.

**Turn the flash on or off**. Click ⚡ to turn on the flash. Click ☼ to turn off the flash.

**Super vivid mode.** Super vivid mode is automatic when you choose 720p. You can just click ⊗ to manage to turn it on/off.

**Capture time-lapse video**. Choose Time-Lapse. It records a scene or object that has a slow state-of-change and turns it into a video that plays back in high speed.

**Take photos when shooting a video**. Click the Shutter button in the lower-left corner of the screen.

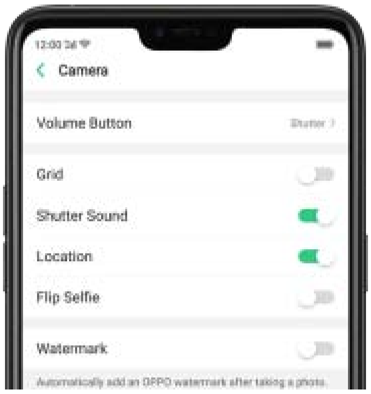


**Use Beauty Mode**. Click ☺. The built-in beauty filter will automatically adjust the skin tone, enhance facial features, and make other minor changes to your appearance. The camera offers six beauty levels.

**Add a filter**. You can apply a filter before you take a photo. Click ⊛, click FILTER, then you'll see a serious of filter options, with each one showing a preview of what it will look like when applied to your photo. Click the filter you want to use. Switch to ORIGINAL to remove the filter.

### 7.10.5.Camera settings

Camera settings are special options that help you to take pictures or record videos easier. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Camera]**.



Camera

Volume Button Shutter >

Grid

Shutter Sound

Location

Flip Selfie

Watermark

Automatically add an OPPO watermark after taking a photo.

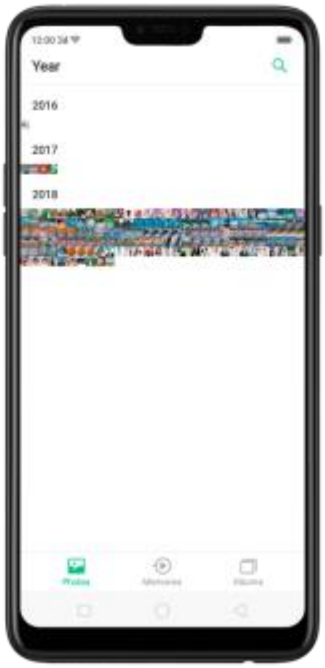
**Volume button**: Set the Volume buttons to function as a volume or zoom controls, or the shutter release.
**Grid**: Display grid lines to ensure the camera is leveled.
**Shutter sound**: Make or mute camera shutter sound when capturing photos.
**Location**: Tag your photos with geo-locations.
**Flip selfie**: Mirror flips your front-facing camera photos.
**Watermark**: Automatically add an OPPO watermark after taking a photo.

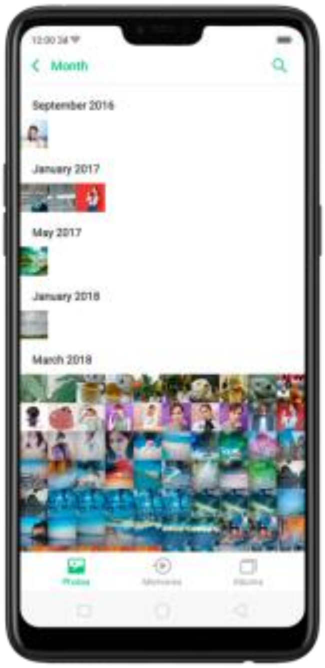
## 7.11. Photos

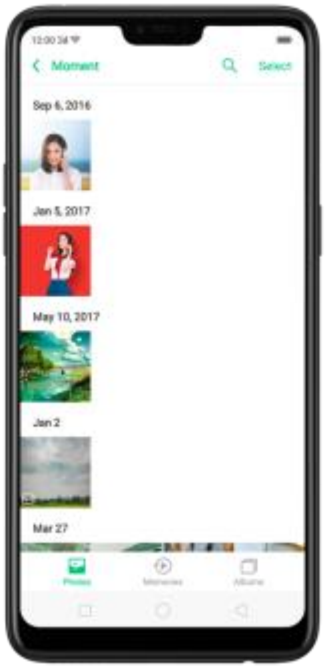
### 7.11.2.Photos overview

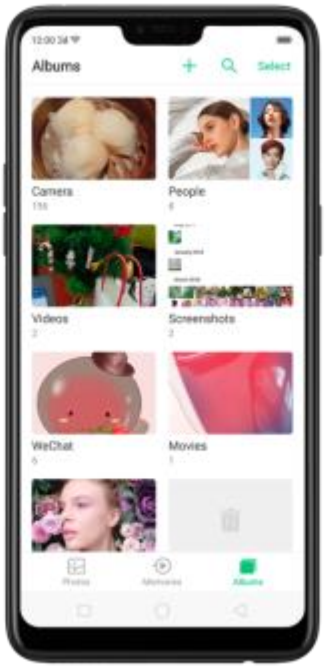
The Photos app is where you store your photos and videos, including those you've taken with the built-in camera, saved from an app or a webpage, copied from optional storage devices, and more. You can view, share, and edit your photos and videos directly on your phone.

**View Photos**. You can view the roll of photos in either Camera or Photos. All photos are sorted by the dates and ~~times~~ they were taken. In Photos, select Year or Month view in timeline to quickly lock the look-up scope. Click an album to view the photos or videos on that album.


Year
2016
2017
2018
Photos
Memories
Albums


Month
September 2016
January 2017
May 2017
January 2018
March 2018
Photos
Memories
Albums


Moment
Select
Sep 6, 2016
Jan 5, 2017
May 10, 2017
Jan 2
Mar 27
Photos
Memories
Albums

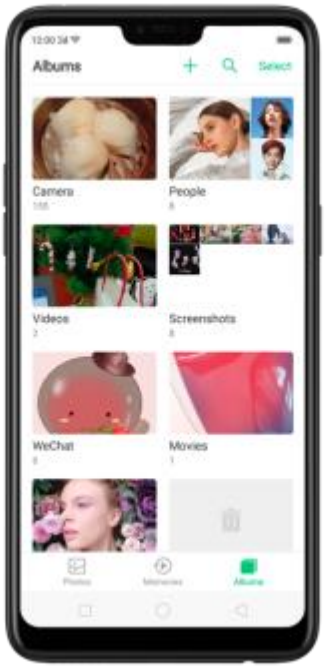

Albums
Select
Camera
People
Videos
Screenshots
WeChat
Movies
Photos
Memories
Albums

Note: Memories and Stories are terms that can be interchangeably used and doesn't affect the full functionality of the phone.

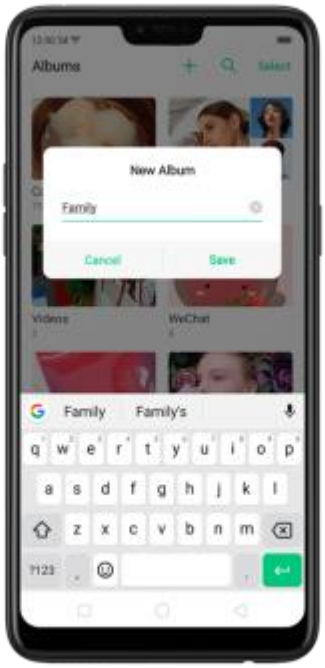
## 7.11.3.Albums

Each time you take a new photo, by default, it gets stored in the Photos album. Within the Photos app, there are a number of default albums into which your photos get automatically organized. In addition to these, you can also create your own albums ~~in~~to which you can organize photos further.

You can see your photo albums by clicking **Albums** at the bottom right of the Photos app.


Albums
+
Select
Camera
People
Videos
Screenshots
WeChat
Movies
Photos
Memories
Albums

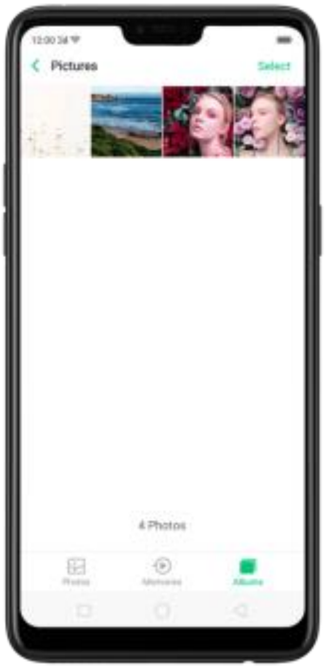
**Create a new album**. Click +, enter a name, then click **Save**. Select photos and videos, then click **Done**.

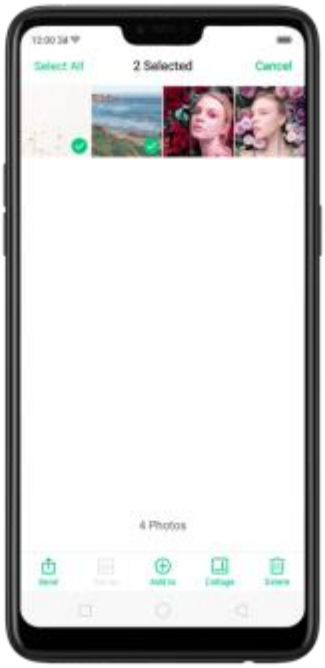

New Album

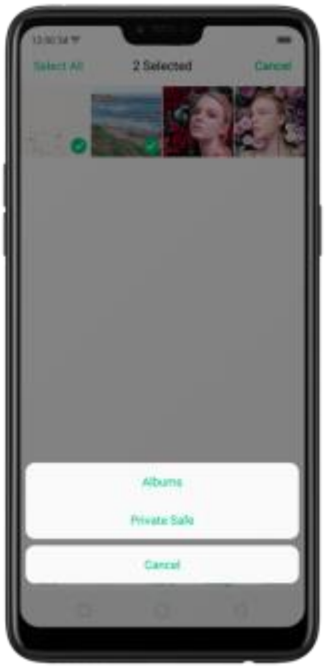
Family

Albums
+
Select
Cancel
Save
Videos
WeChat
Family
Family's
?123

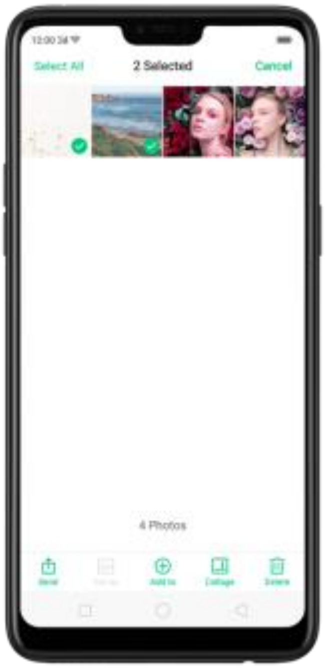
**Add items to an existing album**. While viewing photos, click **Select**, select items, click **Add to**, click **Albums**, then select an album.

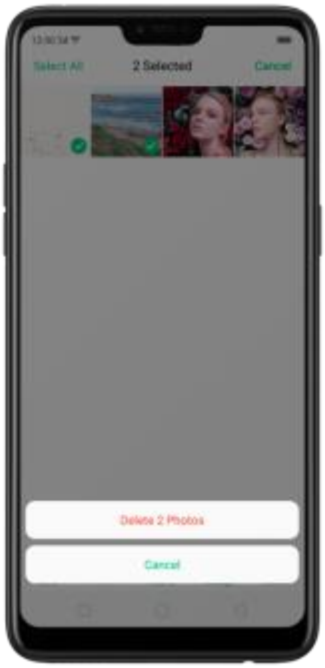

Pictures
Select
4 Photos
Photos
Memories
Albums


Select All
2 Selected
Cancel
4 Photos
Send
Add to
Collage
Delete


Select All
2 Selected
Cancel
Albums
Private Safe
Cancel

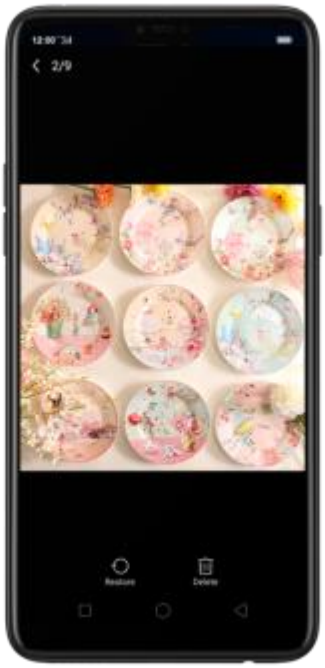
**Remove items from an album**. From the album screen, click **Select**, select items, click **Delete**, then click **Delete photo**.

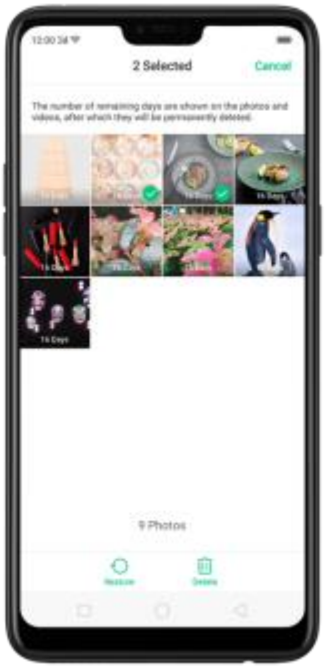

Select All
2 Selected
Cancel
4 Photos
Send
Add to
Collage
Delete


Select All
2 Selected
Cancel
Delete 2 Photos
Cancel

**Delete an album**. From the Albums screen, click **Select**, click the album, then click **Delete Album**. Default photo albums cannot be deleted.
**Delete a photo or video from Photos**. Click a photo or video, then click **Delete Photo**, or click **Select**, select the photos or videos to be deleted, then click **Delete**. Deleted photos and videos are kept in the Recently Deleted album for 30 days before they're permanently removed.

**Restore a deleted photo or video**. In the Recently Deleted album, click the photo or video, click **Restore**, then click **Restore Photo** or **Restore Video** to move the item back to the Photos. Or from the Recently Deleted album, click **Select**, select the photos and videos you want to restore, then click **Restore**.

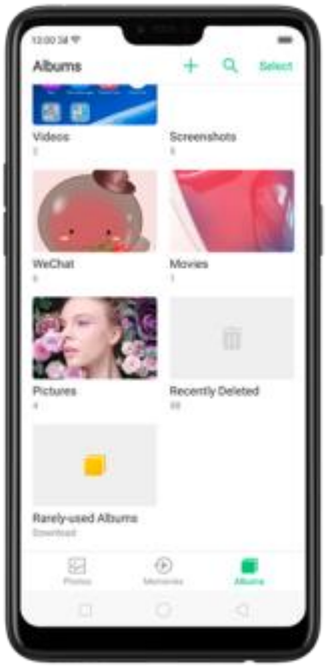


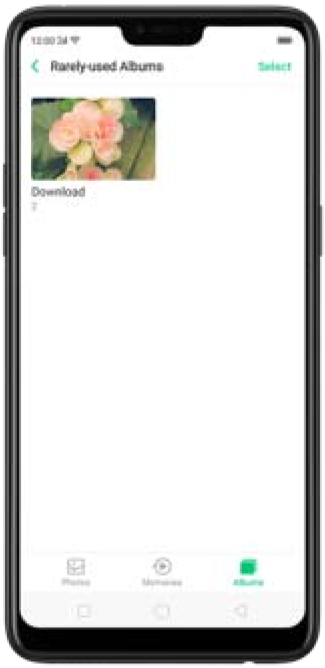


**Smart album search and cleanup**. You can search your photo library depending on the date, location, people, and content of the photos on your device. In Phone Manager, you can also clean up photos in batches such as similar and blurry photos. See Smart album search and cleanup.

**Optimized album management**.

- In addition to the frequently used social apps, images downloaded from third-party apps will be saved in Rarely-used Album. You can put other albums into Rarely-used Album by clicking **Select** > **Set as rarely-used**.


Albums
Select
Videos
Screenshots
WeChat
Movies
Pictures
Recently Deleted
Rarely-used Albums
Download
Photos
Memories
Albums


Rarely-used Albums
Select
Download
Photos
Memories
Albums

- Your photos will be put into sequential order by modification time. In other words, once an old photo or video has been modified, it will be saved as the latest photo or video.
- Photos downloaded from spam applications will be controlled by phone's blacklist and will not be displayed in albums.

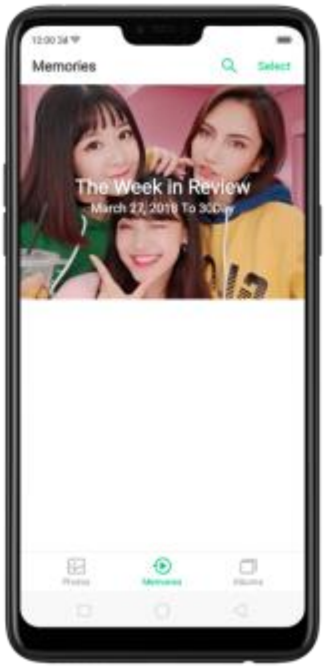
Note: Memories and Stories are terms that can be interchangeably used and doesn't affect the full functionality of the phone.

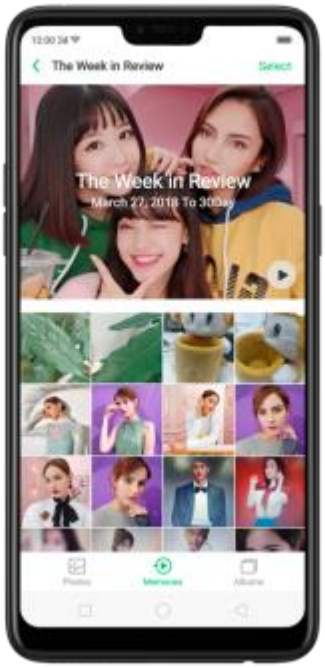
## 7.11.4.Stories / Memories

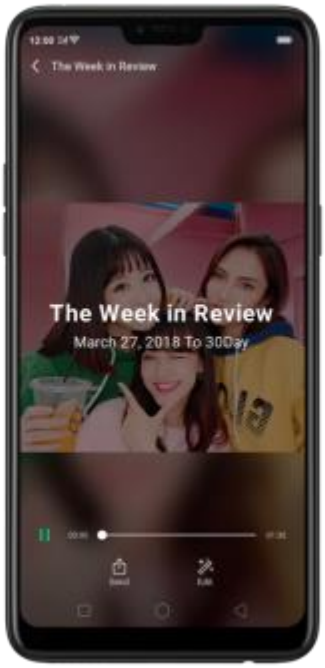
Using the on-device facial recognition and AI detection of what's on your images, your phone can combine photos into themed mini-movies complete with transitions and a soundtrack. For instance, ColorOS is going to put together an album about your last vacation in Europe, or an album of your kids growing up. You can also edit them and share them with others.

**Play a Memory movie**. Open Photos, click Memories, click a Memory movie, then click ▶. The movie will play in landscape mode by default. To pause, click the movie, then click ⏸.

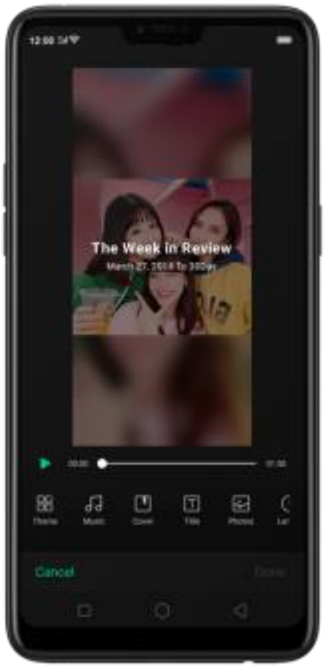
**Note**: Your phone categorizes your photos weekly while your phone is plugged and locked.


Memories
Select
The Week in Review
March 27, 2018 To 30Day
Photos
Memories
Albums


The Week in Review
Select
The Week in Review
March 27, 2018 To 30Day
Photos
Memories
Albums


The Week in Review
The Week in Review
March 27, 2018 To 30Day
Send
Edit

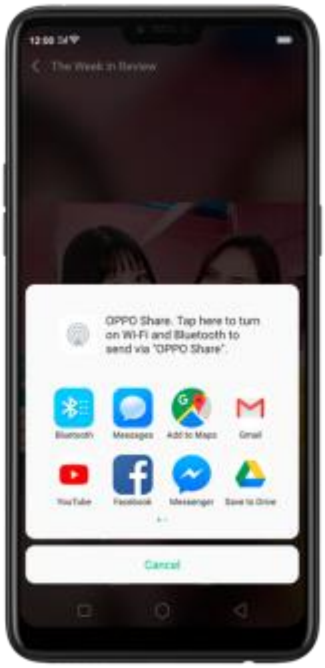
**Customize a Memory movie**. Click a Memory movie while it's playing, then click Edit to do the following:


The Week in Review
March 27, 2018 To 30Day
Theme
Music
Cover
Title
Photos
Cancel
Done

- **Change the theme**: Click Theme, then click a theme or swipe the themes left or right to pick a new one, such as Joyful, Cozy, and more. For each theme, there is a music of the Memory movie.
- **Choose different music**: Click Music, then swipe the music left or right to pick a new one. You can also use your local and saved music.
- **Choose a cover**: Click Cover, then click the photo you want to use.

- **Edit the title**: Click Title, edit the title, then click Save.
- **Choose or delete photos**: Click Photos, click +, then select the photos you want in the movie. Click 🗑 to remove the photos from the movie.
- **Change the movie length**: Click Length, then scroll the wheels to change the length.

**Share a Memory movie**. Click a Memory movie while it's playing, then click Send.



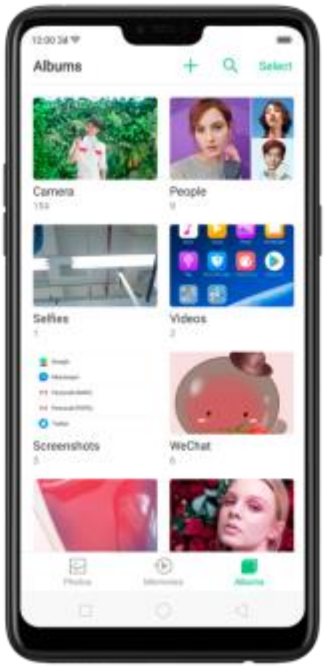
OPPO Share. Tap here to turn on Wi-Fi and Bluetooth to send via "OPPO Share".

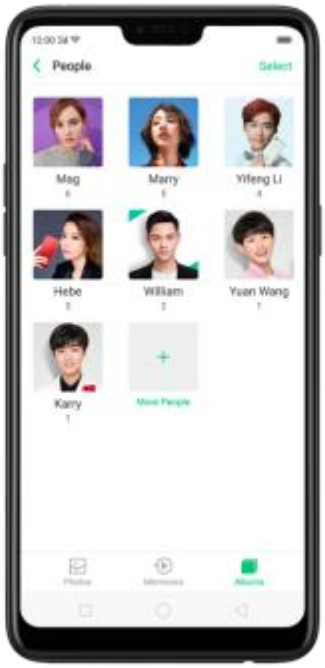
12:00
The Week in Review
Bluetooth
Messages
Add to Maps
Gmail
YouTube
Facebook
Messenger
Save to Drive
Cancel

Note: Memories and Stories are terms that can be interchangeably used and doesn't affect the full functionality of the phone.

## 7.11.5.People

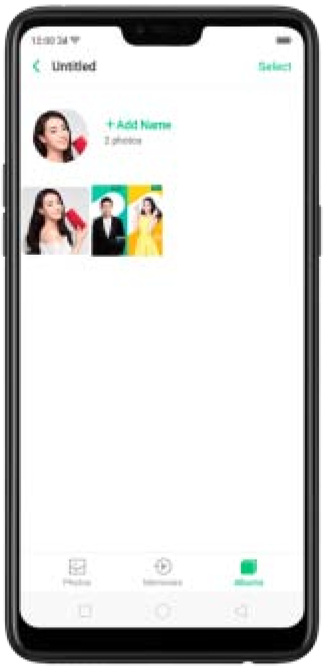
In the Photos app, there's an album called "People." It uses facial technology to identify the people in the pictures or those with combine identifications, then group pictures of the same people together. You can name or rename a People album, hide People albums, merge People albums into one, and more.
* Your phone generates People album while your phone is plugged and locked.

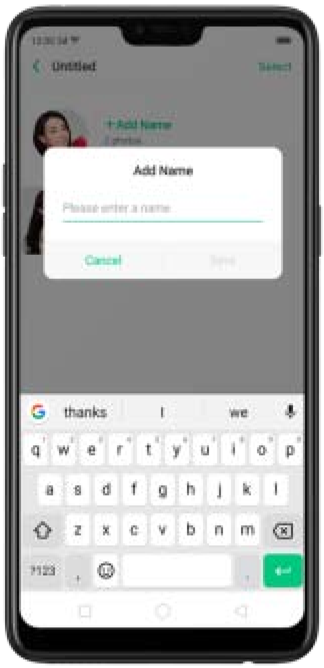

Albums
Select
Camera
People
Selfies
Videos
Screenshots
WeChat
Photos
Memories
Albums


People
Select
Mag
Marry
Yifeng Li
Hebe
William
Yuan Wang
Karry
More People
Photos
Memories
Albums

## Name or rename a People album

If a profile is unnamed, click the People album, click "**+ Add Name**", then type in the name you want to use and click **Save**.
If a profile has a wrong name, click the People album, click the name, then type in the name you want to use and click **Save**.


Untitled
Select
+ Add Name
2 photos
Photos
Memories
Albums


Untitled
Select
+ Add Name
2 photos
Add Name
Please enter a name
Cancel
Save
thanks
I
we

## Hide, display, and merge People albums

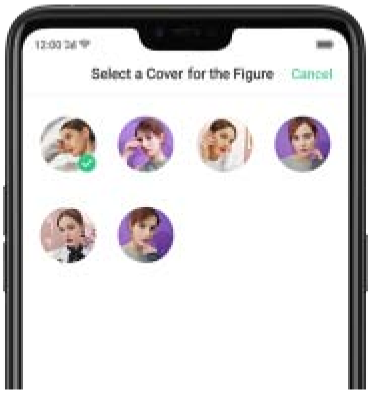
**Hide People albums**. Click **Select**, select the People albums, then click **Hide**. The hidden albums are collected in **More People**.
**Display People albums**. To display the hidden albums, click **More People**, select the People albums, then click **Display**.
Merge People albums into one. Click **Select**, select at least two People albums, then click **Merge**.

## Remove misidentified photos from an album

Click a People album you want to remove photos from, click **Select**, select the misidentified photos, then click **Wrong Person**. The photos will be moved to **More People**.

## Set a cover of the People album

Click a person's album, click the portrait, then choose the photo you want as the cover.



## Add photos to a People album

1. Click a People album, click **Select**, select the photos you want to add to the other album, and then click **Wrong Person**. The photos will be collected in an album in **More People**.
2. In **More People**, click **Select**, select the album, and then click **Display**.
3. Go to the People albums' screen, click **Select**, select both the album and the one you want to add the photos to, and then click **Merge**.

Note: Memories and Stories are terms that can be interchangeably used and doesn't affect the full functionality of the phone.

## 7.11.6.View and use photos and videos

**View your photos and videos**. Click Photos, and then click a photo or video. Click ▶ to play a video. Or click Camera, and then click the thumbnail on the lower-left corner of the screen.

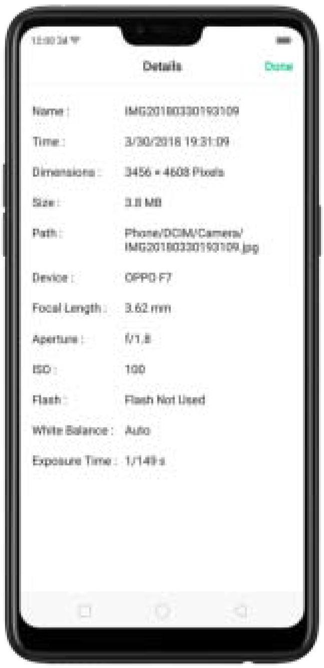
**View a photo at full screen**. Click a photo, and then click the screen to hide the controls.

**View the next or previous photo**. Flick left or right.

**View a photo in landscape orientation**. On Control center, turn [**Portrait Orientation**] off, then rotate your phone sideways. The photo automatically reorients and, if it's in landscape format, expands to fit the screen.

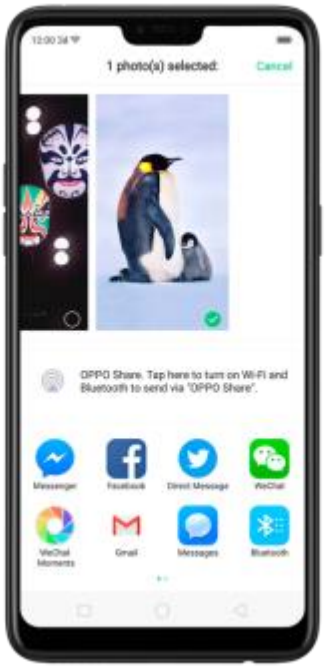
**Zoom in or out**. Double-click or pinch a photo to open or closed. Drag to see other parts of the photo.

**See photo and video details**. Click a photo or video, and then click ⓘ.



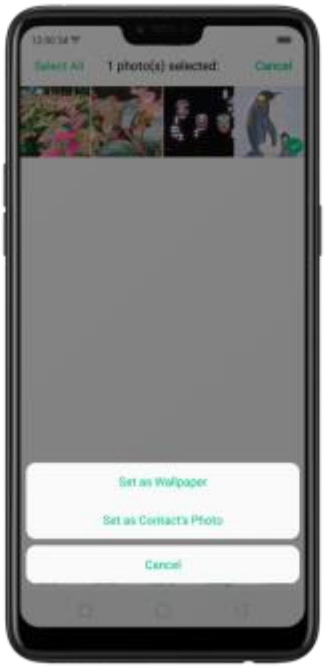
Name : IMG20180330193109
Time : 3/30/2018 19:31:09
Dimensions : 3456 × 4608 Pixels
Size : 3.8 MB
Path : Phone/DCIM/Camera/IMG20180330193109.jpg
Device : OPPO F7
Focal Length : 3.62 mm
Aperture : f/1.8
ISO : 100
Flash : Flash Not Used
White Balance : Auto
Exposure Time : 1/149 s

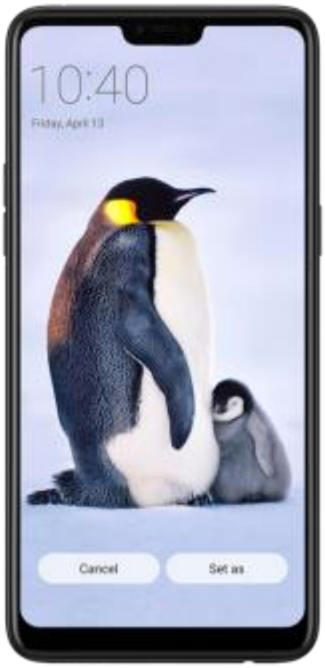
**Send a photo or video**. Click **Send**, and then choose where to send your photo or video.

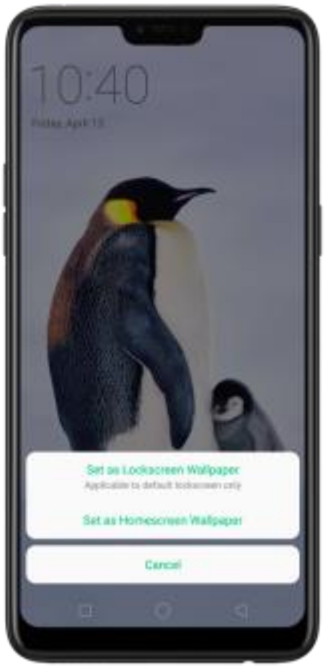

1 photo(s) selected
Cancel
Messenger
Facebook
Direct Message
WeChat
WeChat Moments
Gmail
Messages
Bluetooth

OPPO Share. Tap here to turn on Wi-Fi and Bluetooth to send via "OPPO Share".

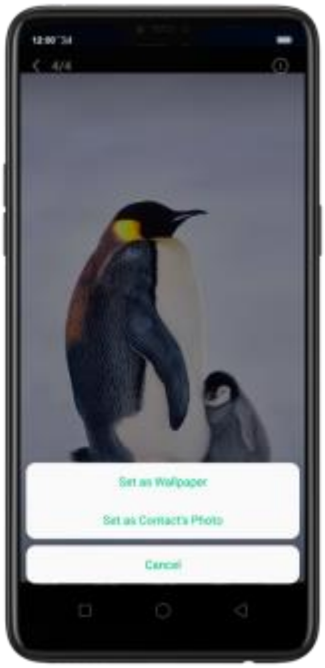
**Use a photo as wallpaper**. Click a photo, click **Set as**, and then click **Set as wallpaper**. Drag the photo to pan, or pinch the photo to zoom in or out, until it looks the way you want. Then click **Set as** to set the wallpaper as your Home screen or Lock screen.

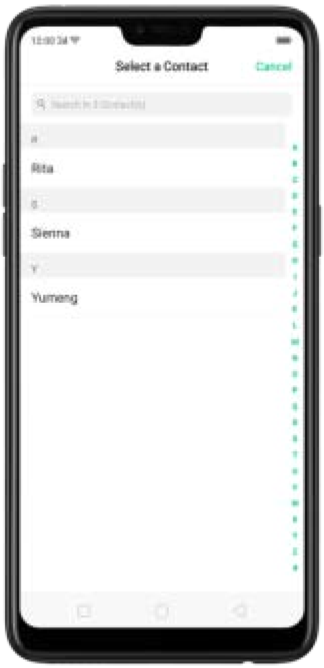

Select All
1 photo(s) selected
Cancel
Set as Wallpaper
Set as Contact's Photo
Cancel

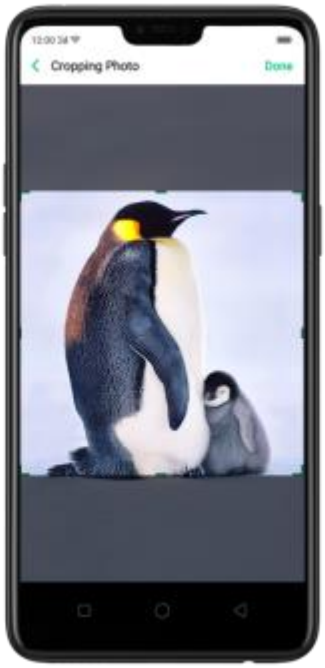

10:40
Friday, April 13
Cancel
Set as


10:40
Friday, April 13
Set as Lockscreen Wallpaper
Applicable to default lockscreen only
Set as Homescreen Wallpaper
Cancel

**Assign a photo to a contact**. Click a photo, click **Set as**, click **Set as contact's photo**, select a contact, crop the photo, and then click **Done**.

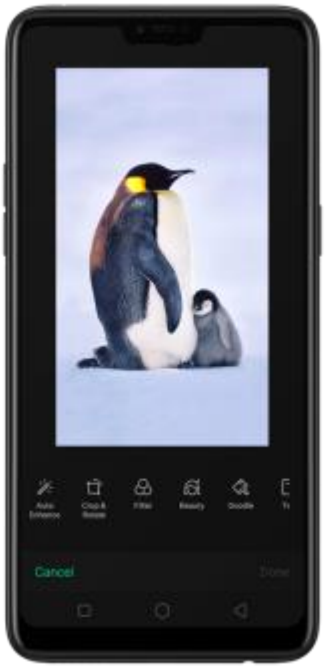

4/4
Set as Wallpaper
Set as Contact's Photo
Cancel


Select a Contact
Cancel
Rita
Sienna
Yumeng


Cropping Photo
Done

**Add a photo or video to an existing album**. Click **Add to**, and then select the album.

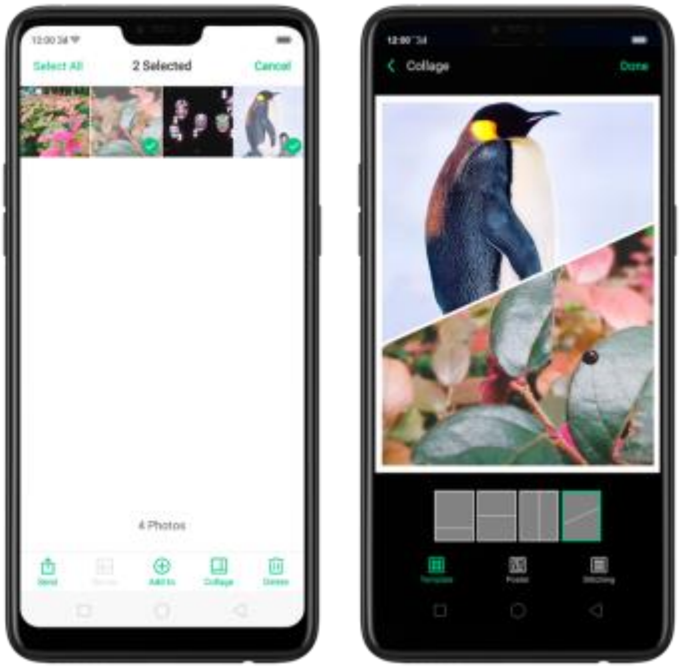
**Edit the photo**. Click **Edit**. You can edit your photos using a set of professional editing tools, including cropping, adding text and filters, and more. See Edit photos and videos.


Auto Enhance
Crop & Rotate
Filter
Beauty
Doodle
Cancel
Done

**Delete a photo or video**. Click **Delete**.

**Combine the photos**. From the Photos screen, click **Select**, select the photos, then click **Collage**.

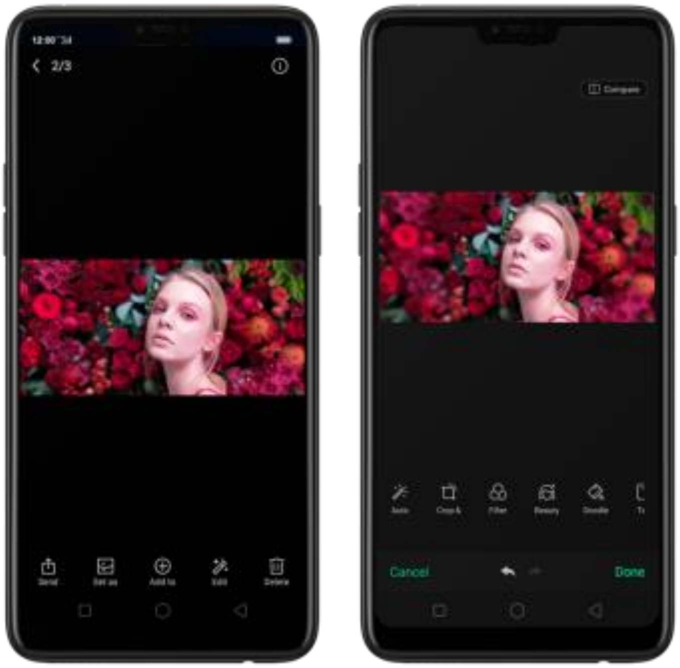
Choose a collage template, then click **Done**.


Select All
2 Selected
Cancel
4 Photos
Collage
Done

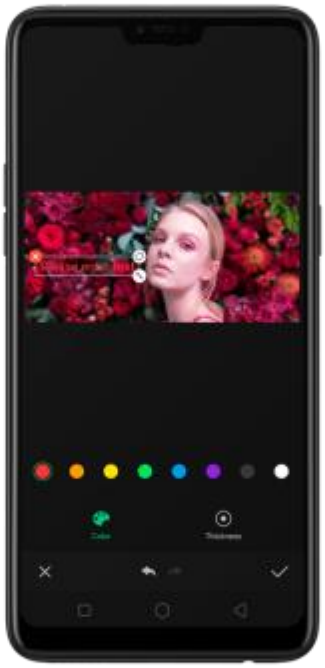
## 7.11.7.Edit photos and videos

You can edit your photos and videos on the Photos app directly using a set of professional editing tools, including cropping, adding text and filters, and more.

Edit a photo. Open the Photos app and view the photo full screen, click Edit, then click a tool. Click Compare to view changes. When you're finished, click Done.


2/3
Compare
Cancel
Done

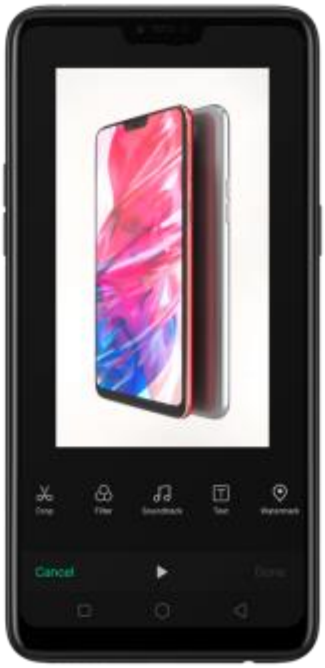
- Auto Enhance: Enhances the photo's light levels, contrast, saturation, color temperature, and other qualities to make the photo more visually balanced.
- Crop and rotate: To crop the photo, click and drag a corner or side of the photo, or click Ratio and apply a preset aspect ratio to the photo, such as 1:1 or 9:16. To rotate the photo, move the wheel to your desired angle, or click Rotate to rotate the photo 90 degrees. Click Undo to reset these changes.
- Filter: Add a color filter to the photo, such as Matcha, Autumn, and Lime.
- Beauty: Click One-tap to Beautify to automatically improve both the appearance and the shape of your face. You can choose from 6 beauty levels. To beautify part of the face, choose a tool and make adjustments to the face, such as whiten skin, remove unwanted blemishes, enlarge eyes, and more.
- Doodle: Write or draw on the photo. You can adjust colors and thickness of your handwriting.
- Text: Click the photo to add the text. You can adjust colors and thickness of your text. Click and drag the text to move its position; click and drag ⤡ to adjust the font size; click and drag ⟳ to rotate the text; click ✕ to delete the text.



- Adjust: Manually adjust the photo's brightness, contrast, saturation, and color temperature.

- Mosaic: Pixelate part of the photo. You can change the pattern and thickness of the mosaic.
- Blur: Set the blur effect over the photo with circle or straight lines. The area within the circle or lines represents the non-blur part. Click the screen and drag the circle or the lines to select where to blur. Drag the slider to left or right to adjust the blur Intensity.
- Eraser pen: Erase people, watermarks, and any unwanted objects that's on your photo.

Edit a video. Open the Photos app, click the video, click Edit, then click a tool. When you're finished, click Done.

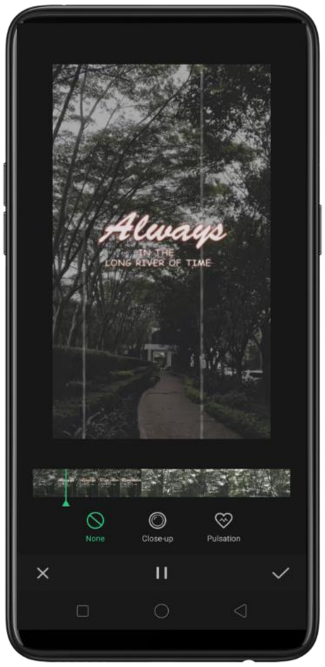


- Crop: Drag either end of the bar to cut out the parts of the video you don't want to save. You can only save continuous segments of the video.
- Filter: Add a color filter to the photo, such as Sunlight, Midsummer, and Polaroid.
- Soundtrack: Add a soundtrack to the video. You can also use your local and saved music. Click 🔊 to turn off the original sound of the video.
- Text: Click Ⓣ to add overlay text on the video. Click and drag the text to move its position. Drag the frame viewer to control when the text showed up.
- Watermark: Add a watermark with the location and date of the video. If the video

doesn’t contain the details of location and date, you cannot add the watermark.

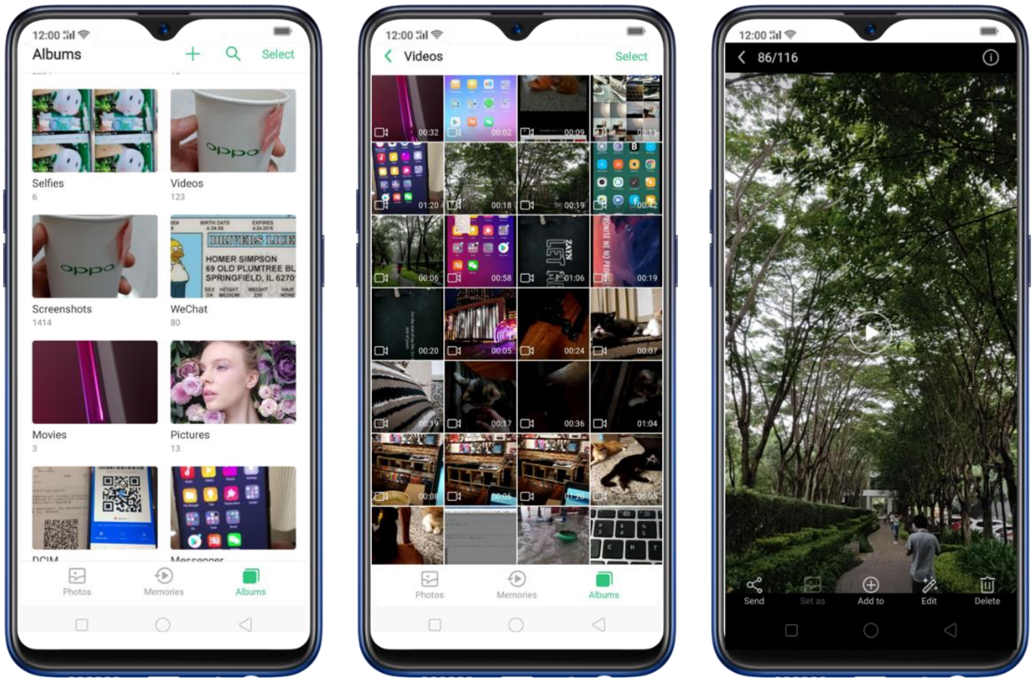
### New Features of video editor

With ColorOS 5.2, impress your social media followers and friends with your videos. You can now add close-up and pulsation on the videos you have taken to make it more fun and artsy.

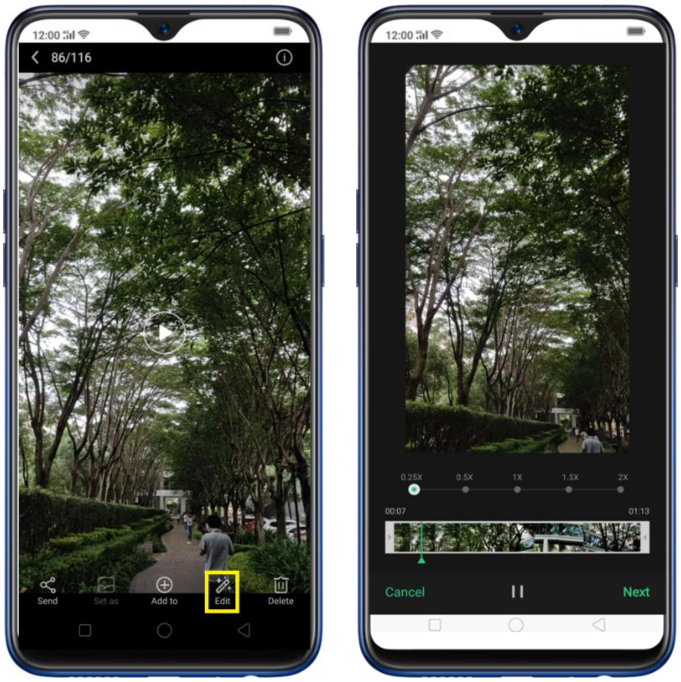


## Speed of the video

**1. Record a video first**. Open your camera app, choose Video then click the Record button, or press either volume button, to start and stop recording. You can choose between 720p and 1080p.
2. Once you are done with the recording, go to [**Photos app**] > [**Albums**] > [**Video Folder**] then choose the video that you want to edit.

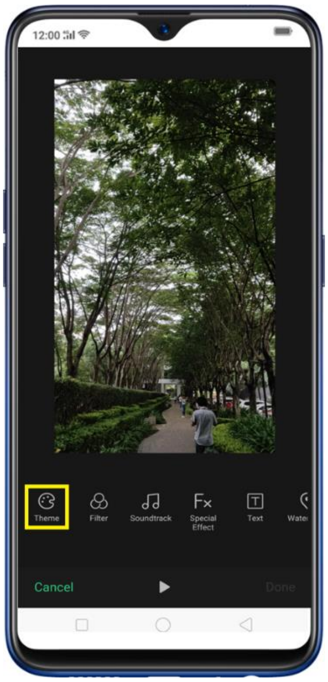

12:00
Albums
Select
Selfies
6
Videos
123
Screenshots
1414
WeChat
80
Movies
3
Pictures
13
DCIM
Messenger
Photos
Memories
Albums
Videos
Select
86/116
Send
Set as
Add to
Edit
Delete

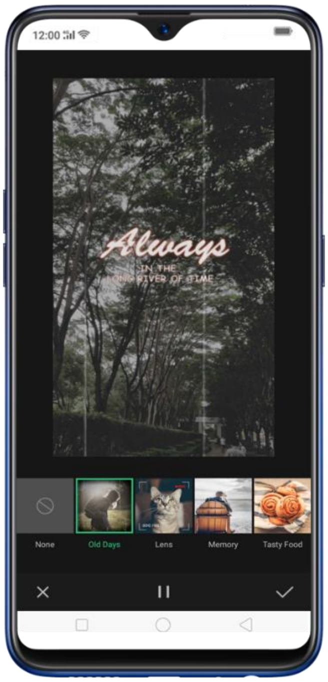
3. Click **Edit** and you will be asked what speed you would like the video to play. The slowest is 0.25X and fastest is at 2X. The normal one is 1X. Once done choosing the speed, click **Next**.

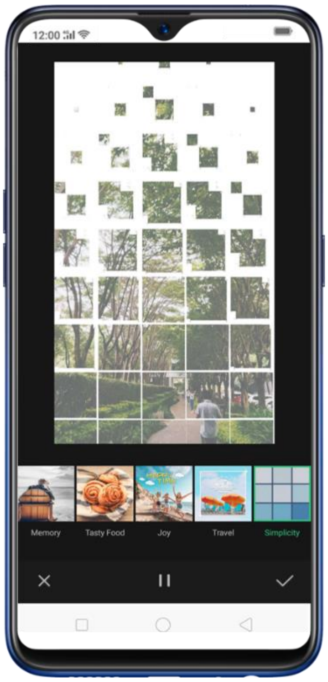

12:00
86/116
Send
Set as
Add to
Edit
Delete
0.25X
0.5X
1X
1.5X
2X
00:07
01:13
Cancel
Next

## Theme of the video

To choose a theme for your video, click [**Edit**] > [**Choose the Speed**] > [**Next**] > [**Themes**]. You can choose from None, Old Days, Lens, Memory, Tasty Food/Delicacy, Joy, Travel, and Simplicity.


12:00
Theme
Filter
Soundtrack
Fx
Special Effect
Text
Wate
Cancel
Done

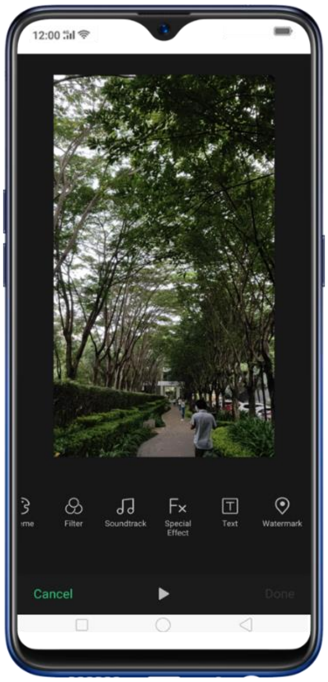

12:00
Always
IN THE
LONG RIVER OF TIME
None
Old Days
Lens
Memory
Tasty Food

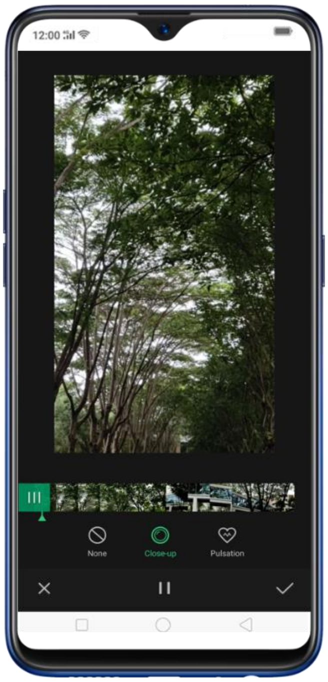

12:00
Memory
Tasty Food
Joy
Travel
Simplicity

Click ▶ / ☒ to play and pause the preview and click ✓ when you have chosen a theme, then click **Done**. Click ☒ to exit Theme and click **Cancel** if you don't want to add a theme to your video.

## Add Special Effect to the Video

To choose a special effect for your video, click [**Edit**] > [**Choose the Speed**] > [**Next**] > [**Fx Special Effect**]. You can choose from None, Close-up, and Pulsation.


12:00
me
Filter
Soundtrack
Fx
Special Effect
Text
Watermark
Cancel
Done


12:00
None
Close-up
Pulsation

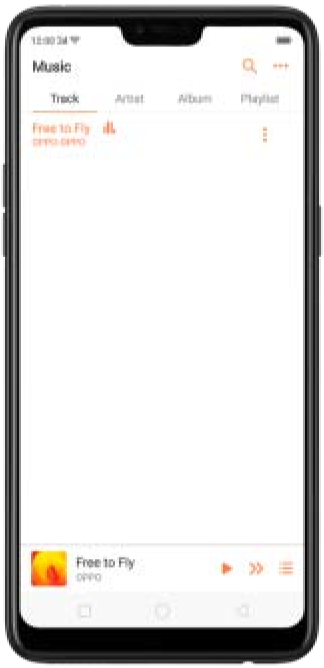
4. Click ▶ / ☒ to play and pause the preview and click ✓ when you have chosen a special effect, then click **Done**. Click ☒ to exit Fx Special Effect and click **Cancel** if you don't want to add any special effect to your video.

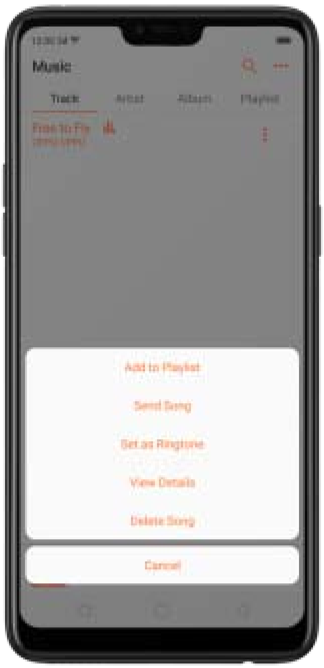
# 7.12. Music

## 7.12.2.Music

Use the Music app to enjoy music stored on your phone. You can also create playlists, set songs as ringtones for incoming calls, and more.

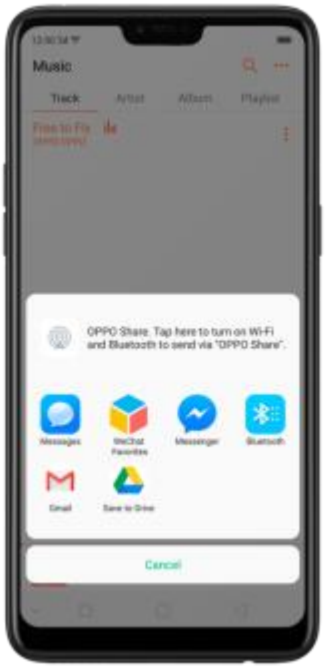
To see what you can do with your music, click ⋮ to the right side of the song name.


Music
Track
Artist
Album
Playlist
Free to Fly
OPPO OPPO
Free to Fly
OPPO


Music
Track
Artist
Album
Playlist
Free to Fly
OPPO OPPO
Add to Playlist
Send Song
Set as Ringtone
View Details
Delete Song
Cancel

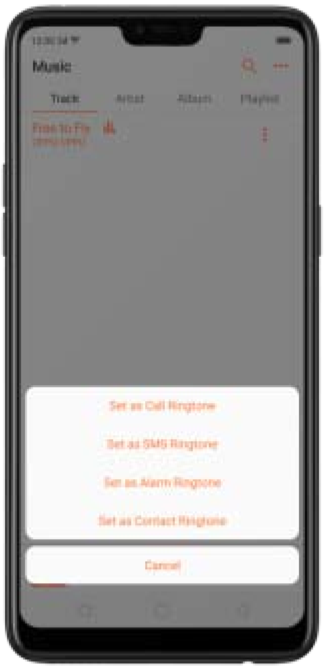
**Add to playlist**. Add a song to an existing playlist. You can also create a new playlist.

**Send song**. You can share a song with your friends using multiple ways.


OPPO Share. Tap here to turn on Wi-Fi and Bluetooth to send via "OPPO Share".

Music
Track
Artist
Album
Playlist
Free to Fly
OPPO OPPO
Messages
WeChat Favorites
Messenger
Bluetooth
Gmail
Save to Drive
Cancel

**Set as ringtone**. You can set a song as a ringtone for all incoming calls and messages, or for a contact. You can also set a song as an alarm tone.


Music
Track
Artist
Album
Playlist
Set as Call Ringtone
Set as SMS Ringtone
Set as Alarm Ringtone
Set as Contact Ringtone
Cancel

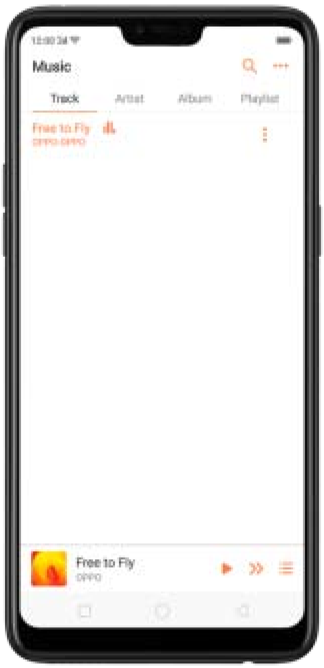
**View details**. Click to view the name, artist, album, format, size, and storage location of a song.

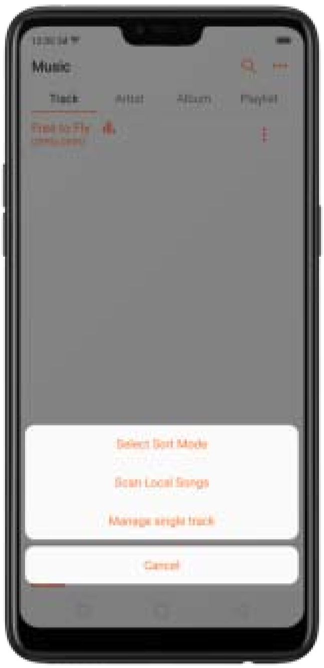
**Delete song**. Remove the song from the playlists and your phone storage.

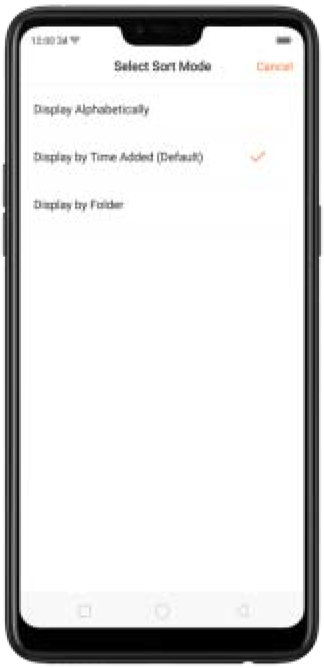
### 7.12.3.Change sort mode

By sorting your playlist, you can easily order the songs on your phone.

**Change the order of your songs**. From the Music screen, click **Track**, click ••• in the upper-right corner of the screen, and then click **Select Sort Mode**. Your songs can be sorted alphabetically, by time when the song is added, or by folders the songs are in.


12:00
Music
Track
Artist
Album
Playlist
Free to Fly
OPPO OPPO
Free to Fly
OPPO

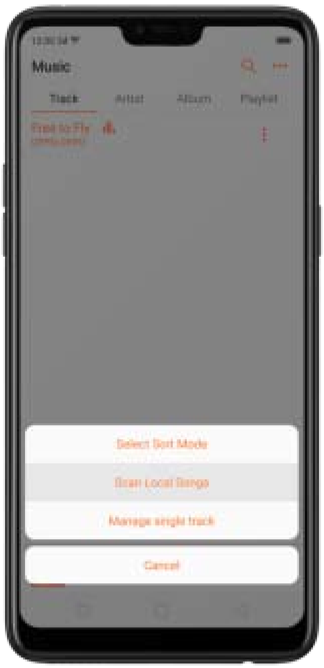

12:00
Music
Track
Artist
Album
Playlist
Free to Fly
OPPO OPPO
Select Sort Mode
Scan Local Songs
Manage single track
Cancel

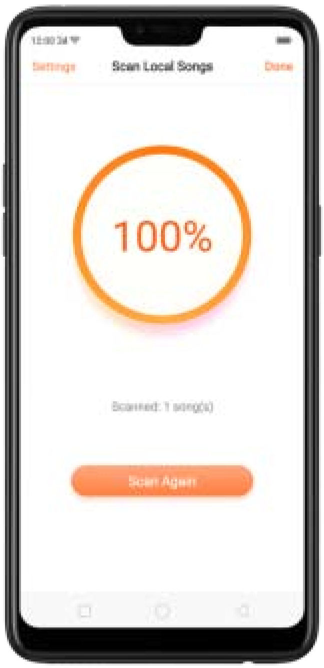

12:00
Select Sort Mode
Cancel
Display Alphabetically
Display by Time Added (Default)
Display by Folder

## 7.12.4.Scan local songs

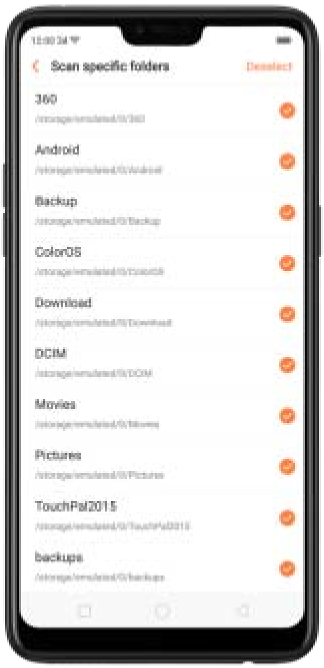
The Music app contains all music-related materials on your phone storage. To manually scan for local songs, or choose which songs can be displayed on your list, do the following:

**Scan all local songs**. Click ••• on the upper-right corner of the Music screen, then click **Scan Local Songs**. Your phone will automatically start scanning.


Music
Track
Artist
Album
Playlist
Free to Fly
Select Sort Mode
Scan Local Songs
Manage single track
Cancel

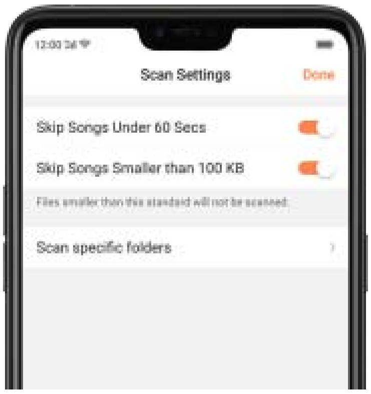

Settings
Scan Local Songs
Done
100%
Scanned: 1 song(s)
Scan Again

**Scan specific folders**. Click **Settings**, click **Scan specific folders**, and then choose the folders you want the phone to scan for. Go back to the Scan Local Songs screen, and then click **Scan again**.


Scan specific folders
Deselect

360
/storage/emulated/0/360
Android
/storage/emulated/0/Android
Backup
/storage/emulated/0/Backup
ColorOS
/storage/emulated/0/ColorOS
Download
/storage/emulated/0/Download
DCIM
/storage/emulated/0/DCIM
Movies
/storage/emulated/0/Movies
Pictures
/storage/emulated/0/Pictures
TouchPal2015
/storage/emulated/0/TouchPal2015
backups
/storage/emulated/0/backups

**Filter audio files**. To filter tracks that are too short (under 60 seconds) and too small (under 100KB), toggle the sliders to orange.



Scan Settings

Skip Songs Under 60 Secs

Skip Songs Smaller than 100 KB

Files smaller than this standard will not be scanned.

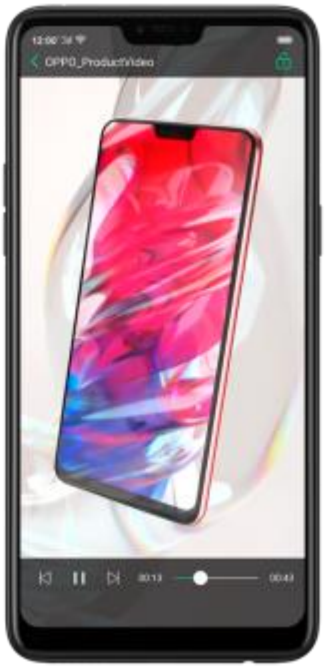
Scan specific folders

## 7.13. Videos

Use Videos to watch videos you've downloaded or taken with the built-in camera.

**Play a video**. Click Videos on the Home screen, then click the video.

**Control video playback**. Click the screen to show or hide the controls.

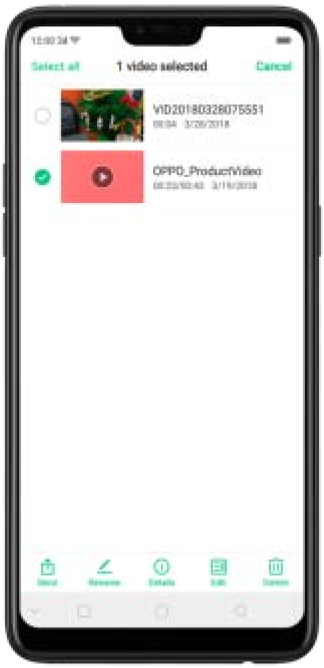


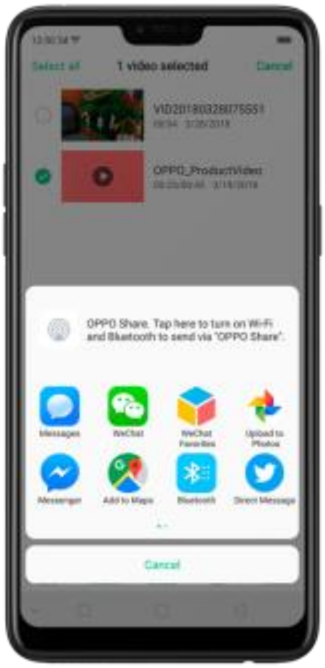
| TO | DO THIS |
|---|---|
| **Play or pause a video** | Click ▶ or ❚❚. |

| | |
|---|---|
| **Raise or lower the volume** | Click the volume buttons on the side of the phone, or swipe your finger up or down on the right side of the screen. |
| **Increase or dim the brightness** | Swipe your finger up or down on the left side of the screen. |
| **Skip to the next or previous video** | Click ⏭ or ⏮. |
| **Rewind or fast-forward** | Swipe your finger left or right on the screen. |
| **Start a video over** | Click ⏮ twice quickly. |
| **Skip to any point in the video** | Drag the play head left or right. |
| **Lock the screen rotation and disable bottom keys** | Click 🔒. |

**Sort videos**. From the video screen, click ⇅ and choose to sort by name, added date, or duration.

**Send videos**. From the Videos screen, click **Select**, choose videos, click **Send**, then choose an option for sending the video (for example, Messages, Gmail, third-party apps, and so on).


Select all
1 video selected
Cancel
VID20180328075551
00:04 3/28/2018
OPPO_ProductVideo
00:23/00:40 3/14/2018
Send
Rename
Details
Edit
Delete


Select all
1 video selected
Cancel
VID20180328075551
00:04 3/28/2018
OPPO_ProductVideo
00:23/00:40 3/14/2018
OPPO Share. Tap here to turn on Wi-Fi and Bluetooth to send via "OPPO Share".
Messages
WeChat
WeChat Favorites
Upload to Photos
Messenger
Add to Maps
Bluetooth
Direct Message
Cancel

**Rename a video.** Click **Select**, choose a video, and then click **Rename**. Enter the name, then click **Save**.

**See details about a video**. Click **Select**, choose a video, and then click **Details**.

**Edit a video**. Click **Select**, choose a video, and then click **Edit**. See Edit photos and videos.

**Delete videos**. Click **Select**, choose videos, click **Delete**, and then click **Delete videos**.

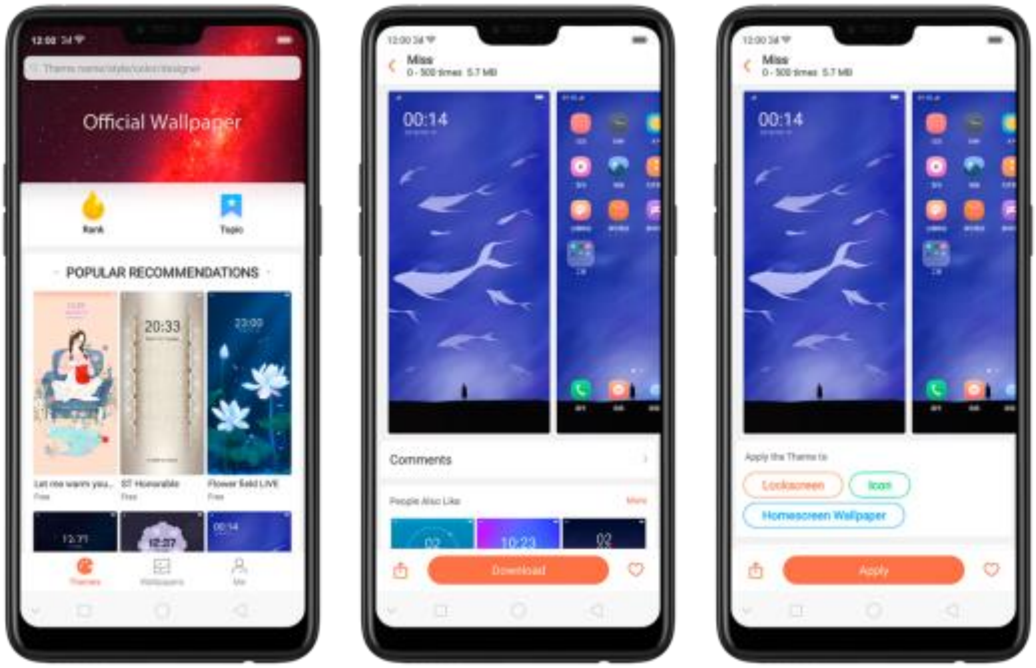
## 7.14. Theme Store

### 7.14.2.Online phone theme

A phone theme refers to the general look and feel of the phone's user interface. It changes color schemes for background images, icons, and more. The entire phone's functions will not be affected.

**Change the phone theme**. Click Theme Store on the Home screen, then click **Themes**. Click your desired theme, then click **Download**. Choose to apply the theme you've downloaded to the Home screen, Lock screen, or Home screen icons, then click **Apply** and wait a few seconds for the changes to apply.

**Tip**: Your phone will suggest similar themes based on the ones you've viewed or downloaded.


Official Wallpaper
Rank
Topic
POPULAR RECOMMENDATIONS
20:33
Miss
00:14
Comments
People Also Like
Download
Apply the Theme to
Lockscreen
Icon
Homescreen Wallpaper
Apply

**Search a theme**. Click the search bar on the top of the screen, enter the theme name, then click Search.

### 7.14.3.Online wallpaper

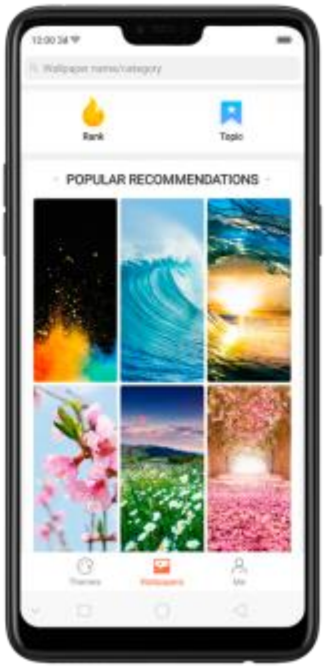
In addition to using your photos as wallpaper, you can get some more wallpaper online from

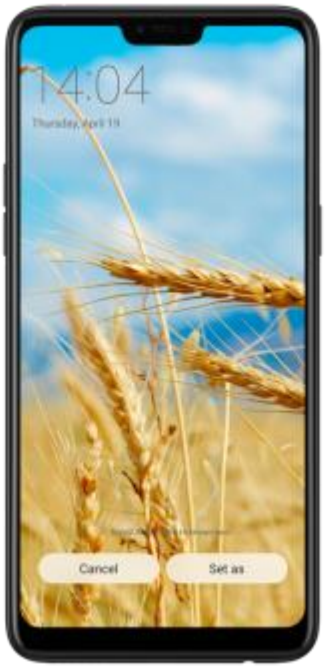
Theme Store.

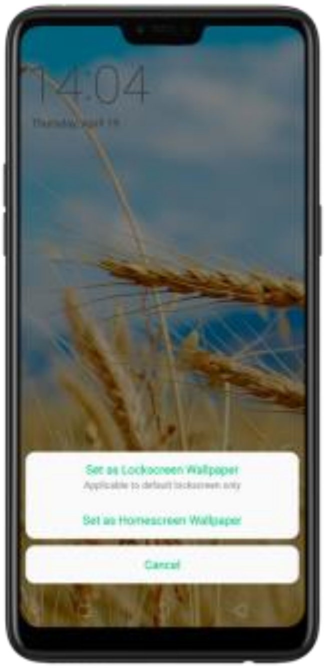
**Change the wallpaper**. Click Theme Store on the Home screen, then click **Wallpapers**.

Click your desired wallpaper, click **Download**, and then click **Apply**.

Drag to move the image. Or pinch to zoom in and out, so the image fits the screen. Click **Set as** to set the wallpaper as your Home screen or Lock screen.


Wallpaper name/category
Rank
Topic
POPULAR RECOMMENDATIONS


14:04
Thursday, April 19
Cancel
Set as

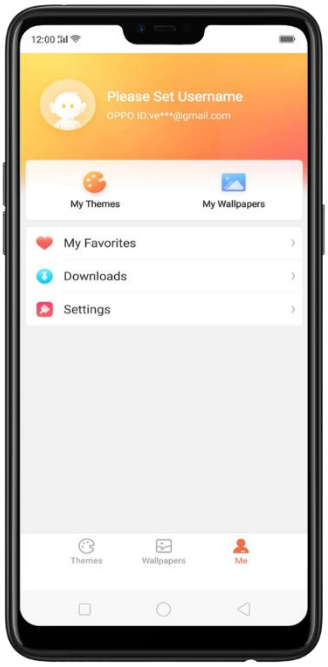

14:04
Thursday, April 19
Set as Lockscreen Wallpaper
Applicable to default lockscreen only
Set as Homescreen Wallpaper
Cancel

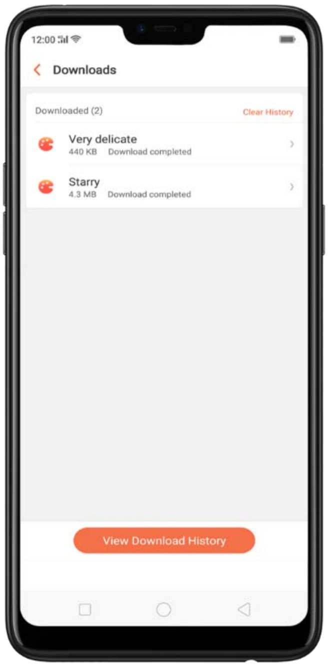
**Search a wallpaper**. Click the search bar on the top of the screen, enter the wallpaper name, and then click Search.

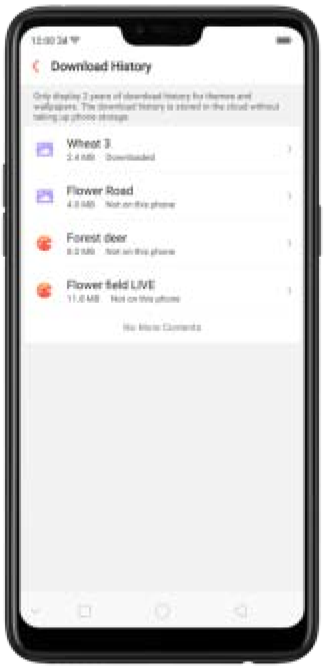
## 7.14.4.Manage your downloads

You can view and delete your downloaded themes and wallpapers.

**View download history**. Click Theme Store, click **Me**, then click Download Management. You'll see all your downloads on the phone. Click **Clear History** to clear all download histories. Click View Download History, sign in your OPPO ID, then you can see your download histories within two years that are stored on the cloud.

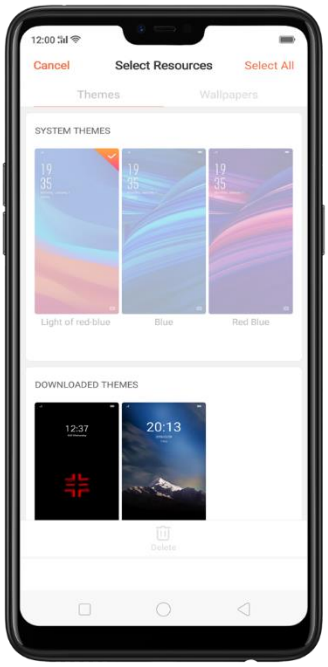

12:00
Please Set Username
OPPO ID:ve***@gmail.com
My Themes
My Wallpapers
My Favorites
Downloads
Settings
Themes
Wallpapers
Me


12:00
Downloads
Downloaded (2)
Clear History
Very delicate
440 KB Download completed
Starry
4.3 MB Download completed
View Download History


Download History
Wheat 3
Flower Road
Forest deer
Flower field LIVE

**Change phone themes and wallpapers**. Under Download Management screen, click a theme or wallpaper, and then click **Apply**. See [Change the wallpaper and theme on your OPPO smartphone]().

**Delete downloaded themes and wallpapers**. Click **Me**, then click My Themes or My Wallpapers. Click **Edit**, select the themes and wallpapers you want to delete, then click **Delete**.

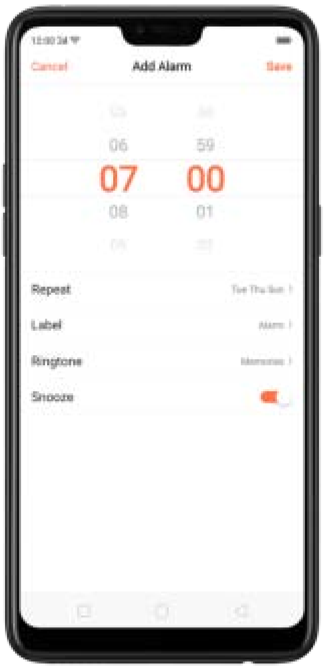

12:00
Cancel
Select Resources
Select All
Themes
Wallpapers
SYSTEM THEMES
Light of red-blue
Blue
Red Blue
DOWNLOADED THEMES
12:37
20:13
Delete

# 7.15. Clock

## 7.15.2. Set Alarm Clocks

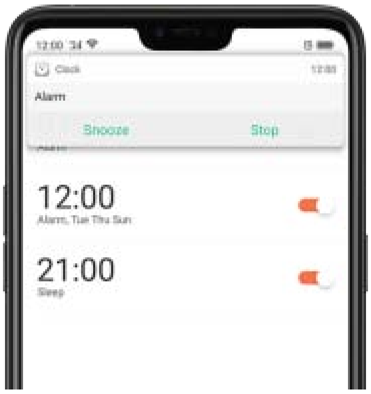
With the Clock app, you can set an alarm that plays a sound at a specific time, so you will be reminded to do things in time and your doze won't go overtime. You can also set multiple alarms, set each alarm to repeat on days you specify or to sound only once.

**Set an alarm**. Click Alarm and click +, scroll wheels to change the time, then adjust any of the following settings:



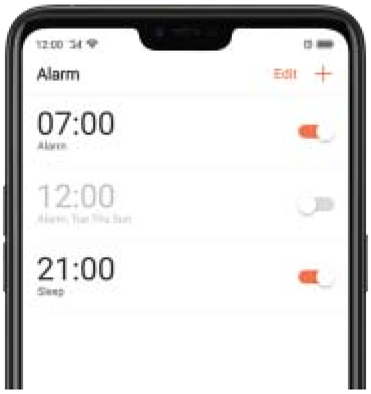
- To set the alarm to repeat on certain days, click Repeat and choose the days.
- To give the alarm a description, click Label. Your phone displays the label when the alarm sounds.
- To choose the ringtone that sounds when the alarm goes off, click Ringtone.
- To set whether the alarm gives you the option to hit snooze, turn Snooze on or off.

  If Snooze is on and you click Snooze when the alarm sounds, the alarm stops and then sounds again in five minutes.


12:00
Clock
12:00
Alarm
Snooze
Stop
12:00
Alarm, Tue Thu Sun
21:00
Sleep

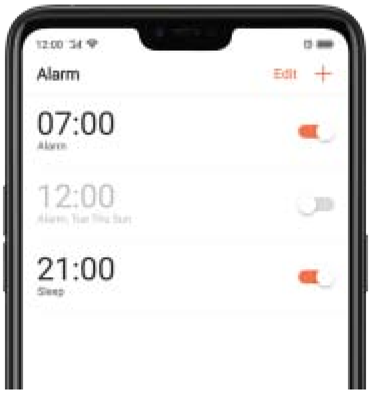
**Turn an alarm on or off**. Toggle the slider to orange or white. If at least one alarm is set and turned on, ⏰ appears on the status bar at the top of the screen.

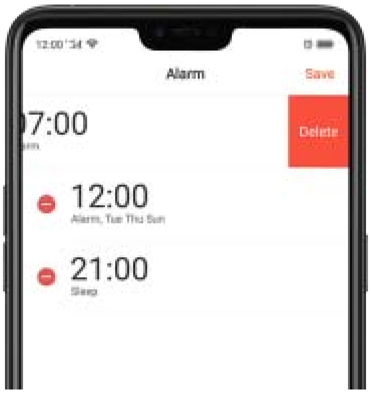
**Tip**: The alarm still works even if your phone is turned off.

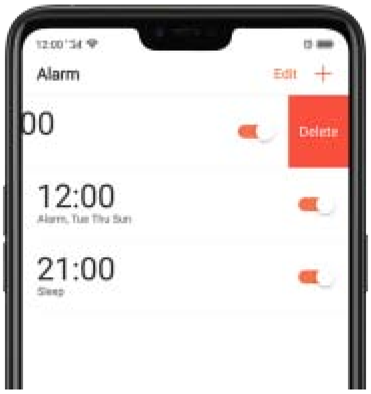

12:00
Alarm
Edit
+
07:00
Alarm
12:00
Alarm, Tue Thu Sun
21:00
Sleep

**Change settings for an alarm**. Click the alarm.

**Delete an alarm**. Click **Edit**, then click ⊖ next to an alarm and click **Delete**. Or swipe left on the alarm, then click **Delete**.

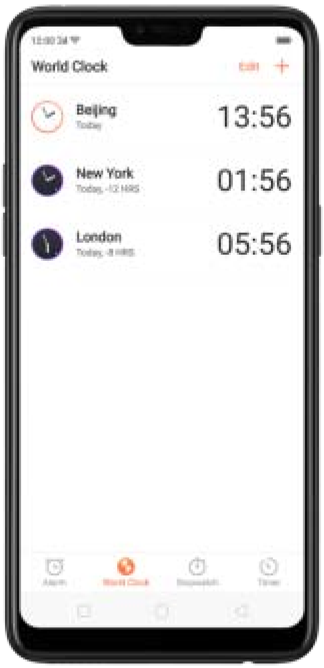

12:00
Alarm
Edit
+
07:00
Alarm
12:00
Alarm, Tue Thu Sun
21:00
Sleep


12:00
Alarm
Save
7:00
rm
Delete
12:00
Alarm, Tue Thu Sun
21:00
Sleep


12:00 '34
Alarm
Edit
+
00
Delete
12:00
Alarm, Tue Thu Sun
21:00
Sleep

## 7.15.3.Add and view clocks for locations around the world

You can add multiple clocks to show the time in major cities around the world.


12:00 '34
World Clock
Edit
+
Beijing
Today
13:56
New York
Today, -12 HRS
01:56
London
Today, -8 HRS
05:56
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

**View clocks**. Click World Clock. If the clock face is white, it's daytime in that city. If it's black, it's nighttime.

**Add a clock**. Click + and type the name of a city. Cities matching what you've typed appear below. Click a city to add a clock for that city.

**Delete a clock**. Swipe left on the clock, then click **Delete**. Or click **Edit**, then click ⊖ next to a clock and click **Delete**.

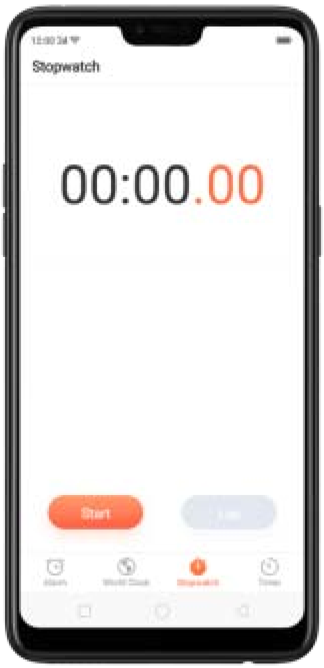
**Rearrange clocks**. Click **Edit**, then drag ☰↕ next to a clock to a new place in the list.

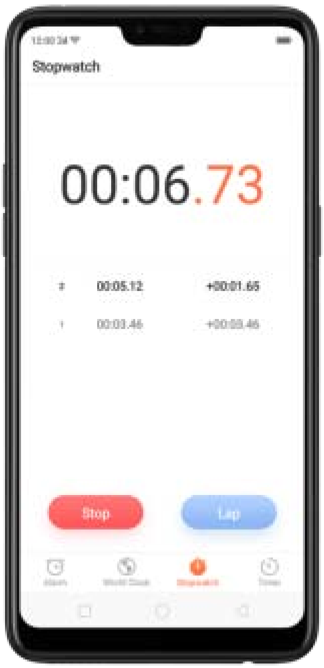
## 7.15.4.Use the stopwatch

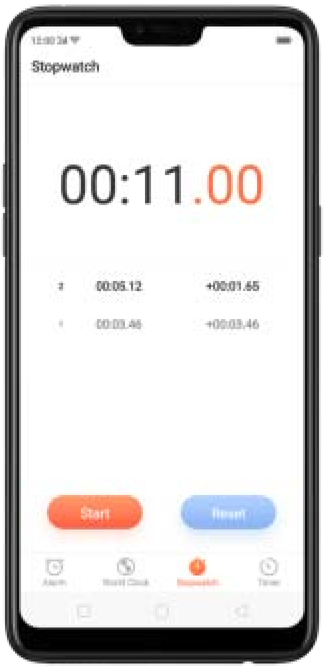
You can measure the duration of an event with the stopwatch.

**Use the stopwatch to measure time**. Click Stopwatch. Click **Start** to start the stopwatch. To record lap times, click **Lap** after each lap. Click **Stop** to pause the stopwatch. Then click **Start** to resume, or click **Reset** to reset the stopwatch to zero.

If you start the stopwatch and go to another application, the stopwatch continues running in the background.


Stopwatch
00:00.00
Start
Lap
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer


Stopwatch
00:06.73
2 00:05.12 +00:01.65
1 00:03.46 +00:03.46
Stop
Lap
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

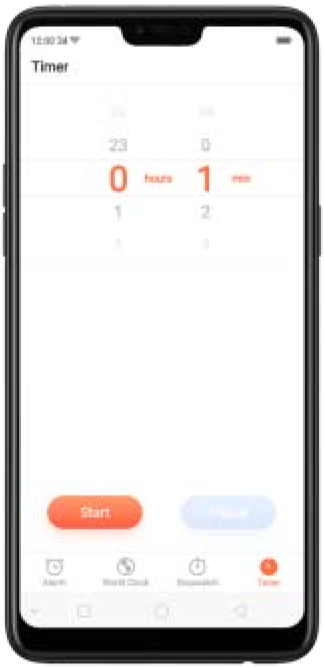

Stopwatch
00:11.00
2 00:05.12 +00:01.65
1 00:03.46 +00:03.46
Start
Reset
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

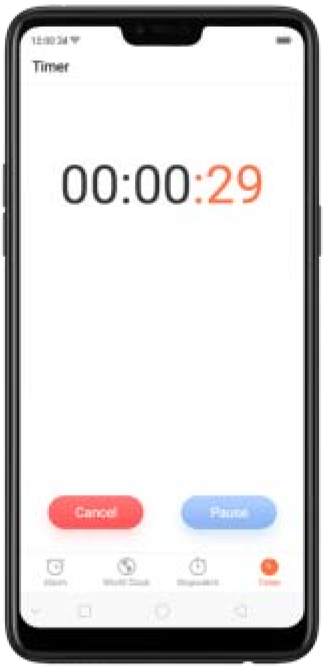
## 7.15.5.Set the timer

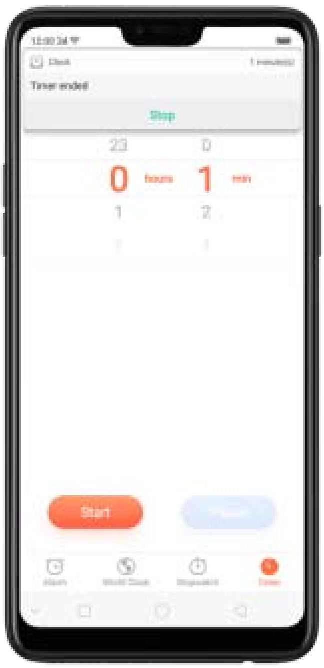
In the Clock app, you can count down from a specified time with the timer.

**Set and start the timer**. Click Timer, scroll the wheels to set the duration of time, then click Start.

If you start the timer and go to another application, the timer continues running in the background. You can cancel or pause the timer at any time before it ends. When the timer ends, your phone sounds and vibrates to prompt you that it is already time ~~to stop the timer.~~

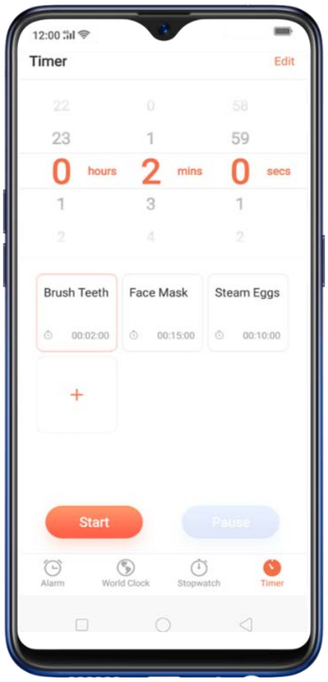

Timer
23
0 hours
1 min
1
2
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer


Timer
00:00:29
Cancel
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer


Clock
Timer ended
Stop
23
0 hours
1 min
1
2
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

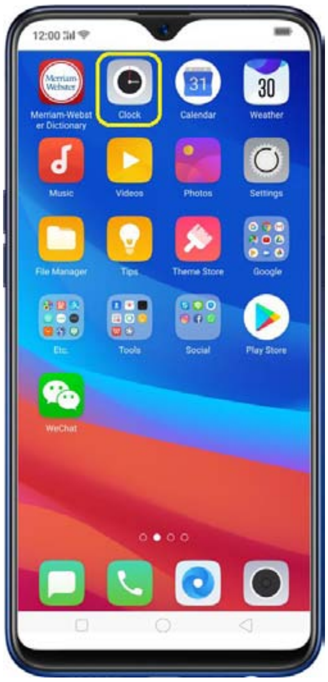
## Customizing Timer

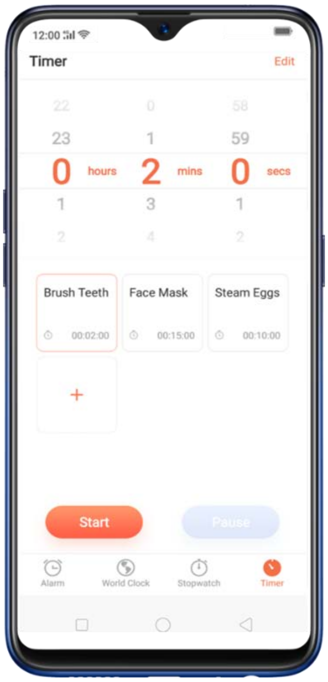
You can now set a timer or countdown for activities that you usually do. You don't need to manually set it each time you'll do something. You can simply save it on the timer and click start when you are ready.


12:00
Timer
Edit
22
0
58
23
1
59
0 hours
2 mins
0 secs
1
3
1
2
4
2
Brush Teeth
00:02:00
Face Mask
00:15:00
Steam Eggs
00:10:00
+
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

### Customizing timer

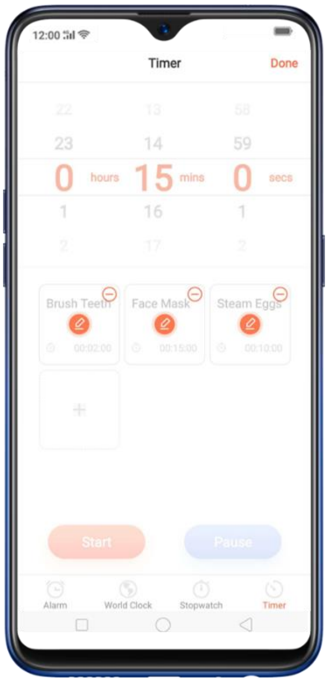
1. On your home screen, click on the **Clock app** and then click **Timer**.

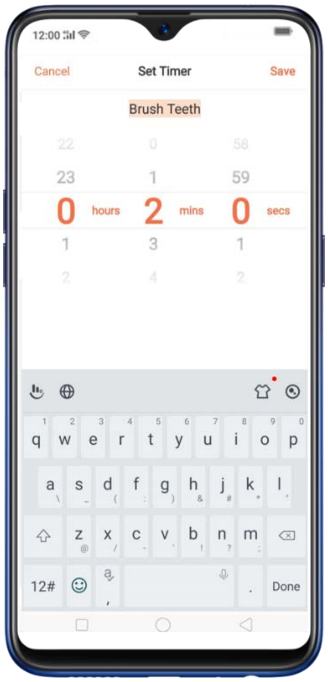

12:00
Merriam-Webster Dictionary
Clock
Calendar
Weather
Music
Videos
Photos
Settings
File Manager
Tips
Theme Store
Google
Etc.
Tools
Social
Play Store
WeChat

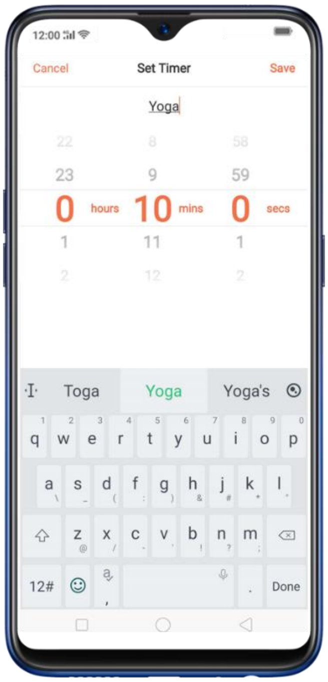

12:00
Timer
Edit
0 hours 2 mins 0 secs
Brush Teeth 00:02:00
Face Mask 00:15:00
Steam Eggs 00:10:00
+
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

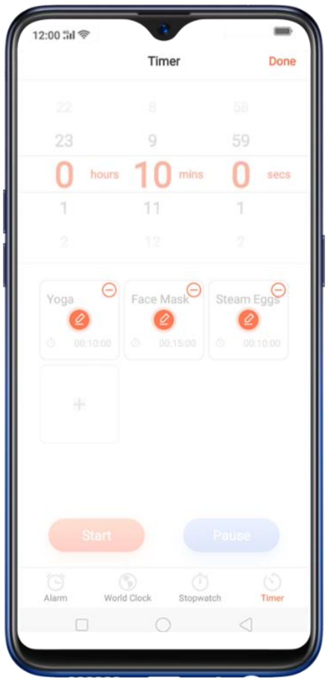
2. There are 3 available activities by default. To change it, choose the activity you want to change then click **Edit** at the top-right portion.

3. Click ✎ to edit the activity, then change the name and time. Click **Save**, then click **Done**.

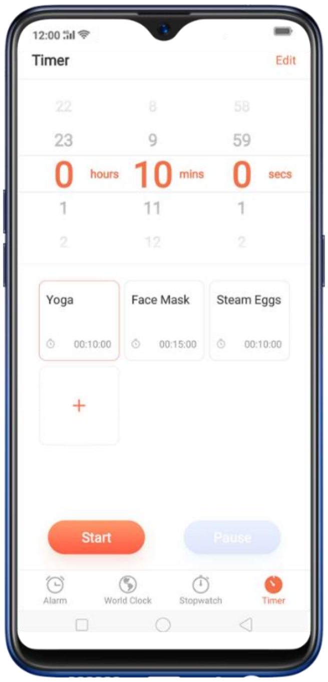

12:00
Timer
Done
0 hours 15 mins 0 secs
Brush Teeth 00:02:00
Face Mask 00:15:00
Steam Eggs 00:10:00
+
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

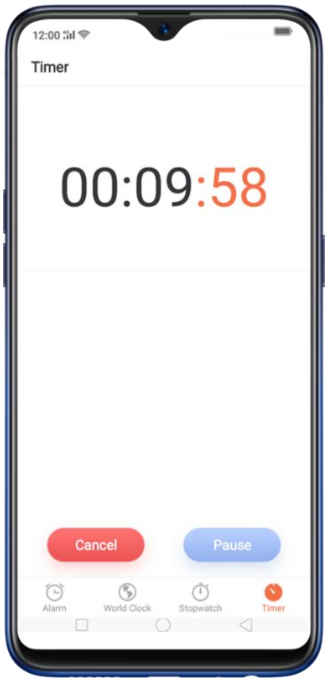

12:00
Cancel
Set Timer
Save
Brush Teeth
0 hours 2 mins 0 secs
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
12#
Done


12:00
Cancel
Set Timer
Save
Yoga
0 hours 10 mins 0 secs
Toga
Yoga
Yoga's
Done


12:00
Timer
Done
0 hours 10 mins 0 secs
Yoga
00:10:00
Face Mask
00:15:00
Steam Eggs
00:10:00
+
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

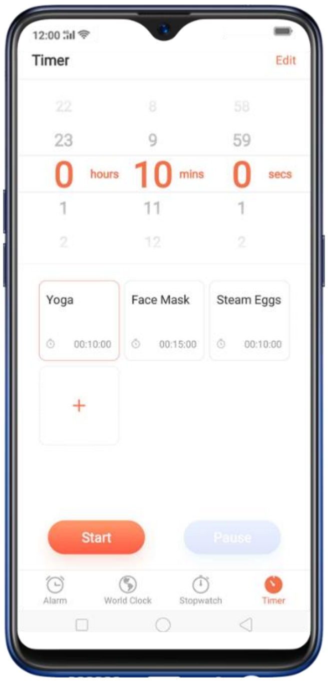
4. Click **Start** so timer starts and choose to either **Pause** or **Cancel** the timer.

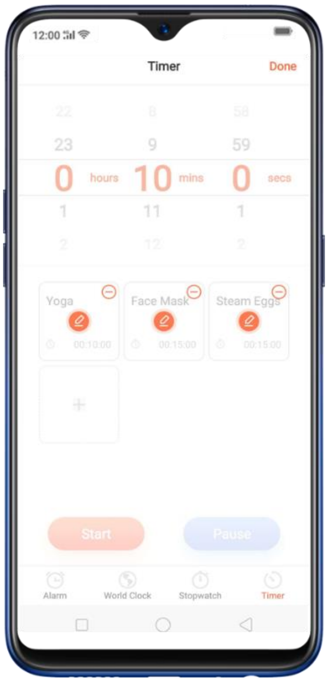

12:00
Timer
Edit
0 hours 10 mins 0 secs
Yoga
00:10:00
Face Mask
00:15:00
Steam Eggs
00:10:00
+
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

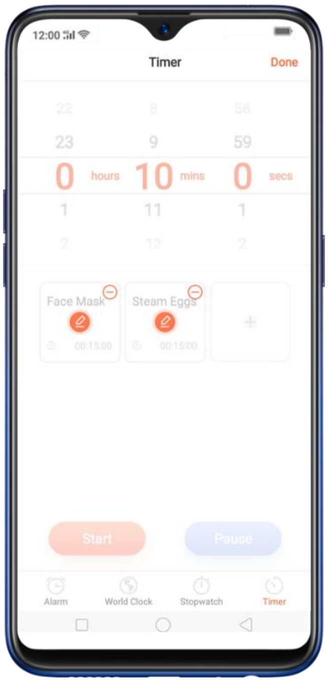

12:00
Timer
00:09:58
Cancel
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

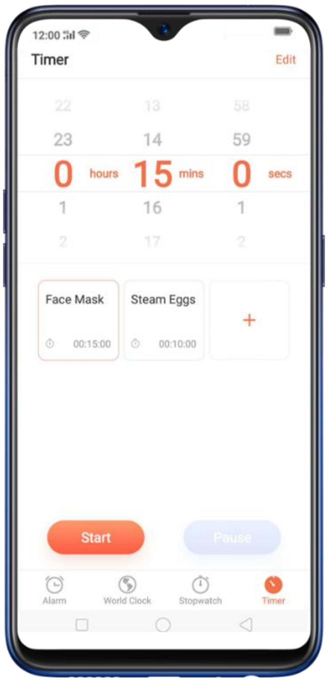
## Delete an activity

To delete an activity, click **Edit** then click ⊖, choose the activity you want to delete and click **Done**.


12:00
Timer
Edit
0 hours 10 mins 0 secs
Yoga 00:10:00
Face Mask 00:15:00
Steam Eggs 00:10:00
+
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

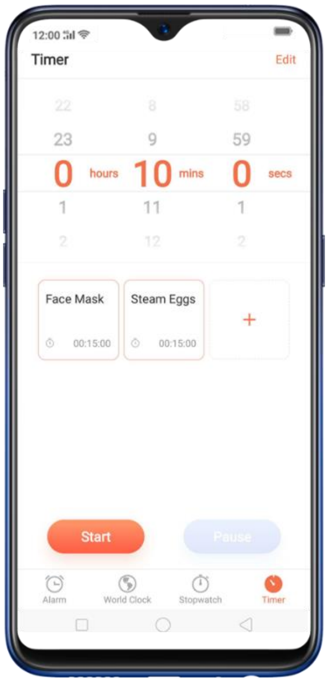

12:00
Timer
Done
0 hours 10 mins 0 secs
Yoga 00:10:00
Face Mask 00:15:00
Steam Eggs 00:15:00
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

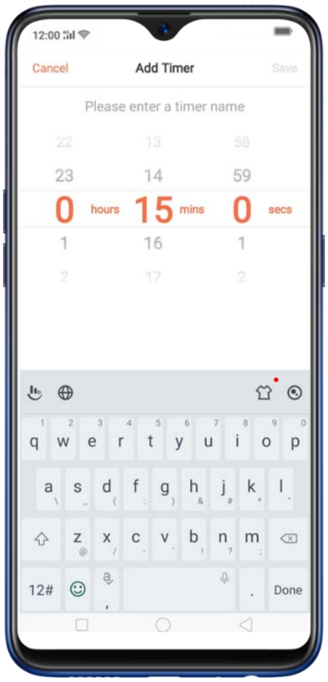

12:00
Timer
Done
0 hours 10 mins 0 secs
Face Mask 00:15:00
Steam Eggs 00:15:00
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer


12:00
Timer
Edit
0 hours 15 mins 0 secs
Face Mask 00:15:00
Steam Eggs 00:10:00
+
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

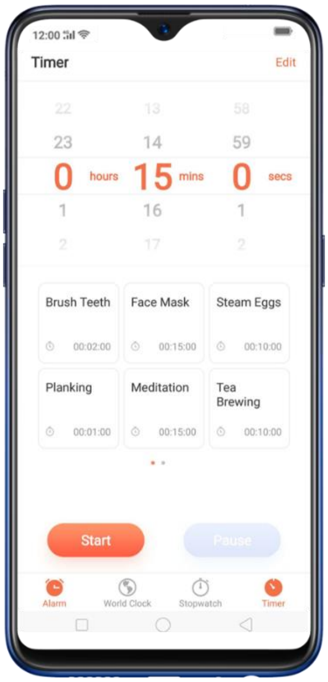
## Add an activity

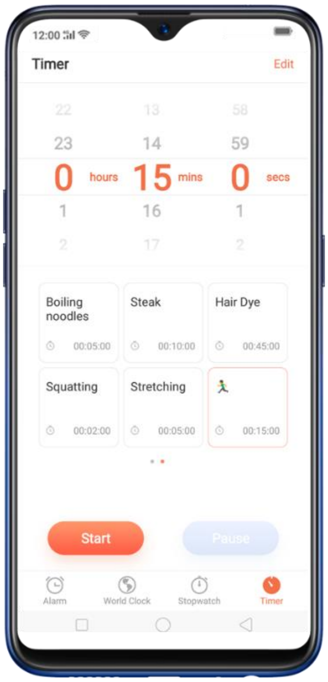
To add an activity on the timer, click +, type the timer name and the time, then click **Save**.


12:00
Timer
Edit
0 hours 10 mins 0 secs
Face Mask 00:15:00
Steam Eggs 00:15:00
+
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer


12:00
Cancel
Add Timer
Save
Please enter a timer name
0 hours 15 mins 0 secs
12#
Done

You can add up to 12 activities on the timer and you can timer name to emoji's as well.


12:00
Timer
Edit
0 hours 15 mins 0 secs
Brush Teeth 00:02:00
Face Mask 00:15:00
Steam Eggs 00:10:00
Planking 00:01:00
Meditation 00:15:00
Tea Brewing 00:10:00
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

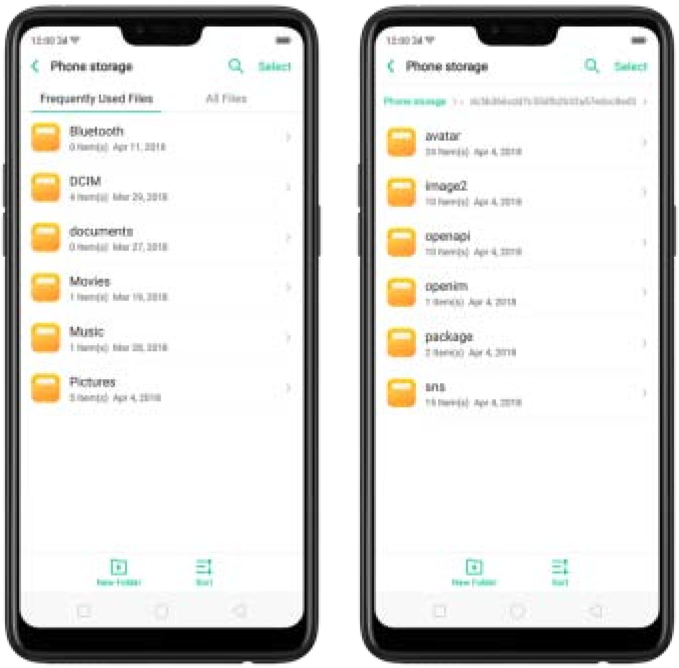

12:00
Timer
Edit
0 hours 15 mins 0 secs
Boiling noodles 00:05:00
Steak 00:10:00
Hair Dye 00:45:00
Squatting 00:02:00
Stretching 00:05:00
🏃 00:15:00
Start
Pause
Alarm
World Clock
Stopwatch
Timer

# 7.16. Files

## 7.16.2.Optimized File management

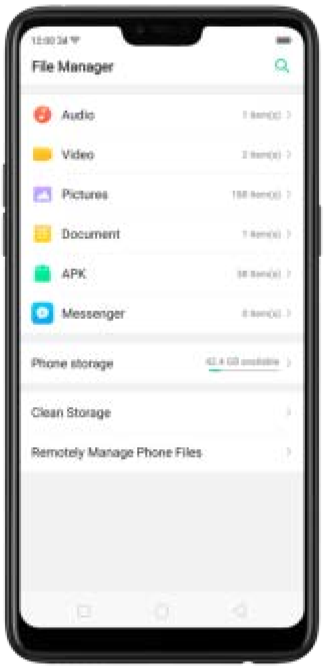
The optimized File Manager provides you a more convenient way to work with the file system and perform various operations on files and folders such as search, create, edit, rename, copy, delete, compress, batch process etc.

**Optimized search capability**. You can search for a file under the root directory, or on a specific folder if you know its general location. This will make the search more specific and faster.

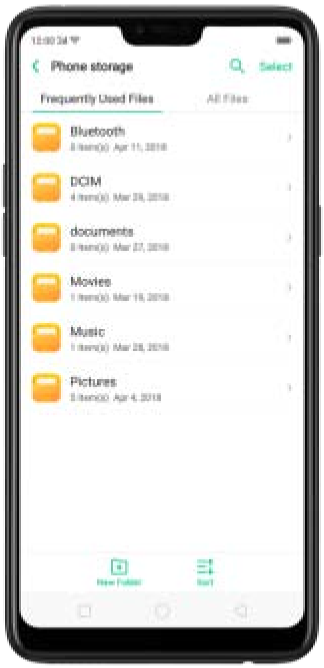

Phone storage
Select
Frequently Used Files
All Files
Bluetooth
DCIM
documents
Movies
Music
Pictures
New Folder
Sort
Phone storage
avatar
image2
openapi
openim
package
sns
New Folder
Sort

**File classification**

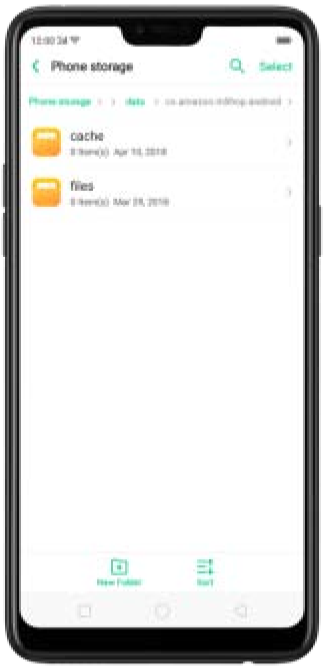
- The Files app automatically categorizes your files based on their extensions so you can browse them more clearly and conveniently. Options vary by apps you've downloaded. For example, if you download Messenger, Messenger becomes another option for classification.


File Manager
Audio
Video
Pictures
Document
APK
Messenger
Phone storage
Clean Storage
Remotely Manage Phone Files

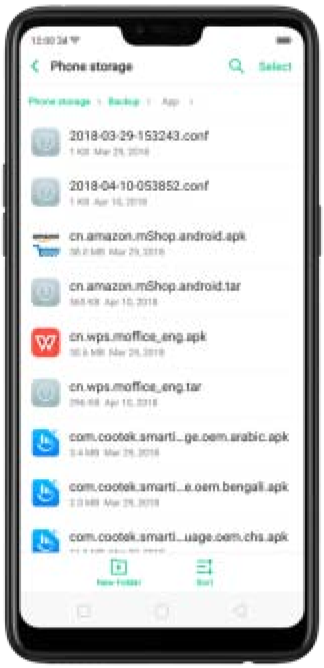
- Under Phone storage, your frequently used files will be listed separately so that you can quickly look up to them later.

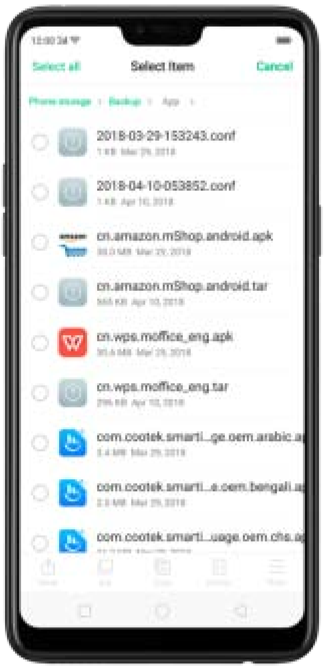

Phone storage
Select
Frequently Used Files
All Files
Bluetooth
DCIM
documents
Movies
Music
Pictures
New Folder
Sort

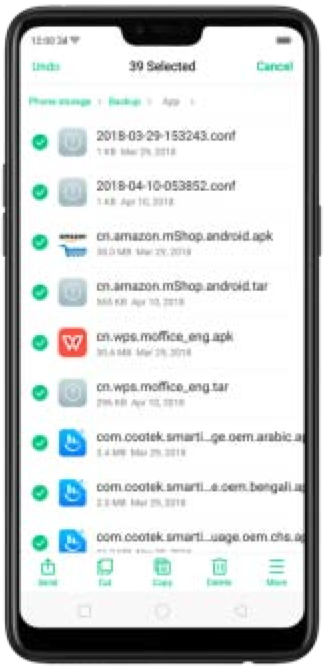
- In **[Phone storage]** > **[All Files]** > **[Android]** > **[data]**, select an app folder, you can see that app files and the files you downloaded from the app are saved in different folders, so you can quickly find the files you need.


Phone storage
Select
cache
files
New Folder
Sort

**Select All feature**. Select All feature is added in Files, so you can process the files in batches.


Phone storage
Select
2018-03-29-153243.conf
2018-04-10-053852.conf
cn.amazon.mShop.android.apk
cn.amazon.mShop.android.tar
cn.wps.moffice_eng.apk
cn.wps.moffice_eng.tar
com.cootek.smarti...ge.oem.arabic.apk
com.cootek.smarti...e.oem.bengali.apk
com.cootek.smarti...uage.oem.chs.apk
New Folder
Sort

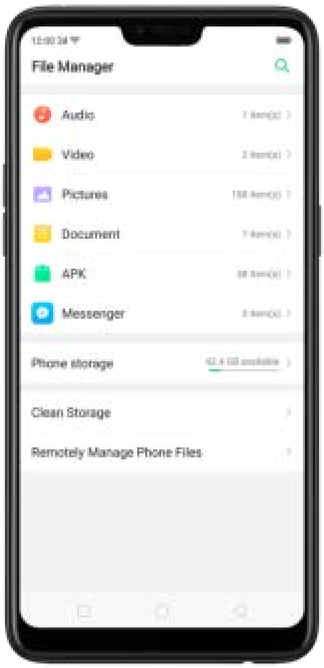

Select all
Select Item
Cancel


Undo
39 Selected
Cancel
Send
Cut
Copy
Delete
More

## 7.16.3.Fast file browsing

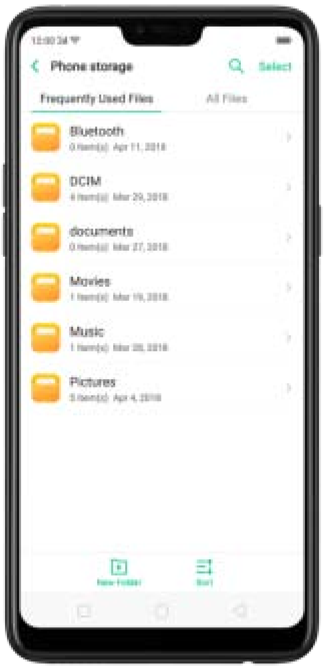
File Manager automatically categorizes your files based on their extensions so you can browse them more clearly and conveniently.

**Fast file browsing**. Click Files, then you'll see all five categories, including Audio, Video, Pictures, Document, and APK. Options vary by apps you've downloaded. For example, if you download Messenger, Messenger becomes another option for classification. Click a category to browse and manage files.


File Manager
Audio
1 item(s)
Video
2 item(s)
Pictures
158 item(s)
Document
1 item(s)
APK
38 item(s)
Messenger
8 item(s)
Phone storage
42.4 GB available
Clean Storage
Remotely Manage Phone Files

## 7.16.4.View and manage files

File Manager provides you various ways to manage your files and folders.


Phone storage
Select
Frequently Used Files
All Files
Bluetooth
0 item(s) Apr 11, 2018
DCIM
4 item(s) Mar 29, 2018
documents
0 item(s) Mar 27, 2018
Movies
1 item(s) Mar 19, 2018
Music
1 item(s) Mar 20, 2018
Pictures
5 item(s) Apr 4, 2018
New Folder
Sort

**Frequently Used Files.** You can view the folders which files are commonly used. Click any ~~one~~ to enter and choose the file to manage.

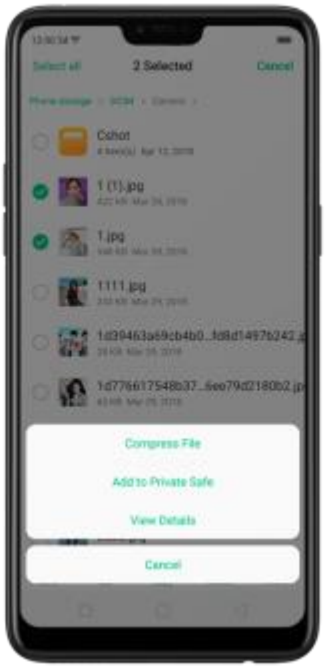
**Search a document or folder**. Click Phone Storage, click All Files, click the search icon, then enter the name of a document or folder.

**Create a new folder**. Click New Folder. Enter the folder name, then click Save.

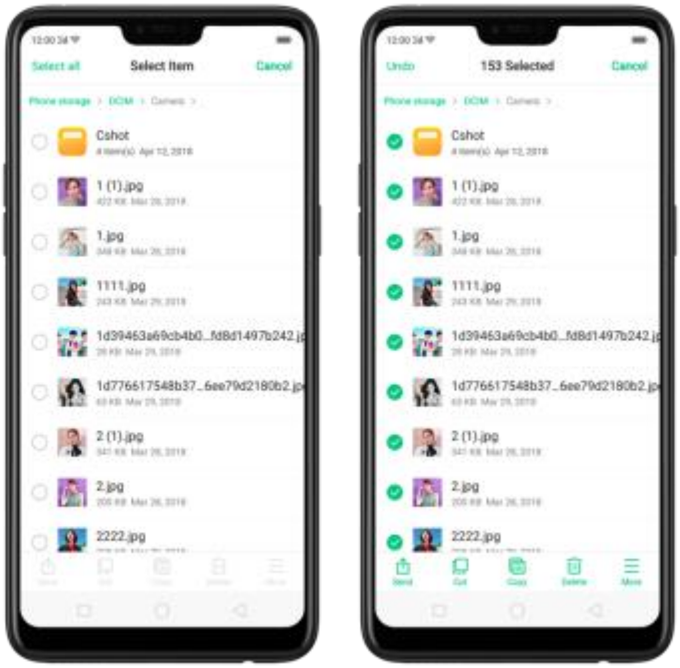
**Sort files and folders**. Click Sort, then choose to sort your files and folders by name, size, type or the time they were generated.

**Send, cut, copy, delete, compress, show details, rename a document or a folder**. Click Select, choose the document or folder, then choose an option.

**Move documents to Private Safe**. Click **Select**, choose the documents, click **More**, then click **Add to Private Safe**. Folders cannot be moved to Safe. See Private Safe.


Select all
2 Selected
Cancel
Cshot
1 (1).jpg
1.jpg
1111.jpg
1d39463a69cb4b0...fd8d1497b242.j
1d776617548b37...6ee79d2180b2.jp
Compress File
Add to Private Safe
View Details
Cancel

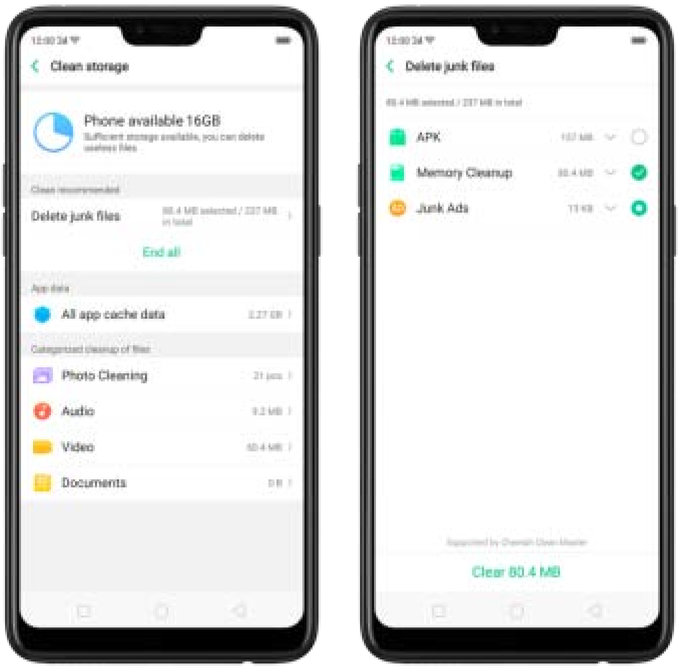
**Select all.** In any page when you click Select, you can quickly choose all by clicking Select all ~~in~~ on the top left corner.


Select all
Select Item
Cancel
Phone storage > DCIM > Camera >
Cshot
1 (1).jpg
1.jpg
1111.jpg
1d39463a69cb4b0...fd8d1497b242.j
1d776617548b37...6ee79d2180b2.jp
2 (1).jpg
2.jpg
2222.jpg
Undo
153 Selected
Cancel
Phone storage > DCIM > Camera >
Cshot
1 (1).jpg
1.jpg
1111.jpg
1d39463a69cb4b0...fd8d1497b242.j
1d776617548b37...6ee79d2180b2.jp
2 (1).jpg
2.jpg
2222.jpg

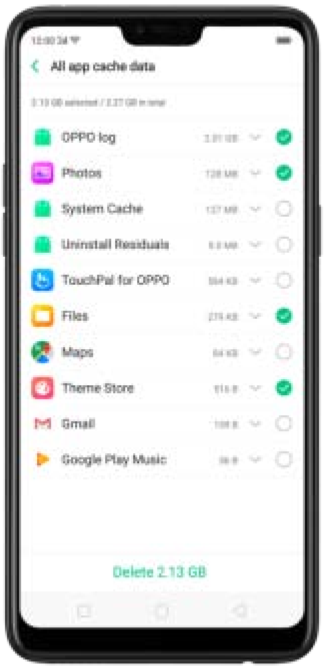
# 7.16.5.Clean Storage

In File Manager, ~~click~~ Clean Storage will let you use the cleanup feature in Phone Manager directly.

**Delete junk files**. Click Phone Manager, then click Clean storage. Click **End all** to delete all kinds of junk files. You can also choose files to be deleted.


Clean storage
Phone available 16GB
Delete junk files
End all
All app cache data
Photo Cleaning
Audio
Video
Documents
Delete junk files
APK
Memory Cleanup
Junk Ads
Clear 80.4 MB

**Delete app data**. Click All app cache data, select the apps that has caches, then click **Delete**. The action cannot be undone.


All app cache data
OPPO log
Photos
System Cache
Uninstall Residuals
TouchPal for OPPO
Files
Maps
Theme Store
Gmail
Google Play Music
Delete 2.13 GB

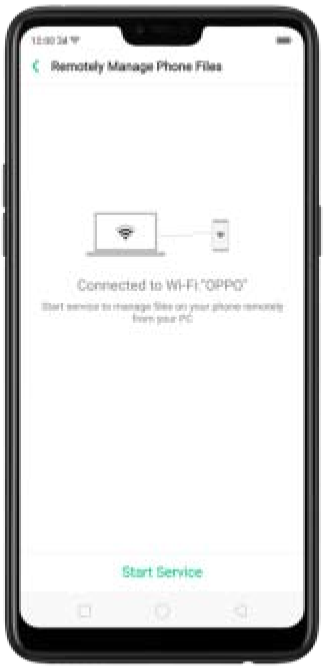
**Free up more storage space**. You can delete your unnecessary files on the phone, including photos, audio, videos, and documents.

## 7.16.6.Remotely Manage Phone Files

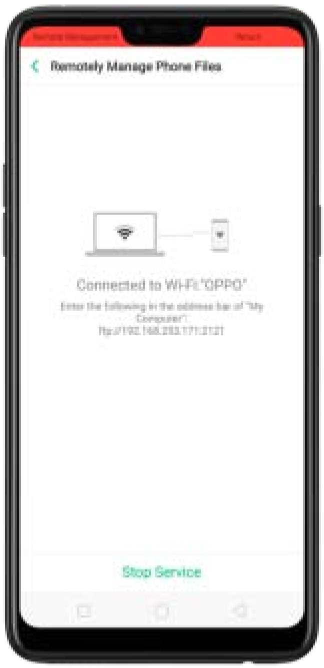
Remote Management can turn your phone into an FTP server so you can view and download files stored on your phone remotely from your computer.

**Remotely view and download files**. Click File Manager, then click Remotely Manage Phone Files. Connect to a Wi-Fi network, then click Start Service. Search the URL displayed on your phone screen with your computer, then you can view your phone's file system and download files directly to your computer.

**Note**: Make sure that your phone and computer are connected to the same Wi-Fi network.


Remotely Manage Phone Files
Connected to Wi-Fi "OPPO"
Start Service

Start service to manage files on your phone remotely from your PC

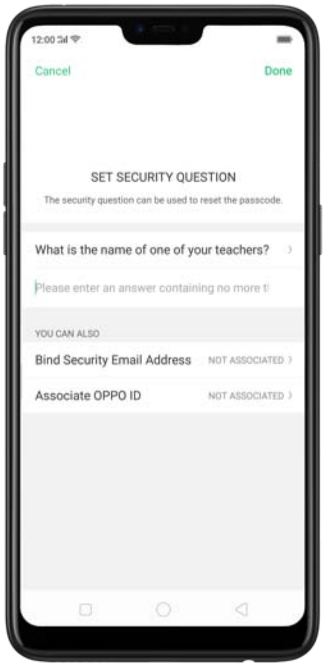

Remotely Manage Phone Files
Connected to Wi-Fi "OPPO"
Stop Service

Enter the following in the address bar of "My Computer":
ftp://192.168.253.171:2121

## 7.16.7.Private Safe

### Start Using Private Safe.

1. Please set the Privacy passcode first before using this application. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Fingerprint, Face, & Passcode**] > [**Lockscreen passcode**] and enter your desired encryption method. You can also click **SET PASSCODE** and enter your desired encryption method. You will also be asked for a security question as an added layer of security for your privacy.



12:00

Cancel Done

SET SECURITY QUESTION

The security question can be used to reset the passcode.

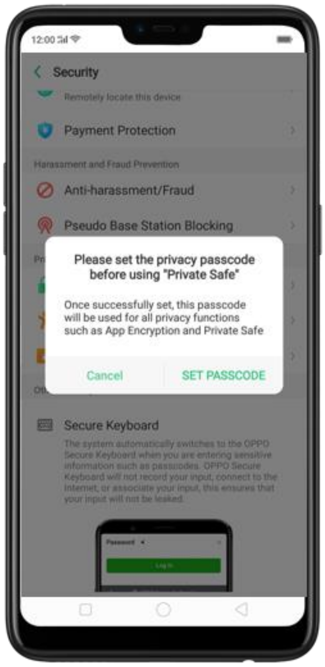
What is the name of one of your teachers?

Please enter an answer containing no more t

YOU CAN ALSO

Bind Security Email Address NOT ASSOCIATED

Associate OPPO ID NOT ASSOCIATED



12:00

Security

Remotely locate this device

Payment Protection

Harassment and Fraud Prevention

Anti-harassment/Fraud

Pseudo Base Station Blocking

Please set the privacy passcode before using "Private Safe"

Once successfully set, this passcode will be used for all privacy functions such as App Encryption and Private Safe

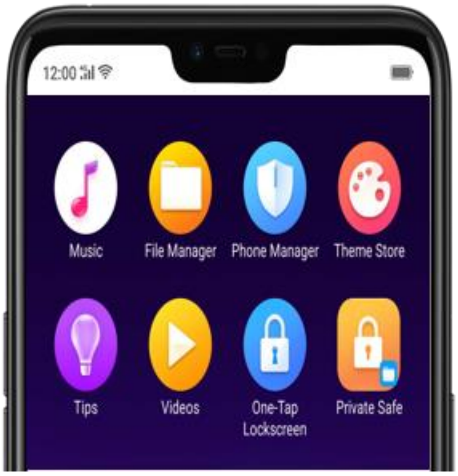
Cancel SET PASSCODE

Secure Keyboard

The system automatically switches to the OPPO Secure Keyboard when you are entering sensitive information such as passcodes. OPPO Secure Keyboard will not record your input, connect to the Internet, or associate your input, this ensures that your input will not be leaked.

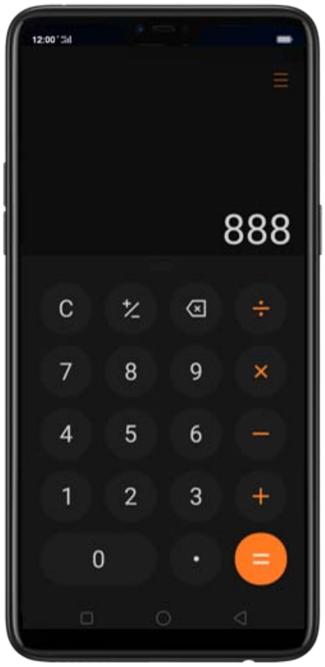
2. **Manage files on Private Safe**: Go to [**Settings**] > [**Security**] enter the passcode that you have set, and then manage files that you want to be kept private.

FIles that can be added in Private safe are **Photos**, **Audio**, **Documents**, and other **Files** that are supported by the app.
You can also create a shortcut on your home screen for easy access.



# 7.17. Calculator

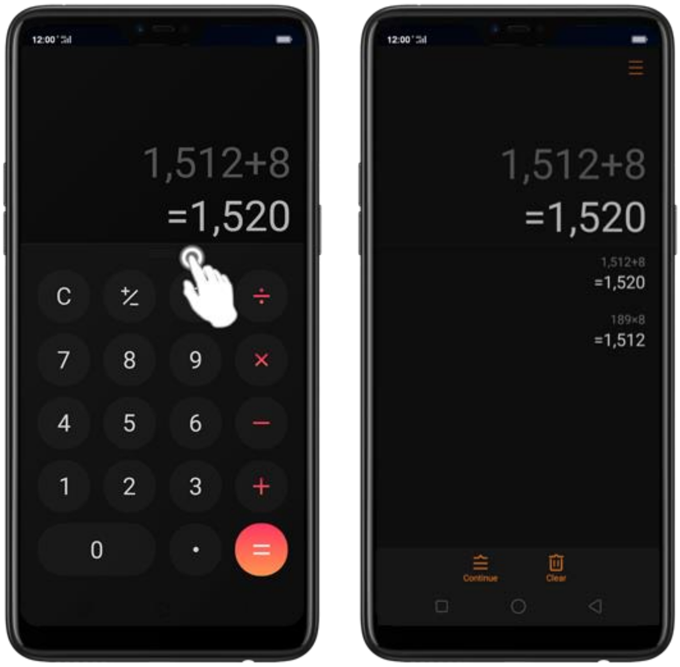
The new Calculator app not only combines the standard and scientific calculators but added useful functions which will come handy in time.



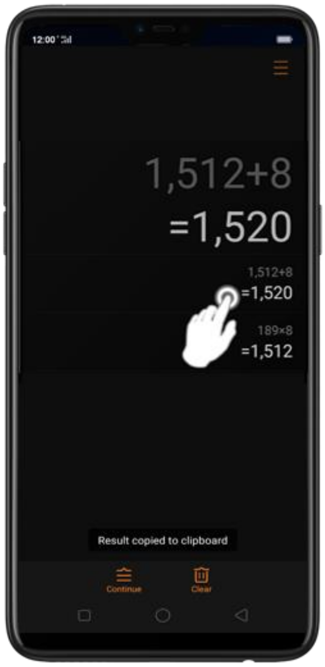
**Delete the last digit.** Click ⌫.

**Clear the calculation results.** Click C .

**Hide or show the keypad.** Click ▬ in the middle of the screen to hide the keypad. Click Calculate or the calculation formula to resume.

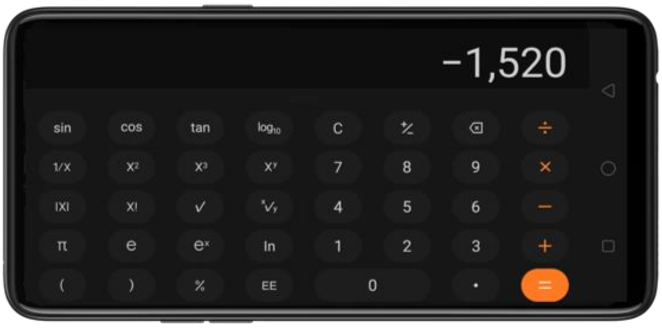

12:00
1,512+8
=1,520
C
+/−
÷
7
8
9
×
4
5
6
−
1
2
3
+
0
·
=
12:00
1,512+8
=1,520
1,512+8
=1,520
189×8
=1,512
Continue
Clear

**Copy a calculation result to clipboard.** Long press the results and it will be copied to the clipboard. You can click Continue to continue calculating or click Clear if you want to clear everything and start a new one.

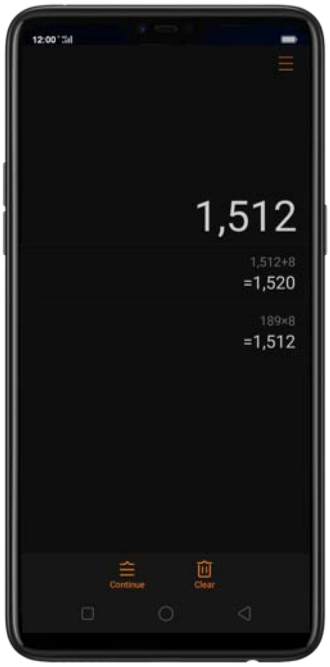

12:00
1,512+8
=1,520
1,512+8
=1,520
189×8
=1,512
Continue
Clear

Result copied to clipboard

**Use the scientific calculator.** Rotate your phone to landscape orientation.


−1,520
sin
cos
tan
log₁₀
C
⁺⁄₋
÷
1/X
X²
X³
Xʸ
7
8
9
×
IXI
X!
√
ʸ√ₓ
4
5
6
−
π
e
eˣ
ln
1
2
3
+
(
)
%
EE
0
•
=

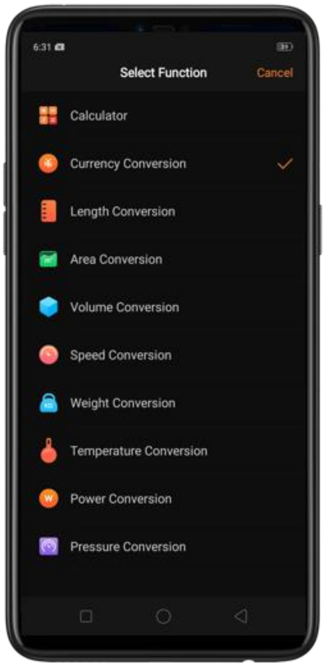
**New functions in Calculator.** There are a lot of important functions that has been added. Click ☰ at the top right portion of your calculator then select a function that you would like to use.


12:00
Continue
Clear

1,512

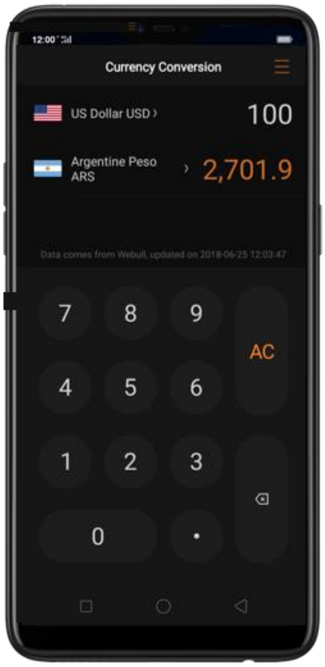
1,512+8
=1,520

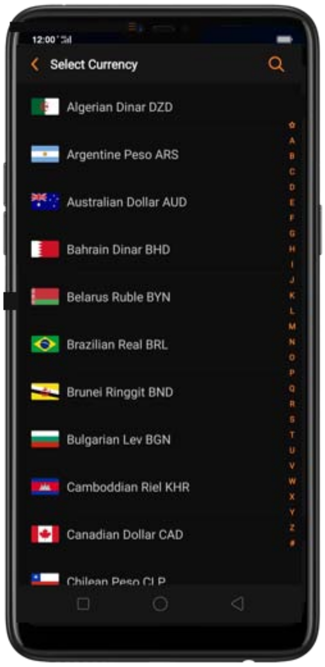
189×8
=1,512


6:31
Select Function
Cancel
Calculator
Currency Conversion ✓
Length Conversion
Area Conversion
Volume Conversion
Speed Conversion
Weight Conversion
Temperature Conversion
Power Conversion
Pressure Conversion

## The New Functions

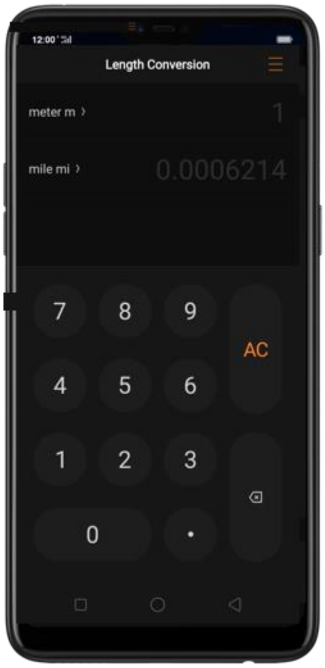
**Currency Conversion** – if you want to know what are the current real-time conversions. Click ❯ to select the currencies you would like to convert. It is on alphabetical order with their national flags beside them. You can also click 🔍 to search for the country or currency that you would like to convert. Click ⌫ to delete the last digit and click AC to clear results. Long press the result and it will be copied to the clipboard

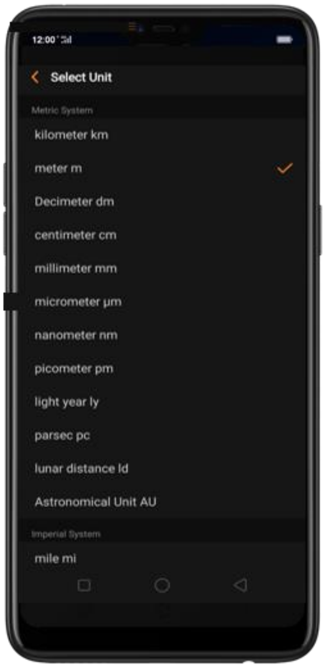

12:00
Currency Conversion
US Dollar USD ›
100
Argentine Peso ARS
›
2,701.9
Data comes from Webull, updated on 2018-06-25 12:03:47
7
8
9
AC
4
5
6
1
2
3
0
•

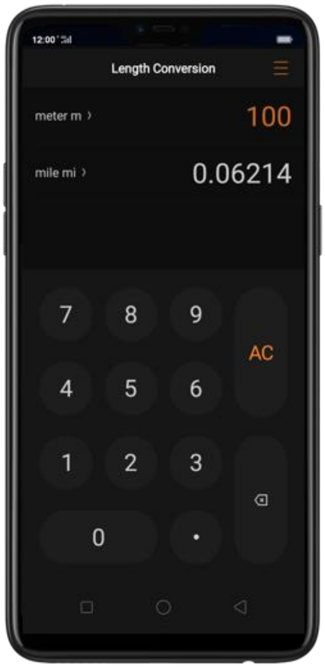

12:00
Select Currency
Algerian Dinar DZD
Argentine Peso ARS
Australian Dollar AUD
Bahrain Dinar BHD
Belarus Ruble BYN
Brazilian Real BRL
Brunei Ringgit BND
Bulgarian Lev BGN
Camboddian Riel KHR
Canadian Dollar CAD
Chilean Peso CLP

**Note:** Given that the exchange rates are volatile and change every second, you need to have an internet connection for this to function and to get the real-time conversions.

- Length, Area, Volume, Speed, Weight, Temperature, Power, and Pressure Conversions – Click › to select the unit you want to convert. Click ⌫ to delete the last digit and click AC to clear results. Long press the result and it will be copied to the clipboard.


12:00
Length Conversion
meter m ›
1
mile mi ›
0.0006214
7
8
9
AC
4
5
6
1
2
3
0
•


12:00
Select Unit
Metric System
kilometer km
meter m
Decimeter dm
centimeter cm
millimeter mm
micrometer μm
nanometer nm
picometer pm
light year ly
parsec pc
lunar distance ld
Astronomical Unit AU
Imperial System
mile mi

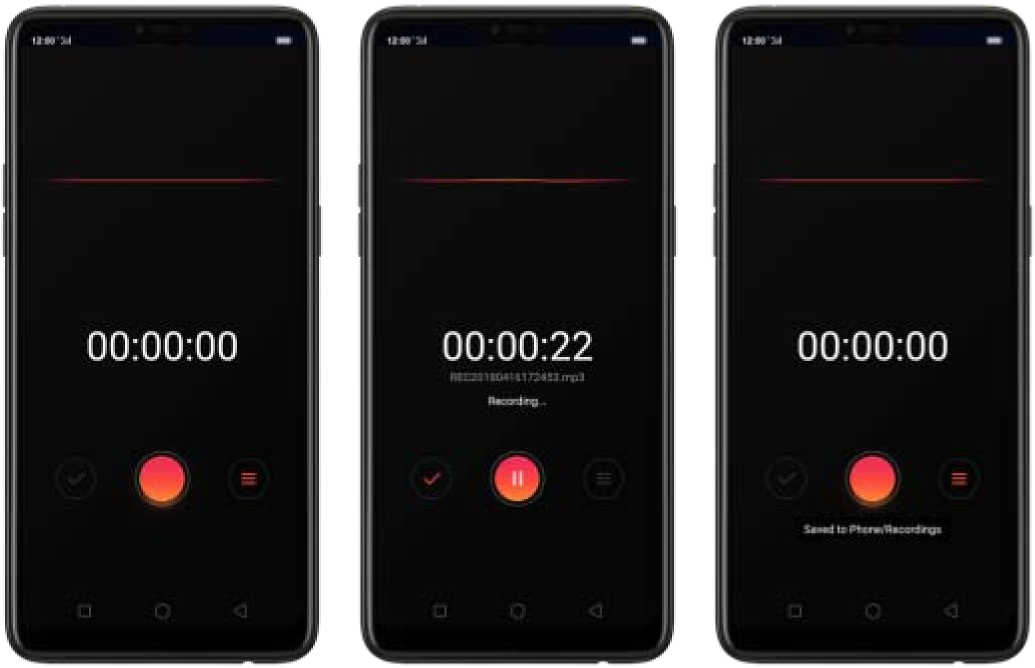

12:00
Length Conversion
meter m ›
100
mile mi ›
0.06214
7
8
9
AC
4
5
6
1
2
3
0
•

# 7.18. Sound Recording

## 7.18.2.Recorder

With the Recorder app, you can use your phone's built-in microphone to record sounds when you need it.

**Make a sound recording**. Open Recorder, click ● to start recording. Click ⏸ to pause or continue. Click ✓ to stop and save the recording.

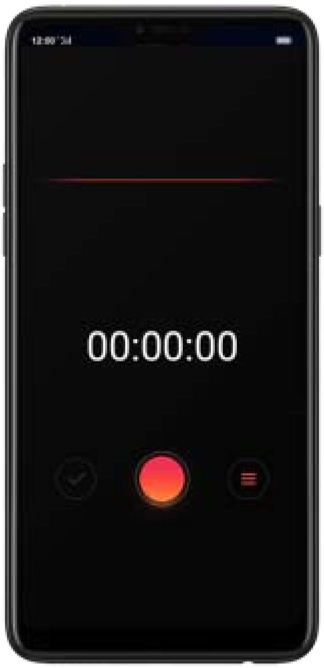

00:00:00
00:00:22
Recording...
00:00:00
Saved to Phone/Recordings

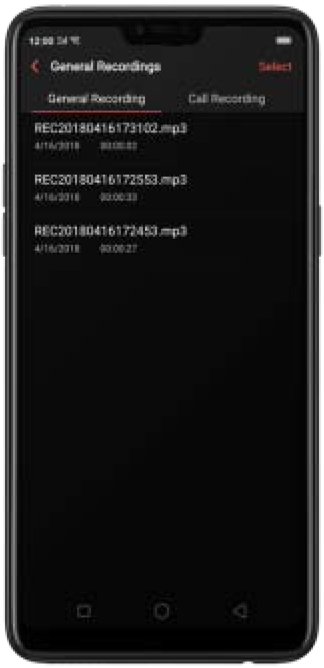
If you start the sound recorder and go to another application, the sound recorder continues running in the background. To return to Sound Recorder, click the red bar at the top of the screen.

Google
31
Calendar
Clock
16°
Weather
Settings
Music
Videos
Photos
File Manager
Tips
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Play Store
Google
Tools

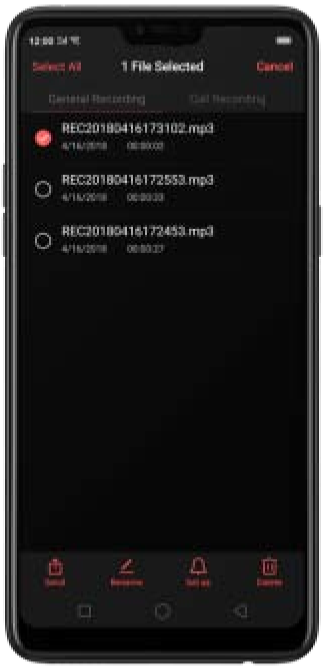
## 7.18.3.Manage recordings

**Play the sound back**. Open Recorder, then click ≡ . You'll see all the recordings on your phone including general recordings and call recordings. Click a recording to play it back.

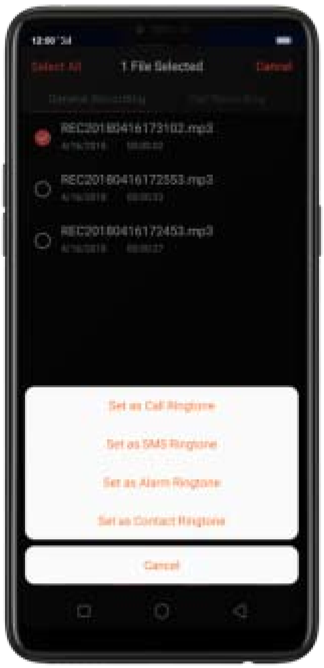

12:00
00:00:00


12:00
General Recordings
Select
General Recording
Call Recording
REC20180416173102.mp3
4/16/2018
REC20180416172553.mp3
4/16/2018
REC20180416172453.mp3
4/16/2018

**Send, rename or delete a recording**. Click Select, choose the recording, then choose an option.


Select All
1 File Selected
Cancel
General Recording
Call Recording
REC20180416173102.mp3
REC20180416172553.mp3
REC20180416172453.mp3

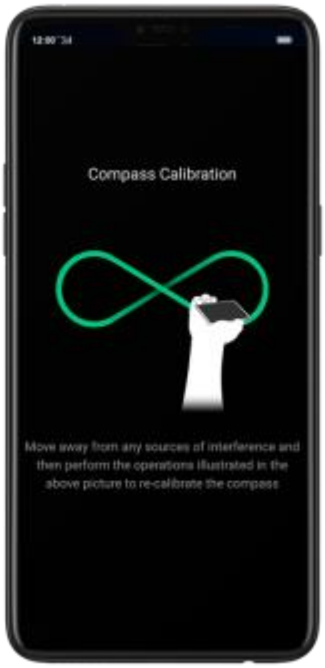
**Set the recording as ringtones**. Click Select, choose the recording, click Set as Ringtone, then set the recording as the call, SMS, alarm or contact ringtone.


Select All
1 File Selected
Cancel
REC20180416173102.mp3
REC20180416172553.mp3
REC20180416172453.mp3
Set as Call Ringtone
Set as SMS Ringtone
Set as Alarm Ringtone
Set as Contact Ringtone
Cancel

## 7.19. Compass

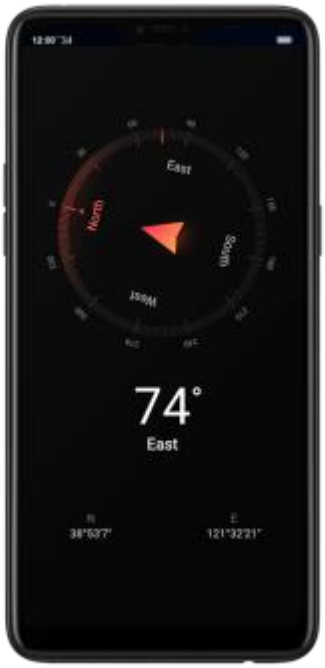
You can use the compass app to quickly find the direction you're facing.

**Calibrate the compass when prompted**. Move away from the interference and spin your phone in the pattern of an infinity symbol.


12:00
Compass Calibration

Move away from any sources of interference and then perform the operations illustrated in the above picture to re-calibrate the compass

**Find your direction**. Turn on Location Service first, then click Tools folder on the Home screen, click Compass, and you can quickly find your direction, see your latitude and longitude.


12:00
East
North
South
West
74°
East
N
38°53'7"
E
121°32'21"

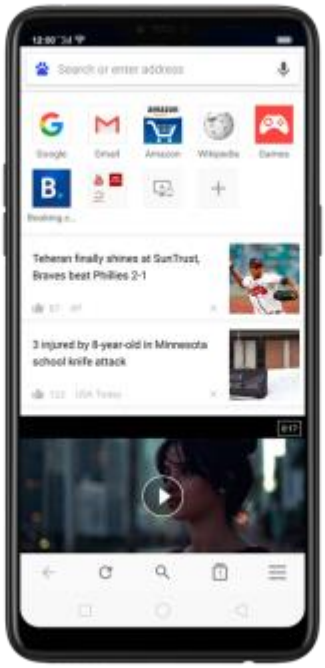
# 7.20. Chrome

## 7.20.2.Search the web

The Browser lets you see webpages just as they were designed to be seen in computer-based browsers. Pinch the screen to zoom in and out; rotate the phone sideways for a wider view. You can also add page icons and bookmarks for quick accesse~~s.~~

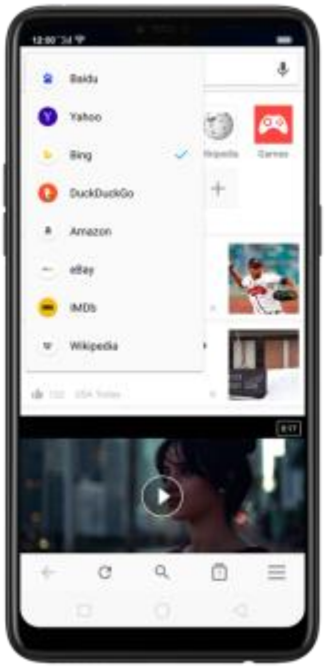
**Search the web**. Click the icon on the left side of the search bar to change the search engine or website. Click 🎤 and say whatever you want to search for, or click the search bar, type the content or web address, then click a matching result under the search bar, or click 🔍, or click Go on the lower-right corner of the keyboard.

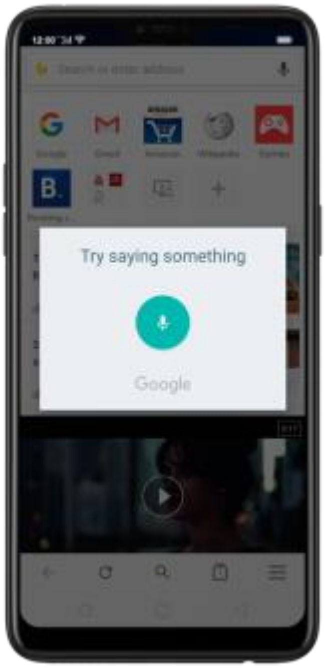
As you type, any web address on your bookmarks or history list that contains those letters appears below. Click a web address to visit its webpage.

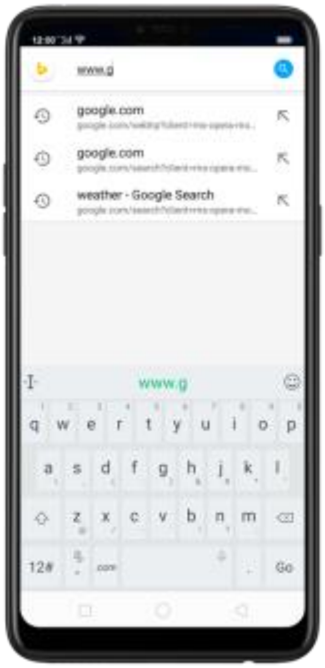

12:00
Search or enter address
Google
Gmail
Amazon
Wikipedia
Games
Booking.c...

Teheran finally shines at SunTrust, Braves beat Phillies 2-1

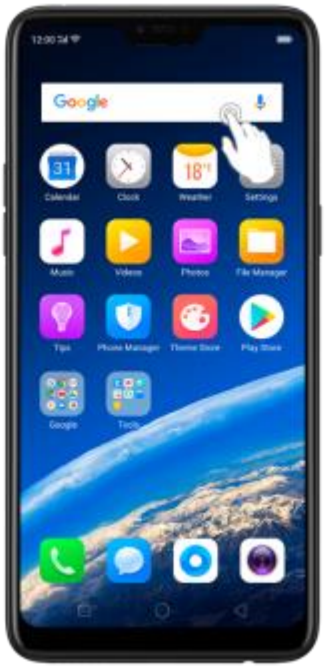
3 injured by 8-year-old in Minnesota school knife attack

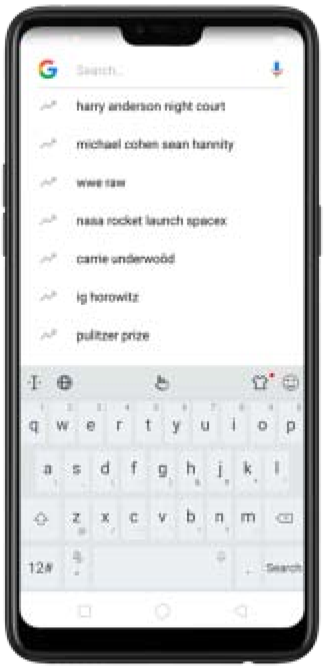

12:00
Baidu
Yahoo
Bing
DuckDuckGo
Amazon
eBay
IMDb
Wikipedia
Wikipedia
Games


Try saying something
Google


www.g
google.com
google.com
weather - Google Search
www.g
Go

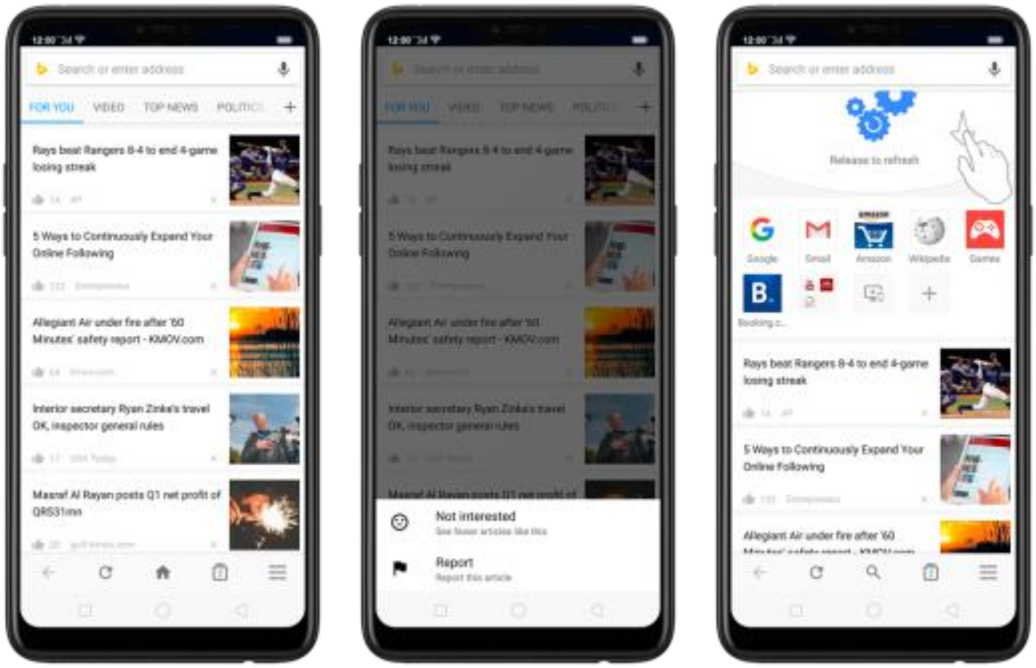
You can also click the Google search bar on the Home screen, then type or say whatever you want to search for.




Search...
harry anderson night court
michael cohen sean hannity
wwe raw
nasa rocket launch spacex
carrie underwood
ig horowitz
pulitzer prize
Search

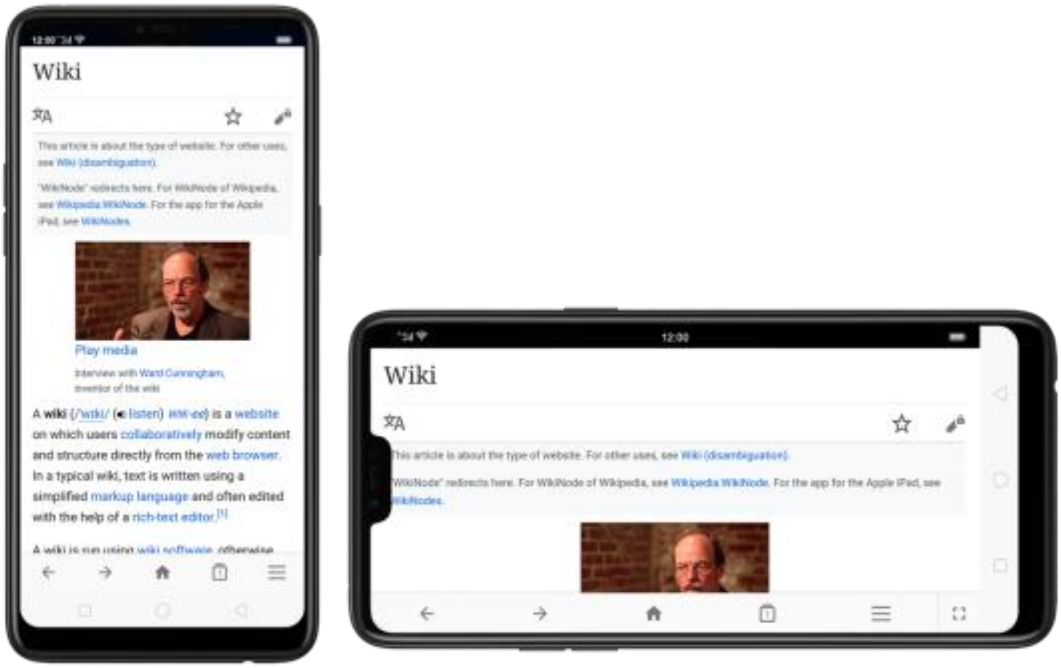
**Erase all the text on the address field**. Click the address field, then click ⌫.
**Open a suggested article**. The browser will suggest several hot topic articles that you might be interested ~~in~~ on its home page. Click an article to view it. To delete articles that you dislike, click ×. Scroll to the top of the home page and pull down

to refresh the articles.


FOR YOU
VIDEO
TOP NEWS
POLITICS
Not interested
Report
Release to refresh
Google
Gmail
Amazon
Wikipedia
Games

## 7.20.3.Browse the web

**View a webpage in widescreen orientation**. Swipe up from the bottom of the screen to open Control Center, then turn off **[Portrait Orientation Lock]**. Rotate the phone sideways. The Browser automatically reorients and expands the page.


Wiki
Play media

**Zoom in or out**. Pinch to zoom in or out. When you browse a website which has a mobile-specific view that prevents you from pinching in to zoom, you can use the

Force enable zoom feature to override the site's demands. Click ☰, click **[Settings]**, then turn on **[Force enable zoom]**. You can now pinch to zoom wherever you want, whether the website technically supports it or not.

**Scroll around the page**. Drag up, down, or sideways. When scrolling, you can touch and drag anywhere on the page without activating any links.

**Follow a link on a webpage**. Click the link. Many images also have links. A link can take you to another place on the web, open another app, call a phone number, and more.

**Return to the previous or next webpage**. Click ← or → at the bottom of the screen.

**Return to the Home page**. Click ⌂.

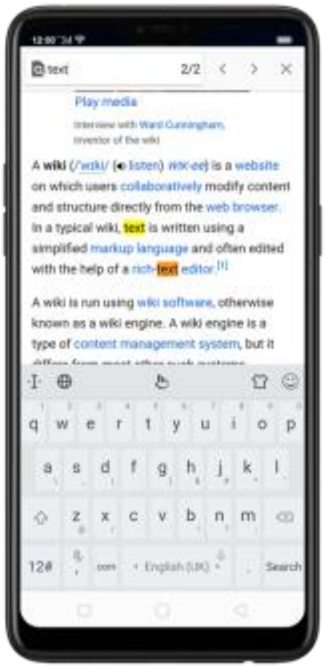
**Reload a webpage**. Click ↻.

**Share a webpage**. Click ⋮, click Share, then choose how to send your webpage.

**Translate a webpage**. When at the foreign language website, click ⋮, click Translate, then the browser automatically translates the language to your default language. Translating the webpage takes time, so be patient.

To set your default language, click ☰, click **[Settings]**, then click **[Country and language]**.

**Find in page**. Click ⋮, click Find in Page, enter the text, then the browser will find text matches on the current webpage.

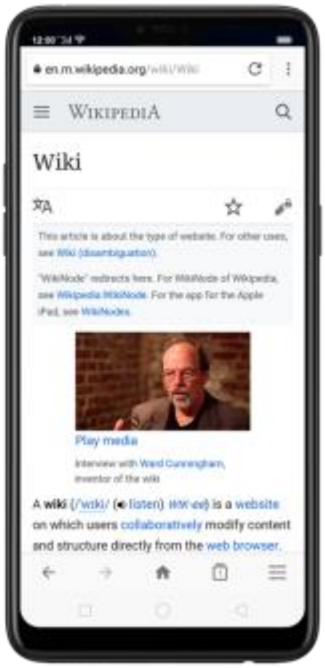


Interview with Ward Cunningham, inventor of the wiki

A **wiki** (/ˈwɪki/ ( listen) WIK-ee) is a website on which users collaboratively modify content and structure directly from the web browser. In a typical wiki, text is written using a simplified markup language and often edited with the help of a rich-text editor.[1]

A wiki is run using wiki software, otherwise known as a wiki engine. A wiki engine is a type of content management system, but it

**Open a new tab**. Click ⧉, then click ＋ to open a new tab.


en.m.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki

WIKIPEDIA

Wiki

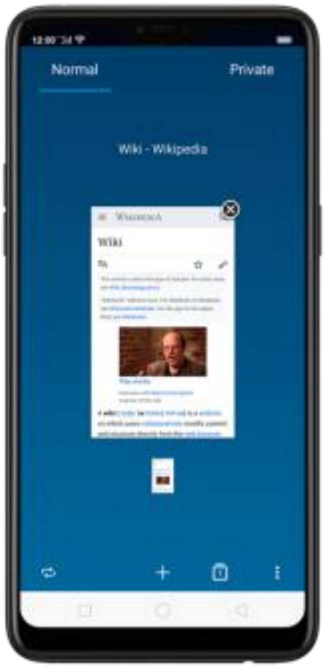
This article is about the type of website. For other uses, see Wiki (disambiguation).

"WikiNode" redirects here. For WikiNode of Wikipedia, see Wikipedia:WikiNode. For the app for the Apple iPad, see WikiNodes.

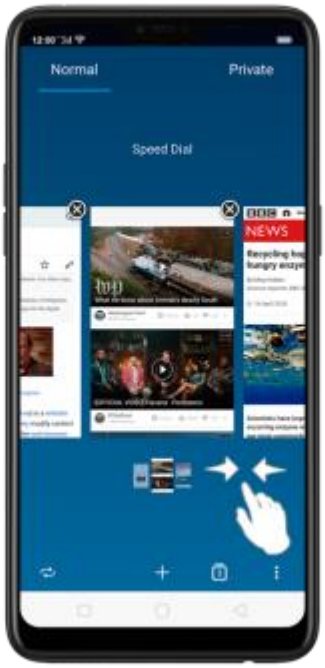
Play media

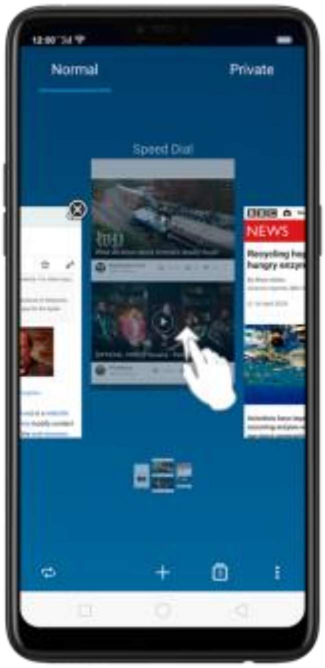
Interview with Ward Cunningham, inventor of the wiki

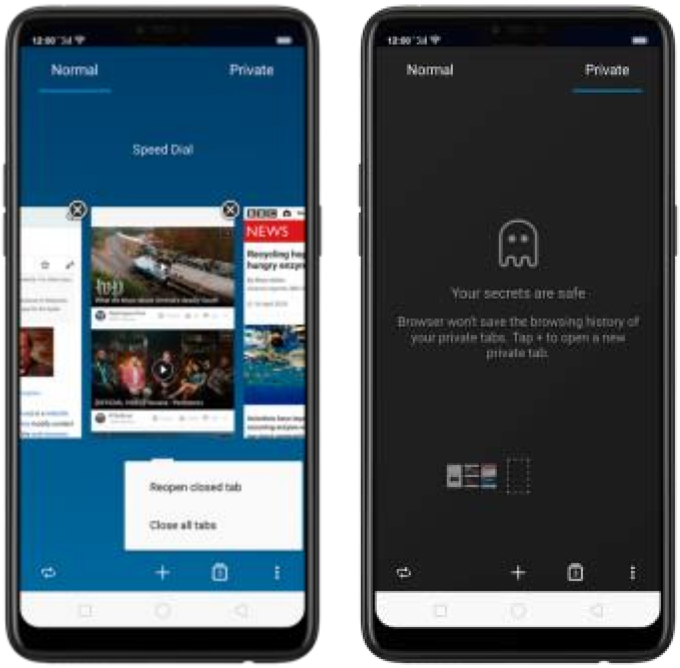
A wiki (/ˈwɪki/ (listen) WIK-ee) is a website on which users collaboratively modify content and structure directly from the web browser.


Normal
Private
Wiki - Wikipedia

**View all open tabs**. If you open three tabs, for example, click 3, then swipe left or right. To go to another tab that's open, swipe to the tab, then click it. To close a tab, swipe up on the tap, or click ⊗. To reopen the last page you've visited or close all taps, click ⋮ and choose an option.
*Tip*: The Browser won't save the browsing history of your private tabs.


Normal
Private
Speed Dial
NEWS

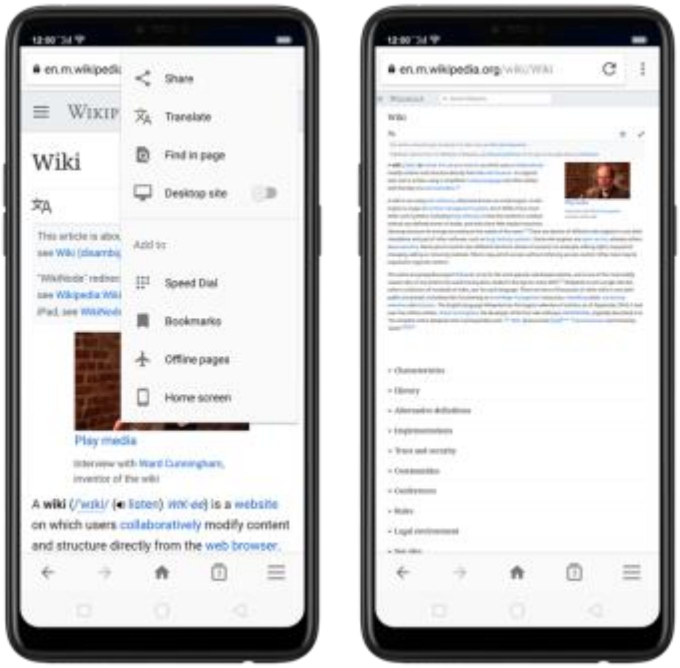

Normal
Private
Speed Dial
NEWS


Normal
Private
Speed Dial
NEWS
Reopen closed tab
Close all tabs
Normal
Private

Your secrets are safe

Browser won't save the browsing history of your private tabs. Tap + to open a new private tab.

**Request desktop site**. To see webpages just as they were designed to be seen in computer browsers, click ⋮, then enable Desktop site.


en.m.wikipedia
Wiki
Share
Translate
Find in page
Desktop site
Add to
Speed Dial
Bookmarks
Offline pages
Home screen
Play media
en.m.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki

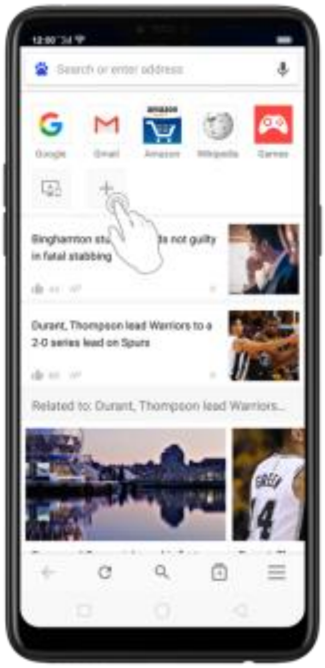
A wiki (/ˈwɪki/ (listen) WIK-ee) is a website on which users collaboratively modify content and structure directly from the web browser.

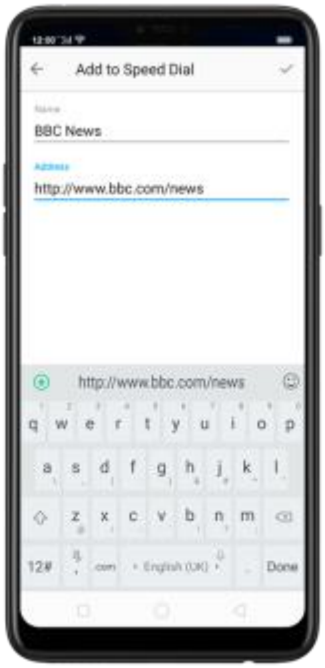
## 7.20.4.Quick accesses

You can add webpages to Bookmarks so that you can quickly return to them at any time without having to type the address. You can also add page icons to the Home screen for quick access, and download the webpages to view them offline.

**Add a webpage to Speed Dial**. Open the Home page of the Browser, click Speed

Dial, then click +. Enter the webpage name and address, then click ✓. You can also open the page and click ⋮. Then click Speed Dial.

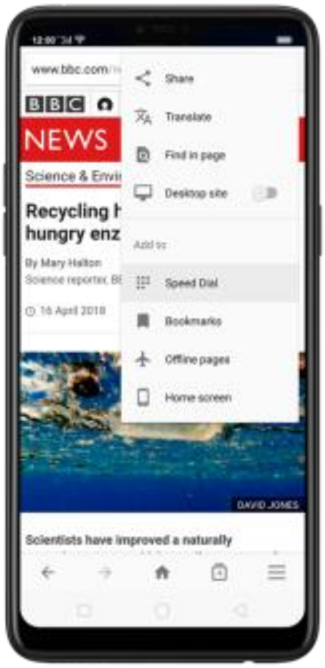

Search or enter address
Google
Gmail
Amazon
Wikipedia
Games
Binghamton stu... is not guilty in fatal stabbing
Durant, Thompson lead Warriors to a 2-0 series lead on Spurs
Related to: Durant, Thompson lead Warriors...


Add to Speed Dial

Name
BBC News

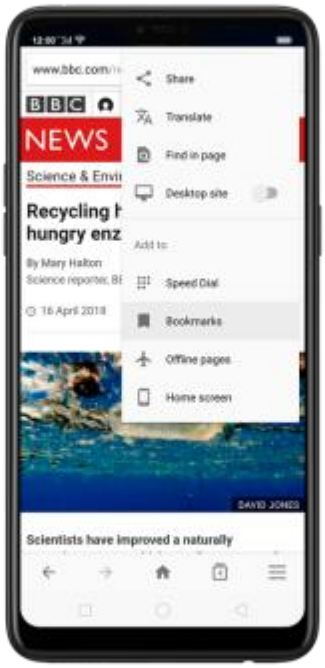
Address
http://www.bbc.com/news

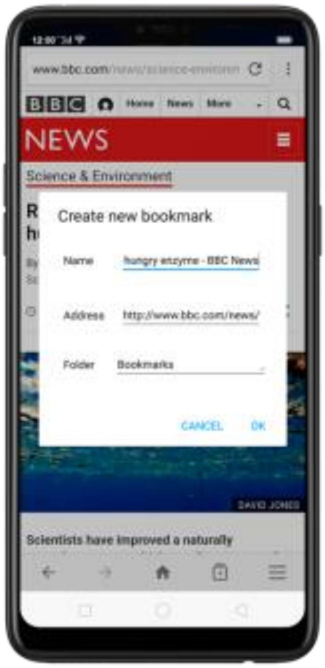
Done


www.bbc.com/
BBC NEWS
Share
Translate
Find in page
Desktop site
Add to
Speed Dial
Bookmarks
Offline pages
Home screen
Scientists have improved a naturally

**Bookmark a webpage**. Open the page, click ⋮, then click Bookmarks, edit its title or choose where to save it, then click OK.

* To manage your bookmarks and folders, click ≡ from the webpage screen, then click Bookmarks.


www.bbc.com/
BBC NEWS
Share
Translate
Find in page
Desktop site
Add to
Speed Dial
Bookmarks
Offline pages
Home screen
Scientists have improved a naturally


Create new bookmark

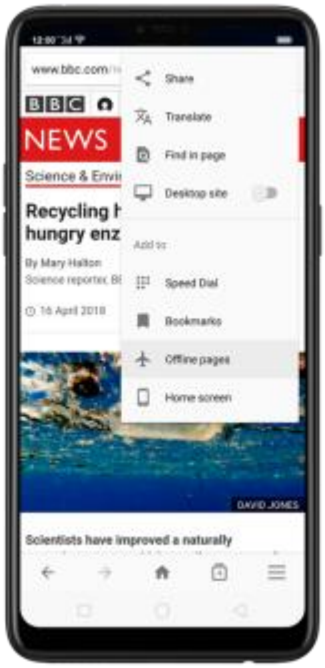
Name hungry enzyme - BBC News

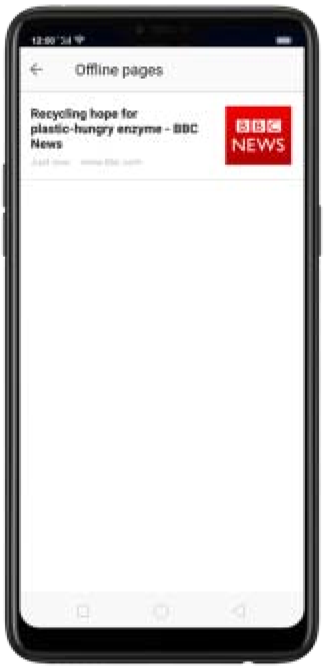
Address http://www.bbc.com/news/

Folder Bookmarks

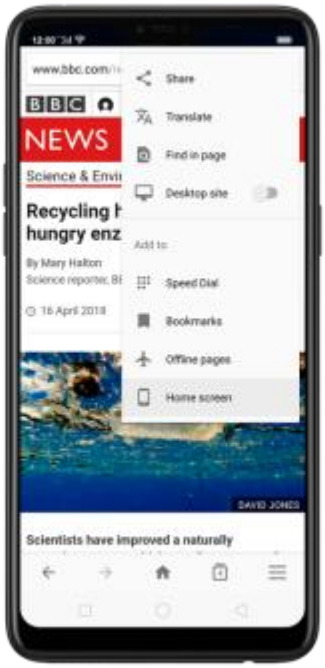
CANCEL
OK

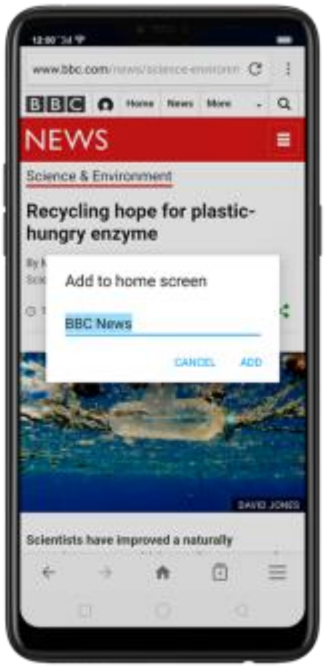
**Save a webpage for offline reading**. Open the page, click ⋮, then click Offline pages. To open an offline page, click ☰, click Offline pages, then click a page.

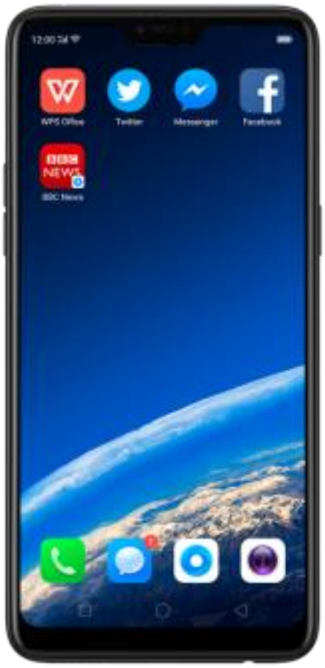

www.bbc.com/
BBC
NEWS
Science & Envir
Recycling h
hungry enz
By Mary Halton
Science reporter, BI
16 April 2018
Share
Translate
Find in page
Desktop site
Add to
Speed Dial
Bookmarks
Offline pages
Home screen
DAVID JONES
Scientists have improved a naturally


Offline pages
Recycling hope for plastic-hungry enzyme - BBC News
BBC NEWS

**Add an icon for the current page to your Home screen**. Open the page, click ⋮, then click Home screen, edit its title, then click Add.


www.bbc.com/
BBC
NEWS
Science & Envir
Recycling h
hungry enz
Share
Translate
Find in page
Desktop site
Add to
Speed Dial
Bookmarks
Offline pages
Home screen
DAVID JONES
Scientists have improved a naturally


www.bbc.com/news/science-environm
BBC
Home
News
More
NEWS
Science & Environment
Recycling hope for plastic-hungry enzyme
Add to home screen
BBC News
CANCEL
ADD
DAVID JONES
Scientists have improved a naturally


WPS Office
Twitter
Messenger
Facebook
BBC NEWS
BBC News

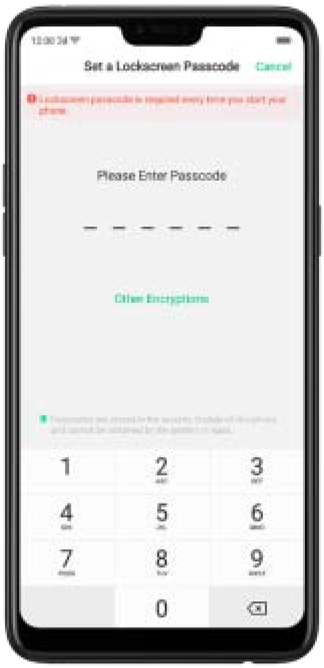
# 8. Safety & Privacy

## 8.1. Device security

### 8.1.1. Lock screen password

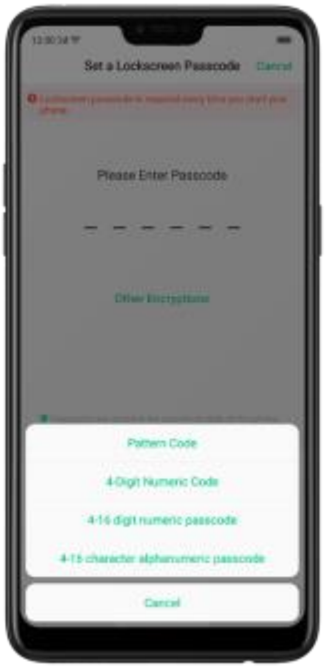
Security on your OPPO smartphone begins at the lock screen. You can set a passcode that will be needed to unlock your phone.

**Set, change, or turn off the passcode**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Fingerprint, Face & Passcode]**. You can draw a pattern, use a 4-Digit, 6-Digit, or 4-16 Digit Numeric Code or 4-16 Character Alphanumeric Code.



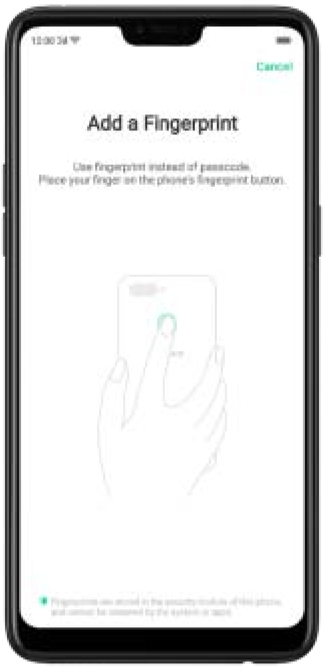
Lockscreen passcode is required every time you start your phone

Set a Lockscreen Passcode
Cancel
Please Enter Passcode
Other Encryptions
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0



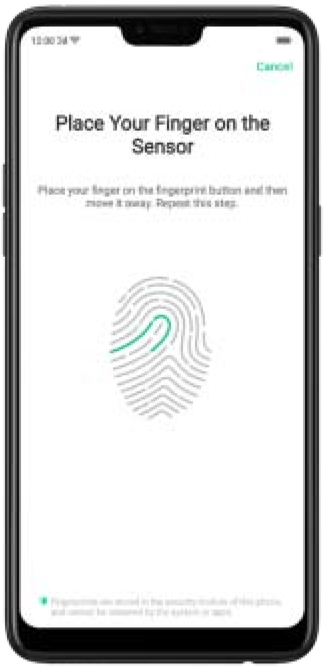
Set a Lockscreen Passcode
Cancel
Please Enter Passcode
Other Encryptions
Pattern Code
4-Digit Numeric Code
4-16 digit numeric passcode
4-16 character alphanumeric passcode
Cancel

**Add a fingerprint.** Before you can add a fingerprint, you need to create a passcode. You can use the fingerprint to unlock the phone. You can add up to 5 different fingerprints on your phone.



Add a Fingerprint

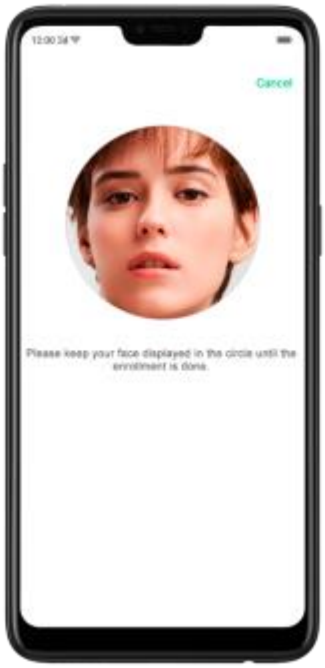
Use fingerprint instead of passcode.
Place your finger on the phone's fingerprint button.



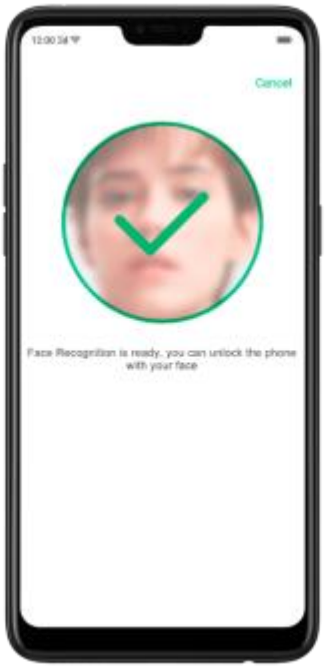
Place Your Finger on the Sensor

Place your finger on the fingerprint button and then move it away. Repeat this step.

**Enroll face**. Before you can enroll a face, you need to create a passcode. You can use the face to unlock the phone instead of the fingerprints or passcode. You can enroll only one face on your phone.
View more about setting a passcode, face ID and fingerprint on your OPPO phone, see [Fingerprint, Face and Passcode](#).



Please keep your face displayed in the circle until the enrollment is done.

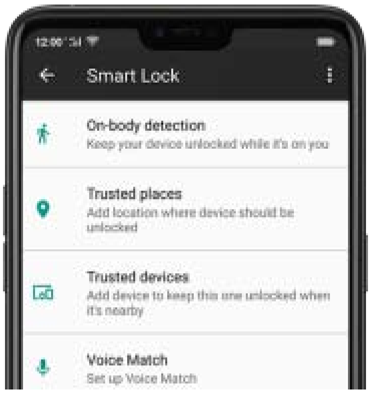


Face Recognition is ready, you can unlock the phone with your face

## 8.1.2. Smart Lock

Smart lock is an easy and handy way to gain access to your phone.

**Turn on Smart Lock options**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Device & Privacy]** > **[Smart Lock]**, then enter your phone passcode.



Smart Lock

On-body detection
Keep your device unlocked while it's on you

Trusted places
Add location where device should be unlocked

Trusted devices
Add device to keep this one unlocked when it's nearby

Voice Match
Set up Voice Match

- **On-body detection**. Once enabled, your device will be kept unlocked while it's with you, like when you are holding it or carrying it. Your device will lock when it detects that it's been set down, like putting it on **the** table or is away from your body.
- **Trusted places**. If you have added trusted places, your device will be kept unlocked when it's nearby those areas. For example, if you have added your home as a trusted place and you're 80m away from your house the device will be kept in unlocked mode.
- **Trusted devices**. If you have added trusted devices, for example, your Bluetooth watch, your car's Bluetooth system, when they are connected, your device will be kept in unlock mode. (Note: Bluetooth connections have a range of up to 100 meters.)
- **Trusted voice**. Say "OK Google" and save it on your Google account. When you say "OK Google" the next time, your device will be unlocked once it recognizes your voice.

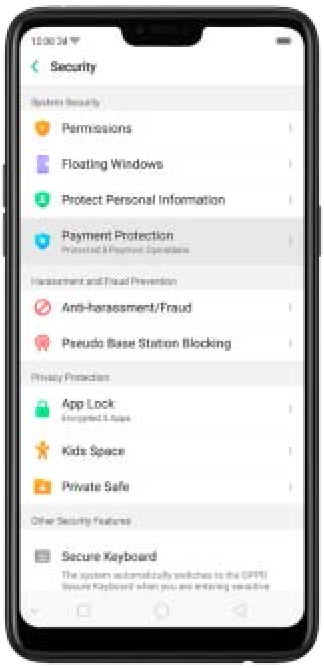
**Note**: When Smart Lock is on, your phone will remain unlocked if you're carrying the phone, which will quickly drain your phone's battery. This will also lead to accidental **commands** if you put the phone in your pocket. Therefore, if you want to use Smart Lock, use it wisely and properly.

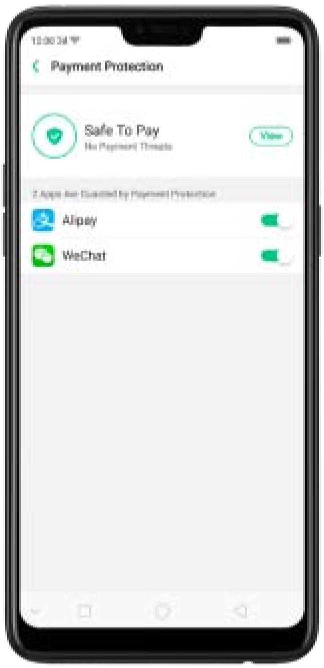
## 8.1.3. Payment protection

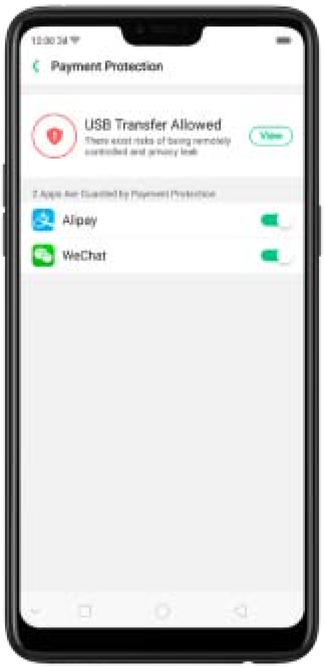
While you shop online, your OPPO phone will provide protection for the mobile transactions, such as detecting the system, captcha and, app security. You can see the detected information of the current payment environment on the upper-right corner of the screen.

Scan
Pay
Collect
Pocket
Yu'E Bao
Transfer
Card Repay
Movies
Lucky Money
Ant Cash Now
Credit Pay
Stock
Air & Rail
Activity
Takeout
More
支付宝骑车免押金

**Set up payment protection for apps**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Security]** > **[Payment Protection]**. Your phone alerts you if risks exist, or it will say "Safe to Pay". Click **View** and do as what the phone prompts to remove the risks.


Security
Permissions
Floating Windows
Protect Personal Information
Payment Protection
Harassment and Fraud Prevention
Anti-harassment/Fraud
Pseudo Base Station Blocking
Privacy Protection
App Lock
Kids Space
Private Safe
Other Security Features
Secure Keyboard


Payment Protection
Safe To Pay
No Payment Threats
View
Alipay
WeChat



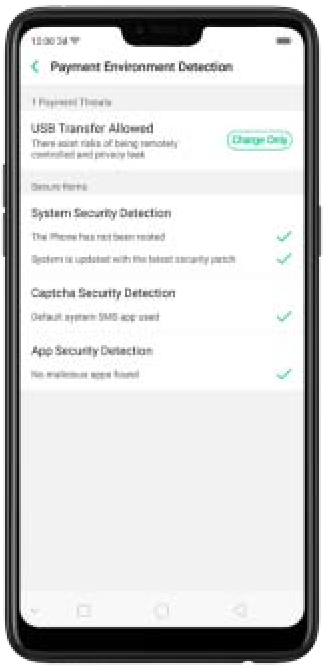
Payment Protection

USB Transfer Allowed
There exist risks of being remotely controlled and privacy leak

2 Apps Are Guarded by Payment Protection

Alipay ●

WeChat ●



Payment Environment Detection

1 Payment Threats

USB Transfer Allowed
There exist risks of being remotely controlled and privacy leak

Secure Items

System Security Detection
The Phone has not been rooted ✓
System is updated with the latest security patch ✓

Captcha Security Detection
Default system SMS app used ✓

App Security Detection
No malicious apps found ✓

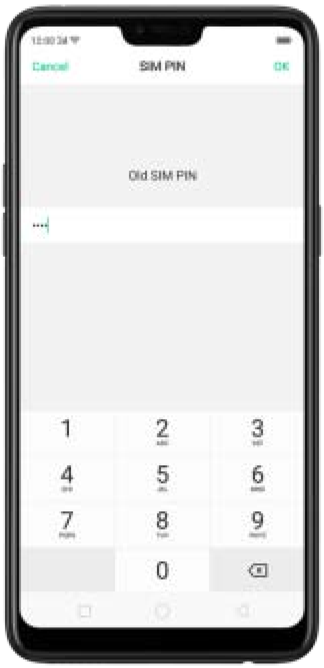
## 8.1.4. Set up a SIM card lock

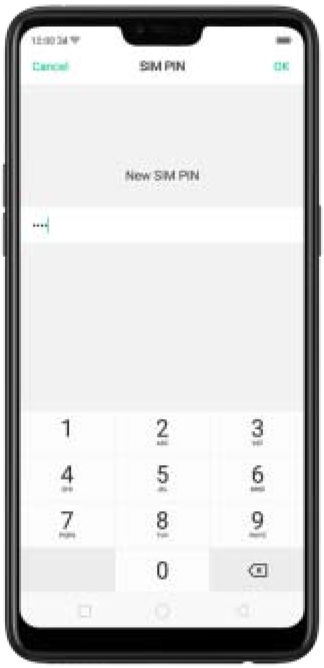
For better security, you can set up a SIM card lock. The SIM lock will make sure that only those who know the password can use the phone.

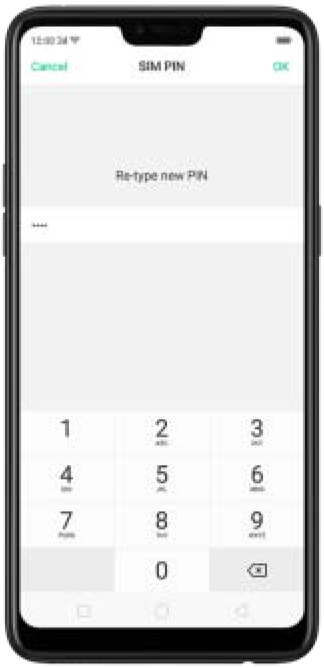
**Set up a SIM card lock**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Device & Privacy]** > **[Set up SIM card lock]**. Click the slider next to Lock Sim Card, type in the PIN code and then click OK.

**Note**: If the wrong PIN is entered more than three times, both your SIM card and phone will be locked. You can enter the PUK code to unlock them. See About SIM card PIN & PUK code.

**Change the SIM card PIN code**. Click Change SIM PIN, type in the current PIN code, click OK. Then you can type in the new PIN code, click OK, retype your new PIN code when prompted, then click OK.


Cancel
SIM PIN
OK
Old SIM PIN
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0

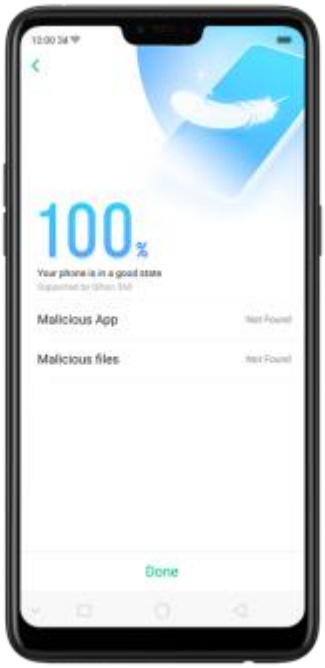

Cancel
SIM PIN
OK
New SIM PIN
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0


Cancel
SIM PIN
OK
Re-type new PIN
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0

### 8.1.5. Virus Scan

For better security, you should regularly scan and remove potential and actual threats to your phone.

**Scan for virus**. Click Phone Manager, then click Virus Scan. Wait for the scan to complete. If threats were found, remove them; if not, you will see a message that says your phone is in a good state.



100%

Your phone is in a good state

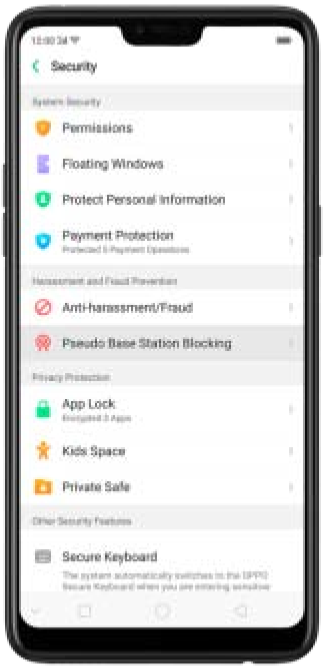
Malicious App Not Found

Malicious files Not Found

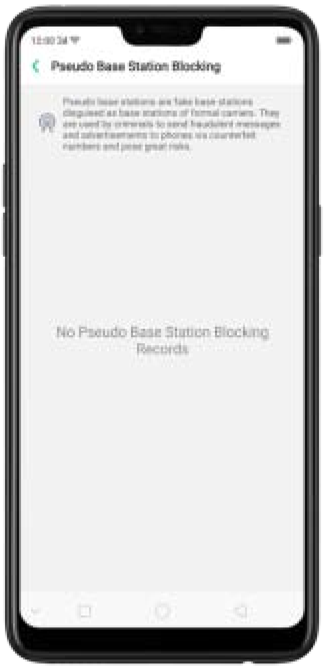
## 8.1.6. Pseudo Base Station Blocking

Your phone might receive many spam messages (including investment advice, promotional messages, and more), or be infected by mobile viruses sent from the pseudo base stations. When these stations are identified, your phone will automatically block the information sent by them, thus safeguarding your property and securing your information.

**Block pseudo base stations**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Security]** > **[Pseudo Base Station Blocking]** and you will see a list of pseudo base stations if they are identified and blocked by the phone.


Security
System Security
Permissions
Floating Windows
Protect Personal Information
Payment Protection
Harassment and Fraud Prevention
Anti-harassment/Fraud
Pseudo Base Station Blocking
Privacy Protection
App Lock
Kids Space
Private Safe
Other Security Features
Secure Keyboard

The system automatically switches to the OPPO Secure Keyboard when you are entering sensitive


Pseudo Base Station Blocking

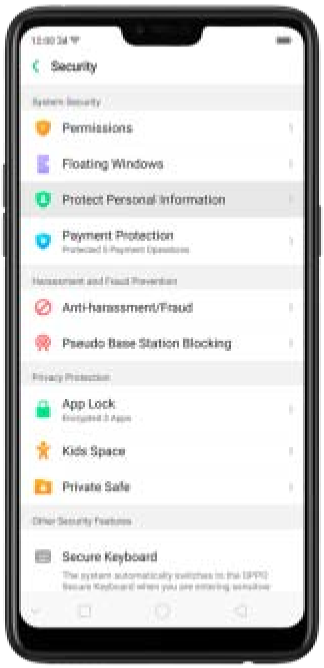
Pseudo base stations are fake base stations disguised as base stations of formal carriers. They are used by criminals to send fraudulent messages and advertisements to phones via counterfeit numbers and pose great risks.

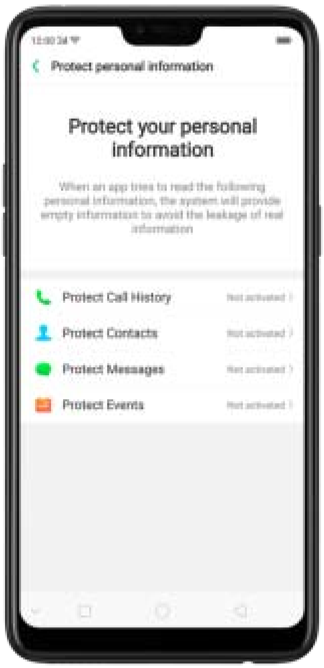
No Pseudo Base Station Blocking Records

## 8.1.7. Protect Personal Information

Apps automatically read your personal information to access restricted functions, while most of these information are sensitive, such as call history, contacts, messages, and calendar events; some apps will probably engage in malicious activities like uploading or exposing your private data and monitoring your activities. By using this feature, when an app tries to read information that it needs, your phone will provide empty information instead of what you really have, which helps you protect your privacy.

**Protect your call history, contacts, messages, and events**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Security]** > **[Protect Personal Information]**, then choose an option. You will see a list of apps that require the certain information. If you don't want to give an app your real information, switch the app slider to green, then click **[Turn on feature]**. Your phone will then provide empty information.

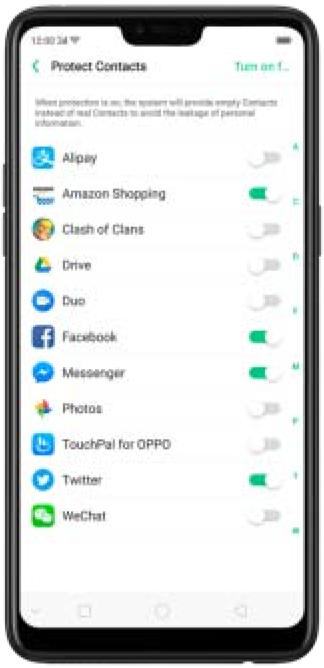

Security
Permissions
Floating Windows
Protect Personal Information
Payment Protection
Anti-harassment/Fraud
Pseudo Base Station Blocking
App Lock
Kids Space
Private Safe
Secure Keyboard


Protect personal information

Protect your personal information

When an app tries to read the following personal information, the system will provide empty information to avoid the leakage of real information

Protect Call History: Not activated
Protect Contacts: Not activated
Protect Messages: Not activated
Protect Events: Not activated


Protect Contacts
Turn on f...

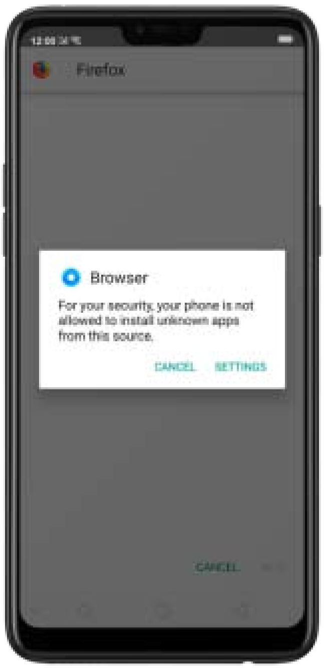
Alipay ○
Amazon Shopping ●
Clash of Clans ○
Drive ○
Duo ○
Facebook ●
Messenger ●
Photos ○
TouchPal for OPPO ○
Twitter ●
WeChat ○

## 8.2. Device administration

### 8.2.1. Allow and install apps from unknown sources

By default, you are not allowed to install apps outside the official Play Store on your OPPO phone - unless you have allowed your phone to do that.

If you run an APK on your phone without first enabling the feature, you will see the following on your screen.

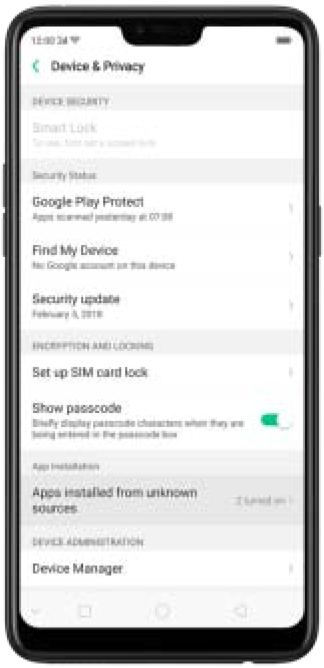

Firefox
Browser
CANCEL
SETTINGS
CANCEL

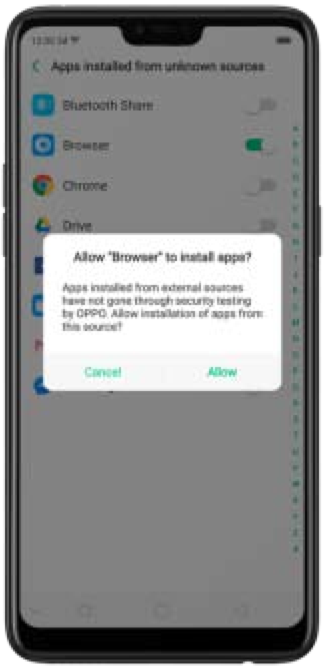
For your security, your phone is not allowed to install unknown apps from this source.

**Install apps from unknown sources**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Device & Privacy]** and click **[Apps Installed from Unknown Sources]**. Here are sources you can download or receive apps other than Google Play Store to your phone.

Switch the sliders to green if you want to install apps from these sources. For example, if you want to install apps downloaded from your browser, then enable Browser.

**Note**: Installing apps from unknown sources means that you are now responsible for your phone's safety. Don't ever install any apps unless you are absolutely sure that it is not a malware.


Device & Privacy
Smart Lock
Google Play Protect
Find My Device
Security update
Set up SIM card lock
Show passcode
Apps installed from unknown sources
Device Manager


Apps installed from unknown sources
Bluetooth Share
Browser
Chrome
Drive
Cancel
Allow

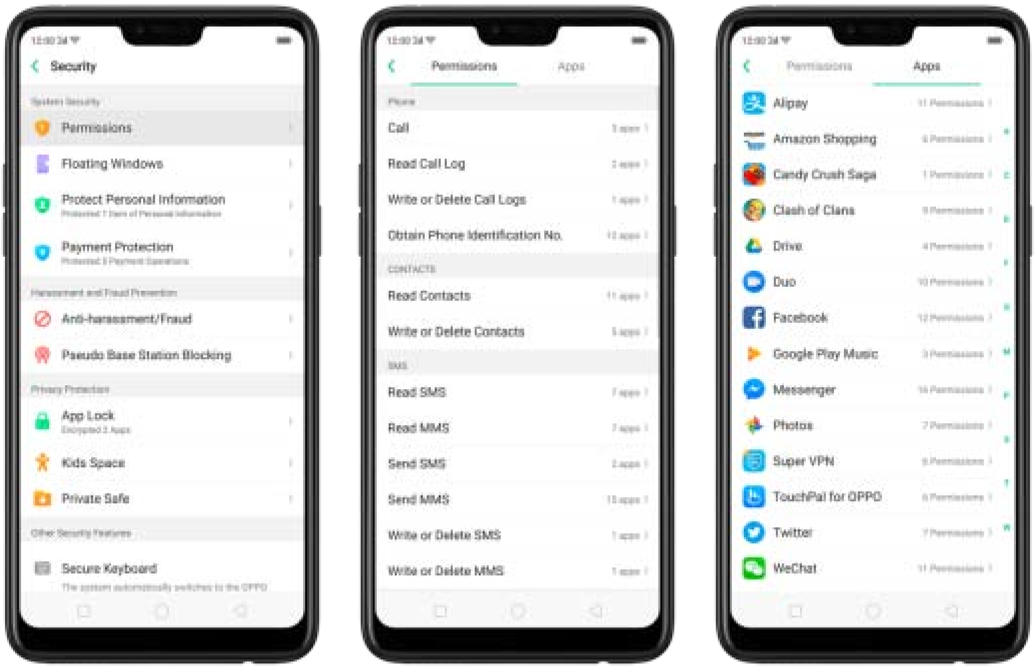
Allow "Browser" to install apps?

Apps installed from external sources have not gone through security testing by OPPO. Allow installation of apps from this source?

## 8.2.2. App permissions

Every application installed on your OPPO smartphone may require certain data or access to your phone's other features (mic, camera, etc.). To check and manage what an app is trying to access, do the following:

**Check all permission details**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Security]** > **[Permissions]**. You will find all the permission categories on your phone. Click "Apps" to view apps installed on your phone and the permission groups an app has.


Security
Permissions
Floating Windows
Protect Personal Information
Payment Protection
Anti-harassment/Fraud
Pseudo Base Station Blocking
App Lock
Kids Space
Private Safe
Secure Keyboard
Permissions
Apps
Call
Read Call Log
Write or Delete Call Logs
Obtain Phone Identification No.
CONTACTS
Read Contacts
Write or Delete Contacts
SMS
Read SMS
Read MMS
Send SMS
Send MMS
Write or Delete SMS
Write or Delete MMS
Permissions
Apps
Alipay
Amazon Shopping
Candy Crush Saga
Clash of Clans
Drive
Duo
Facebook
Google Play Music
Messenger
Photos
Super VPN
TouchPal for OPPO
Twitter
WeChat

**Change the permission**. You can go through each permission or app on your phone and, with full control, allow, forbid or limit each permission according to your requirements.

- **Allow**: Always allow the app to use the required permissions.
- **Forbid**: Disable the required permissions completely for the app.
- **Ask**: Every time you start the app, it asks you to grant the permissions that are required.

## 8.2.3. Hide Home screen icon

Without deleting the app from your phone, you can simply hide the app icons from view if you want to quickly hand in your phone to someone else and don't want them having access to the personal data contained within some apps.

Before you can hide Home screen icons, you must encrypt the apps first.

**Hide Home screen icon**. After encrypting the apps, do the following:

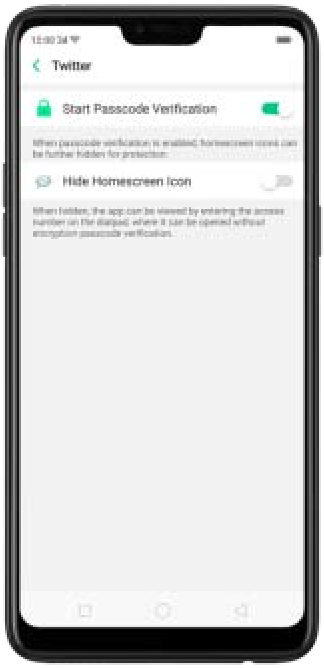
1. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Security]** > **[App Lock]**, then enter the verification passcode

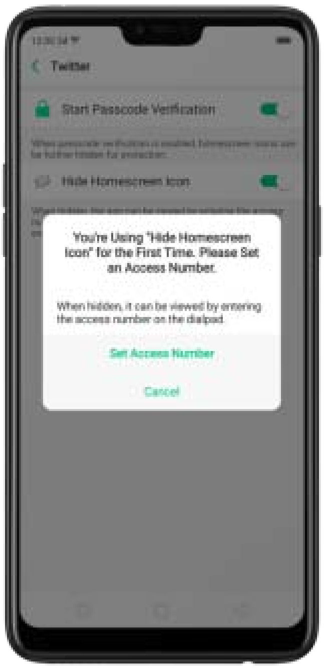
to enter the App Encryption screen.

2. Click an app, turn on **[Start Passcode Verification]**, then turn on **[Hide Home screen icon]**.

3. A pop-up message will display on the screen to ask you to set an access number. You can open the hidden applications by dialing the number. This message will only pop up when you use the hidden feature for the first time. Click **Set Access Number**.

4. Set a number that starts and ends with "#" and contains one to sixteen characters, then click **Done**.

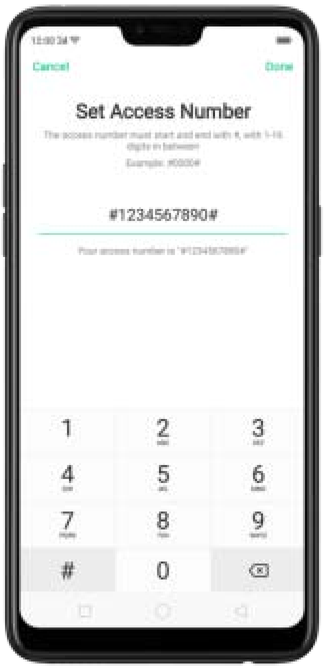

Twitter
Start Passcode Verification
Hide Homescreen Icon


Twitter
Start Passcode Verification
Hide Homescreen Icon

You're Using "Hide Homescreen Icon" for the First Time. Please Set an Access Number.

When hidden, it can be viewed by entering the access number on the dialpad.

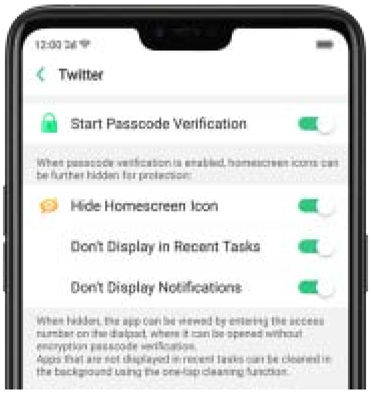
Set Access Number
Cancel


Cancel
Done
Set Access Number

#1234567890#

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
#
0

5. You can also set the hidden app not to display in Recent Tasks, or disable its notifications.

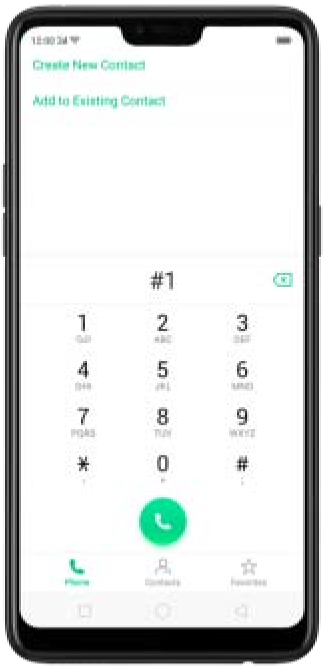

Twitter
Start Passcode Verification

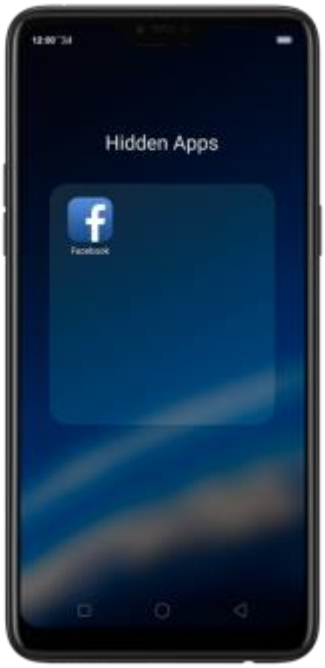
When passcode verification is enabled, homescreen icons can be further hidden for protection.

Hide Homescreen Icon
Don't Display in Recent Tasks
Don't Display Notifications

When hidden, the app can be viewed by entering the access number on the dialpad, where it can be opened without encryption passcode verification.
Apps that are not displayed in recent tasks can be cleaned in the background using the one-tap cleaning function.

**Open hidden apps**. Click Phone, click the keypad to enter your access number, then the Hidden Apps folder will pop-up.





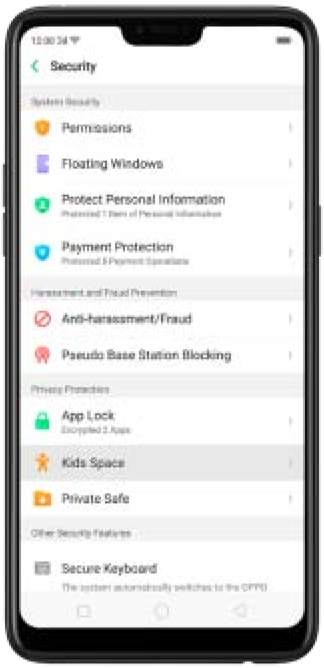
**Note**:

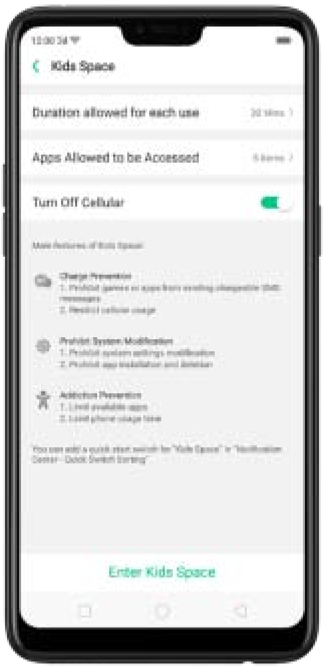
- You can override encryption passcode and open hidden apps directly by dialing the access number.
- Apps that aren't displayed in Recent Tasks can be closed using the one-tap cleanup function.
- Access number can be set only once when you use the hidden feature for the first time. If you forgot the number, reset the phone to its factory settings to reset the number.

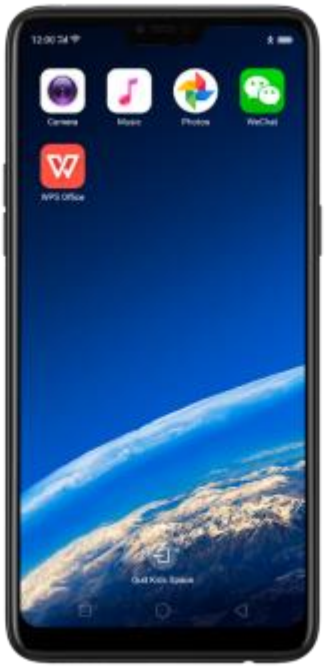
### 8.2.4. Kids Space

With Kids Space, parents can set limits especially for the children's use of the phone, such as setting up phone usage time and apps that are allowed to be accessed. It does a good job in charge prevention, system modification, and addiction **prevention** when your kids use the phone.

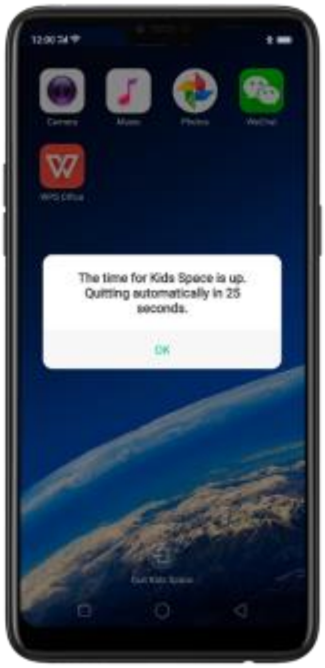
**Set up Kids Space**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Security]** > **[Kids Space]**. Select the apps your kids can access, set how long they can use the phone, and choose whether to use cellular data, then click **Enter Kids Space**.

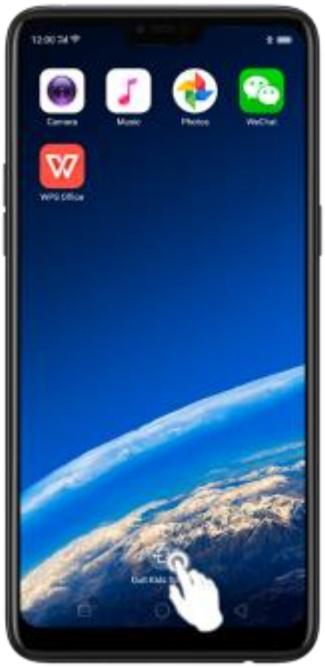

Security
Permissions
Floating Windows
Protect Personal Information
Payment Protection
Anti-harassment/Fraud
Pseudo Base Station Blocking
App Lock
Kids Space
Private Safe
Secure Keyboard

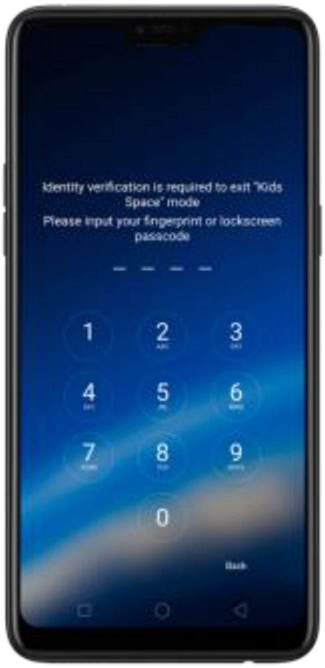

Kids Space
Duration allowed for each use
Apps Allowed to be Accessed
Turn Off Cellular
Enter Kids Space


Camera
Music
Photos
WeChat
WPS Office
Quit Kids Space

**Quit Kids Space**. When the duration of time you set ends, your phone will alert you and lock the screen after 30 seconds, or you can quit Kids Space at any time by clicking Quit Kids Space at the bottom of the screen. Input your fingerprint or lock screen passcode to return to the normal mode.


The time for Kids Space is up. Quitting automatically in 25 seconds.

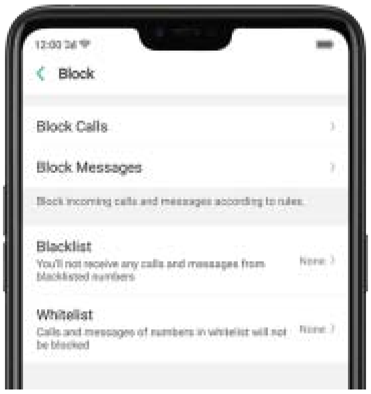

Camera
Music
Photos
WeChat
WPS Office


Identity verification is required to exit "Kids Space" mode
Please input your fingerprint or lockscreen passcode
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
0
Back

## 8.2.5. Block unwanted calls and messages

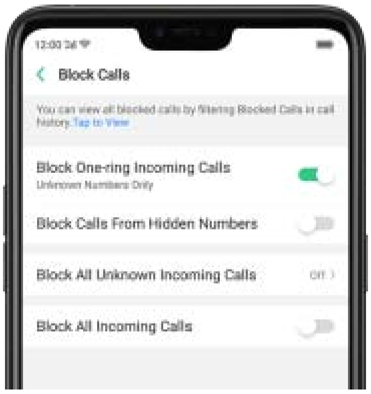
Block feature helps you to prevent unwanted phone calls and messages from reaching you. You can also add numbers to blacklist or to block specific phone numbers, or add numbers to whitelist to allow their calls to come through all the time.

**Block calls and messages**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Security]** > **[Anti-harassment/Fraud]**, or go to **[Settings] > [Call]** > **[Block]**, or go to **[Settings] > [Messages]** > **[Block]**.

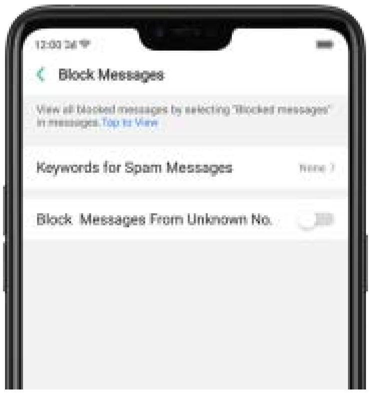


12:00
Block
Block Calls
Block Messages
Block incoming calls and messages according to rules.
Blacklist
You'll not receive any calls and messages from blacklisted numbers — None
Whitelist
Calls and messages of numbers in whitelist will not be blocked — None

- **Block Calls**: Choose the options available for blocking incoming calls. See Block calls.
- **Block Messages**: You can block all unknown messages, or block specific spam messages by entering the keywords.

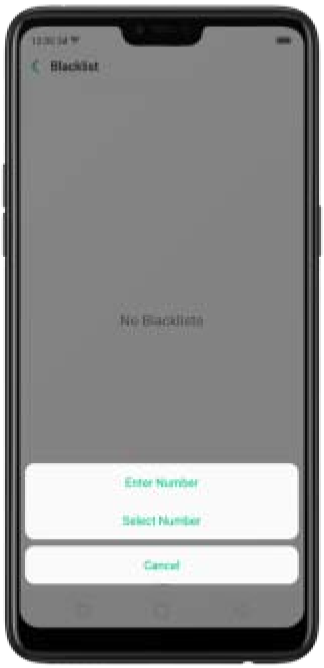


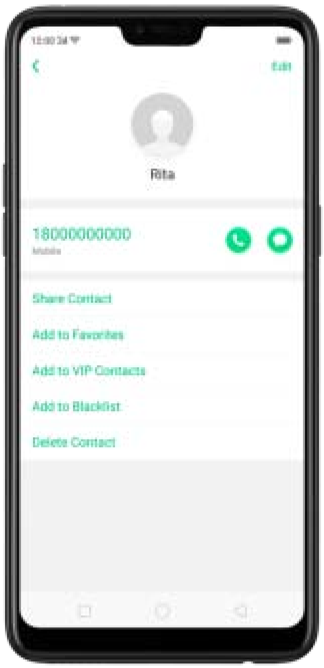
12:00
Block Calls
You can view all blocked calls by filtering Blocked Calls in call history. Tap to View
Block One-ring Incoming Calls — Unknown Numbers Only ●
Block Calls From Hidden Numbers ○
Block All Unknown Incoming Calls — Off
Block All Incoming Calls ○



12:00
Block Messages
View all blocked messages by selecting "Blocked messages" in messages. Tap to View
Keywords for Spam Messages — None
Block Messages From Unknown No. ○

**Add a contact or a phone number to the blacklist**. Click Blacklist, click + Add, then enter the number or choose your contacts. Or open a caller's contact card in Contacts, then click Add to Blacklist.


Blacklist
No Blacklists
Enter Number
Select Number
Cancel


Edit
Rita
18000000000
Mobile
Share Contact
Add to Favorites
Add to VIP Contacts
Add to Blacklist
Delete Contact

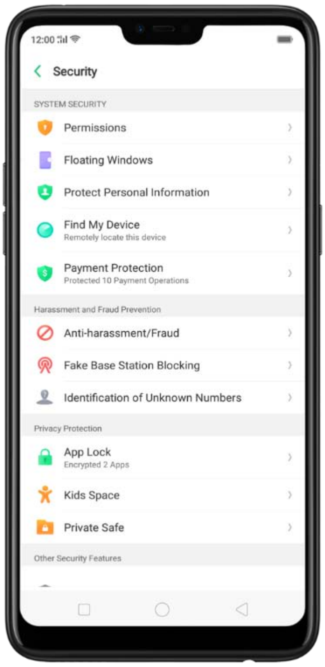
**Add a contact or a phone number to the whitelist**. Click Whitelist, click + Add, then enter the number or choose your contacts. Calls and messages from these numbers will not be blocked.

## 8.2.6. Find my device

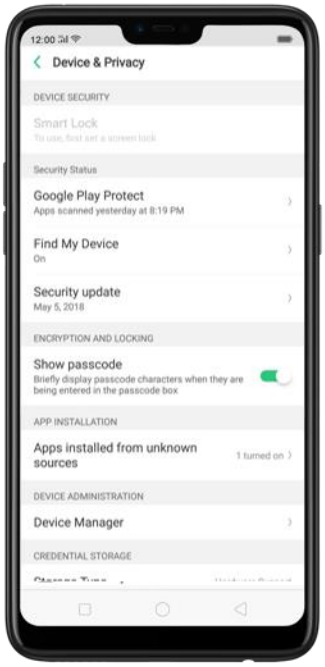
If for some reason you left, lost and forgotten your phone or was stolen, Google Find My Device will help you locate your device remotely. In order for it to work, you need to sign in your Google account and turn on Location Service on your phone.

### Activate and use Find my Device.

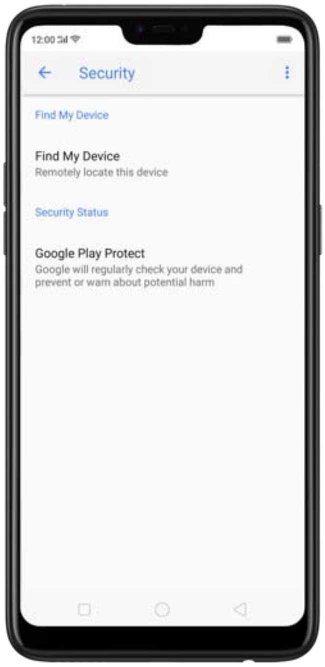
There are three ways you can do this on your phone.
1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Security**] > and click **Find My Device.** Switch the slider to blue.


12:00
Security
SYSTEM SECURITY
Permissions
Floating Windows
Protect Personal Information
Find My Device
Remotely locate this device
Payment Protection
Protected 10 Payment Operations
Harassment and Fraud Prevention
Anti-harassment/Fraud
Fake Base Station Blocking
Identification of Unknown Numbers
Privacy Protection
App Lock
Encrypted 2 Apps
Kids Space
Private Safe
Other Security Features

2. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Additional Settings**] > [**Device and Privacy**] and click **Find My Device**. Switch the slider to blue.


12:00
Device & Privacy
DEVICE SECURITY
Smart Lock
To use, first set a screen lock
Security Status
Google Play Protect
Apps scanned yesterday at 8:19 PM
Find My Device
On
Security update
May 5, 2018
ENCRYPTION AND LOCKING
Show passcode
Briefly display passcode characters when they are being entered in the passcode box
APP INSTALLATION
Apps installed from unknown sources
1 turned on
DEVICE ADMINISTRATION
Device Manager
CREDENTIAL STORAGE

3. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Google**] > [**Security**] and click **Find My Device**. Switch the slider to blue.



12:00

Security

Find My Device

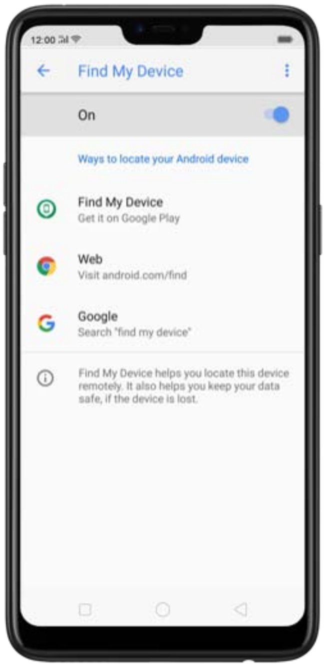
Find My Device
Remotely locate this device

Security Status

Google Play Protect
Google will regularly check your device and prevent or warn about potential harm

**Note:** You can choose from any the options above to activate Find My Device.

On the **Find My Device** page, it will show you ways on how to locate the phone using any android devices.



12:00

Find My Device

On

Ways to locate your Android device

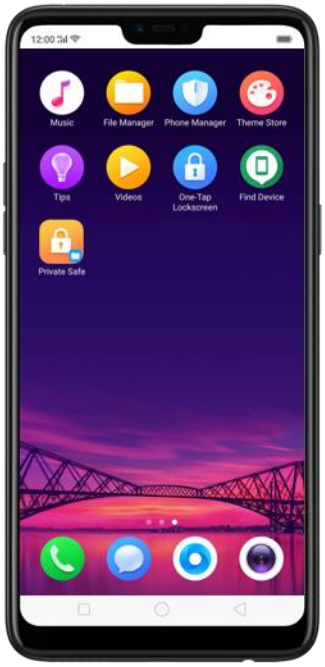
Find My Device
Get it on Google Play

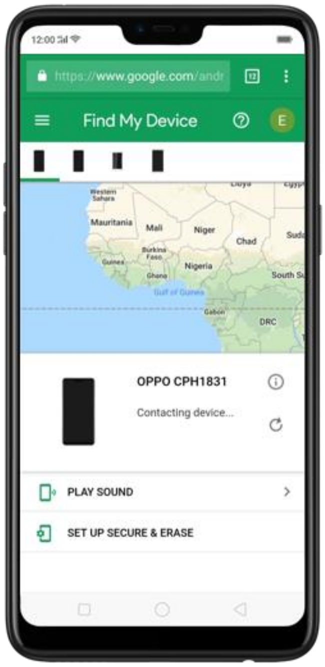
Web
Visit android.com/find

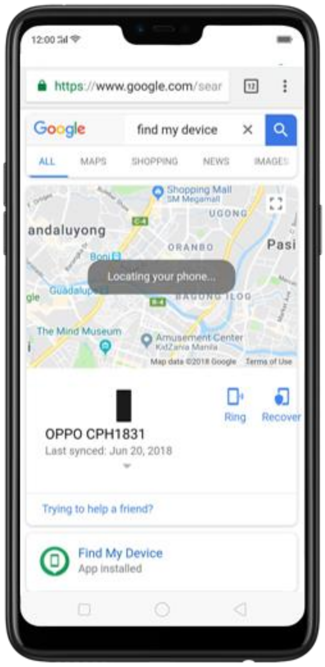
Google
Search "find my device"

Find My Device helps you locate this device remotely. It also helps you keep your data safe, if the device is lost.

- Click **Find My Device** to download or open the app
- Click **Web** to direct you to android.com/find
- Click **Google** to direct you to “Find my device” page


12:00
Music
File Manager
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Tips
Videos
One-Tap Lockscreen
Find Device
Private Safe


12:00
https://www.google.com/andr
Find My Device
E
Western Sahara
Mauritania
Mali
Niger
Chad
Burkina Faso
Nigeria
Ghana
Guinea
Gulf of Guinea
Gabon
DRC
South Su
Libya
Egypt
OPPO CPH1831
Contacting device...
PLAY SOUND
SET UP SECURE & ERASE

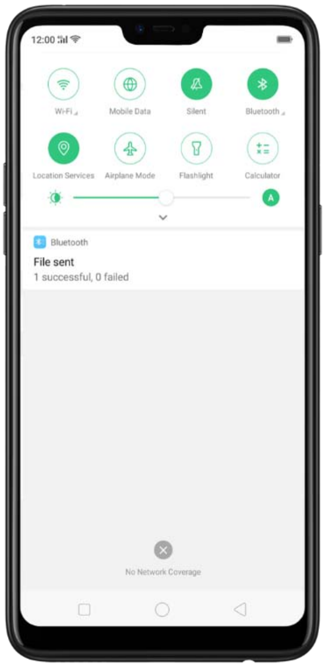

12:00
https://www.google.com/sear
Google
find my device
ALL
MAPS
SHOPPING
NEWS
IMAGES
Shopping Mall
SM Megamall
UGONG
andaluyong
ORANBO
Pasi
Locating your phone...
Guadalupe
BAGONG ILOG
The Mind Museum
Amusement Center
KidZania Manila
Map data ©2018 Google
Terms of Use
OPPO CPH1831
Last synced: Jun 20, 2018
Ring
Recover
Trying to help a friend?
Find My Device
App installed

# 8.3. Privacy

## 8.3.1. Location Service

Apps like Maps, Weather and Compass must know your exact position before it can provide accurate services and results.

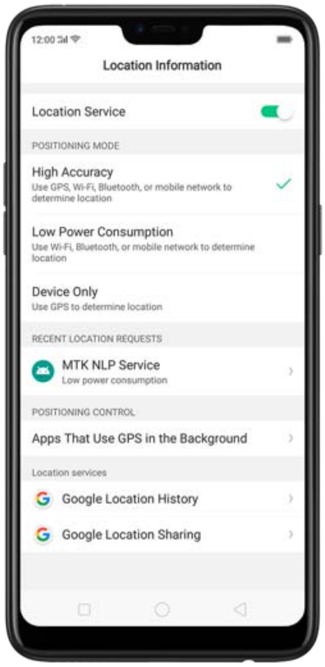
**Turn on Location Service.** Swipe down from the top of the screen to open Control Center, then click 📍 . You can also go to **[Settings]** > **[Google]** > **[Location]** and toggle the slider to green.


12:00
Wi-Fi
Mobile Data
Silent
Bluetooth
Location Services
Airplane Mode
Flashlight
Calculator
A
No Network Coverage

Bluetooth

File sent

1 successful, 0 failed



Location Information

Location Service

POSITIONING MODE

High Accuracy ✓
Use GPS, Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, or mobile network to determine location

Low Power Consumption
Use Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, or mobile network to determine location

Device Only
Use GPS to determine location

RECENT LOCATION REQUESTS

MTK NLP Service
Low power consumption

POSITIONING CONTROL

Apps That Use GPS in the Background

Location services

Google Location History

Google Location Sharing

You can choose from three types of **positioning modes**, which differ in accuracy and battery drain:

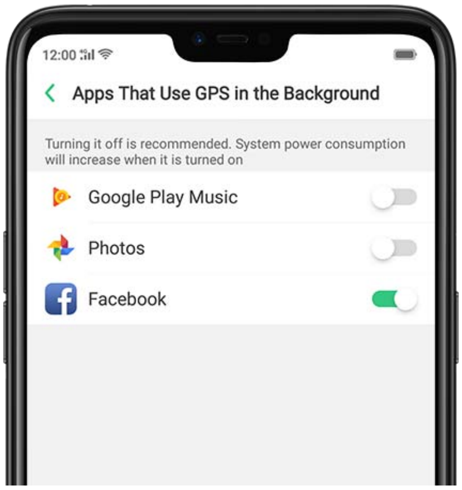
1. **High accuracy** (GPS, Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, and mobile network).

2. **Battery saving** (Wi-Fi, Bluetooth and mobile network).

3. **Device only** (GPS).

**A history of recent location requests.** You'll see a list of apps that have requested location. Click an app to enter the App info page that allows you to manage the app directly.

**Apps that use GPS in the background**. Turn the slider to green if you allow the app to use GPS in the background. Keeping background GPS of the apps active may drain the battery significantly.



Turning it off is recommended. System power consumption will increase when it is turned on

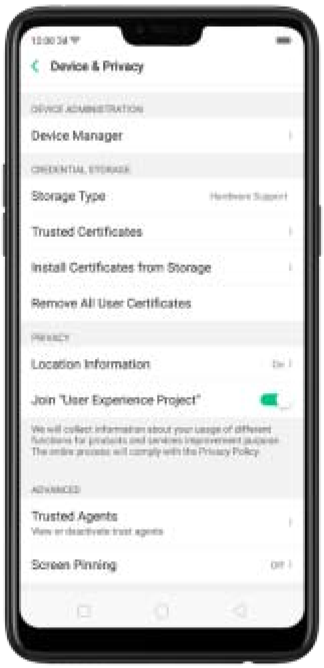
### Google Location service

- Use **Google Location History** to retrace your steps. Google Location History will customize search results for location and search history.
- Use **Google Location Sharing** to share your locations with friends and contacts in real time.

## 8.3.2. Join User Experience Project

“User Experience Project” is a continuous plan to improve OPPO products, features, and services. You are free to decide whether to join the project or not. If you agree to join, we will collect the related data of your usage to OPPO products, features, and services, then conduct research and analysis of these information to provide you a better user experience. We will not collect any of your private information in this process.

**Join User Experience Project**. The first time you switch your OPPO phone on, it will prompt you to join User Experience Project, or you can go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Device & Privacy]** and switch **[Join “User Experience Project”]** slider to green.


Device & Privacy
DEVICE ADMINISTRATION
Device Manager
CREDENTIAL STORAGE
Trusted Certificates
Install Certificates from Storage
Remove All User Certificates
PRIVACY
ADVANCED
Trusted Agents
View or deactivate trust agents

Storage Type Hardware Support

Location Information On

Join "User Experience Project" ●

We will collect information about your usage of different functions for products and services improvement purpose. The entire process will comply with the Privacy Policy

Screen Pinning Off

## 8.3.3. Privacy Protecting and Security Warning

The phone provides several measures in place to protect your privacy and security.

### Privacy protecting

When you're typing with Secure Keyboard, viewing Private Safe, or using other privacy-related features, you will not be able to capture or record the screen. If you try to capture the screen, the phone will alert you "Cannot capture screenshot. The page contains personal information." If you try to record the screen, you will only record a black screen.

### Security warning

Some Android malware can spy on your activities in the background and can take pictures or make recordings without notifying you, resulting in leaking of the information. With Security Warning function, your phone will remind you every time the malware performs these activities.

**Prevent apps from taking pictures in the background**. A warning window will pop up on your phone screen.

**Prevent apps from making recordings in the background**. If any app starts the sound recorder, the status bar turns red.

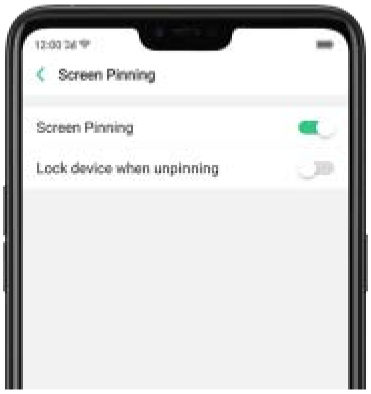
## 8.4. Advanced

### 8.4.1. Screen pinning

Screen Pinning temporally restricts the user from leaving the task or being interrupted by notifications. Once your app activates Screen Spinning, your phone is restricted to only display interface of this app, you cannot see notifications, access other apps, or return to the Home screen, until your app exits this mode.

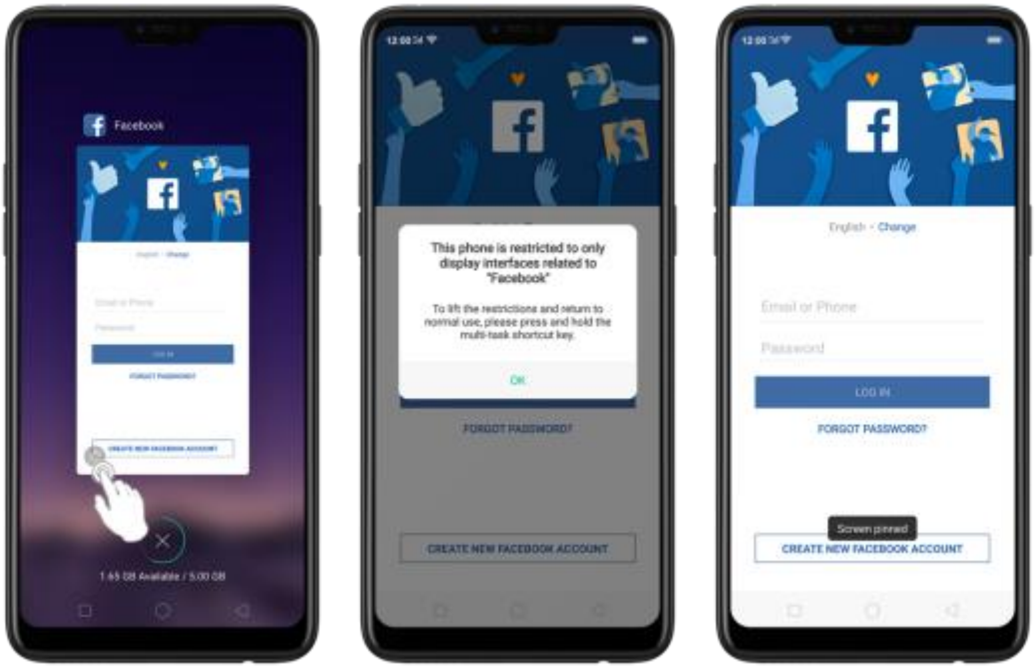
**Activate screen pinning**

Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Device & Privacy]**, scroll to the bottom of the screen and turn on [**Screen Pinning]**.


12:00
Screen Pinning

Screen Pinning ●
Lock device when unpinning ○

Open the app you want to pin and click the **Overview/Menu** button ☐ to access the multitasking tray. You can find the pushpin icon on the app preview interface. Click the icon to pin this app to your phone screen**.**


Facebook
1.65 GB Available / 5.00 GB
12:00
FORGOT PASSWORD?
CREATE NEW FACEBOOK ACCOUNT
English · Change
Email or Phone
Password
LOG IN
Screen pinned

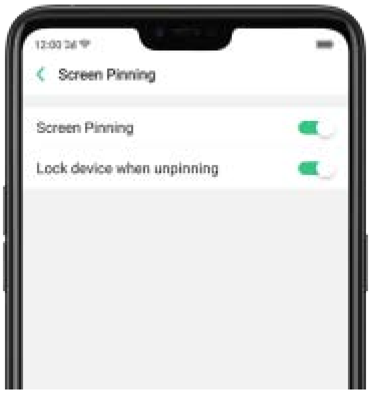
This phone is restricted to only display interfaces related to "Facebook"

To lift the restrictions and return to normal use, please press and hold the multi-task shortcut key.

OK

**Unpin the screen**. Touch and hold the **Overview/Menu** button until you see “Screen unpinned”.

If you want to lock the phone screen directly when unpinning the screen, switch the **[Lock device when unpinning]** slider to green.



Screen Pinning

Screen Pinning

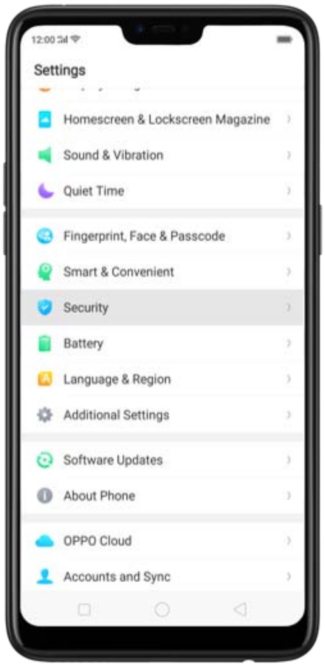
Lock device when unpinning

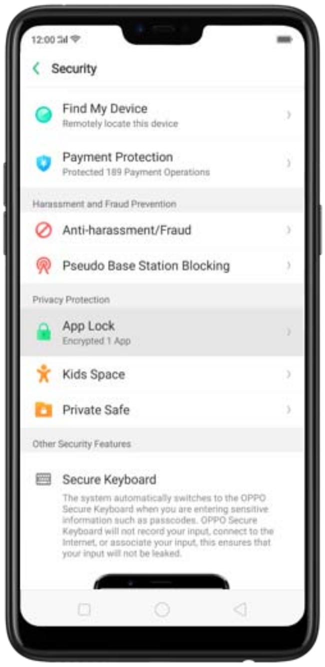
## 8.5. App Lock

If you want to fully secure your personal apps it is always best to encrypt them. This is to prevent theft of private data.

### How to encrypt apps

**Go to [Settings]** > **[Security]** > **[App Lock]** then select the apps that you would like to be encrypted, then click **Enable Encryption.**


12:00
Settings
Homescreen & Lockscreen Magazine
Sound & Vibration
Quiet Time
Fingerprint, Face & Passcode
Smart & Convenient
Security
Battery
Language & Region
Additional Settings
Software Updates
About Phone
OPPO Cloud
Accounts and Sync

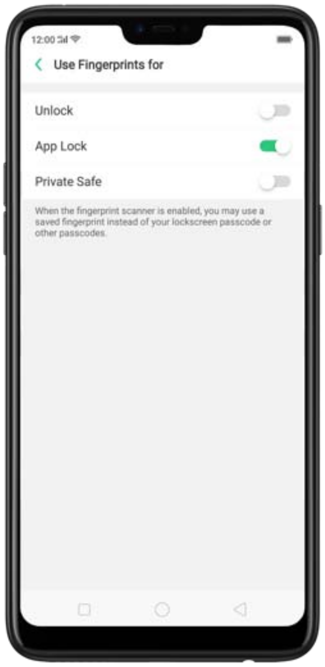

12:00
Security
Find My Device
Remotely locate this device
Payment Protection
Protected 189 Payment Operations
Harassment and Fraud Prevention
Anti-harassment/Fraud
Pseudo Base Station Blocking
Privacy Protection
App Lock
Encrypted 1 App
Kids Space
Private Safe
Other Security Features
Secure Keyboard

The system automatically switches to the OPPO Secure Keyboard when you are entering sensitive information such as passcodes. OPPO Secure Keyboard will not record your input, connect to the Internet, or associate your input, this ensures that your input will not be leaked.

You will be asked to set a passcode. Apart from the 4 numerical method, you can also choose from **Pattern Passcode** and **Custom Alphanumeric Passcode.** Just click **Other Methods** to be given this option.

After successfully setting a passcode, you will be asked to set a security question. This can you help you reset the passcode when you forget it. You can also customize a question, then click **Done.**

If you want to use fingerprint to encrypt apps, go to **[Settings]** > **[Fingerprint, Face &Passcode]** > **[Use fingerprints for]**then choose App Lock.



Use Fingerprints for

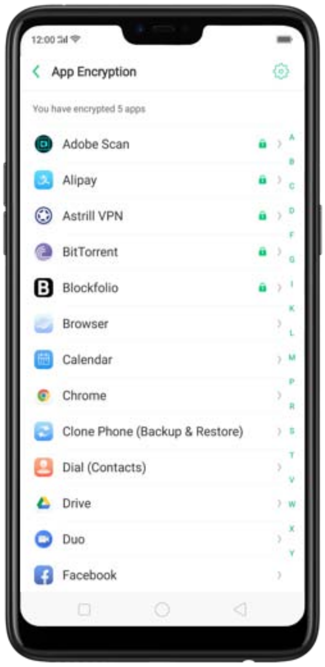
Unlock ○

App Lock ●

Private Safe ○

When the fingerprint scanner is enabled, you may use a saved fingerprint instead of your lockscreen passcode or other passcodes.

You will see a padlock on apps that you have encrypted.



App Encryption

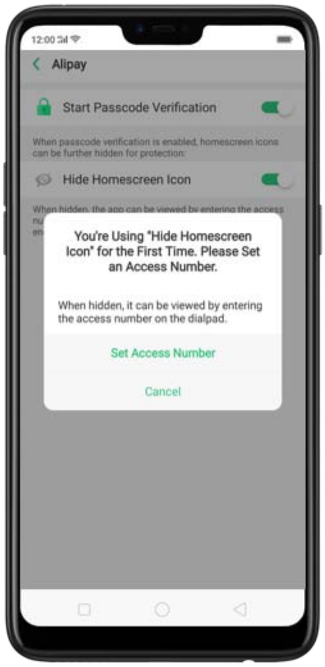
You have encrypted 5 apps

- Adobe Scan 🔒
- Alipay 🔒
- Astrill VPN 🔒
- BitTorrent 🔒
- Blockfolio 🔒
- Browser
- Calendar
- Chrome
- Clone Phone (Backup & Restore)
- Dial (Contacts)
- Drive
- Duo
- Facebook

## Hide Apps from the homescreen

You can also hide the app on the homescreen and can only be viewed when entering the access number on the dial pad. It can be opened without encryption passcode verification.

To enable hiding apps from the homescreen, go to **[Settings] > [Security] > [App Lock]** click on the App you would want to hide from the homescreen, toggle [Hide Homescreen] to green to enable.


12:00
Alipay
Start Passcode Verification
Hide Homescreen Icon
Set Access Number
Cancel

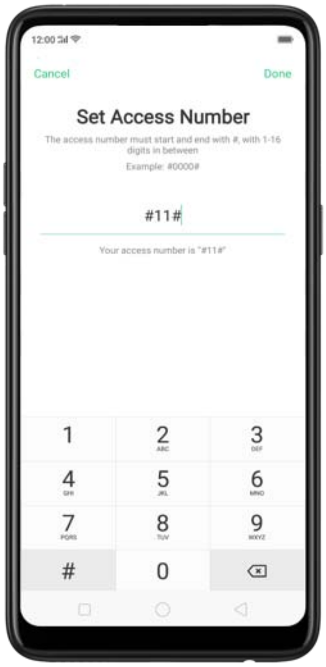
When passcode verification is enabled, homescreen icons can be further hidden for protection:

When hidden, the app can be viewed by entering the access

You're Using "Hide Homescreen Icon" for the First Time. Please Set an Access Number.

When hidden, it can be viewed by entering the access number on the dialpad.

You will be asked to set an access number that starts and ends with #, with 1-16 digits in between then click **Done**. Example: #0000#



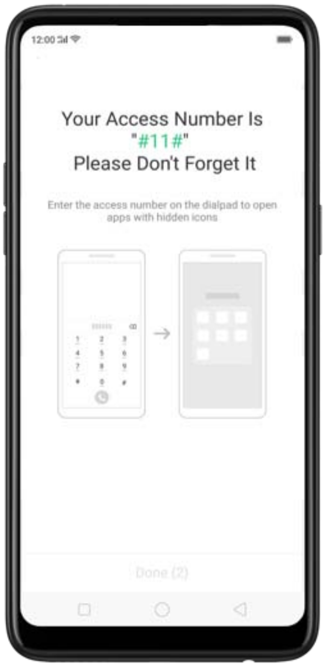
Set Access Number

The access number must start and end with #, with 1-16 digits in between

Example: #0000#

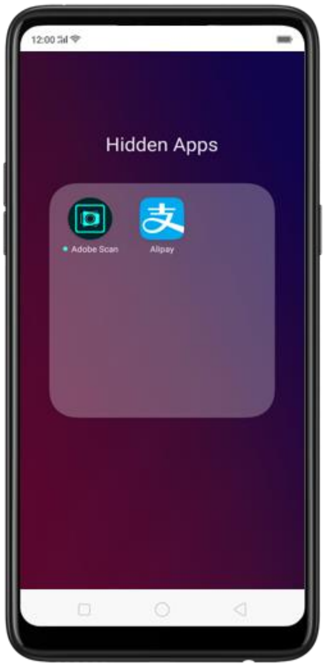
#11#

Your access number is "#11#"



Your Access Number Is "#11#" Please Don't Forget It

Enter the access number on the dialpad to open apps with hidden icons



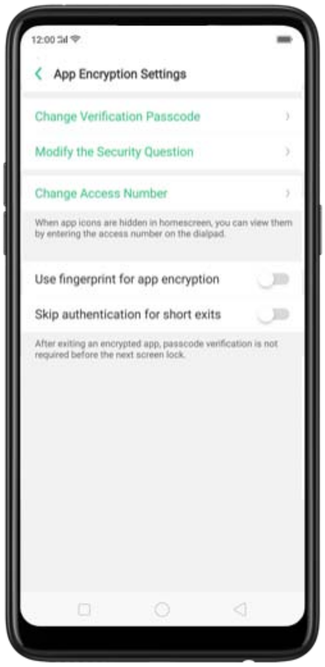
## Managing encrypted apps

**Go to [Settings] > [Security] > [App Lock]** then click ⚙ on the right top corner of the screen. You will be given options to manage the following:

- Change verification passcode
- Modify the security question
- Change access number

You can also enable the following:

- Use fingerprint for app encryption
- Stop authentication for short exits


12:00
App Encryption Settings
Change Verification Passcode
Modify the Security Question
Change Access Number

When app icons are hidden in homescreen, you can view them by entering the access number on the dialpad.

Use fingerprint for app encryption ○

Skip authentication for short exits ○

After exiting an encrypted app, passcode verification is not required before the next screen lock.

# 9. Share Internet connection and files

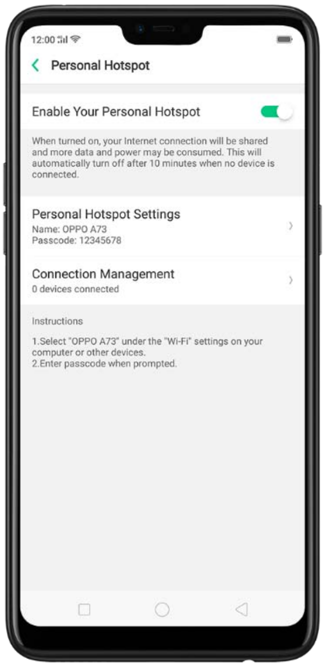
## 9.1.1. Tether your phone’s Internet connection

Using tethering can make you share your phone's Internet connection with several devices, such as your computer, tablet or other gadgets. Tethering works when your phone is connected to the Internet via mobile data or Wi-Fi network.

**Turn your phone into a personal hotspot**.

1. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Other Wireless Connections]** > **[Personal Hotspot]**, then switch the slider to green.
2. Set the hotspot name and password.
3. On another device, choose your hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.

**Note**: When a device is connected, a blue band appears at the top of the phone screen.



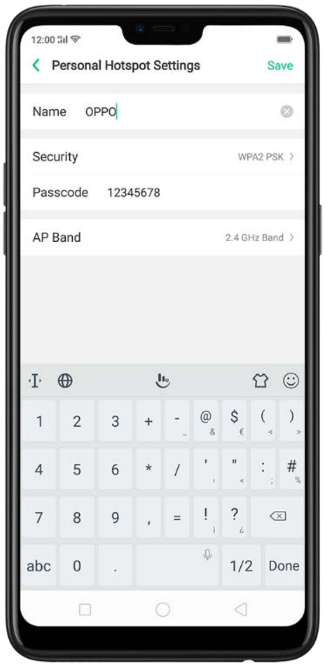
Enable Your Personal Hotspot

When turned on, your Internet connection will be shared and more data and power may be consumed. This will automatically turn off after 10 minutes when no device is connected.

Personal Hotspot Settings
Name: OPPO A73
Passcode: 12345678

Connection Management
0 devices connected

Instructions
1.Select "OPPO A73" under the "Wi-Fi" settings on your computer or other devices.
2.Enter passcode when prompted.

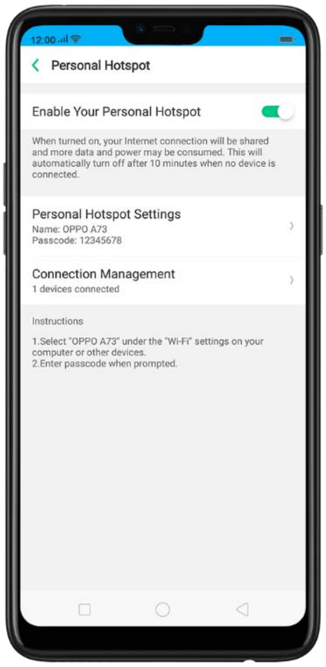


Name OPPO

Security WPA2 PSK

Passcode 12345678

AP Band 2.4 GHz Band



Enable Your Personal Hotspot

When turned on, your Internet connection will be shared and more data and power may be consumed. This will automatically turn off after 10 minutes when no device is connected.

Personal Hotspot Settings
Name: OPPO A73
Passcode: 12345678

Connection Management
1 devices connected

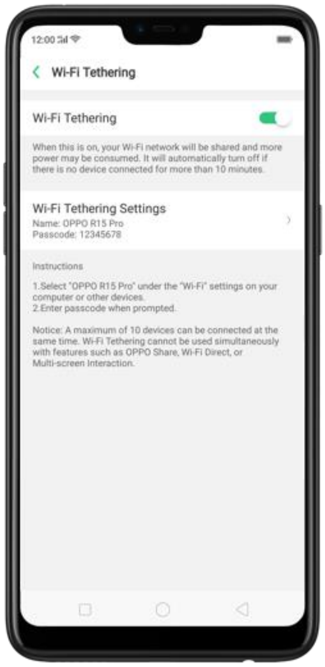
Instructions
1.Select "OPPO A73" under the "Wi-Fi" settings on your computer or other devices.
2.Enter passcode when prompted.

## Use Wi-Fi Tethering

This makes your phone as a Wi-Fi router which basically has the same functionality to that of a traditional router which enables the sharing of internet to other Wi-Fi devices. See Tether your phone’s internet connection.

### Use Wi-Fi Tethering

1. Go to [**Settings**] > [**Other Wireless Connections**] > and enable [**Wi-Fi Tethering**].
2. In [**Wi-Fi Tethering Settings**] you can change the name, manage security, and input passcode.



Wi-Fi Tethering

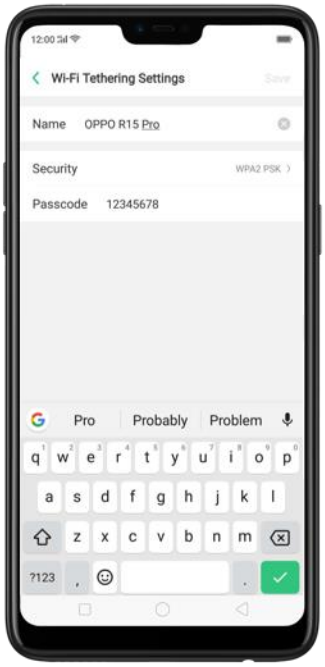
When this is on, your Wi-Fi network will be shared and more power may be consumed. It will automatically turn off if there is no device connected for more than 10 minutes.

Wi-Fi Tethering Settings
Name: OPPO R15 Pro
Passcode: 12345678

Instructions

1.Select "OPPO R15 Pro" under the "Wi-Fi" settings on your computer or other devices.
2.Enter passcode when prompted.

Notice: A maximum of 10 devices can be connected at the same time. Wi-Fi Tethering cannot be used simultaneously with features such as OPPO Share, Wi-Fi Direct, or Multi-screen Interaction.



Name OPPO R15 Pro

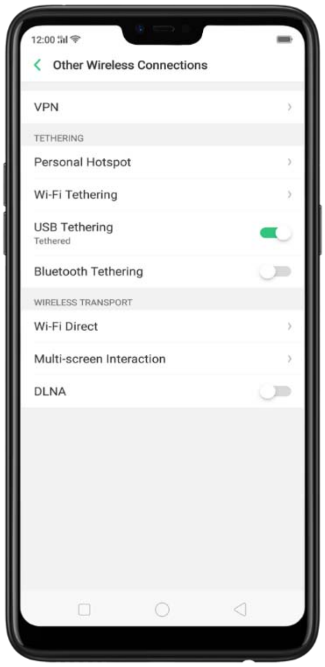
Security WPA2 PSK

Passcode 12345678

**Note:** Wi-Fi Tethering will automatically turn off if no device is connected for more than 10 minutes. This is to save energy. A maximum of 10 devices can be connected but cannot be used simultaneously with features such as OPPO Share, Wi-Fi Direct, or Multi-screen Interaction.

## Use USB Tethering.

1. Connect your phone to your computer using the cable that came with it.
2. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Other Wireless Connections]** > **[USB Tethering]**, then switch the slider to green.
3. In your computer's Network preferences, choose your OPPO phone, then configure the network settings.



12:00

Other Wireless Connections

VPN

TETHERING

Personal Hotspot

Wi-Fi Tethering

USB Tethering
Tethered

Bluetooth Tethering

WIRELESS TRANSPORT

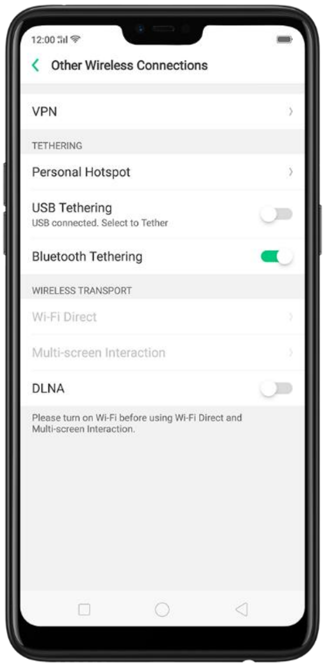
Wi-Fi Direct

Multi-screen Interaction

DLNA

## **Tether via Bluetooth**.

1. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Other Wireless Connections]** and enable **[Bluetooth Tethering]**.
2. **In [Settings]** > **[Bluetooth]**, pair and connect your phone with your Bluetooth device.
3. Click ⓘ next to the device's name, then click **[Internet Connection Sharing]**.


12:00

Other Wireless Connections

VPN

TETHERING

Personal Hotspot

USB Tethering
USB connected. Select to Tether ○

Bluetooth Tethering ●

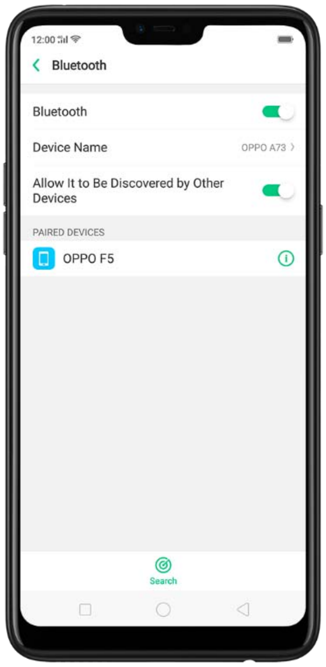
WIRELESS TRANSPORT

Wi-Fi Direct

Multi-screen Interaction

DLNA ○

Please turn on Wi-Fi before using Wi-Fi Direct and Multi-screen Interaction.


12:00

Bluetooth

Bluetooth ●

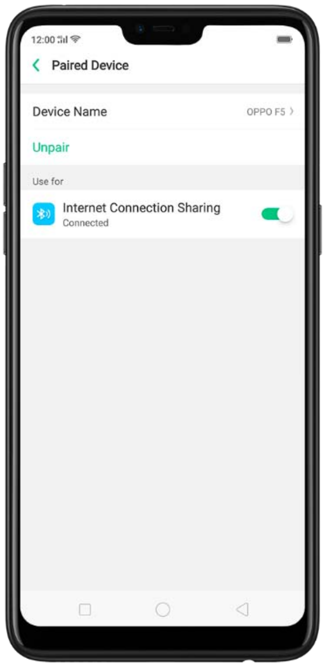
Device Name OPPO A73

Allow It to Be Discovered by Other Devices ●

PAIRED DEVICES

OPPO F5

Search


12:00

Paired Device

Device Name OPPO F5

Unpair

Use for

Internet Connection Sharing
Connected ●

**Monitor your mobile data network usage**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Dual SIM & Cellular Data]**.

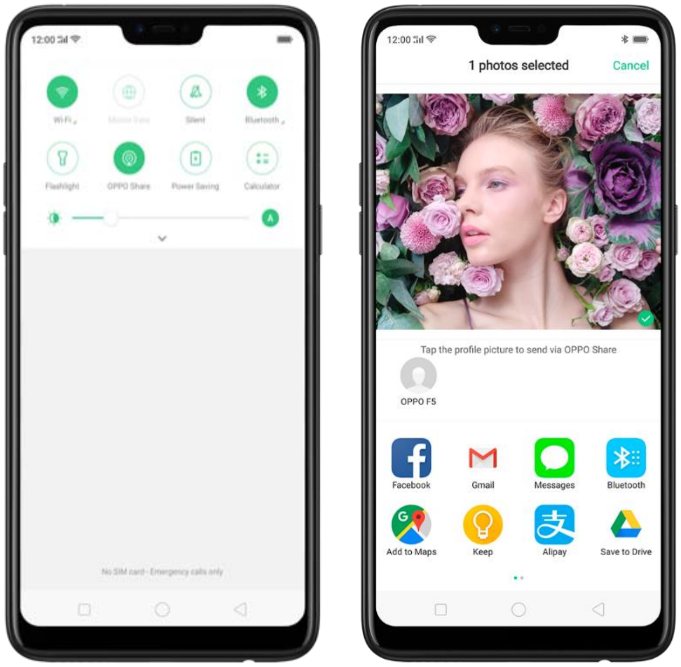
# 9.2. Share Files

## 9.2.1. Wireless file sharing

You can share files wirelessly between wireless devices.

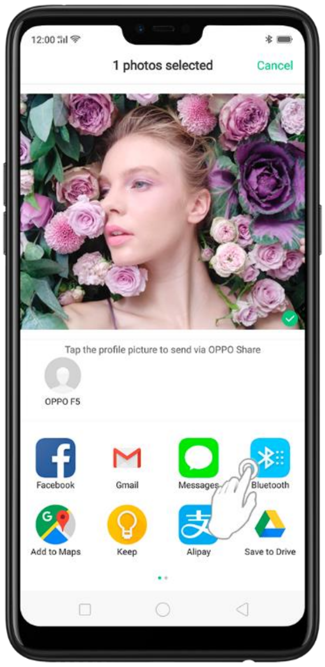
**Use OPPO share**. Share files between OPPO smartphones.

1. Open Control Center, then turn on OPPO Share on both OPPO phones.
2. Select the files to be shared and the device to share with, click Send, then click the detected OPPO phone.
3. Click Receive on the other device and start sharing.


12:00
Wi-Fi
Mobile Data
Silent
Bluetooth
Flashlight
OPPO Share
Power Saving
Calculator
No SIM card - Emergency calls only
12:00
1 photos selected
Cancel
Tap the profile picture to send via OPPO Share
OPPO F5
Facebook
Gmail
Messages
Bluetooth
Add to Maps
Keep
Alipay
Save to Drive

**Share via Bluetooth**.

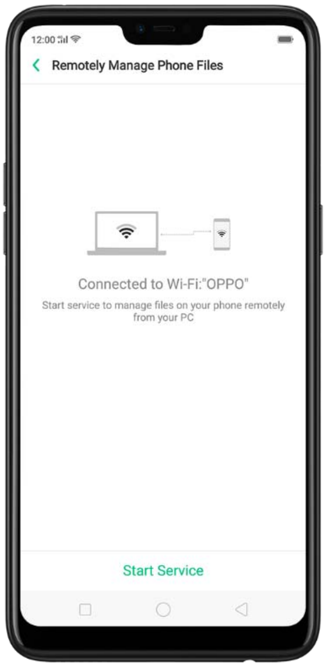
1. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Bluetooth]** and enable Bluetooth. Then pair and connect your phone with your Bluetooth device.
2. Select the files to be shared, click Send, then click Bluetooth.
3. Click Accept on your Bluetooth device and start sharing.


12:00
1 photos selected
Cancel
OPPO F5
Facebook
Gmail
Messages
Bluetooth
Add to Maps
Keep
Alipay
Save to Drive

Tap the profile picture to send via OPPO Share

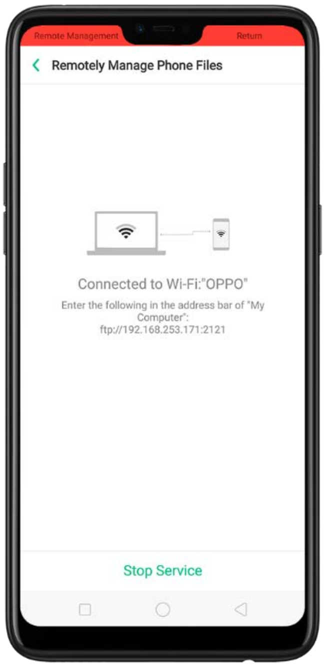
**Use Remote Management to view and download files.**

1. Connect your phone and laptop to the same Wi-Fi network.
2. Click Files, click Remotely Manage Phone Files, then click Start Service. Search the URL displayed on your phone screen with your computer, then you can view your phone's file system and download files directly to your computer.
   See Remotely Manage Phone Files.


12:00
Remotely Manage Phone Files
Start Service

Connected to Wi-Fi:"OPPO"

Start service to manage files on your phone remotely from your PC


Remote Management
Return
Remotely Manage Phone Files
Stop Service

Connected to Wi-Fi:"OPPO"

Enter the following in the address bar of "My Computer":
ftp://192.168.253.171:2121

**Wi-Fi Direct**. Wi-Fi Direct allows devices to connect to each other directly through Wi-Fi, without the need of a Wi-Fi network or hotspot, and without having to set up the connection. You can also use Wi-Fi Direct to share files with the help of third-party apps, such as ZAPYA.

1. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Wi-Fi]** and enable Wi-Fi.

2. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Other Wireless Connections]** > **[Wi-Fi Direct]**.

3. Click **Search** to start scanning for nearby Wi-Fi Direct devices. After the scan, select a device, then follow the prompts to pair the devices.

**Multi-screen Interaction**. You can stream your phone screen to TV sets, TV Boxes, or computers which is certified with Wi-Fi Miracast technology.

**Stream to computer**

Notice:

1. Connect your OPPO smartphone and computer to the same Wi-Fi network.

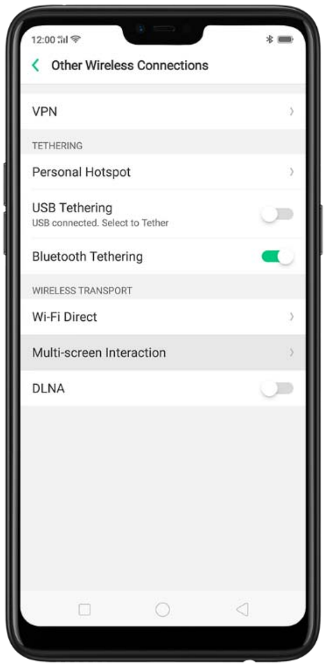
2. The function is only supported by Win 10. For Win 8 system, you can install additional software and apps like AirServer to support.

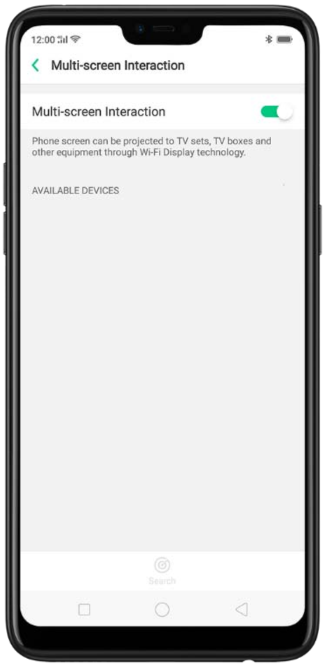
   Computer Setting

   - Go to **[Settings]** > **[System]** > **[Project onto the computer]**.
   - Allow projection on all locations and every time when a request comes.
   - Enable the PIN code and remember your computer name.

   OPPO smartphone Setting

   - Go to **[Settings]** > **[Other Wireless Connections]** > **[Multi-screen Interaction]**, switch **[Multi-screen Interaction]** to green to start searching devices.
   - Select your computer name from the list and match it to your smartphone. You will see the shared screen on computer once it's connected successfully.


12:00
Other Wireless Connections
VPN
TETHERING
Personal Hotspot
USB Tethering
USB connected. Select to Tether
Bluetooth Tethering
WIRELESS TRANSPORT
Wi-Fi Direct
Multi-screen Interaction
DLNA


12:00
Multi-screen Interaction
Multi-screen Interaction
AVAILABLE DEVICES
Search

Phone screen can be projected to TV sets, TV boxes and other equipment through Wi-Fi Display technology.

**Stream to TV**

- Connect your OPPO smartphone and TV to the same Wi-Fi network.
- Select your TV name from the list and match it to your smartphone. You will see the shared screen on TV once it's connected successfully.
- If you want to stream the video playing on your smartphone to your TV, you can install additional apps like IQIYI to support.

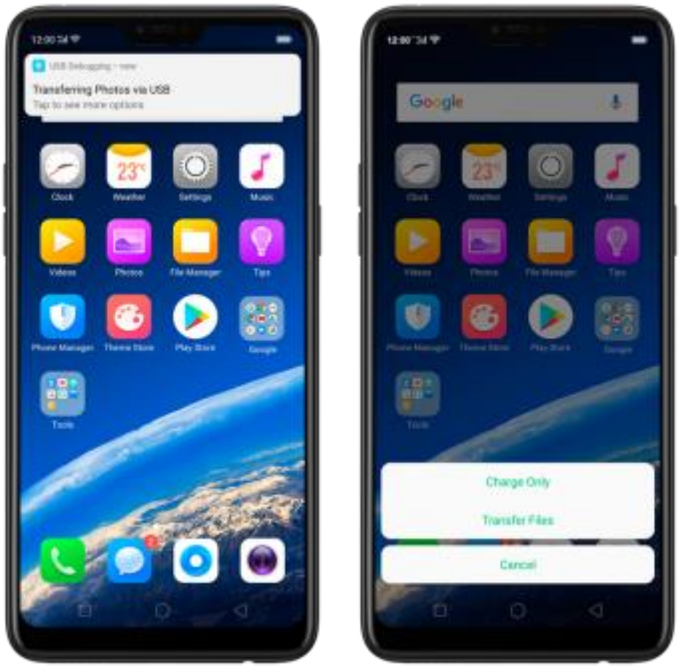
## 9.2.2. Wired file sharing

**Transfer files between your phone and a computer.**

1. Connect your phone to your computer using the cable that came with it.

2. Click phone’s notification, then click File Transfer.

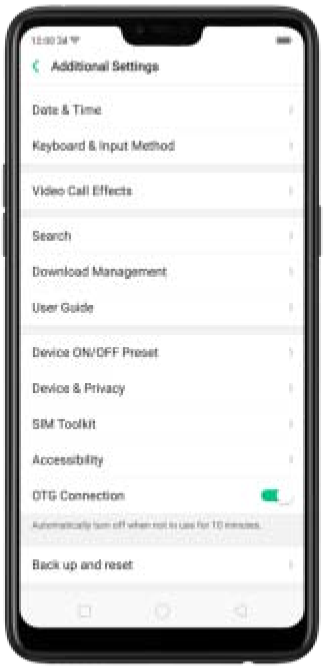
3. On the computer, click your phone name, click Internal shared storage, then you can copy phone files to the computer.


Transferring Photos via USB
Tap to see more options
Google
Charge Only
Transfer Files
Cancel

**Transfer files with USB OTG**. You can connect and add additional storage devices or USB flash drives directly to your phone using USB OTG cable.

1. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** and enable **[OTG Connection]**.

2. Connect a storage device to your phone using USB OTG cable. You can directly access data on the external storage device and play movies or music without having to store them on your device.

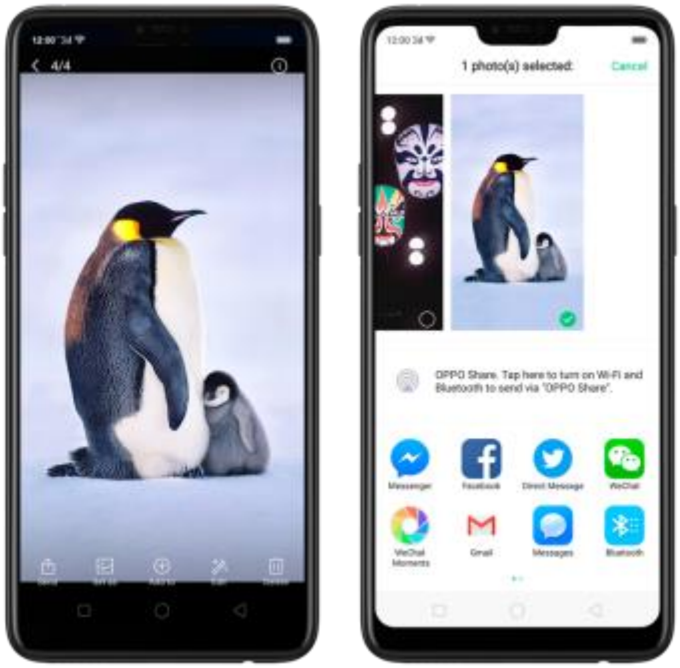

Additional Settings
Date & Time
Keyboard & Input Method
Video Call Effects
Search
Download Management
User Guide
Device ON/OFF Preset
Device & Privacy
SIM Toolkit
Accessibility
OTG Connection
Automatically turn off when not in use for 10 minutes.
Back up and reset

### 9.2.3. Share from apps

In addition to sharing your information from the Files app, you can also share from many other apps on your OPPO smartphone.

**Share from apps**. In many apps, you can click Send or ⇧ to choose how to share your information. The choices vary depending on the app you're using. Additional options may appear if you've downloaded apps with sharing options.

Take the Photos app as an example, click ⇧ and you'll see all the sharing options.


12:00
4/4
12:00
1 photo(s) selected
Cancel
Messenger
Facebook
Direct Message
WeChat
WeChat Moments
Gmail
Messages
Bluetooth

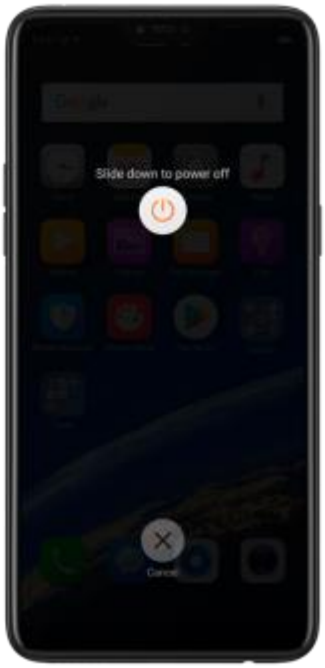
OPPO Share. Tap here to turn on Wi-Fi and Bluetooth to send via "OPPO Share".

# 10. Restart, update, back up, and restore

## 10.1. Restart the phone

If something isn't working right, try restarting the phone.

**Restart OPPO phone**. Press and hold the Sleep/Wake button until the **Slide down to power off** message appears. Drag the power icon down to turn off the phone. To turn the phone back on, press and hold the Sleep/Wake button until you see the OPPO logo.



**Force restart** **OPPO phone**. If the phone is not responding, press and hold the Sleep/Wake and Volume Up buttons for at least 8 seconds until you see the OPPO logo.

## 10.2. Update ColorOS software

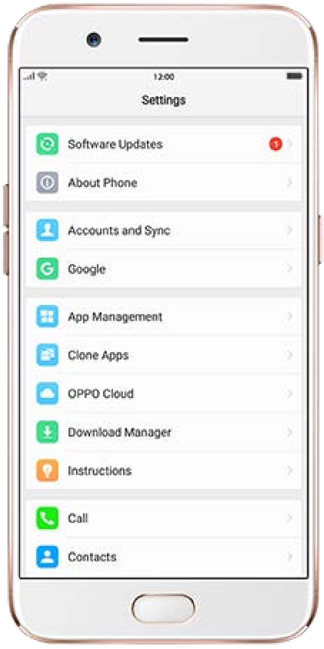
There are three ways to update your device.

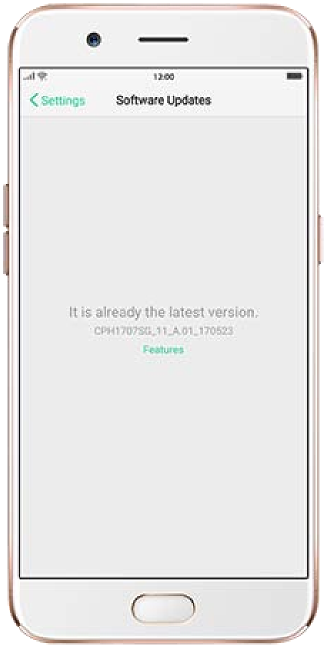
**Notice before doing the update.**

- Plug your OPPO phone into power, or keep the battery level over 40%.
- The update process takes some time. Do not operate or power off your device during the process.
- DO NOT root the phone yourself, for that might cause damage to your system, and the warranty service will be terminated immediately.

### Update your OPPO phone wirelessly

1. Connect to a working Wi-Fi or Mobile network. The system will automatically show new update if any. You can see a notification on the "System updates" icon, otherwise, it will show "It is already the latest version".

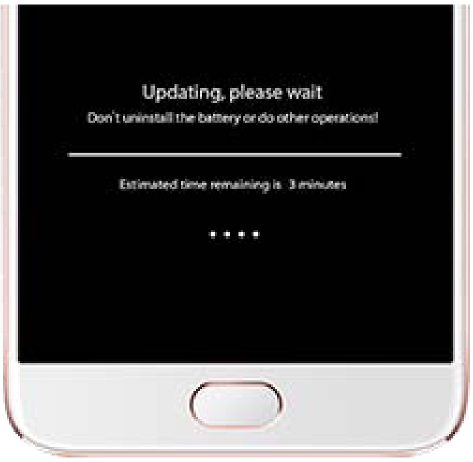

12:00
Settings
Software Updates
1
About Phone
Accounts and Sync
Google
App Management
Clone Apps
OPPO Cloud
Download Manager
Instructions
Call
Contacts


12:00
Settings
Software Updates

It is already the latest version.
CPH1707SG_11_A.01_170523

Features

2. Download the firmware. Download under a Wi-Fi network to avoid mobile consumption.
3. Click **[System Updates]**. Your device will reboot and start updating, which will take a few minutes.



Updating, please wait
Don't uninstall the battery or do other operations!

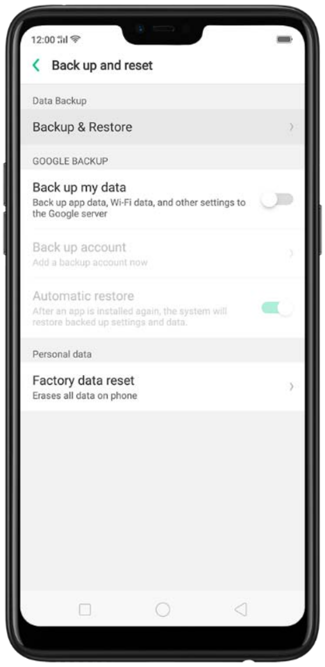
Estimated time remaining is 3 minutes

# 10.3. Back up and restore the phone

## 10.3.1.Back up your phone

If you use your OPPO phone on a regular basis, having a reliable backup is essential in case something goes wrong.

**Use the built-in backup tool**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Back up and reset]** and click**[Backup & Restore]**. All your personal data, system data, and applications will be backed up to phone storage.



Data Backup

Backup & Restore

GOOGLE BACKUP

Back up my data

Back up app data, Wi-Fi data, and other settings to the Google server

Back up account

Add a backup account now

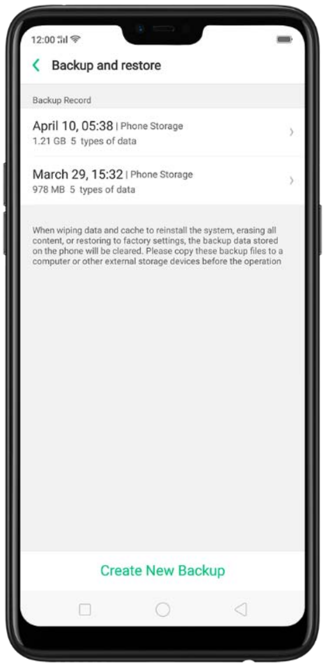
Automatic restore

After an app is installed again, the system will restore backed up settings and data.

Personal data

Factory data reset

Erases all data on phone



Backup Record

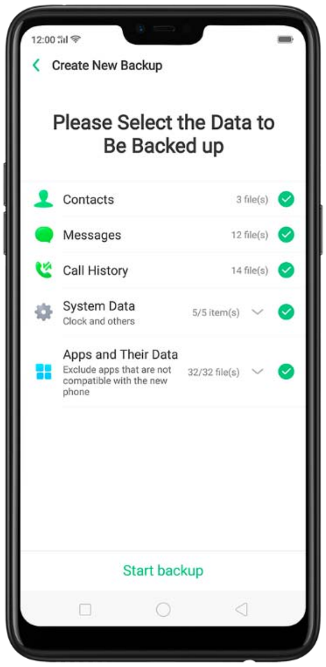
April 10, 05:38 | Phone Storage

1.21 GB 5 types of data

March 29, 15:32 | Phone Storage

978 MB 5 types of data

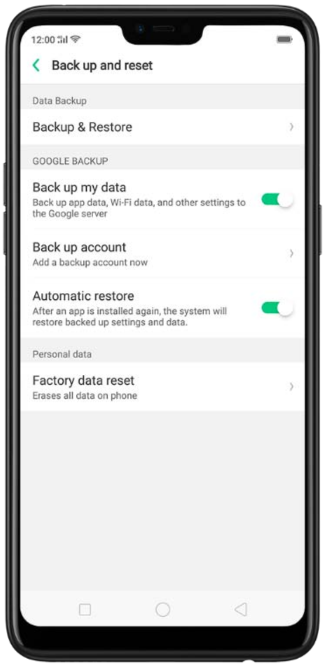
When wiping data and cache to reinstall the system, erasing all content, or restoring to factory settings, the backup data stored on the phone will be cleared. Please copy these backup files to a computer or other external storage devices before the operation



Please Select the Data to Be Backed up

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Contacts | 3 file(s) | ✓ |
| Messages | 12 file(s) | ✓ |
| Call History | 14 file(s) | ✓ |
| System Data<br>Clock and others | 5/5 item(s) | ✓ |
| Apps and Their Data<br>Exclude apps that are not compatible with the new phone | 32/32 file(s) | ✓ |

**Back up to Google**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Back up and reset]** and turn on **[Back up my data]**. You can back up your app data, Wi-Fi data, and other settings to the Google server.



Back up and reset

Data Backup

Backup & Restore

GOOGLE BACKUP

Back up my data

Back up app data, Wi-Fi data, and other settings to the Google server

Back up account

Add a backup account now

Automatic restore

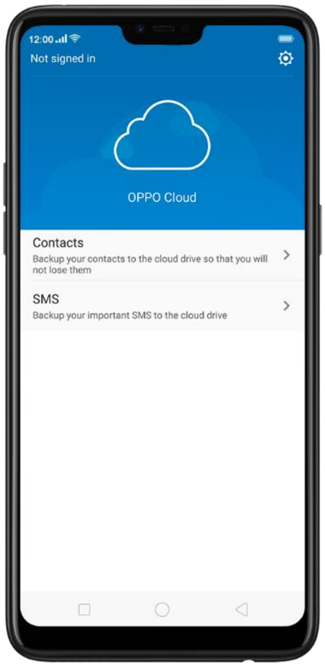
After an app is installed again, the system will restore backed up settings and data.

Personal data

Factory data reset

Erases all data on phone

**Use OPPO Cloud**. OPPO Cloud allows you to back up the Contacts and SMS to the cloud drive. You need to register or sign in OPPO account first.



Not signed in

OPPO Cloud

Contacts

Backup your contacts to the cloud drive so that you will not lose them

SMS

Backup your important SMS to the cloud drive

**Connect your phone to a computer to create a backup on it.** This is a common way to back up all your data. Don't disconnect your phone during the copy backup process.

View Back up your OPPO smartphone for more details.

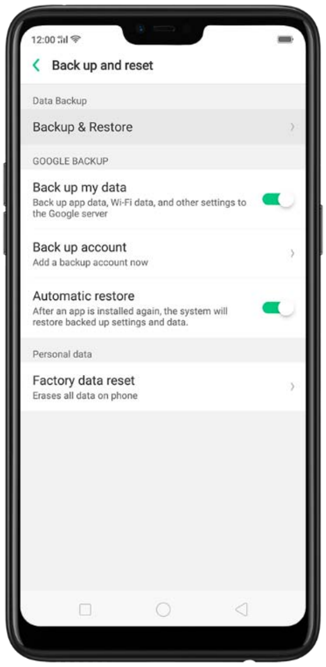
## 10.3.2.Restore data on your phone

There are various methods to restore data on OPPO smartphone. Select the corresponding restoration method according to the way you have made the backup.

### Restore your OPPO smartphone from Local backup

Before you start, make sure that you have copied and saved the data on OPPO smartphone via **Local backup**.

1. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Back up and reset]** and click **[Backup & Restore]**. You can find the data you want to restore according to its backup time.



Back up and reset

Data Backup

Backup & Restore

GOOGLE BACKUP

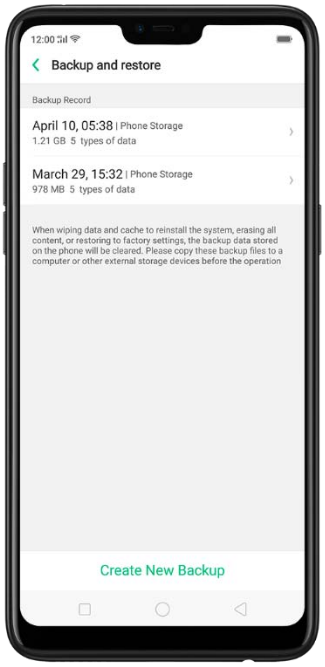
Back up my data
Back up app data, Wi-Fi data, and other settings to the Google server

Back up account
Add a backup account now

Automatic restore
After an app is installed again, the system will restore backed up settings and data.

Personal data

Factory data reset
Erases all data on phone



Backup and restore

Backup Record

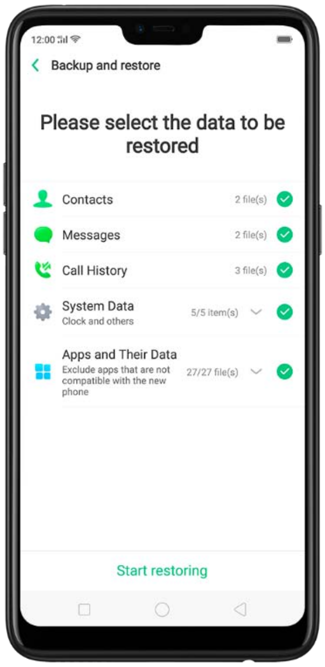
April 10, 05:38 | Phone Storage
1.21 GB 5 types of data

March 29, 15:32 | Phone Storage
978 MB 5 types of data

When wiping data and cache to reinstall the system, erasing all content, or restoring to factory settings, the backup data stored on the phone will be cleared. Please copy these backup files to a computer or other external storage devices before the operation

Create New Backup

2. Select data to be restored, including Contacts, Messages, Call history, system data and Apps and their data. Then start the restoration.



12:00

Backup and restore

Please select the data to be restored

Contacts 2 file(s) ✓

Messages 2 file(s) ✓

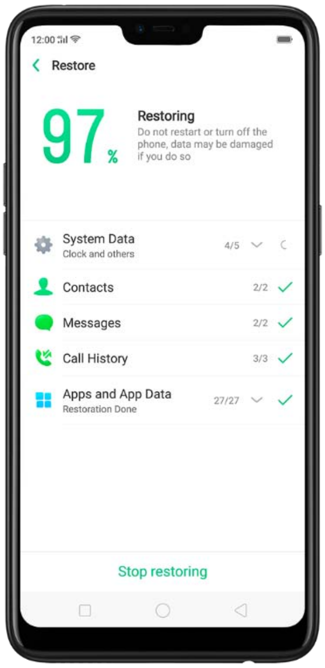
Call History 3 file(s) ✓

System Data
Clock and others 5/5 item(s) ✓

Apps and Their Data
Exclude apps that are not compatible with the new phone 27/27 file(s) ✓

Start restoring

3. OPPO smartphone will display the progress and details till the restoration is done. You can click**Stop Restoring** at any time during the process.



12:00

Restore

97 %

Restoring
Do not restart or turn off the phone, data may be damaged if you do so

System Data
Clock and others 4/5

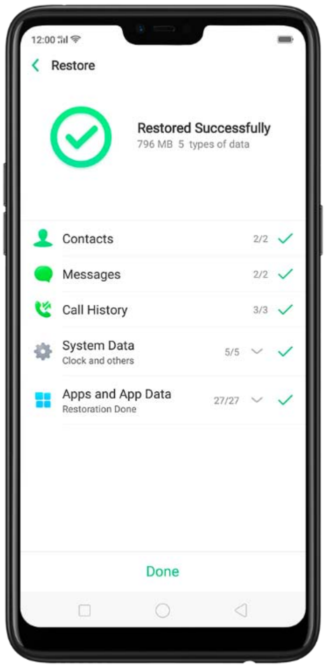
Contacts 2/2 ✓

Messages 2/2 ✓

Call History 3/3 ✓

Apps and App Data
Restoration Done 27/27 ✓

Stop restoring



12:00

Restore

Restored Successfully
796 MB 5 types of data

Contacts 2/2 ✓

Messages 2/2 ✓

Call History 3/3 ✓

System Data
Clock and others 5/5 ✓

Apps and App Data
Restoration Done 27/27 ✓

Done

* DO NOT turn off or restart your phone during the restoration process, otherwise, data may be damaged or lost.

* After restoration has succeeded, you can delete data that are no longer needed.

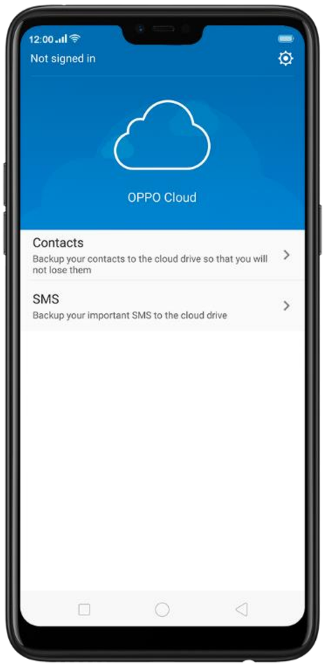
### Restore your OPPO smartphone via computer

If your backup files are stored on external storage such as SD card, removable hard drive, etc., copy these files to your OPPO smartphone to complete data restoration.

### Restore Contacts and SMS on OPPO smartphone from OPPO Cloud

If you have backed up your Contacts and SMS to OPPO Cloud, you can restore them after signing in to your OPPO account.

* Network connection is required when you back up or restore data with OPPO Cloud.



Contacts
Backup your contacts to the cloud drive so that you will not lose them

SMS
Backup your important SMS to the cloud drive

### Transfer your data with Clone Phone

If you have switched to a new OPPO phone, you can transfer your data from old phone to your new OPPO phone through **Clone Phone**.

#### Restore your OPPO smartphone data from third-party Apps

OPPO does not recommend you back up, transfer or restore data via third-party APPs, for they may be in conflict with OPPO system, leak personal information, or cause other safety problems.

## 10.3.3.Reset the phone

Resetting your OPPO phone will reset the phone back to its original factory settings, and will permanently erase all your personal data. You can do Factory data reset if your phone starts to lag or there's a delay in navigating, has too much junk files and caches, or has issues with system or applications.

Before you do factory reset, back up all the needed data.

### Reset your phone to factory settings

Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional settings]** > **[Back up and reset]** > **[Factory data reset]**, choose an option available for factory data reset.

* Any reset option cannot be revoked once it is operated.

### Reset System Settings

This option will reset all system settings without deleting any data or media files.

#### Erase All App Data and Deletable Apps

This option will delete all third-party apps and app data. But the data saved by the user will be kept such as photos, music, and videos.

#### Erase All Content and Settings

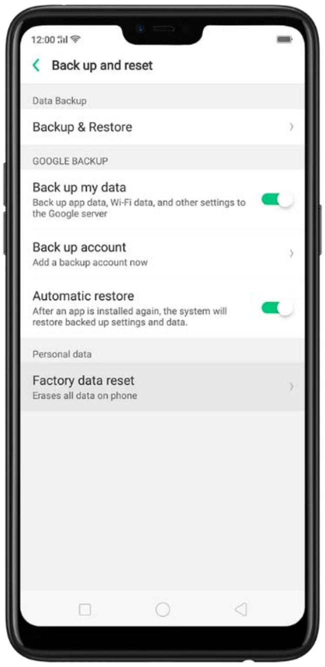
Through this option, all data of OPPO smartphone will be cleared including contents, settings, photos, and music. OPPO smartphone will reset to its inactivated initial state, which is the factory state.

#### Erase Contacts and Call Logs

By choosing this option, all the contacts and call history on the phone will be erased. Only the contacts on the SIM card will be preserved. Other data on OPPO smartphone will not be affected.

### Erase All SMS and MMS

By choosing this option, all the SMS and MMS messages on the phone will be erased. Only the SMS messages on the SIM card will be preserved. Other data on OPPO smartphone will not be affected.



12:00

Back up and reset

Data Backup

Backup & Restore

GOOGLE BACKUP

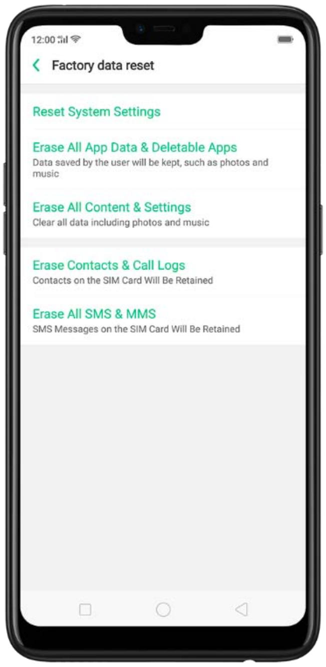
Back up my data
Back up app data, Wi-Fi data, and other settings to the Google server

Back up account
Add a backup account now

Automatic restore
After an app is installed again, the system will restore backed up settings and data.

Personal data

Factory data reset
Erases all data on phone



12:00

Factory data reset

Reset System Settings

Erase All App Data & Deletable Apps
Data saved by the user will be kept, such as photos and music

Erase All Content & Settings
Clear all data including photos and music

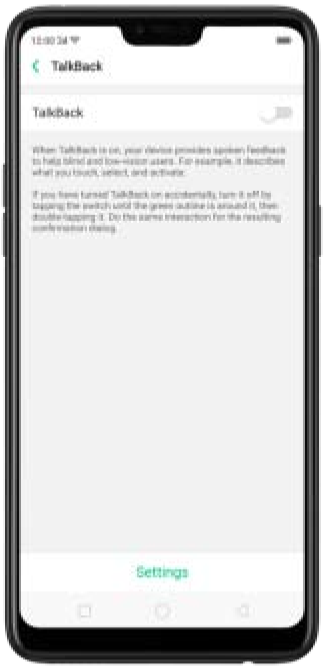
Erase Contacts & Call Logs
Contacts on the SIM Card Will Be Retained

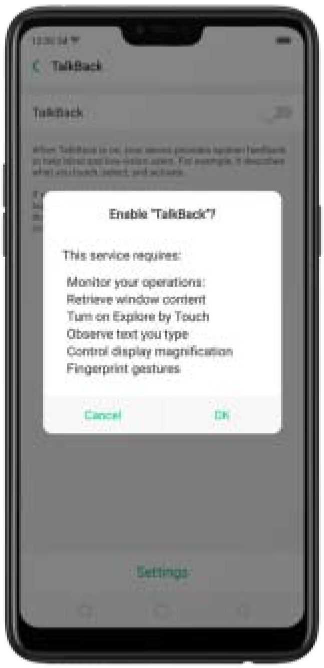
Erase All SMS & MMS
SMS Messages on the SIM Card Will Be Retained

# 11. Barrier-free

## 11.1. TalkBack

TalkBack helps blind and vision-impaired users to interact with the phones more easily. It uses spoken word, vibration, and other audible feedback to let you know what's on your screen, what you're touching, and what you can do with it.
**Turn TalkBack on**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Accessibility]** and enable TalkBack.

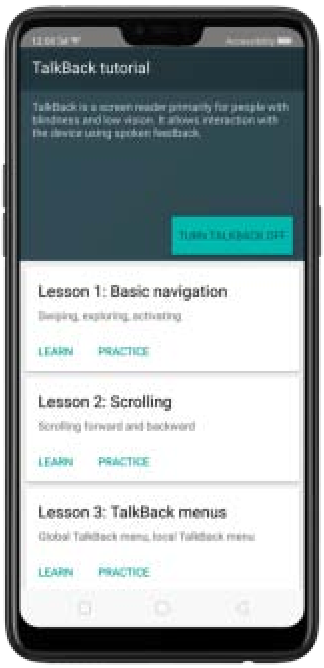

TalkBack
TalkBack
Settings


TalkBack
TalkBack
Settings
Cancel
OK

Enable "TalkBack"?

This service requires:

Monitor your operations:
Retrieve window content
Turn on Explore by Touch
Observe text you type
Control display magnification
Fingerprint gestures


TalkBack tutorial
TURN TALKBACK OFF
LEARN
PRACTICE
LEARN
PRACTICE
LEARN
PRACTICE

TalkBack is a screen reader primarily for people with blindness and low vision. It allows interaction with the device using spoken feedback.

Lesson 1: Basic navigation
Swiping, exploring, activating

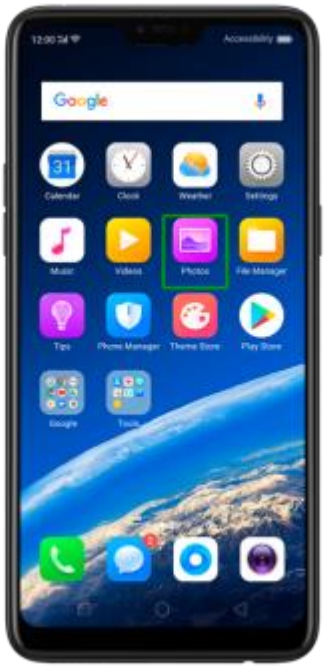
Lesson 2: Scrolling
Scrolling forward and backward

Lesson 3: TalkBack menus
Global TalkBack menu, local TalkBack menu

When **TalkBack** is on:
Your device provides spoken feedback to help blind and low-vision users. For example, it describes what you touch, select, and activate.

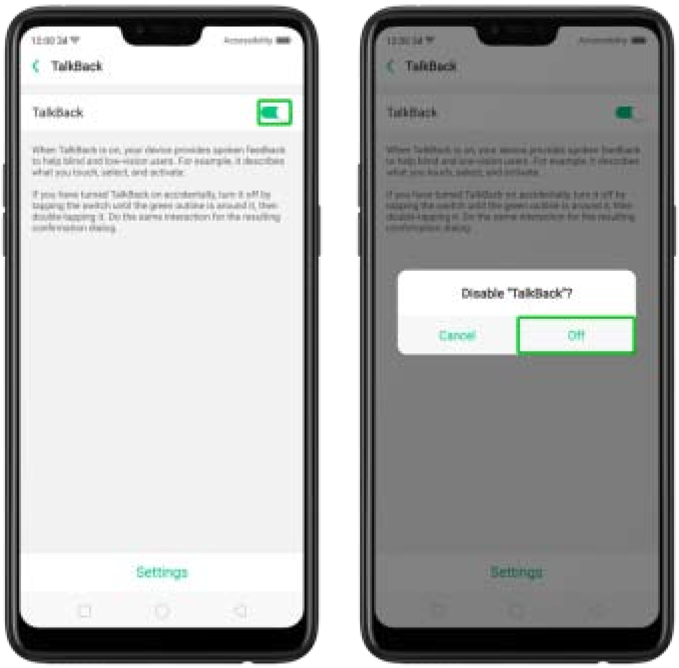
- **To select an option**: Click the option to show the green border, then double-click to activate it.

- **To scroll the screen**: Swipe upward or downward with two fingers.


Google
Calendar
Clock
Weather
Settings
Music
Videos
Photos
File Manager
Tips
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Play Store
Google
Tools

**Turn Talkback off**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Accessibility]** >

**[TalkBack]**, switch the slider to white, then click **Off**.



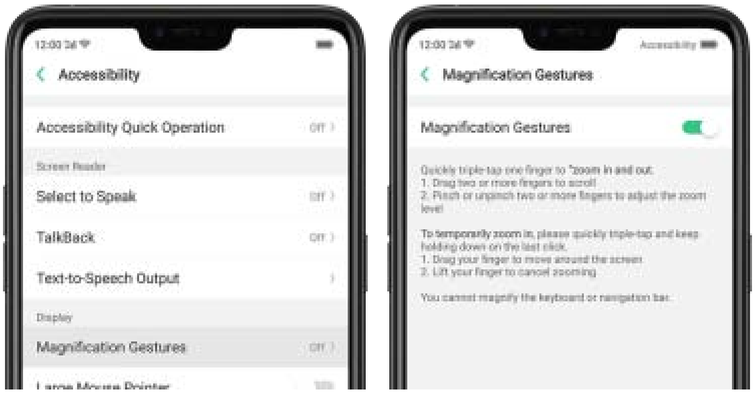
When TalkBack is on, your device provides spoken feedback to help blind and low-vision users. For example, it describes what you touch, select, and activate.

If you have turned TalkBack on accidentally, turn it off by tapping the switch until the green outline is around it, then double-tapping it. Do the same interaction for the resulting confirmation dialog.

## 11.2. Magnification Gestures

Magnification gestures work similarly to the full-screen magnifiers, which allows users to zoom in and pan the whole screen to get a closer look at screen content.

**Enable magnification gestures**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]**> **[Accessibility]** and enable **[Magnification Gestures]**.



Accessibility Quick Operation Off

Select to Speak Off

TalkBack Off

Text-to-Speech Output

Magnification Gestures Off

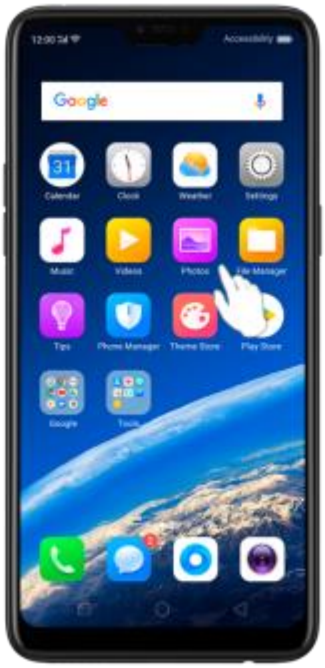
Magnification Gestures

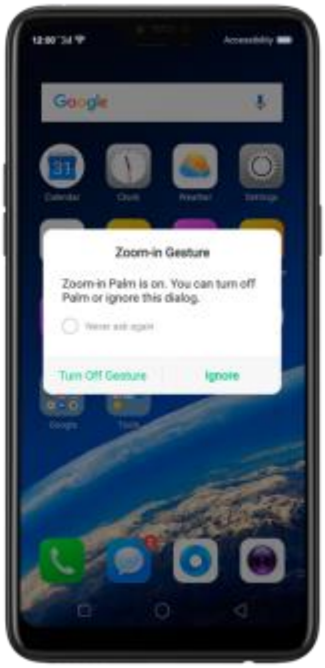
Quickly triple-tap one finger to "zoom in and out:
1. Drag two or more fingers to scroll
2. Pinch or unpinch two or more fingers to adjust the zoom level

To temporarily zoom in, please quickly triple-tap and keep holding down on the last click.
1. Drag your finger to move around the screen
2. Lift your finger to cancel zooming

You cannot magnify the keyboard or navigation bar.

- Quickly triple-tap the screen to zoom in and out. The triple-tapping does not work well on the keyboard or on the navigation bar - if you have the magnifier running while the keyboard is shown, only the area above the keyboard will be magnified.
- Drag two or more fingers across the screen to pan across the screen.
- Pinch your fingers together or apart to adjust the zoom level.

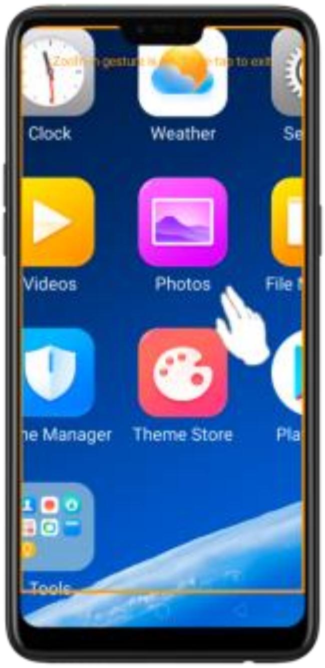

Google
Calendar
Clock
Weather
Settings
Music
Videos
Photos
File Manager
Tips
Phone Manager
Theme Store
Play Store
Google
Tools

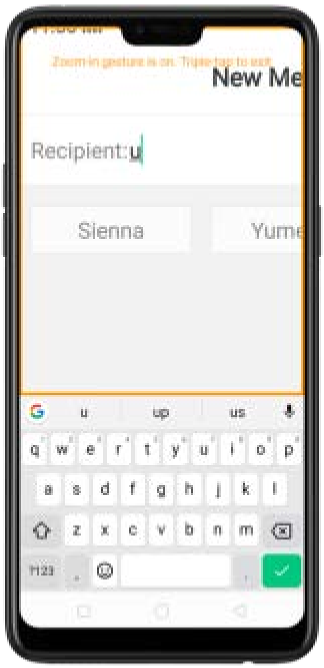

Zoom-in Gesture

Zoom-in Palm is on. You can turn off Palm or ignore this dialog.

○ Never ask again

Google
Turn Off Gesture
Ignore


Clock
Weather
Se
Videos
Photos
File
ne Manager
Theme Store
Pla
Tools


Zoom-in gesture is on. Triple-tap to exit.

Recipient:u

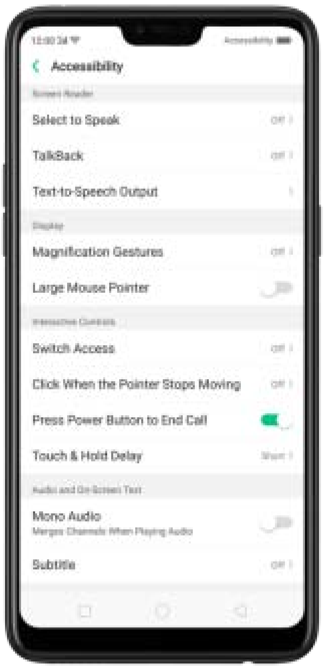
New Me
Sienna
Yume
u
up
us
q w e r t y u i o p
a s d f g h j k l
z x c v b n m
?123

**Turn the magnifier on temporarily**. Triple-tap the screen and hold the third click.

- Drag one finger around the screen to move the view.
- Lift the finger to cancel zooming.
- Quickly triple-tap to exit.

## 11.3. Press Power Button to End Call

- In addition to end calls by clicking ☎, you can make the Power button do this function.
- **End Calls with the Power button**. Go to **[Settings]** > **[Additional Settings]** > **[Accessibility]** and turn on **[Press Power Button to End Call]**. Then you can end calls by clicking **Decline** or pressing the Power button.



Accessibility

Screen Reader

Select to Speak Off

TalkBack Off

Text-to-Speech Output

Display

Magnification Gestures Off

Large Mouse Pointer

Interactive Controls

Switch Access Off

Click When the Pointer Stops Moving Off

Press Power Button to End Call

Touch & Hold Delay Short

Audio and On-Screen Text

Mono Audio
Merges Channels When Playing Audio

Subtitle Off

# 12. Safety, handling, and support

## 12.1. Health & Safety

### 12.1.1. Using Environment

Keep in mind the following rules. Switch off your phone when it is prohibited, or might cause disturbance or danger.

1. The ideal phone working temperature is 0° C to 35° C and 35% to 85% humidity. A too high or too low temperature might affect the performance or cause damages. The ideal phone storage temperature is -20° C to 45° C.

2. Your phone might interfere with electronic and medical equipment. Obey the

related rules and switch off your phone in these places.
3. Try not to use your phone in weak signal areas or near high-precision electronic devices. Radio interference might lead to malfunction or other issues in electronic devices, especially pay attention when near the following devices: hearing aids, pacemakers and other medical devices, fire detectors, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.
4. In rare cases, the phone might interfere with the electronic systems in certain cars, such as the ABS anti-lock brakes and the air bag. Consult your network operator or car manufacturer before connecting the phone.
5. Before connecting to other devices, carefully read the user manual for more detailed, accurate, and safety instructions. Do not connect to incompatible products.
6. Do not use your phone in rain, or near washbasins or other wet locations.

## 12.1.2.Battery Safety

### Battery Precautions

1. Do not disassemble the built-in lithium polymer battery yourself, otherwise, it might cause battery leakage, overheat, explosion, and fire. Go to an OPPO designated after-sales service center if battery replacement is needed.
2. Do not puncture or pierce the battery with hard objects (e.g., needles and tacks) to avoid battery leakage.
3. Liquid in the battery is harmful to your skin. If liquid can be seen leaking from the battery, do not attempt to touch it. If the liquid contact~~s~~ with the skin and eyes rinse immediately with water and go to a doctor if needed.
4. Do not expose the battery to extreme ambient temperatures, fire, wet locations, and direct sunlight.
5. If the battery sends out strange smell, turn off your phone immediately, and send it to an authorized service provider for battery replacement. Do not attempt to disassemble or replace the battery yourself.
6. Do not continuously charge the battery over 12 hours.

### Battery Life Tips

1. **Use OPPO original accessories.** Use OPPO original charger (power adapter and USB cable) that matches your phone model. Charging with third-party or

counterfeit charger accessories might impact battery lifespan or even cause security incidents.

2. **Charge at a suitable temperature.** The ideal charging temperature is 5° C to 40° C. Battery life might temporarily shorten in low-temperature conditions, or irreversibly damage when temperature is too high. The battery should be charged within the ideal temperature range to avoid decreased battery performance and standby time.
3. **Turn off phone features when not in use**. Using features such as Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and GPS or keeping them active in the background may drain the battery significantly. Turn them off when not in use to save the battery. Dimming your screen and reducing the screen timeout setting can also preserve the battery life.
4. **Do not use when charging.** Your phone might quickly get warm or even cause damage if you use it a lot during charging.
5. **Do not fully drain your phone's battery.** Charge your phone when your battery level goes down to 10%. If phone's battery is fully drain, the battery could fall into a deep empty/drain state, which will cause it to be slightly damaged.
6. **Store the phone long term.** If you plan to store the phone for a long time, charge it to 60% or above every month.
7. **External environment.** Avoid exposing your phone battery to high or low temperature, humid environment or sun exposure.

### 12.1.3.Charger Usage Notes

1. Only use the charger specified by OPPO.
2. Charging voltage should be consistent with that specified on the charger. Using mismatched voltage might cause leakage, fire, and damages.
3. Do not use a power socket that is incompatible with the charger. Make sure the charger is plugged in firmly to avoid any fire hazard.
4. Do not charge your phone with a partially damaged charger, for that could result in electric shock, fire or other damages.
5. Do not charge your phone near washbasins or other water containers, or in wet locations such as bathrooms. Take caution to not spill any food or liquid on your phone or charger. Do not touch chargers, cables or power sockets with wet

hands. In case the charger gets wet, unplug all cables, allow it to dry thoroughly before charging again.

6. Do not disassemble or modify the charger or cables yourself.
7. Do not place heavy objects on the charger, for that might cause electric shock and fire.
8. Before cleaning the charger, unplug all cables (hold and pull the plug instead of pulling the cable, otherwise the cable will be ripped off).
9. Do not charge your phone when there is lightening or thunderstorm. Do not make phone calls while charging.
10. Avoid exposing your charger to following conditions: exposing to direct sunlight, temperatures lower than 5° C or higher than 40° C, damp and dusty places or that with excessive vibrations (might cause breakdowns), places near electrical appliances such as TV and radio sets (might cause interference to images and sound).

### 12.1.4. Traffic Safety

Use both hands when driving, and give full attention to driving and on the road. If you decide to use your phone while driving or riding a bicycle, keep in mind the following conditions:

- Safety should always come first while driving or riding a bicycle. Make sure to follow the related regulations in the area or country.
- Keep your eyes on the road. If you get an incoming call at an inconvenient time, let your voicemail answer it for you, or answer with a Bluetooth headset.
- An air bag in your vehicle inflates with great force. Do not store your phone or any of its accessories in the area over the air bag or in the air bag deployment area.
- Do not rely solely on the map on your phone when searching for locations, buildings, directions, and distances. Map routes and compass change as information provided by the service provider changes, so the map might be incorrect, incomplete or unsupported.
- Do not ship the phone~~,~~ with its components or accessories in the same compartment with flammable liquids, gases or explosives

## 12.2. Maintenance and Repair

### 12.2.1. Phone Cases

Keeping your phone protected from damage should be pretty important to you. The phone case that come along with your phone can effectively mitigate your concerns.

OPPO original phone case is made of TPU material, which is lightweight and soft and helps keep the original 'feel' of the phone since the case is a tight-fitting overlay. It does a good job of protecting against drops and shock damage on the corners and rear of your phone, also can reduce the damage caused by extreme temperature, liquid and dust invasion, etc.

### 12.2.2. Screen Protector

OPPO provides you with an original HD clear screen protector made of PET material, which is a thin piece of electro-conductive film that self-adheres to your screen. It protects your screen from cracking, also does offer resistance to scratches, finger prints, and abrasions. Besides, OPPO screen protector ensures high-definition and sensitiveness of the screen, which will not affect the screen display quality.

### 12.2.3. Maximize battery life and lifespan

**Note:** Rechargeable batteries have a limited number of charge cycles and may eventually need to be replaced. It is normal for the battery to lose its capacity over time, but you can do the following to maximize its life and lifespan.

**Use OPPO original accessories.** Charge the phone with OPPO original power adapter and USB cable. Charging with third-party charger accessories might impact battery lifespan or even cause security incidents.

**Use at a suitable temperature.** OPPO smartphone battery is designed to have a good performance in a wide range of ambient temperatures, with 16° C to 25° C as the ideal comfort zone. When temperature is higher than 45°C, battery capacity will damage irreversibly, and phone might even short-circuit and burn.

**Do not use when charging.** Programs such as long-time calls, games or online videos will make phone get warm quickly.

**Do not fully discharge your phone's battery.** Charge your phone when your battery level goes down to 10%. If phone's battery is fully discharged, the battery could fall into a deep discharge state, which will cause it to be slightly damaged.

**Store the phone long term.** If you plan to store the phone for a long-term, charge it to 60% or above every month.

**External environment.** Avoid exposing your phone battery to humid environment or sun exposure.

**Keep a good using habit.** Using features such as Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and GPS or keeping them active in the background may drain the battery significantly. Turn them off when not in use to save the battery. Dimming your screen and reducing the screen timeout setting can also preserve the battery life.

**Do not charge with a portable power bank frequently.** If a power bank supplies current which is above your phone battery's capacity, then it will cause damage to your battery gradually. Make sure the power bank you buy is of good quality and has power ratings which are suitable for your phone, basically match the current to the wall charger you use.

### 12.2.4. Keep Clean

Your mobile phone could be a hotspot for bacteria, so clean your phone is of great importance. Follow these steps:

1. To clean your phone, unplug all cables and turn it off first.
2. Dip the included cleaning cloth or a soft, slightly damp, lint-free cloth in distilled water or low concentration alcohol, and shake or squeeze to remove any excess liquid.
3. Slightly wipe across your phone. Avoid getting moisture in openings.
4. Gently wipe the screen with the dry part of the microfiber cloth, but don't try to pick up all the excess water if it means pressing hard.

Do not attempt to dry your phone with an external heat source, such as a hair dryer. If impurities cannot be cleaned up, contact OPPO Service Center for professional assistances.

### 12.2.5. Keep dry and solve water damage

Do not use your phone in rain, or near washbasins or other wet locations. Take care not to spill any food or liquid on your phone. In case your phone gets wet, follow these emergency measures:

1. Take your phone out of the liquid immediately, unplug all cables and turn off your phone.
2. If your phone has a removable battery, remove it.
3. Use a tissue or soft cloth to thoroughly adsorb water stains or liquids on the surface of your phone, and gently shake the phone in the opposite direction of liquid inflow.
4. Let your phone dry thoroughly before turning it on again. Avoid drying your phone with an external heat source, such as a hot air hair dryer.

If your phone has a serious water damage, take your phone, warranty card and proof of purchase to a nearby OPPO Customer Center for repairs at once.

### 12.2.6. Use connectors, ports, and buttons.

Never force a connector into a port for that might cause damage, which is not covered by warranty service. Check for obstructions on the port. If the connector and port don't join with reasonable ease, they probably don't match. Make sure that the connector matches the port and that you have positioned the connector correctly in relation to the port.

## 12.2.7. Other information

Mobile phones are perishable items, use with care. The following instructions might help to protect your phone:

1. Do not drop your phone or let it receive a substantial impact.
2. Do not place your phone in a microwave oven or other high voltage equipment, otherwise, it might cause damages, fire or explosion.
3. Do not leave the phone in hot, humid, or dusty environments. This may cause the phone to malfunction.
4. Your phone contains small parts, which may present a choking hazard to small children. Keep your phone and its accessories away from small children.
5. Do not paint your phone. Paint will block the sensors and lead to phone disoperation.
6. Dirty sockets might cause poor contact or electrical leakage. Regularly clean the power socket.
7. Do not take out the SIM or SD card when transmitting or saving information, otherwise, some important information might be lost.
8. Use only the supplied or approved antenna for replacement. Modified accessories might damage the phone or violate administer regulations of radio devices.

### Note:

Read all safety information carefully before using the phone to ensure personal safety and proper use. Consumable parts (such as the battery and earphone) possess different warranty periods from your phone. Check with your warranty receipt for details.

# 12.3. FCC Compliance Statement

## FCC Statement

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**Note**

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this product. Such modifications could negate the user's authority to operate the product.

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. Using this product can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, it may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in some conditions. If this product does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception itself, follow one or more of these measures to correct that:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Keep a longer distance between the product and receiver.
- Plug the product and receiver into outlets of different circuits.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

## FCC Caution

- Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to use the product.
- The antenna(s) used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.
- The country code selection is for non-US model only and is not available to all US models. Per FCC regulation, all Wi-Fi products marketed in US must fixed to US operation channels only.
- Operations in the 5.15-5.25 GHz band are restricted to indoor usage only.